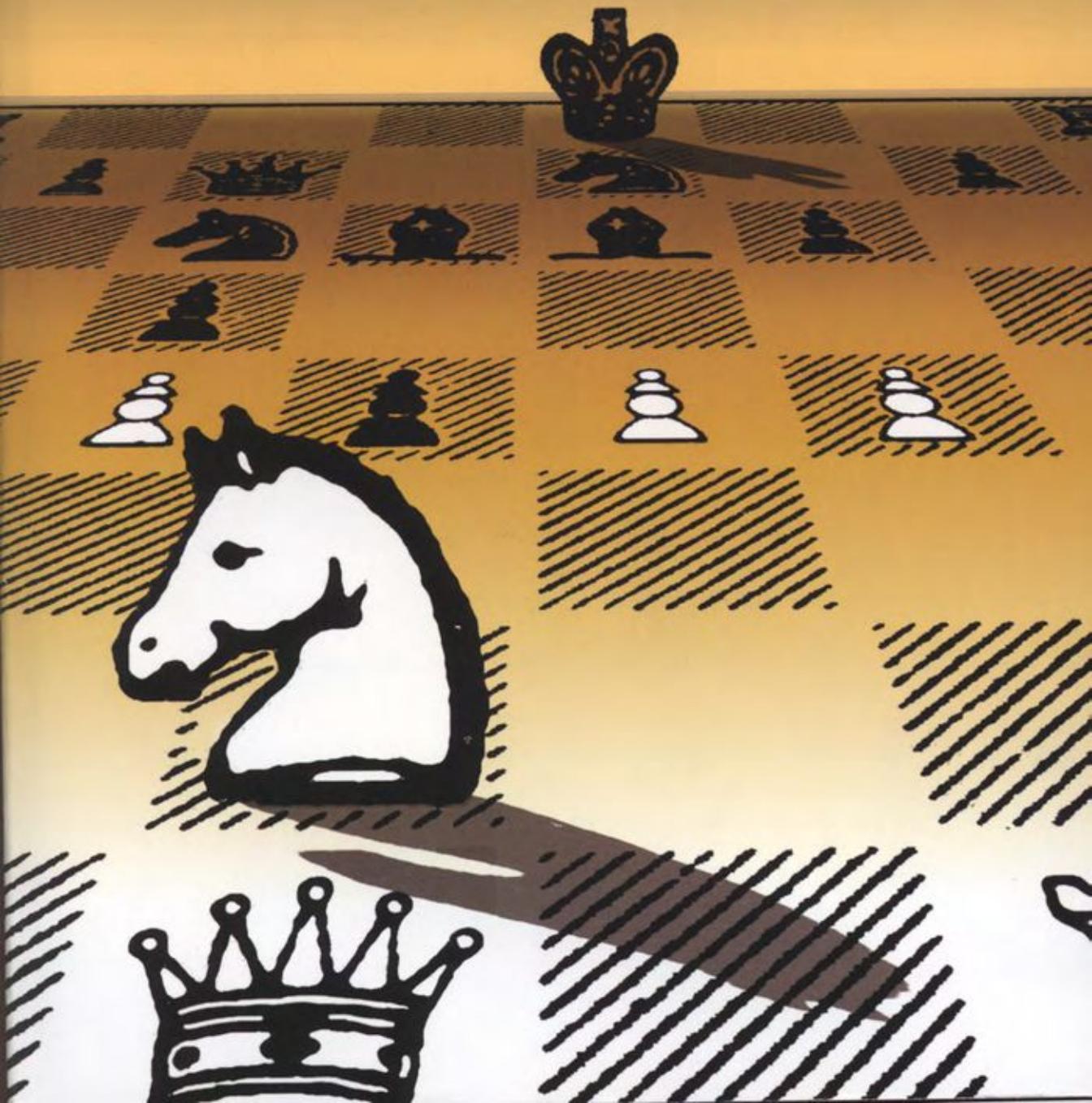


POSITIONAL CHESS HANDBOOK

**495 Instructive Positions
from Grandmaster Games**

Israel Gelfer





POSITIONAL CHESS HANDBOOK

495 Instructive Positions
from Grandmaster Games

Israel Gelfer

Translated by
Raaphy Persitz

DOVER PUBLICATIONS, INC.
Mineola, New York

Copyright

Copyright © 1991 by Israel Gelfer
All rights reserved.

Bibliographical Note

This Dover edition, first published in 2001, is an unabridged republication of the original edition published by B. T. Batsford Ltd., London, in 1991. A few minor corrections have been made by the author.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Gelfer, Israel.

Positional chess handbook: 495 instructive positions from grandmaster games / Israel Gelfer ; translated by Raaphy Persitz.

p. cm.

Originally published: London : B.T. Batsford, 1991.

Includes index.

ISBN 0-486-41949-5 (pbk.)

1. Chess. 2. Chess—Collections of games.

GV1449.5 .G45 2001

794.1'2--dc21

2001032355

Manufactured in the United States of America
Dover Publications, Inc., 31 East 2nd Street, Mineola, N.Y. 11501

Contents

Preface	ii
1 Introduction	1
Strong and Weak Pieces	7
2 A Good Bishop versus a Bad Knight	7
3 A Good Knight versus a Bad Bishop	18
4 Bishops—Same Colour	32
5 Bishops—Opposite Colour	41
6 Knights	49
7 Rooks	57
8 Two Bishops	69
9 A Rook versus Two Minor Pieces	76
10 Choosing an Endgame; Some Aspects of the Endgame	78
11 Key Squares—Strong Points	90
12 Strategic Advantages	106
13 Exchanges	119
14 Cramped Positions, Restricted Pieces	126
15 Pawn Structures	134
16 Pros and Cons	145
17 Active King; Central Supremacy	148
18 Inducing Weaknesses	152
19 A Diagonal	157
20 Two Diagonals	171
21 Positional Sacrifices	183
Index of Players and Composers	208

Preface

This book is concerned with recognizing themes and patterns in the middlegame and the ending. Its subject-matter spans some 130 years, from the era of Paul Morphy in the 1850s to the era of Gary Kasparov in the 1980s. The emphasis is on real situations, common to and arising from practical over-the-board play. Mastering them should help the reader in identifying the positional kernels of any given situation and thus increase the likelihood of his choosing a plan that will best fulfil its strategic demands.

When the same position is cited in more than one instance, that is, when it is used to illustrate more than one theme, this is indicated by cross-references.

I have avoided the systematic study of textbook endings, such as rook and pawn versus rook, and have concentrated on those arising in practical, over-the-board play.

When available, the numbers assigned to the moves are those of the actual games. Otherwise, moves stemming from the diagrams begin with the number 1.

Since a bibliography would have to enumerate hundreds of sources, I have preferred to omit it.

Israel Gelfer

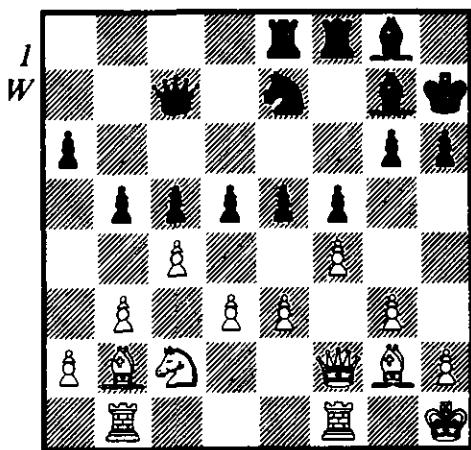
1 Introduction

The evaluation of a given position falls under two headings: quantitative and qualitative. The former involves the simple counting of pieces and pawns and, as such, is fairly straightforward and objective. The latter is concerned with more abstract concepts like mobility, control of space, colour complexes, key squares, open lines, co-ordination and the like. It involves the judgement and weighting of several elements.

What are weaknesses? How are they provoked? How are they avoided? What is an ideal square for a piece in a given situation? How does one go about capturing, or controlling, squares, diagonals, files? In what positions is it desirable to seek exchanges? In what positions is it best to eschew them? How can you ensure the proper co-ordination between pieces? All these, and others, are the sort of positional questions that will occupy us in this book.

Before acquainting ourselves with those themes that recur over and again, let us look, by way of a general introduction, at a few random positions where general positional considerations manifest themselves clearly.

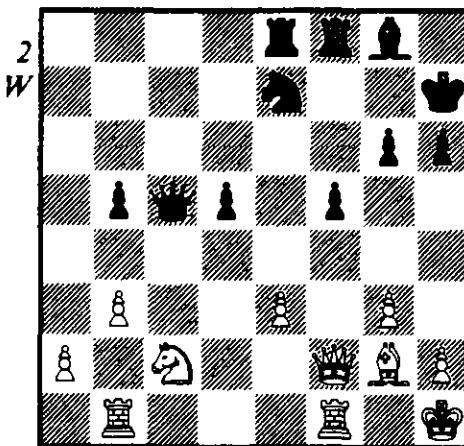
Nudelman–Justo
Women's Olympiad, Malta, 1980



Barring a pair of knights, no pieces have yet been exchanged; neither side appears to have glaring weaknesses; and it looks as though a long fight lies ahead. Black's last move, 21 ... d5, seizing the initiative in the centre and opening the way to either ... e4 or ... d4, seems natural enough. It turns out to be a decisive positional mistake.

The game continued: 22 fxe5 ♜xe5 23 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 24 d4! fixing the pawn on d5 and curtailing the scope of the black bishop. 24 ... ♜c7 25 cxb5 axb5 26 dxc5 clearing d4 for the knight. 26 ... ♜xc5. We have reached the next diagram.

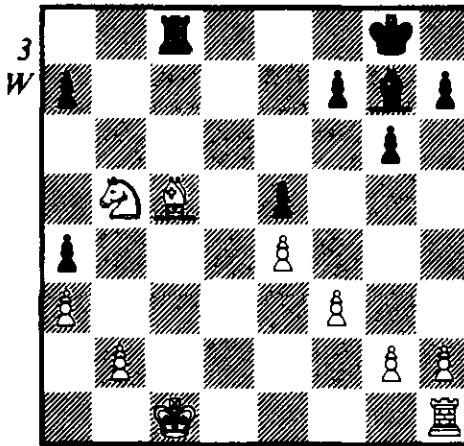
The material equilibrium has been preserved but, in the course



of the last four moves, White has acquired a winning positional advantage: her knight will occupy the central square d4, her bishop is more active than its counterpart and the c-file will be controlled by her rooks. This is what positional chess is about.

27 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ b4 28 $\mathbb{K}bc1$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 29 $\mathbb{K}c2$ $\mathbb{K}c8$ 30 $\mathbb{K}fc1$ $\mathbb{K}xc2$ 31 $\mathbb{K}xc2$ $\mathbb{K}a8$ 32 $\mathbb{K}f4$ $\mathbb{K}b6$ 33 $\mathbb{K}e5$ $\mathbb{K}a7$ 34 h3 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 36 h4 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ and Black's position soon collapsed.

Fuster–Fischer Portoroz, 1958



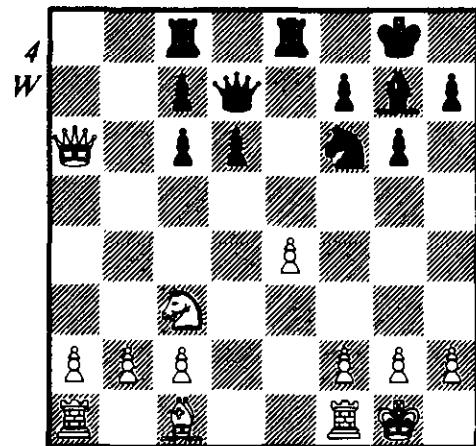
Bobby Fischer, just under 16 at the time, found himself in this unpromising situation, playing

with the black pieces, in his first Interzonal tournament.

Instead of the simple 26 $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{K}xc5$ 27 $\mathbb{K}d1$, taking control of the d-file, not to mention the square d5, Fuster, against his better judgement, fell for 26 $\mathbb{Q}xa7?$, forfeiting all his advantage. An additional error on White's part a few moves later enabled Fischer to trap the stray knight and win the game. A lucky escape.

Nimzowitsch–Capablanca

St. Petersburg, 1914



In the diagram, White is a pawn up and his passed pawn is a force to be reckoned with. One or two inaccuracies on his part, and Black's pieces assume dominating posts. Soon White is compelled to make material concessions.

15 $\mathbb{W}d3?$ 15 $\mathbb{W}c4!$ prevents Black's next move and conserves White's advantage.

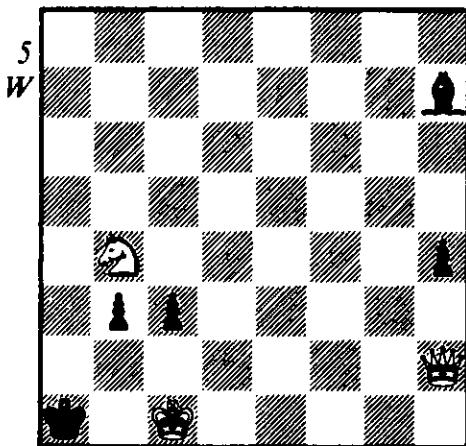
15 ... $\mathbb{W}e6!$ 16 f3 $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 18 $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 19 $\mathbb{K}ab1$ $\mathbb{K}a8$ Black's pieces occupy ideal squares. He threatens ... $\mathbb{K}eb8$.

20 a4 ♜xd2! The hallmark of a great player: he knows when to exchange an active piece for a passive one (see also Fischer-Petrosian, diagrams 280 and 281).

21 ♜xd2 ♜c4 22 ♜fd1 ♜eb8 23 ♜e3 ♜b4 24 ♜g5 ♜d4+ 25 ♜h1 ♜ab8

Here, in order to stave off immediate disaster, Nimzowitsch tried **26 ♜xd4**, but after **26 ... ♜xd4** Capablanca won without much difficulty.

Keres

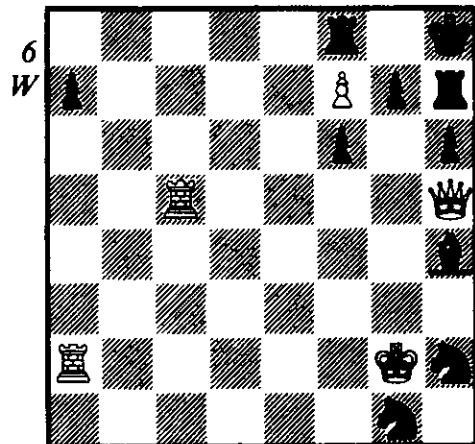


White, a queen up, faces the unpleasant ... b2+. The only way to bring home his advantage is: **1 ♜a2+! bxa2 2 ♜c6!** and Black is helpless against the threat **3 ♜d4–b3(c2) mate.**

Kremer

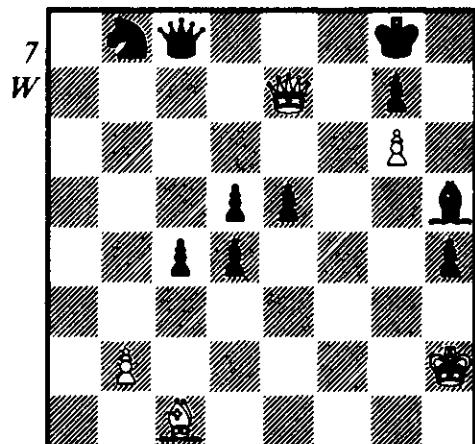
White mates in five moves. This composition, and the next one, illustrate how one piece can overcome numerically superior—but misplaced—adverse forces.

1 ♜c8 ♜xc8 2 ♜c2! ♜xc2+ If 2 ... ♜f8 3 ♜c5 ♜g8 4 ♜c8 and



mates. **3 ♜e2!! ♜xe2+ 4 ♜h1** and mates next move.

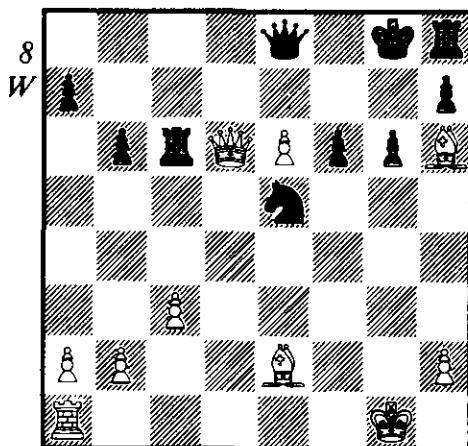
Vikovich



White takes advantage of the unfavourable disposition of the black pieces and wins after **1 ♜f7+ ♜h8 2 ♜h6! ♜g8 3 ♜xg7+!! ♜xg7 4 ♜e8+** taking all Black's pieces with a check!

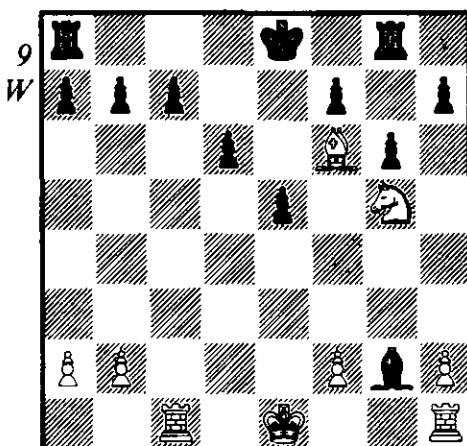
Gusev–Averbakh USSR, 1946

The awkward placing of Black's king's rook and king invites the spectacular queen-sacrifice: **24 ♜xe5! fxe5 25 ♜f1!** after which, despite his enormous material advantage, Black is completely tied up.



25 ... $\mathbb{E}c8$ 25 ... $\mathbb{E}xe6$ 26 $\mathbb{A}c4$
leads to mate. **26 $\mathbb{A}d1$ $\mathbb{E}c4$ 27
 $\mathbb{A}b3$ b5 28 $\mathbb{A}xc4$ bxc4 29 b3**
Creating a passed pawn, against which Black is helpless, his queen being paralysed by the threat of mate. **29 ... a5 30 bxc4 $\mathbb{W}e7$ 31
 $\mathbb{A}g2$ $\mathbb{W}a3$ 32 $\mathbb{E}f2$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 33 $\mathbb{E}f1$ g5
34 $\mathbb{E}f5$ g4 35 c5 and wins.**

Kupferstisch–Andreasen Denmark, 1953

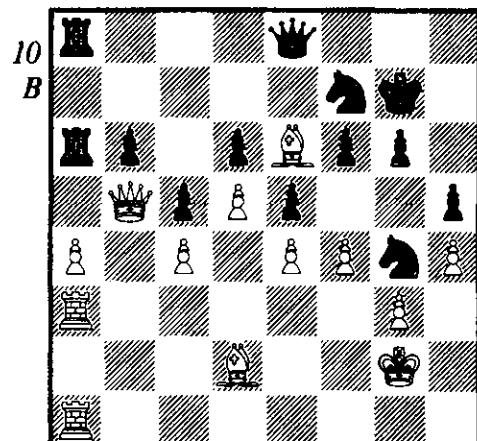


In the diagram, arrived at after 20 moves, White has a piece for three pawns. The natural continuation **21 $\mathbb{E}g1$ $\mathbb{A}c6$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{A}d7$** enables Black to put up stiff resistance. White's next move, sacrificing a rook, exploits the

precarious state of Black's king and ties a noose around his neck.

21 $\mathbb{E}xc7!!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh1$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ After 22 $\mathbb{E}e7+$ Black's king may escape. **22 ... $\mathbb{A}d5$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xd6+$
 $\mathbb{A}f8$ 24 $\mathbb{A}g5$ 24 $\mathbb{E}e7+$ $\mathbb{A}g7$ 25
 $\mathbb{A}g5+$ etc. is quicker. **24 ... $\mathbb{E}h8$**
**25 $\mathbb{A}h6+$ $\mathbb{A}g8$ 26 $\mathbb{E}g7+$ $\mathbb{A}f8$ 27
 $\mathbb{E}c7+$ $\mathbb{A}g8$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}c8$ $\mathbb{A}f3$ 29
 $\mathbb{E}g7+$ $\mathbb{A}f8$ 30 $\mathbb{E}xb7+$ $\mathbb{A}g8$ 31
 $\mathbb{E}g7+$ $\mathbb{A}f8$ 32 $\mathbb{E}xa7+$ $\mathbb{A}g8$ 33
 $\mathbb{E}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}d6!$ 1–0****

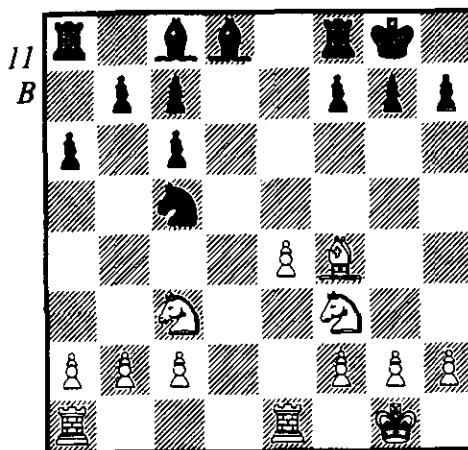
Hort–Kagan Siegen, 1970



White, with two bishops and an advantage in space, aims at opening lines, but Black defends with sang-froid: **49 ... $\mathbb{W}xb5$ 50 $cxb5$
 $\mathbb{E}a5!!$** Thwarting a4–a5. **51 $\mathbb{A}f3$**
 **$\mathbb{Q}fh6$ 52 $\mathbb{A}e2$ $\mathbb{E}8a7$ 53 $\mathbb{A}c8$ f5 54
 $\mathbb{A}a6$ $\mathbb{E}5xa6$ 55 $bxa6$ $fxe4$ 56 $\mathbb{E}b3$
 $\mathbb{E}xa6$ 57 a5 $\mathbb{E}xa5!$ 58 $\mathbb{A}xa5$ $bxa5$**
Black is two exchanges down. However, in the semi-closed position, the two knights are scarcely inferior to the two rooks. Indeed, after **59 $\mathbb{E}xa5?$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$** Black is better. White is content to take a draw: **59 $fxe5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 60 $\mathbb{A}e3$**

Qhg4+ 61 Qf4 Qf6 62 Bb7+
 $\text{Qh6} \frac{1}{2}:\frac{1}{2}$

Bondarevsky-Smyslov
Moscow, 1946

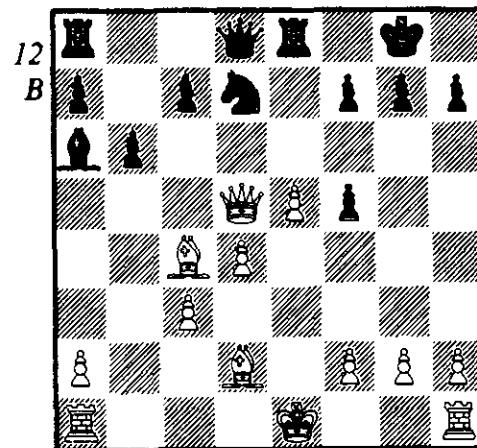


An instructive position. As the game unfolds, Black's pieces occupy dominating outposts whereas White's are gradually driven back.

12 ... $f5$ 13 $e5$ 13 $exf5$ Qxf5 helps Black, but 13 Qg5 is preferable. The text creates a passed pawn whose prospects are bleak. 13 ... Qe6 14 Qd2 g5! 15 Qe2 c5 16 Qc3 b5 17 $b3$ Qb7 Developing his pieces, Black methodically limits the scope of his opponent's pieces. 18 Qg3 g4 19 Qd2 Qe7 20 Qh5 Qf7 21 Qf1 Qg6 22 Qf6 The knight occupies a seemingly strong outpost. In fact, it is out of action. 22 ... Qad8 23 Qad1 Qxd1 24 Qxd1 Qd8 25 Qxd8 Qxd8 26 Qe3 f4! 27 Qd1 A forced retreat since capturing on $g4$ costs a piece. 27 ... Qxf6 28 exf6 Qe4 29 Qb2 An attempt to improve the knight's mobility, which Black forthwith nips in the bud. 29 ... $b4!$ 30 $f3$ Qxc2 31 Qf2

gxf3 32 gxf3 Qb1 and Black's material advantage assured him victory.

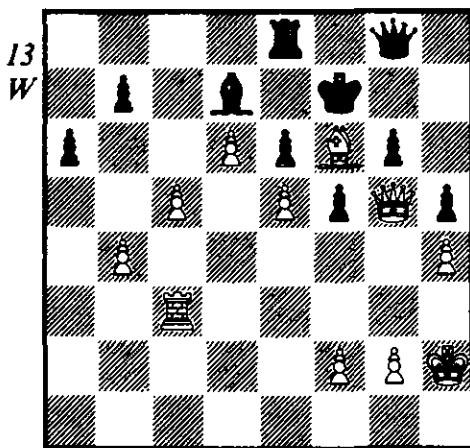
Saidy-Fischer
USA, 1965



At times it is possible to attain positional ends by sharp, tactical means. Thus, in the example above, the continuation chosen by Fischer, 15 ... Qxe5! , which undermines White's centre and leads to a winning ending for Black, necessitates close examination of several variations. After the best moves for both sides, 16 Qxd8 Qxc4+! 17 Qxe8+ Qxe8+ 18 Qd1 Qxd2 19 Qxd2 Qe2+ 20 Qc1 Qxf2 , Fischer had foreseen that though an exchange up, White's position was hopeless. The game proceeded 21 $g3$ Qb7! 22 Qe1 Qe4 and Black won fairly easily.

Kushnir-Gaprindashvili
Riga, 1972

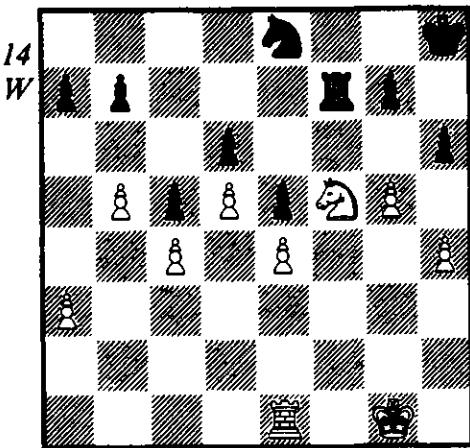
When the stronger side's pieces are well-placed and well-coordinated, tactical possibilities



abound. At times, such possibilities are not immediately available, but sooner or later they surface.

In the above example, White's pieces and pawns are so dominant that a quick decision cannot be far away. Indeed, 45 b5! is conclusive: 45 ... axb5 (or 45 ... ♜xb5 46 c6! ♜xc6 47 ♜xc6 etc.) 46 c6! bxc6 47 ♜a3 The threat of ♜a7 compels Black to oppose White's rook. 47 ... ♜a8 48 ♜xa8 ♜xa8 49 ♜d8 1-0

Larsen–Torre Brussels, 1987



This is an excellent example of how the relative value of pieces is

determined by the outposts they occupy.

The correct move is 37 b6! a6 (37 ... axb6 invites 38 ♜b1), leaving the black knight without a move. Whether this leads to victory or not is another matter.

Larsen played 37 g6? whereupon Torre could have brought about a drawn ending by means of a timely exchange-sacrifice 37 ... ♜xf5! 38 exf5 ♜f6 sealing the position. Instead, he played 37 ... ♜d7? relieving the knight from protecting d6 but leaving its mighty counterpart unmolested on f5.

38 ♜f1 ♜g8 39 a4 h5 Idea: to post the knight on g4. 40 ♜f2 ♜f6 41 ♜e3 ♜f8 42 a5 ♜d8 43 ♜d3 ♜d7 44 a6 b6 45 ♜g1! Threatening ♜g5 and ♜g3, capturing h5. 45 ... ♜g4 46 ♜xg4!! A pure positional exchange-sacrifice. While White's knight ties up Black's rook, his king mops up on the right wing. To use Larsen's words: 'In this [closed] position, a knight is not inferior to a rook.'

46 ... hxg4 47 ♜e3 ♜d8 48 ♜f2 ♜g8 49 ♜g3 ♜d7 50 ♜xg4 ♜f8 51 ♜g5 ♜g8 52 h5 ♜h8 53 h6 gxh6+ 54 ♜xh6 ♜g7 55 ♜f5+ ♜f8 56 ♜f6 1-0

Thus, by not sacrificing his rook for White's knight, Black missed an opportunity to draw; whereas White, by a well-timed sacrifice of his rook for Black's knight, forced a neat victory.

Strong and Weak Pieces

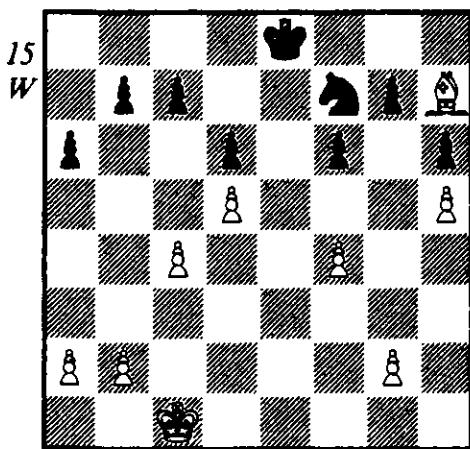
Introduction to Chapters 2–9

A bishop or a knight, we are taught, are worth three pawns (units) each; a rook, five pawns; a queen, nine to ten pawns; and so on. Beyond such rough approximations, the value of a piece corresponds above all to the influence it exerts in a particular position. Clearly, a pawn on the seventh rank, about to queen, may be worth more than a minor piece or rook. Likewise, in some positions a bishop may be superior to a knight while in others the reverse is true. Needless to say, in a given position, a white rook and a black rook need not be equal to each other merely by virtue of both being rooks. In some circumstances, a well-posted knight or bishop may outweigh a rook or even a queen.

This is where positional understanding comes into play and where the ability to assess the pros and cons of a position dispassionately can come to our aid in determining the choice of a plan.

2 A Good Bishop versus a Bad Knight

Grigoriev
1926



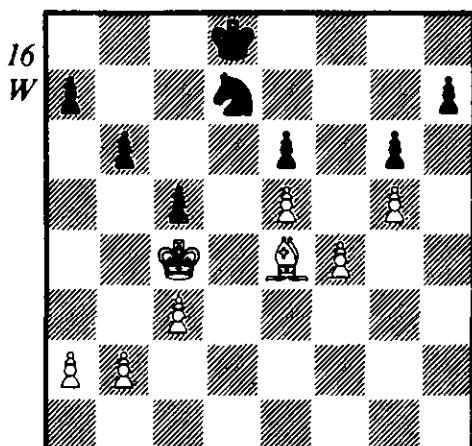
Black has no apparent weakness, but his knight lacks space

and White's bishop is all-powerful.

1 $\text{Bd}2 \text{ Qd}8$ 2 $\text{Nc}3 \text{ b}6$ 3 $\text{Rf}5 \text{ c}5$

An attempt to gain more space for the knight with 3 ... $\text{Nb}7$ 4 $\text{b}4 \text{ a}5$ is answered by 5 $\text{a}3$. 4 $\text{Rc}8 \text{ a}5$ Now the square b5 is available to the white king. 5 $\text{g}4 \text{ Qf}7$ 6 $\text{Rf}5 \text{ Ne}7$ 7 $\text{Qc}3 \text{ Nb}7$ 8 $\text{Rc}8 \text{ Nd}8$ 9 $\text{Nb}3 \text{ Rf}7$ 10 $\text{Re}6 \text{ Rh}8$ 11 $\text{f}5$ Of course, this move would be out of place with the black knight on f7. 11 ... $\text{Nd}8$ 12 $\text{Ra}4 \text{ Qc}7$ 13 $\text{Nb}5 \text{ Nb}7$ 14 $\text{a}4$ and Black is without a move.

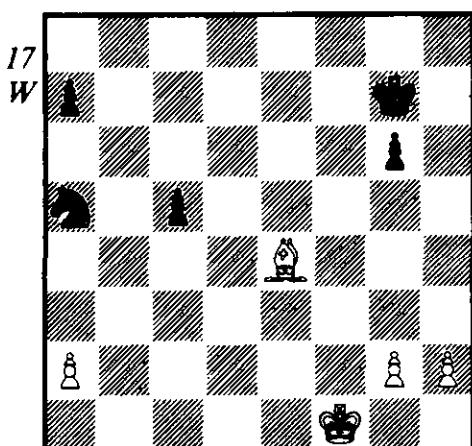
Grigoriev
1931



In the above ending, White is able to exploit the superior mobility of his bishop over the black knight by attacking Black's kingside pawns from the rear.

1 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $a6$ 2 $a4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 4 $a5$ inducing an additional weakness. 4 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 5 $axb6$ $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 8 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 10 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 11 $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ and wins.

Spassky–Fischer
Santa Monica, 1966



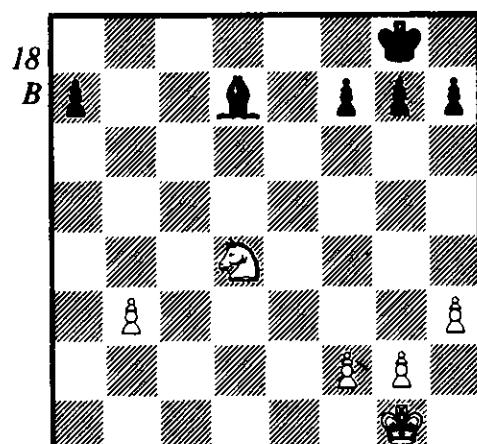
Another case underlining the superiority of the bishop over the

knight in an open position, despite the dearth of material.

35 $h4$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ is better. 39 ... $g5$ 40 $h5$ Black has rid himself of the weakness at g6 but his knight is restricted to watching the passed h-pawn. 40 ... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}a8$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $g4$ 44 $a4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 45 $a5$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 46 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $g3$ 47 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 48 $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 49 $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 50 $\mathbb{Q}a2$
1–0

Stoltz–Kashdan

The Hague, 1928



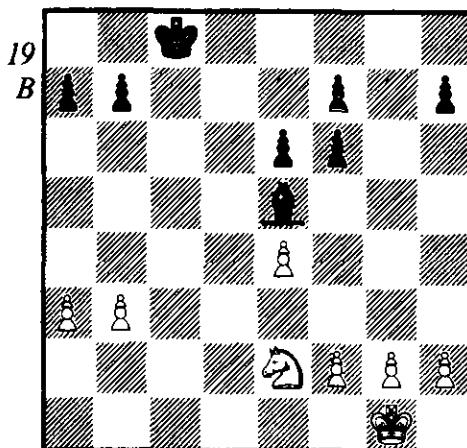
A celebrated ending where the existence of pawns on both wings on an open board emphasizes the bishop's superiority over the knight.

1 ... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 5 $h4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ Black's bishop helps push the white king backwards, enhancing the scope of his own king.

6 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}a6+$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $h6$ 8 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $g6$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 10 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $f5$ 11 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $f4$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $h5$ 13 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $g5$ 16 $g3$ $gxh4$ 17 $gxh4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}e7$

Qe6 20 b4 Qxh4 and the passed h-pawn carried the day.

Chekhover–Lasker
Moscow, 1935



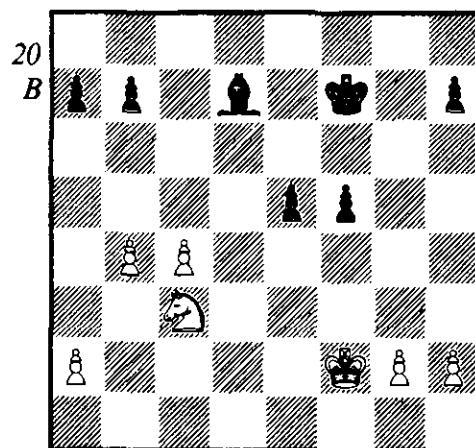
Here too, in an open position with pawns on both wings, the knight is no match for the bishop.

20 ... Qc7 21 Qf1 b5! A prelude to his next move. **22 Qe1 Qb2 23 a4 bxa4 24 bxa4 Qc6!** Precise: **24 ... Qb6–a5** allows the white king to reach b3, via d1 and c2. **25 Qd2 Qc5 26 Qc3 Qb4 27 Qb5 a5 28 Qd6 Qxa4 29 Qc2 Qe5 30 Qxf7 Qxh2 31 Qd8 e5 32 Qc6 Qg1 33 f3 Qc5 34 Qb8 Qb5 35 g4 Qe7 36 g5** Despair in a hopeless position. **36 ... fxg5 37 Qd7 Qd6 38 Qf6 Qc4 0–1 39 Qxh7 Qe7** traps the knight.

Uhlmann–Fischer
Leipzig, 1960

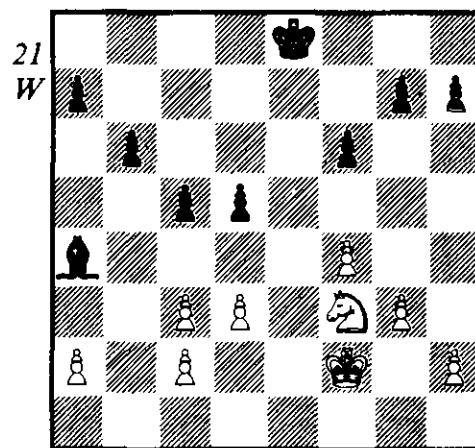
Here again the presence of pawns on both wings in an open position gives Black a pronounced advantage.

26 ... b6 27 a4?! In general, such committal pawn moves are best avoided. Preferable is 27 a3. **27 ... Qe6 28 c5 bxc5 29 bxc5**



Qe7 30 Qg3 The only way to seek counterplay. **30 ... Qd7 31 Qh4 Qc6 32 Qg5 e4 33 g4** White wishes to eliminate as many pawns as possible. **33 ... fxg4 34 Qxe4 a5!** Fixing the a-pawn. **35 Qf4 Qb3 36 Qe3 Qxa4 37 Qd2 h6 38 Qf6 Qxc5 39 Qxg4 h5 40 Qe3 Qd4** The centralised king, together with the powerful bishop, ensure Black a comfortable victory, notwithstanding the paucity of pawns. **41 Qf1 Qe5 42 Qe3 Qb3 0–1**

Reti–Rubinstein
Gothenburg, 1920



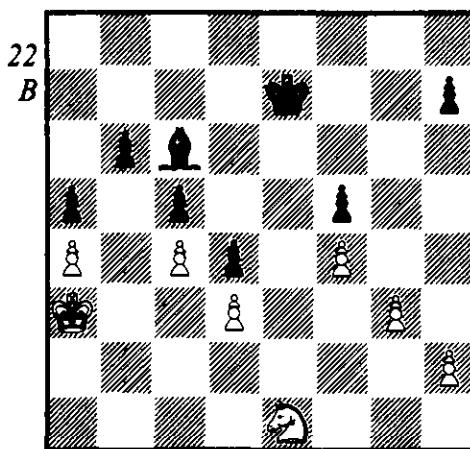
The need to defend White's pawn on c2 compels the retreat of his knight, which facilitates the infiltration of Black's king into White's camp.

10 A Good Bishop versus a Bad Knight

29 ♘e1 ♗e7 30 ♗e3 ♗e6 31 g4
to prevent ... ♖f5 and ... h5–h4.
31 ... ♖d6 32 h3 g6 33 ♗d2 ♖d7
The bishop is to shine on another front.

34 ♘f3 ♗e7 Preparing ... h5 without having to worry about the retort g5 or ♘h4. **35** ♗e3 h5!
36 ♘h2 ♗d6 37 ♗e2 d4! Depriving the white king of the square e3 and fixing White's pawns on the queen's flank. The accumulation of small advantages is typical of positional play. **38** cxd4 cxd4 39 ♗d2 hxg4 40 hxg4 ♖c6! Halting 41 c3 because of 41 ... dxc3+ 42 ♗xc3 ♖g2! and White is in zugzwang. **41** ♗e2 ♖d5 42 a3 b5 43 ♘f1 a5 44 ♘d2 a4! The threat ... b4 looms. **45** ♘e4+ If 45 ♘d1 g5! penetrating. **45** ... ♖xe4 46 dxе4 b4 47 ♗d2 bxa3 48 ♗c1 g5 0–1
Vintage Rubinstein.

Smyslov–Tal
Moscow, 1964

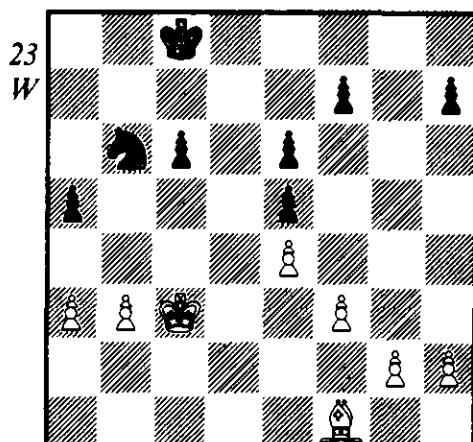


In the following fragment, Tal, who is renowned for attacking ability and tactical wizardry, displays his mastery in a purely technical ending.

38 ... ♖f6 39 ♗b3 ♗g6 40 ♗a3 ♖h5 41 h3 To prevent ... ♗g4, but on h3 the pawn is none too safe. **41** ... ♗g6 42 ♗b3 ♗g7 43 ♗a3 ♖f6 44 ♗b3 ♖e8 45 ♘g2 If 45 ♘f3 ♖h5 46 ♘e5 ♖d1+ 47 ♗a3 ♖e6 48 ♘c6 ♖c2 49 ♘e5 h6 places White in zugzwang (50 g4 ♖d1). **45** ... ♖h5 46 ♗c2 ♖e2 47 ♘e1 ♖f1 48 ♘f3 48 h4 is defeated by the king's entry to g4, preceded by the transfer of the bishop to the long diagonal.

48 ... ♖xh3 49 ♘g5 ♖g2 50 ♘xh7+ ♗g7 51 ♘g5 ♗g6 52 ♗d2 ♖c6 53 ♗c1 ♖g2 Easier than 53 ... ♖xa4, which invites 54 ♘f3–e5. **54** ♗d2 ♖h5 55 ♘e6 55 ♗e2 ♗g4 and 55 ♘f7 ♗g4 are no better. **55** ... ♗g4 56 ♘c7 ♖c6 57 ♘d5 ♗xg3 58 ♘e7 ♖d7 59 ♘d5 ♖xa4 60 ♘xb6 ♖e8 60 ... ♖c6 is faster. **61** ♘d5 ♘f3 62 ♘c7 ♖c6 63 ♘e6 a4 64 ♘xc5 a3 65 ♘b3 a2 66 ♗c1 ♗xf4 and wins.

Rubinstein–Johner
Carlsbad, 1929



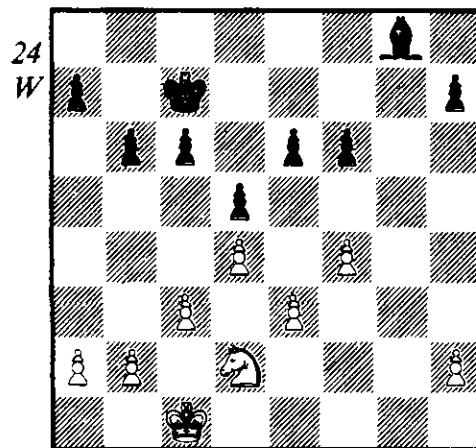
Rubinstein played **1** b4 Here, instead of keeping the position

blocked with 1 ... a4 (answering 2 b5 with c5!), Black erred with 1 ... axb4+? presenting White with an outside passed pawn and facilitating the penetration of his king.

The game continued: 2 ♜xb4 ♜c7 3 a4 ♜d7 4 a5 h6 5 ♜d3 ♜b7 6 ♜c2 ♜b8 7 ♜d3 ♜d7 8 g4 ♜c7 9 h4 ♜f8 10 ♜f1 ♜d7 10 ... ♜g6 11 h5 transposes. 11 ♜h3 ♜f8 12 h5 A rare situation where placing pawns on squares of the same colour as the bishop, although contrary to accepted wisdom, is actually desirable. 12 ... f6 Otherwise comes g5! hxg5, h6, coupled with ♜g4-h5-f7-g8. The text weakens the e6 pawn. 13 ♜f1 ♜d7 14 ♜c4 ♜f8 15 ♜b3 ♜h7 16 ♜c5! Not 16 ♜xe6? ♜g5. White's coming moves are designed to pave the way for the decisive entry of his king. 16 ... ♜f8 17 ♜a2 ♜d7+ 18 ♜b4 ♜f8 19 a6! ♜b6 20 a7 ♜xa7 21 ♜c5 ♜b7 22 ♜d6 ♜b6 23 ♜e7 ♜h7 24 ♜xe6 ♜c7 25 ♜c4 Threat: ♜f7-g6. 25 ... ♜g5 26 ♜xf6 ♜d6 27 ♜g6 1-0

Bogatirchuk–Rabinovich

Leningrad, 1923



Black's last move was ... ♜c7, to which White replied 1 e4 with the idea of continuing 2 e5, limiting the scope of the black bishop, and relishing 1 ... dxe4 2 ♜xe4. What he overlooked was 1 ... e5!, which turns the tables.

2 fxe5 fxe5 3 dxe5 ♜d7 4 b3 ♜e6 5 exd5+ ♜xd5 6 ♜f3 c5! Not 6 ... ♜e4 7 ♜d4 c5 8 ♜c6 a5 9 c4. Depriving White's knight and king of good squares is more important than immediate material gains.

7 ♜d2 ♜e4 8 ♜e2 h6 9 ♜d2+ The advanced pawn was doomed in any case. 9 ... ♜xe5 10 ♜e3 White has gained some space but his king is soon pushed back. 10 ... ♜d5 11 ♜b1 ♜f5 12 ♜a3 a6 13 ♜c2 ♜g4 14 ♜f2 ♜f4! 15 ♜e3 ♜f7 16 ♜e2 b5 17 ♜f2 ♜e6 18 ♜e2 ♜e4 19 ♜g2 White is in zugzwang: 19 ♜d2 ♜f3 or 19 ♜f2 ♜d3.

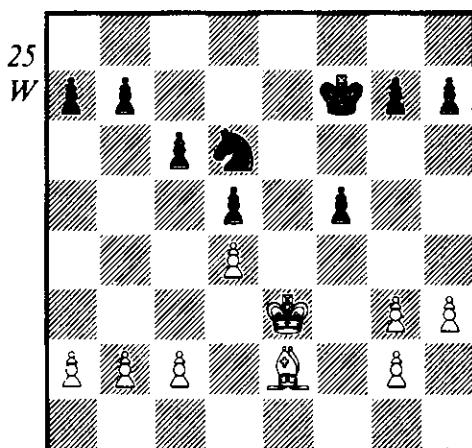
19 ... ♜g4+ Here 19 ... c4 is already possible. But in such endings, bidding one's time is seldom harmful. 20 ♜d2 ♜e6 21 ♜e1 c4!

12 A Good Bishop versus a Bad Knight

22 bxc4 If 22 b4 $\mathbb{A}g4$ and White has no good move. **22 ... $\mathbb{A}xc4$** **23 a3 a5 24 $\mathbb{B}c2$ a4 25 $\mathbb{B}d4$** Or 25 $\mathbb{B}e3$ $\mathbb{N}f3$, while on 25 $\mathbb{B}e1$ comes ... $\mathbb{B}f4-g4-h3$. **25 ... h5 26 $\mathbb{B}c2$** $\mathbb{B}f3$ 27 $\mathbb{B}e3$ $\mathbb{B}f2$ 28 $\mathbb{B}f5$ $\mathbb{B}g2$ 29 $\mathbb{h}4$ $\mathbb{B}f3$ 30 $\mathbb{B}e7$ $\mathbb{B}g3$ 31 $\mathbb{B}g6$ $\mathbb{A}f7$ 32 $\mathbb{B}e5$ $\mathbb{A}d5$ 33 $\mathbb{B}g6$ $\mathbb{A}e4$ 34 $\mathbb{B}e5$ $\mathbb{B}xh4$ and the advance of the h-pawn decided the issue.

Capablanca–Corzo

Havana, 1901



Here, one error on Corzo's part at the outset enables the 12 year-old Capablanca to set up a pawn formation which renders his bishop vastly superior to Black's knight.

23 $\mathbb{B}f4$ $\mathbb{B}f6$ 24 h4 White cannot permit ... $g5+$. If now 24 ... $h6$ 25 $h5$. **24 ... g6 25 g4 h6?** A losing move. Correct is 25 ... $fxg4$. **26 g5+ hxg5 27 hxg5+ $\mathbb{B}e7$** **28 g4** To gain more space for his bishop. **28 ... fxg4 29 $\mathbb{A}d3!$ $\mathbb{B}f5$** 29 ... $\mathbb{B}f7$ 30 $\mathbb{B}xg4$ $\mathbb{B}g7$ 31 $\mathbb{B}f4$ $\mathbb{B}f7$ is also insufficient, since White will eventually break through on the queenside.

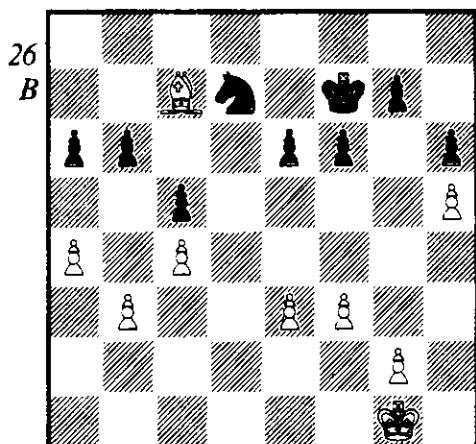
30 $\mathbb{B}xg4$ $\mathbb{B}xd4$ 31 $\mathbb{A}xg6$ c5 32 $\mathbb{B}h5$ Threatening to escort the

passed pawn to the queening square. Strangely enough, the game is ultimately decided on the other wing. **32 ... $\mathbb{B}e6$ 33 $\mathbb{B}h6$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 34 $\mathbb{A}f5$ $\mathbb{B}g7$ 35 $\mathbb{A}c8$** The bishop's superiority over the knight is uncontested. **35 ... b6** **36 g6 d4** Trying for ... c4 and ... d3. **37 b3 $\mathbb{B}g8$ 38 a4** Before manoeuvring his king to the queen's flank, White takes care to stop ... b5 and ... c4.

38 ... $\mathbb{B}f8$ 39 $\mathbb{A}g4$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 40 $\mathbb{B}h7$ $\mathbb{B}g7$ 41 $\mathbb{B}h6$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 42 $\mathbb{A}e2$ $\mathbb{B}g7$ 43 $\mathbb{A}c4$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 44 $\mathbb{B}g5$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 45 $\mathbb{B}f5$ $\mathbb{B}g7+$ 45 ... $\mathbb{B}d6$ 46 $\mathbb{A}f7$. 46 $\mathbb{B}e5$ $\mathbb{B}h5$ 47 $\mathbb{A}e2$ $\mathbb{B}g7$ 48 $\mathbb{B}d5$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 49 $\mathbb{B}c6$ Harvest time. 49 ... $\mathbb{B}g7$ 50 $\mathbb{B}b7$ $\mathbb{B}d6$ 51 $\mathbb{B}xa7$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 52 $\mathbb{B}a6$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 53 $\mathbb{A}f3$ $\mathbb{B}g7$ 54 $\mathbb{A}d5$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 55 $\mathbb{A}f7$ $\mathbb{B}g7$ 56 $\mathbb{B}b5$ $\mathbb{B}f5$ 57 a5 $\mathbb{B}d6+(?)$ 58 $\mathbb{B}a6$ $\mathbb{B}xa5$ 59 g7 1-0

Miles–Dzindzichashvili

Tilburg, 1978



White's last move, 41 $\mathbb{A}c7!$, severely restricts Black's knight, not to mention his king.

41 ... a5?! Hindering 42 a5 only accentuates Black's liability on

the queenside. 42 ♜f2 g5 This is not entirely satisfactory, but neither is passive defence. 43 hxg6+ ♜xg6 44 ♜g3 ♜g5 45 e4 h5 46 ♜h3 White must beware of the blocked position which would ensue, for instance, after 46 f4+ ♜g6 and ... h5.

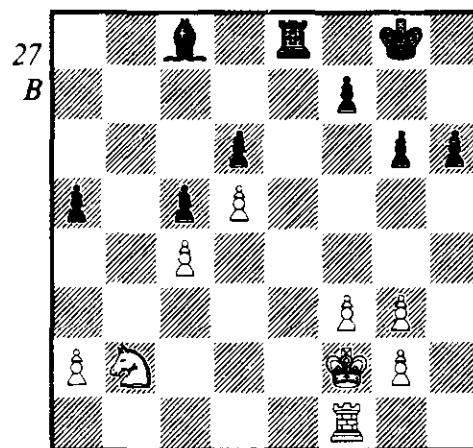
46 ... ♜h6 47 ♜h4 ♜g6 48 ♜d8 ♜h6 49 ♜g3 ♜g7 50 ♜h4 ♜h6 51 ♜c7 ♜g6 52 g3 According to separate analyses by Miles and Speelman, 52 g4 hxg4 53 fxg4 f5! is not advisable. Both appear to overlook the fact that after 54 exf5+ exf5 55 g5 Black is soon reduced to zugzwang.

52 ... ♜h6 53 g4! hxg4 54 fxg4 ♜g6 55 ♜g3 Hindering 55 .. f5 in view of 56 gxf5+ exf5 57 ♜f4! and the white king penetrates victoriously. 55 ... ♜g5 56 ♜f3 ♜h6 On 56 ... e5 White wins elegantly with 57 ♜g3 ♜g6 58 ♜h4 ♜h6 59 ♜d8 ♜g6 60 g5 fxg5+ 61 ♜xg5 ♜b8 62 ♜d8 ♜d7 63 ♜g4!.

57 ♜f4 ♜g6 58 e5! Now the advance of the e-pawn decides. 58 ... fxe5+ 59 ♜xe5 ♜f7 60 ♜c7 ♜f6 61 g5+ ♜f7 62 ♜g4 ♜g6 63 ♜d6! 1-0 Zugzwang: the knight has no moves; 63 ... e5 fails against 64 ♜c7 e4 65 ♜f4 e3 66 ♜xe3 ♜xg5 67 ♜e4; and king moves lose to ♜h5-g6. A fine achievement.

Jacobsen–Nimzowitsch Copenhagen, 1923

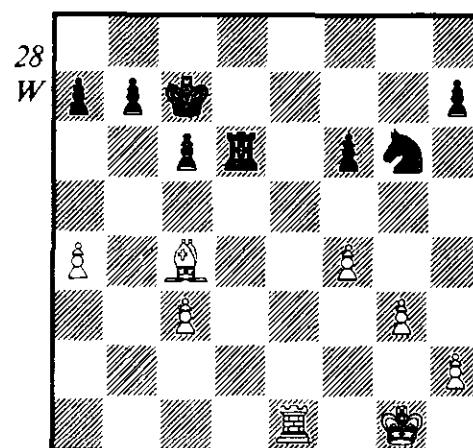
Black's advantage is based on the long-ranging bishop and the



latent weakness of the pawns on c4 and d5.

34 ... ♜f5 35 ♜c1 h5 36 ♜c3 a4! 37 ♜d1 If 37 ♜xa4 ♜a8 and the rook infiltrates after 38 ... ♜xa2+ (38 ♜a3? ♜c2). Or 37 ♜a3 ♜b8 38 ♜xa4 ♜a8 and ... ♜c2. 37 ... g5 38 ♜e3 ♜d7 39 ♜e2 f5 40 ♜d2 f4 Creating targets on the king's flank. 41 gxf4 gxf4 42 ♜d1 ♜f7 43 ♜f2 ♜g8 44 ♜e2 ♜xg2 45 ♜c1 ♜f5 46 a3 h4 47 ♜f1 ♜f6 48 ♜d1 h3 49 ♜e2 h2 50 ♜a1 ♜d3+ 51 ♜xd3 ♜xf2 52 ♜e4 ♜g5 etc. 0-1

Alekhine–Euwe
Netherlands, 1937

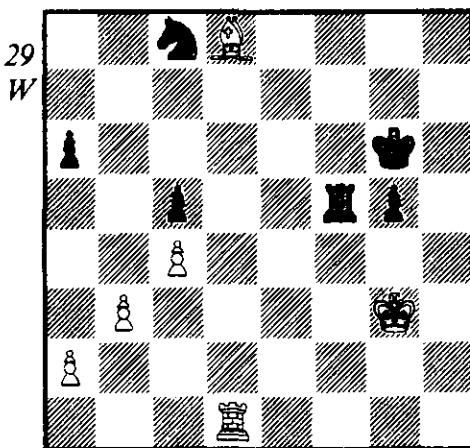


29 h4! Mobilizing the pawn majority on the king's wing and

dislodging the knight. 29 ... ♜d7 30 ♜f2 ♖e7 31 ♜f3 ♖d5 A mistake, permitting White to reposition his bishop. 31 ... ♜e8 is more stubborn. 32 ♜d3! h6 33 ♜f5+ ♜d8 34 ♜g4 ♖e7 35 ♜b1 ♜e8 36 ♜h5 The king's active participation is vital. 36 ... ♜f7 37 ♜a2+ Yet another illustration of the bishop's dexterity in moving from one diagonal to another. 37 ... ♜f8 38 ♜xh6 ♜d7 39 ♜e6 ♜d3 40 g4 ♜xc3 41 g5 1–0

Korchnoi–Karpov

Baguio, 1978



Another case, with pawns on both wings and a pair of rooks on the board, where a bishop is manifestly superior to a rather cramped knight.

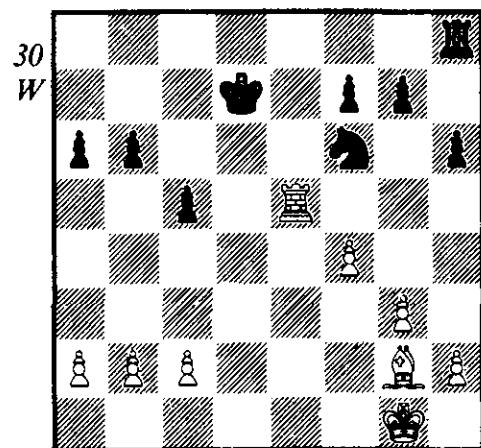
60 a4! 60 ♜d7 ♜f7 61 ♜xf7 ♜xf7 62 ♜xg5 gains a pawn but the exchange of rooks enhances Black's drawing chances. Korchnoi's move keeps the rooks and maintains the siege of the black knight. 60 ... ♜f7 61 ♜d3 ♜e5 62 ♜g4 ♜g6 63 a5 ♜e4+ 64 ♜f3 ♜f4+? More tenacious is 64 ... ♜f5 65 ♜xg5 ♜a7, mobilizing the knight. 65 ♜e3 ♜h4 66 ♜d5

58 h3+ 67 ♜d2 ♜xb3 68 ♜xc5 ♜b8 69 ♜c6+ ♜f5 70 ♜xa6 g4 White's bishop easily neutralises the passed pawn.

71 ♜f6+ ♜e4 72 ♜c7 ♜b2+ 73 ♜c3 ♜b7 74 ♜h2 A long move, stressing White's absolute control of the diagonal b8–h2. 74 ... ♜h7 75 ♜b8 ♜b7 76 ♜g3 ♜b1 77 ♜f4+ ♜e3 78 ♜f8 ♜e7 79 a6 1–0

Fischer–Taimonov

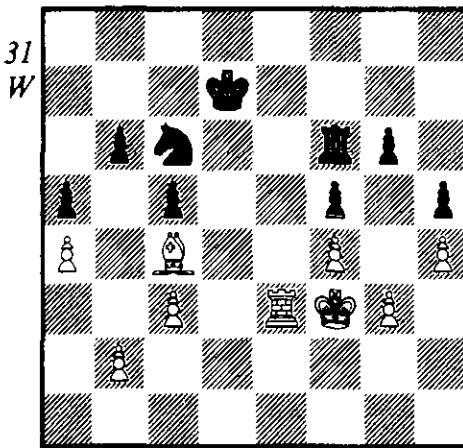
Vancouver, 1971



In the two endings that follow, we see Fischer's bishop score at the expense of Taimanov's knight.

25 ♜f1! Causing an additional weakness in Black's camp: the square b5. 25 ... ♜a8 does not work because of 26 ♜c4. 25 ... a5 26 ♜c4 ♜f8 27 ♜g2 ♜d6 28 ♜f3 ♜d7 29 ♜e3 ♜b8 30 ♜d3+ ♜c7 31 c3 Robbing the knight of d4. 31 ... ♜c6 32 ♜e3 ♜d6 33 a4 ♜e7 34 h3 ♜c6 35 h4 h5? Fearing g3–g4, followed possibly by g4–g5, Black further weakens his pawn formation.

36 ♜d3+ ♜c7 37 ♜d5 f5 38 ♜d2 ♜f6 39 ♜e2 ♜d7 40 ♜e3 g6 (31)



41 $\mathbb{R}b5$ $\mathbb{R}d6$ 42 $\mathbb{N}e2$ $\mathbb{N}d8?$

Allowing White to exchange rooks, after which the knight versus bishop ending is lost, owing to the vulnerability of the kingside pawns. 42 ... $\mathbb{N}c7$ had to be tried.

43 $\mathbb{R}d3!$ $\mathbb{N}c7$ 44 $\mathbb{R}xd6$ $\mathbb{N}xd6$
 45 $\mathbb{N}d3$ $\mathbb{N}e7$ 46 $\mathbb{R}e8$ $\mathbb{N}d5$ 47
 $\mathbb{R}f7+$ $\mathbb{N}d6$ 48 $\mathbb{N}c4$ $\mathbb{N}c6$ 49
 $\mathbb{R}e8+$ $\mathbb{N}b7$ 50 $\mathbb{N}b5$ $\mathbb{N}c8$ 51
 $\mathbb{N}c6+$ 51 $\mathbb{R}xg6??$ $\mathbb{N}d6$ mate. 51
 ... $\mathbb{N}c7$ 52 $\mathbb{R}d5$ $\mathbb{N}e7$ 53 $\mathbb{R}f7$ $\mathbb{N}b7$
 54 $\mathbb{R}b3$ $\mathbb{N}a7$ 55 $\mathbb{R}d1$ $\mathbb{N}b7$ 56
 $\mathbb{R}f3+$ $\mathbb{N}c7$ 56 ... $\mathbb{N}a7$ 57 $\mathbb{N}c4$
 leaves Black moveless.

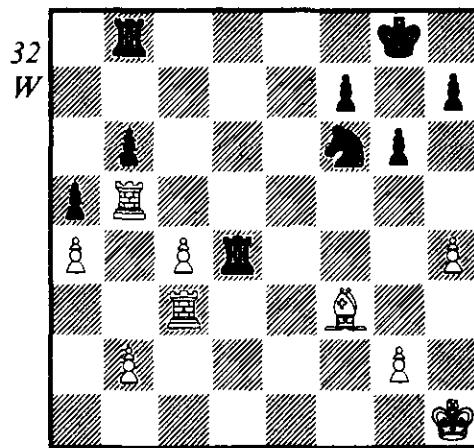
57 $\mathbb{N}a6$ $\mathbb{N}g8$ 58 $\mathbb{R}d5$ $\mathbb{N}e7$ 59
 $\mathbb{N}c4$ $\mathbb{N}c6$ 60 $\mathbb{R}f7$ $\mathbb{N}e7$ 61 $\mathbb{R}e8$
 Zugzwang. 61 ... $\mathbb{N}d8$ 62 $\mathbb{R}xg6!$
 $\mathbb{N}xg6$ 63 $\mathbb{N}xb6$ $\mathbb{N}d7$ 64 $\mathbb{N}xc5$
 $\mathbb{N}e7$ 65 $b4$ $axb4$ 66 $cxb4$ $\mathbb{N}c8$ 67
 a5 $\mathbb{N}d6$ 68 b5 $\mathbb{N}e4+$ 69 $\mathbb{N}b6$ $\mathbb{N}c8$
 70 $\mathbb{N}c6$ $\mathbb{N}b8$ and Black resigned.
 A textbook example.

Fischer–Taimanov

Palma de Mallorca, 1970

As in the 1971 game between the same adversaries, the superiority of the bishop over the knight again asserts itself.

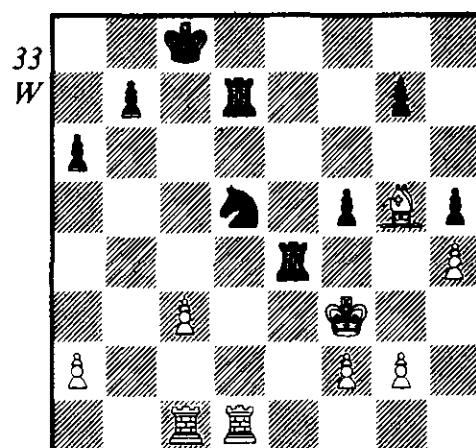
42 $c5!$ $\mathbb{R}xh4+$ 43 $\mathbb{N}g1$ $\mathbb{R}b4$ 44
 $\mathbb{R}xb4!$ A timely exchange. White



creates a passed pawn which, with the bishop's support, soon becomes menacing. 44 ... $\mathbb{N}a5$ 45 $\mathbb{R}c4$
 $\mathbb{R}xc5$ 46 $\mathbb{R}xc5$ $\mathbb{N}g7$ 47 a5 $\mathbb{R}e8$ 48
 $\mathbb{R}c1!$ The rook belongs behind the passed pawn. If Black were given a chance to play ... $\mathbb{R}e1+$ and ... $\mathbb{R}a1$, his position would be defensible. 48 ... $\mathbb{R}e5$ 49 $\mathbb{R}a1$
 $\mathbb{R}e7$ 50 $\mathbb{N}f2$ $\mathbb{N}e8$ Black is resourceless. His pawn advantage is meaningless. 51 a6 $\mathbb{R}a7$ 52 $\mathbb{N}e3$
 $\mathbb{N}c7$ 53 $\mathbb{R}b7$ $\mathbb{N}e6$ 54 $\mathbb{R}a5$ $\mathbb{N}f6$ 55
 $\mathbb{N}d3$ $\mathbb{N}e7$ 56 $\mathbb{N}c4$ $\mathbb{N}d6$ 57 $\mathbb{R}d5+$
 $\mathbb{N}c7$ 58 $\mathbb{N}b5!$ 1–0

Fischer–Tal

Curaçao, 1962



In the following ending, possibly his best, Fischer utilizes his

superior king and the bishop's long-range potential in exemplary fashion.

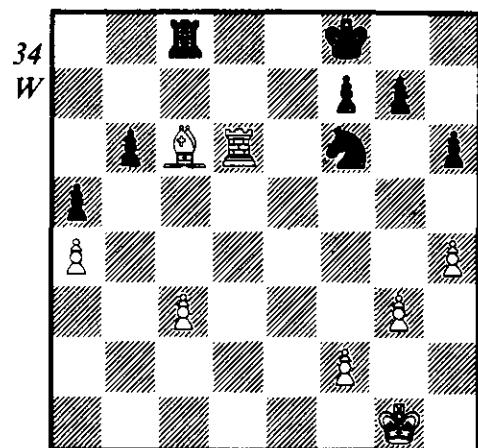
27 ♜d3 ♜c4 **28** ♜cd1! Sacrificing a pawn to activate his king. **28** ... ♜xc3 **29** ♜xc3 ♜xc3 **30** ♜c1 ♜c7 **31** ♜f4 ♜c6 **32** ♜e5! Centralizes the bishop and clears the way for the king's advance. **32** ... ♜d5 **32** ... ♜xa2 **33** ♜xc6+ bxc6 **34** ♜xg7 would underline the bishop's superiority over the knight in this kind of ending.

33 ♜d1! Another super-class move. With the black knight on d5, **33** ♜xc6+ bxc6 **34** ♜xg7 is no longer effective. **33** ... ♜f6 **33** ... ♜c5 **34** ♜xg7 ♜d7-e6 appears a better defence. **34** ♜f4! g6 **35** f3 ♜d7 **36** ♜d6 ♜c2 **37** g3 ♜e2 **37** ... ♜xa2 **38** ♜g5 is worse. **38** ♜g5 ♜e6 **39** ♜f4 ♜f8 **40** ♜d6! a5! **41** ♜h6! ♜e2 **42** ♜d2 ♜e7 **43** ♜d6 ♜h7+ **44** ♜g5 ♜f7 **45** ♜b2! Putting Black in zugzwang. **45** ... f4 **46** ♜xf4 ♜f5+ **47** ♜h6 b5 Tal fights back doggedly.

48 ♜d6 b4 **49** g4 ♜xf3 **50** g5! Fischer's virtuosity is dazzling. **50** ... ♜e6 **51** ♜xg6 ♜d3 **52** ♜e5 ♜e3 **53** ♜f5 ♜f8 **54** ♜g2 ♜f3+ **55** ♜f4 ♜d7 **56** g6 ♜e6 **57** g7 ♜xf4+ **58** ♜e5 ♜f8 **59** gx f8(+) ♜xf8 **60** ♜d5! a4 **61** ♜g7+ ♜e8 **62** ♜d6 b3 **63** a3! 1-0 An ending which will repay deep study.

Gelfer-English London, 1985

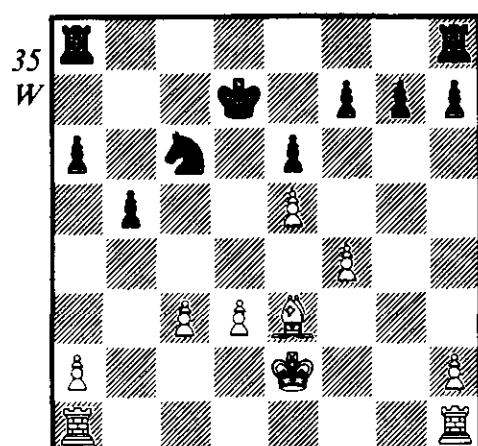
30 ♜b5 ♜b8? Passive. **30** ... ♜xc3 promises Black counterplay. **31** ♜g2 ♜e7 **32** ♜c6 ♜d5



33 ♜f3 f5 Now the exploitation of White's advantage is fairly easy. The next move ousts the knight from the battle scene and paves the way for White's king. **34** c4 ♜b4 **35** ♜g6 ♜f7 **36** ♜d6 ♜b7 **37** ♜f4 ♜e7 **38** ♜e5 ♜c2 **39** ♜e6+ ♜f7 **40** ♜e8+! ♜f8 **41** ♜g6 ♜e7 **42** ♜xf5 ♜xe6+ **43** ♜xe6 Hindering **43** ... ♜e7.

43 ... ♜d4+ **44** ♜e5 ♜b3 **45** ♜d6 ♜e8 **46** ♜c7 ♜c5 **47** ♜c2 ♜d7 **48** h5 ♜e7 **49** f4 ♜e8 **50** ♜e4 ♜e7 **51** ♜c6 ♜f6 **52** ♜f3 ♜d7 **53** g4 1-0

Spassky-Ljubojevic Montreal, 1979



21 ♜hb1 ♜ab8 **22** ♜c5 ♜hc8 **23** ♜d6 The bishop occupies a

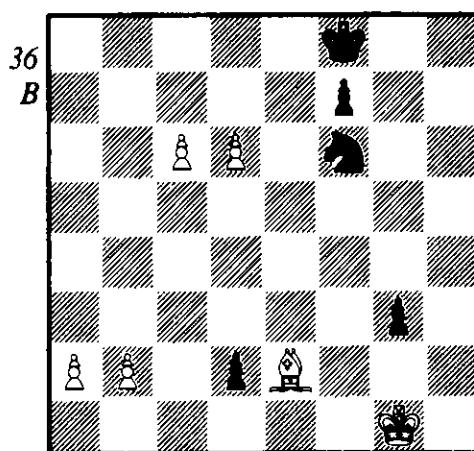
strong outpost whence it cannot be dislodged. 23 ... $\blacksquare b7$ 24 $a4$ $\blacksquare d8$ 25 $axb5$ $axb5$ 26 $\blacksquare d2$ $f6$ 27 $d4$ By forcing White to play this move, Black has created potential outposts for his knight on c4 and d5. However, as the knight is unable to reach these squares, White's pressure on the queenside proves conclusive. 27 ... $\blacksquare f7$ 28 $\blacksquare b4$ $fxe5$ 29 $fxe5$ $\blacksquare h6$ 30 $\blacksquare a5$ $\blacksquare f5$ 31 $\blacksquare d3$ $g6$ 32 $\blacksquare c5$ $\blacksquare cb8$ 33

$\blacksquare a6$ $\blacksquare c8$ 34 $\blacksquare e4$ $\blacksquare cc7$ 35 $\blacksquare f4$ $h6$ 36 $\blacksquare e4$ Now White prepares to exploit the holes created in his adversary's camp on the king's wing. 36 ... $g5$ 37 $\blacksquare ba1$ $\blacksquare c8$ 38 $\blacksquare xe6!$ $\blacksquare xc5$ or 38 ... $\blacksquare xe6$ 39 $\blacksquare a6+$ and 40 $\blacksquare xf5$, coupled with the unstoppable advance of the central pawns. 39 $\blacksquare xf5$ $\blacksquare xc3$ 40 $\blacksquare xh6$ $\blacksquare c7$ 41 $\blacksquare h7+$ $\blacksquare b6$ 42 $\blacksquare xb7+$ $\blacksquare xb7$ 43 $e6$ $\blacksquare c7$ 44 $\blacksquare a7+$ $\blacksquare b6$ 45 $\blacksquare a8$ 1–0

3 A Good Knight versus a Bad Bishop

Ostojic-Zvetkovic

Yugoslavia, 1973

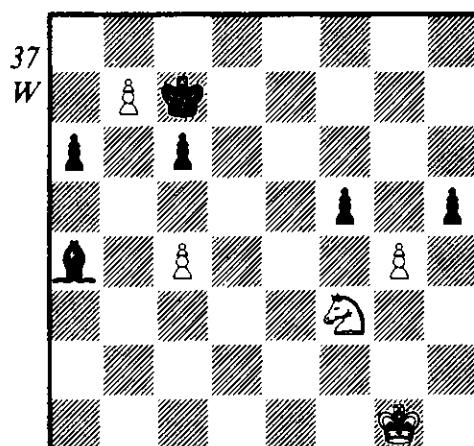


A study-like demonstration of the knight's agility.

47 ... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ 48 $d7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 49 $a4$ 49
 $b4$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$. 49 ... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ 50 $a5$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 51
 $a6$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ and Black forces a draw.

Troitzky

1931



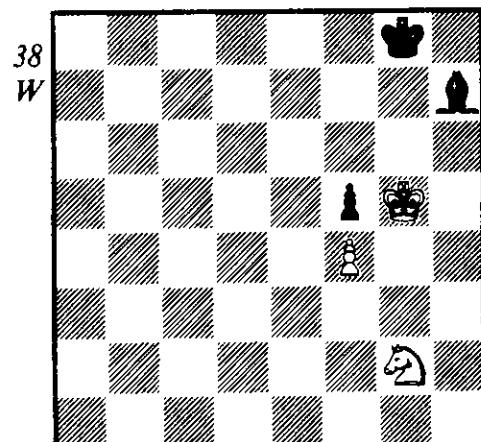
The following amusing composition is fairly typical of the

way a nimble knight can deal with a hampered bishop.

1 $g \times h5$ $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 3
 $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 5 $h6$
 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 8
 $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ and wins.

Troitzky

1924



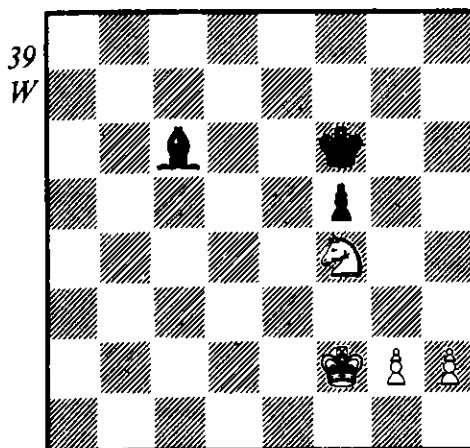
1 $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}f3$
 $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 6
 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ and wins the bishop (6 ...
 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ mate).

Note how at no stage was Black able to play ... $\mathbb{Q}g8$.

Romanovsky-Verlinsky

Moscow, 1925

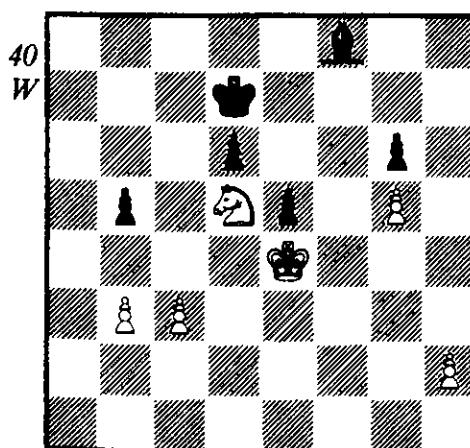
In spite of the reduced material and all the pawns being on one



side, White's forces contrive to capture Black's only pawn.

1 ♜e3 ♜g5 2 g3 ♜a4 2... ♜g4 3 ♜f2 and h3+ pushing Black's king backwards. 3... ♜h3+ ♜g4 4 ♜f2+ ♜g5 5 h3 ♜c6 6 h4+ ♜f6 7 ♜f4 ♜e8 8 ♜d1 ♜d7 9 ♜e3 ♜e6 10 ♜c2 ♜f7 10... ♜c8 resists longer. 11 ♜a3 ♜d5 12 ♜b5 ♜e6 13 ♜d6 ♜d7 14 h5 ♜e6 15 ♜e8+ ♜f7 16 ♜c7 ♜c8 17 ♜g5 ♜d7 18 ♜d5 ♜g7 19 ♜e3 and White won.

Ghinda–Ungureanu Romania, 1975

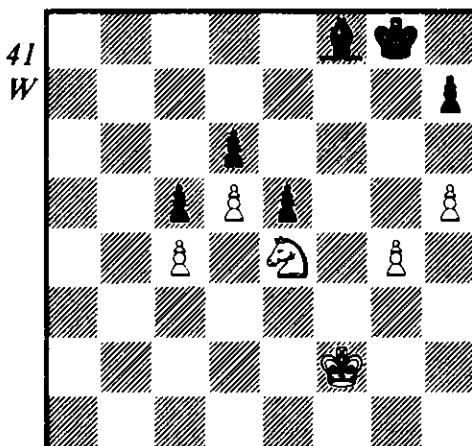


White's advantage is colossal: Black's central pawns are blocked, his bishop passive. The

creation of a passed pawn poses no difficulties and wins presently.

1 h4 ♜g7 To add insult to injury, the pawn ending after 1... ♜e7 is lost for Black. 2 b4 ♜h8 3 c4! bxc4 4 b5 ♜g7 5 ♜c3 Freeing d5 for the king. 5... ♜e6 6 b6 ♜d7 7 ♜d5 e4! Hoping for 8 ♜xe4 ♜c6. 8 ♜b5! c3 9 b7 c2 10 b8(+) c1(+) 11 ♜xd6+ ♜c8 12 ♜e6+ ♜b8 13 ♜b6+ ♜c8 14 ♜d6+ ♜d7 15 ♜b5+ 1-0 The queen is lost.

Averbakh–Panov Moscow, 1950

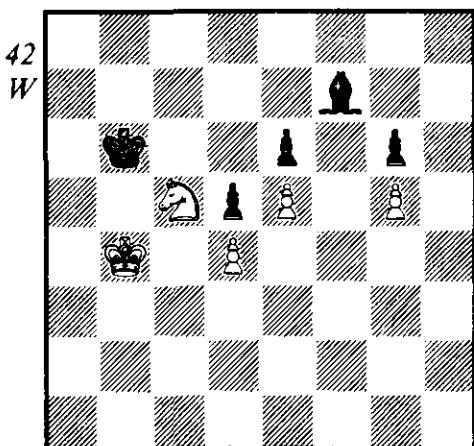


In the above position the road to victory is shorter.

1 g5! The king heads to f5. 1... ♜g7 2 ♜f3 ♜f7 3 ♜g4 ♜e7 4 ♜f5 ♜f8 5 ♜f6 h6 6 gxh6 ♜xh6 7 ♜e4 ♜f8 8 h6 ♜xh6 8... ♜e7 loses neatly to 9 h7 ♜g7 10 ♜e6 ♜f8 11 h8(+) and 12 ♜f7. 9 ♜xd6+ ♜e7 10 ♜e4 ♜e3 11 d6+ ♜d7 12 ♜xe5 1-0

Grigoriev 1931

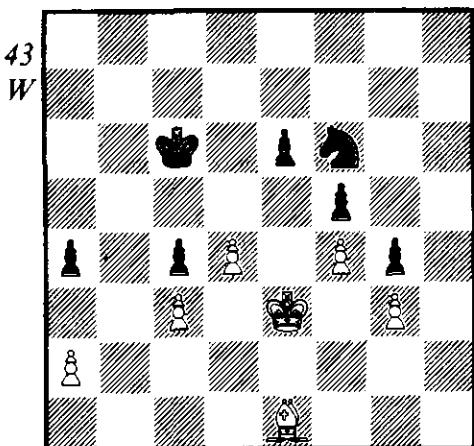
1 ♜a4+ ♜c6 2 ♜a5 ♜b7 3 ♜c5+ ♜c7 On 3... ♜a7 4 ♜b5



$\mathbb{A}e8+$ 5 $\mathbb{B}b4$ $\mathbb{A}f7$ 6 $\mathbb{B}a5$ $\mathbb{A}g8$ 7 $\mathbb{B}b5$ wins. 4 $\mathbb{B}b5!$ $\mathbb{A}e8+$ 5 $\mathbb{B}a6$ $\mathbb{A}f7$ 6 $\mathbb{B}b7$ $\mathbb{A}e8$ 7 $\mathbb{B}a7!$ $\mathbb{A}f7$ 8 $\mathbb{B}d6!$ $\mathbb{A}g8$ 9 $\mathbb{B}a6!$ Cat and mouse play.

9 ... $\mathbb{B}c6$ 10 $\mathbb{B}a5$ $\mathbb{A}h7$ 11 $\mathbb{B}f7$ $\mathbb{A}g8$ 12 $\mathbb{B}h8$ $\mathbb{A}h7$ 13 $\mathbb{B}a6$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 14 $\mathbb{B}b5$ $\mathbb{B}b7$ 15 $\mathbb{B}c5$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 16 $\mathbb{B}f7$ $\mathbb{A}g8$ 17 $\mathbb{B}d6$ $\mathbb{A}h7$ 18 $\mathbb{B}e8+$ $\mathbb{B}d8$ 19 $\mathbb{B}f6$ and wins!

Hennenberg–Nimzowitsch Winterthur, 1931



In the above position, a good player would sense that there ‘must’ be a win somewhere. It is not easy to find, but it exists.

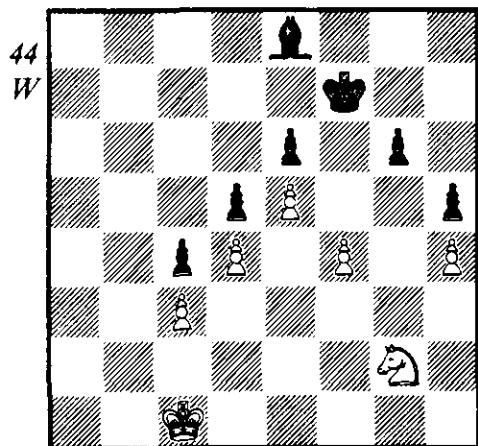
1 ... $\mathbb{B}e4$ 2 $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}d5$ 3 $\mathbb{B}e3$ $\mathbb{B}d6!$ Black triangulates with his

king, so as to reach d5 when White’s king is on e3.

4 $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}c6$ 5 $\mathbb{B}e3$ $\mathbb{B}d5$ 6 $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}d6$ 7 $\mathbb{B}e3$ $\mathbb{B}b5$ The knight courageously enters the lion’s den. 8 $\mathbb{B}d2$ $\mathbb{B}a3$ 9 $\mathbb{B}c1$ If 9 $\mathbb{B}el$ $\mathbb{B}c2+$! 10 $\mathbb{B}d2$ $\mathbb{B}xe1$ wins. 9 ... $\mathbb{B}b1$ 10 $\mathbb{B}b2$ $\mathbb{A}a3!$ 11 $\mathbb{B}a1$ $\mathbb{B}d6$ 12 $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}c6$ 13 $\mathbb{B}d1$ 13 $\mathbb{B}e3$ $\mathbb{B}d5$ gives zugzwang. 13 ... $\mathbb{B}d5$ 14 $\mathbb{B}c2$ $\mathbb{B}e4$ 15 $\mathbb{B}xb1$ $\mathbb{B}f3$ 16 $\mathbb{B}b2!$ $\mathbb{B}xb2$ Otherwise the bishop will stop the g-pawn with $\mathbb{B}xa3-c5$ and $d4-d5$.

17 $a4$ $\mathbb{B}xg3$ 18 $a5$ $\mathbb{B}h2$ 19 $a6$ $g3$ 20 $a7$ $g2$ 21 $a8(\mathbb{W})$ $g1(\mathbb{W})+$ 22 $\mathbb{B}xb2$ $\mathbb{W}g2+$ and Black went on to win the pawn ending.

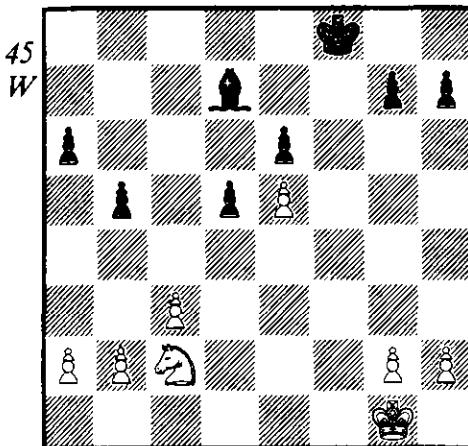
Burn–Alekhine
Carlsbad, 1911



Amos Burn’s only victory over Alekhine, in a good knight versus bad bishop ending, is virtually a walk-over.

1 $\mathbb{B}b2$ $\mathbb{A}a4$ 2 $\mathbb{B}e3$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 3 $\mathbb{B}a3$ $\mathbb{A}c6$ 4 $\mathbb{B}b4$ $\mathbb{B}d7$ 5 $\mathbb{B}a5$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 6 $\mathbb{B}c2$ $\mathbb{B}b7$ 7 $\mathbb{B}b4$ $\mathbb{A}d7$ 8 $\mathbb{B}a6$ $\mathbb{A}e8$ or 8 ... $\mathbb{A}c8$ 9 $\mathbb{B}c5+$, accompanied by the penetration of the white king. 9 $\mathbb{B}c5+$ $\mathbb{B}c6$ 10 $\mathbb{B}xe6$ $\mathbb{A}d7$ and White won.

Zubarev–Alexandrov
Moscow, 1915



In the next example, the good knight effortlessly asserts its ascendancy over the bad bishop.

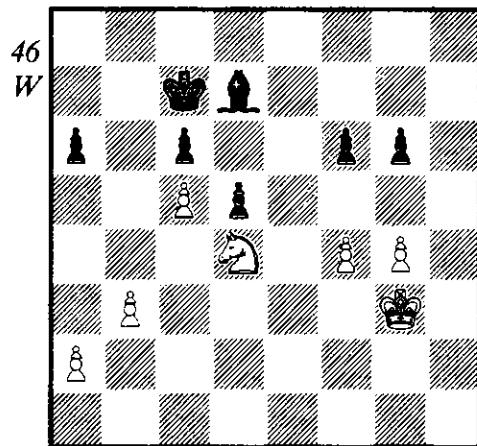
1 ♜f2 ♜e7 2 ♜e3 ♜d8 3 ♜d4
 ♜c7 4 ♜c5 The king having occupied an ideal square, it is now the knight's turn to take over. 4 ...
 ♜c8 5 ♜b4 ♜b7 6 g3 ♜c8 7 ♜d3
 ♜d7 8 ♜f4 g6 9 ♜h3 h6 10 ♜f4
 g5 11 ♜h5 ♜e8 12 ♜f6 ♜f7 13
 ♜g4 h5 14 ♜e3 The knight aims at f4, so as to tie the bishop to the defence of the pawns e6 and h5.
 14 ... ♜g6 15 h4! gxh4 16 gxh4
 ♜e4 17 ♜f1 ♜f3 18 ♜d2 ♜e2 19
 ♜b3 ♜g4 20 ♜d4 ♜h3 21 ♜e2
 ♜f5 22 ♜f4 ♜g4 23 b4! and wins.
 Black is in zugzwang.

Averbakh–Lilienthal

Moscow, 1949

In this vintage ending, the knight's superiority over the bishop is obvious.

40 g5! fxg5 40 . . . f5 renders the bishop totally inactive. Notwithstanding the closed nature of the position, White can engineer a

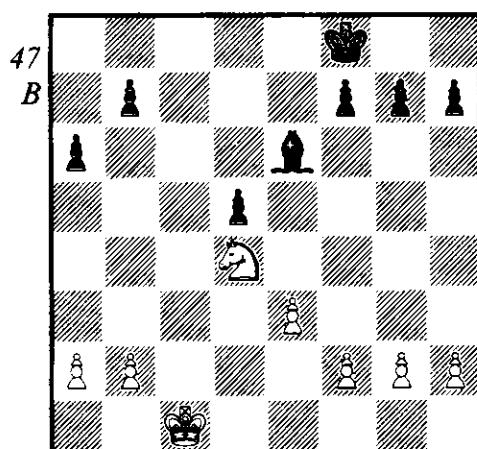


breakthrough: 41 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 42
 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}e3$
 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 45 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 46 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$
47 $\mathbb{Q}b4!$ a5 48 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 49 a4
 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 50 b4 and wins.

41 fxg5 ♜c8 42 ♜f4 a5 43 ♜e5 ♜g4 44 ♜f6 ♜h5 45 ♜e7 ♜g4 46 a3 ♜d1 47 ♜e6+ ♜b7 48 ♜d6 ♜xb3 49 ♜d8+ ♜c8 50 ♜xc6 a4 51 ♜e7+ and White won.

Flohr–Capablanca

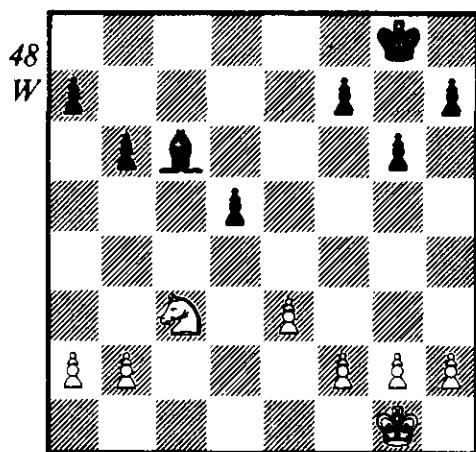
Moscow, 1935



In the position above, the isolated queen's pawn makes White's knight superior to Black's bishop. Flohr soon posted his king on d4 and attempted to create weaknesses with the aid of his knight. Capablanca's task was by no

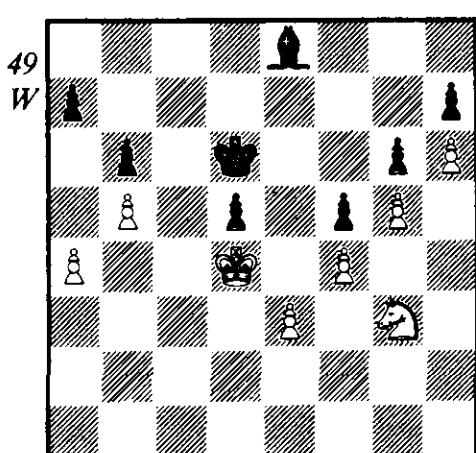
means easy but by dint of careful defence, he succeeded in holding the position.

Belavenets–Rauzer
Moscow, 1937



The position above is almost identical to the previous one. However, unlike Capablanca, Rauzer was not alive to its inherent dangers and let White make too much headway on both wings.

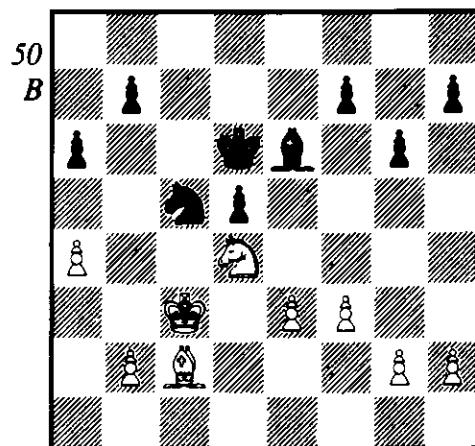
Some 20 moves later the diagram below was reached:



Now, in addition to the isolated queen's pawn, Black is saddled with other ailments: the scope of his bishop is limited by White's queenside pawns and by his own

pawns on the kingside. He must be on guard against threats like $\mathbb{Q}h5-f6$ (on ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$, for example) and $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}f7$, $\mathbb{Q}c6$. The move ... $a7-a5$, to prevent $\mathbb{Q}b4$, will not do, because of $bxa6$, $\mathbb{Q}xa4$, $\mathbb{Q}xf5+ gxf5$, $g6$. In other variations, White can place his knight on e5. These factors make Black's position untenable.

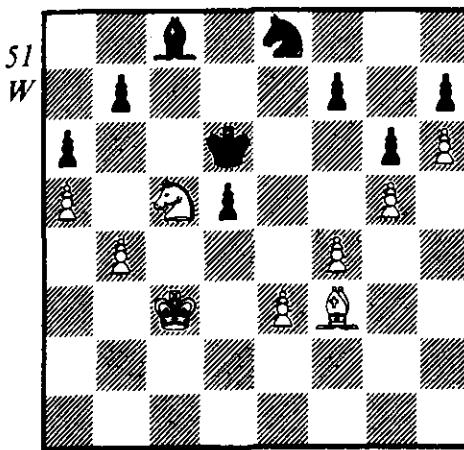
Flohr–Pirc
Podebrady, 1936



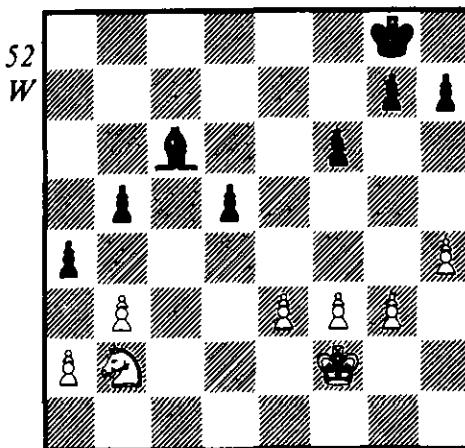
From the diagram above White, aided by Black's passive play, succeeds in transforming a Flohr–Capablanca-like defensible ending into an indefensible one.

Here Black ought to prevent the fixing of his b7 pawn by $b2-b4$ and $a4-a5$, by playing $31 \dots a5$ or $31 \dots b6$. Pirc neglected to take this precaution and 20 moves later, the position below arose:

Flohr broke through with **51 e4! $\mathbb{d}xe4$ 52 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 52 ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$** loses to **53 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ etc. 53 $\mathbb{Q}xb7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 54 $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 55 $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 56 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 1–0**



Capablanca–Reshevsky
Nottingham, 1936



Whilst the pawns a4, b5 and d5 restrict the scope of Black's bishop, the squares b4, c5 and d4 are natural outposts for White's knight and/or king.

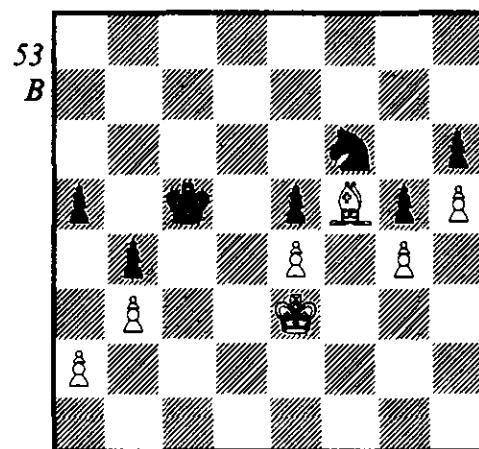
37 ♘d3 g5 The best practical chance. Passive resistance with 37 ... ♜f7 38 ♘b4 and ♜e2–d3–d4 is gloomy.

38 hxg5 Now the square e5 falls into White's hands. 38 ... fxg5 39 ♘b4 axb3 40 axb3 ♜b7 41 g4! Thwarting ... h7–h5–h4. 41 ... ♜g7 42 ♜e2 ♜g6 43 ♘d3 h5 44 gxh5+ ♜xh5 45 ♘d4 ♜h4 46 ♘xd5 ♜g3 47 f4 The ending has taken a tactical turn.

47 ... g4 After 47 ... ♜xd5 48 ♜xd5 g4 both sides queen, whereupon White forces an exchange of

queens and wins the resulting ending. 48 f5 ♜c8 49 ♜e5 ♜d7 50 e4 ♜e8 51 ♜d4? Correct is the straightforward 51 f6. 51 ... ♜f3 52 e5 g3 53 ♜e3 ♜f4? Tit for tat! 53 ... ♜f7! and if 54 e6 ♜g8 draws. 54 e6 g2 55 ♜xg2+ ♜xf5 56 ♜d5 ♜g4 57 ♜e3+ ♜f4 58 ♜d4! 1–0

Damjanovic–Fischer
Buenos Aires, 1970

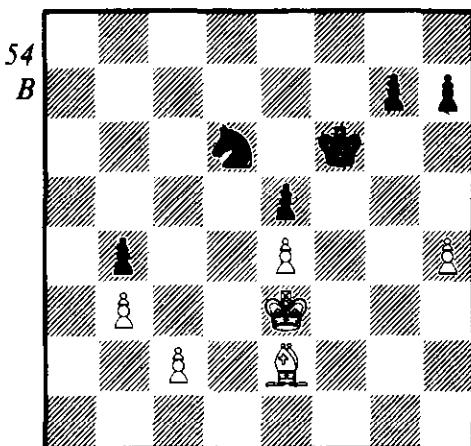


64 ... ♜b5 65 ♘d3 a4 66 bxa4+. Even 66 ♜e3 does not save White: 66 ... a3! 67 ♘d3 ♜c5 and Black plants his knight on c3 or d4. For example, 68 ♜e3 ♜e8 69 ♘d3 ♜d6 70 ♜d7 ♜c4!! Accompanied by ♘b2–d1–c3 or the entry of the king to d4.

66 ... ♜xa4 67 ♘c4 ♜a3 68 ♜c5 ♜xa2 69 ♜xb4 ♜b2 70 ♜c5 ♜c3 71 ♘d6 ♘d4 72 ♜e6 ♜xe4 73 ♘f7 ♘f2 74 ♜g6 e4 75 ♜xh6 e3 76 ♜g7 e2 77 h6 e1(+) 78 h7 ♜e7+ 79 ♜g8 ♜e4! 0–1

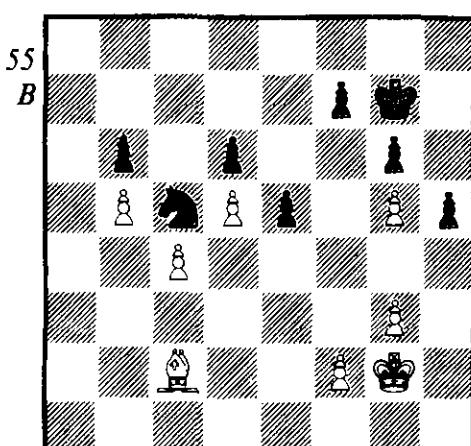
Ujtumen–Geller
Palma de Mallorca, 1970

Here the pawn configuration allows the knight to dominate the bishop.



41 ... g6 42 ♜d3 h5 43 c3 The only counter-chance: to create a passed pawn, be it at the cost of another pawn. If White does nothing, ... g5 coupled with the king's entry to f4 wins. 43 ... bxc3 44 ♜xc3 ♜xe4+ 45 ♜c4 ♜g3 46 ♜f3 e4 47 ♜g2 ♜e5! 48 b4 ♜f5 49 b5 ♜d6+ 50 ♜c5 ♜xb5 51 ♜xb5 ♜d4 52 ♜f1 ♜e3 53 ♜g2 ♜d3 0-1

Tseshkovsky–Tukmakov
Erevan, 1982



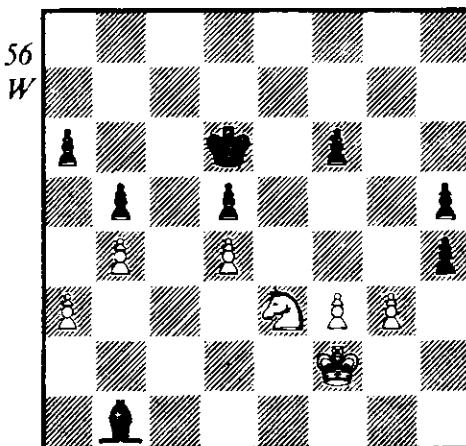
In the above position, the exploitation of the knight's superiority is fraught with obstacles. We shall avoid delving into them too deeply and concentrate on the course of the game.

1 ... f6 In order to make headway, Black must bring his king to the centre. Exhaustive analysis has shown that 1 ... e4, to discourage White's next move, is more precise. 2 f4 ♜d7 3 ♜h3 exf4 4 gxf4 fxg5 5 fxg5 Black has captured the square e5 and wins a pawn. 5 ... ♜e5 6 ♜g3 6 ♜b3 ♜f3. 6 ... ♜xc4 7 ♜f4 h4 Diverting the white king from the centre. 8 ♜d3 h3 9 ♜g3 h2 Similar is 9 ... ♜d2 (10 ♜xh3 ♜f3 11 ♜g4 ♜e5+). 10 ♜e4 Or 10 ♜xh2 ♜e5-f7. 10 ... ♜a3 11 ♜xh2 ♜xb5 12 ♜g3 ♜c3 Here 12 ... ♜a3 is quicker. 13 ♜f3 Laying a trap. 13 ♜f4 is more tenacious. 13 ... ♜f7 The pawn ending after 13 ... ♜xe4 is a draw. 14 ♜c2 b5 15 ♜b3 ♜a4 16 ♜e3 ♜c5 17 ♜c2 b4 18 ♜d4 b3 19 ♜b1 ♜d7 Seeking a decision on the king's flank. It is amusing to watch the b-pawn repeat the diversionary exercise performed previously by the h-pawn.

20 ♜c3 ♜e5 21 ♜xb3 ♜f3 22 ♜c3 ♜xg5 23 ♜d4 ♜f6 24 ♜e3 ♜h3 25 ♜f3 ♜g5 26 ♜d3 ♜f4 27 ♜c4 ♜h5 28 ♜b5 ♜f6 29 ♜c4 ♜h4 30 ♜f4 ♜h5+ 31 ♜e4 ♜g3 32 ♜d3 ♜f6+ 33 ♜e3 g5 0-1

Karpov–Kasparov
Moscow, 1984

Kasparov has just played 46 ... gxh4? expecting a quick draw after the normal 47 gxh4, which would leave White without entry points. Karpov replied 47 ♜g2!!, a temporary pawn-sacrifice



designed to keep the h4 square vacant. As we shall see, this surprising rejoinder provided him with distinct winning possibilities.

47 ... hxg3+ **47 ... h3** **48 ♜f4** is worse. **48 ♜xg3 ♜e6** **48 ... ♜g6** **49 ♜f4** leads to similar positions. **49 ♜f4+** **50 ♜xh5 ♜e6** **51 ♜f4+** **52 ♜d6** **52 ♜g4 ♜c2** **53 ♜h5 ♜d1** **54 ♜g6 ♜e7** The ending after **54 ... ♜xf3** **55 ♜xf6** is untenable: White's king and knight will combine to outflank the black king from d6 and thereafter the d-pawn will fall. In this event, exchanging Black's bishop for White's knight leads to a lost pawn ending.

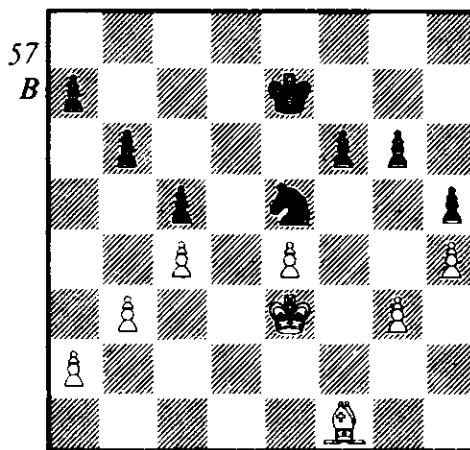
55 ♜xd5+ **55 ... ♜e6** If **55 ... ♜d6** **56 ♜c3!** **56 ♜xf3** **57 ♜xf6** intending **57 ♜e3** and the transfer of the knight to c5. If Black defends the pawn with **... ♜c8**, White continues **58 ♜e4**, **d5** etc.

56 ♜c7+ **56 ... ♜d6** **57 ♜e8+!** **57 ♜d5** **58 ♜f4!** wins, as the f-pawn gets through: Speelman and Tisdall. **57 ♜xa6 ♜xf3** **58 ♜xf6 ♜d6** **59 ♜f5 ♜d5** **60 ♜f4 ♜h1** **61 ♜e3 ♜c4** **62 ♜c5 ♜c6** **63 ♜d3 ♜g2** **64 ♜e5+** **65 ♜c3** **65 ♜g6 ♜c4** **66 ♜e7 ♜b7** More tenacious is **66**

... ♜h1. 67 ♜f5 ♜g2 68 ♜d6+
69 ♜xb5 ♜a4 70 ♜d6 1-0

Kholmov–Vasyukov

USSR, 1971



Here, too, the clear superiority of the knight over the bishop affords Black excellent winning chances.

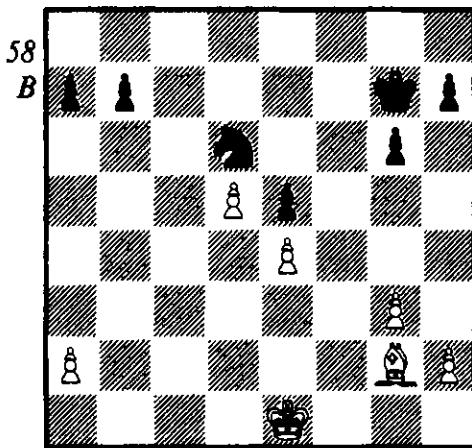
44 ... g5 Black intends to post his king on e5 and takes steps to hinder g3–g4 after the removal of his knight.

45 ♜e2 g4 **46 ♜d1 ♜e6** **47 ♜c2 ♜f3** **48 ♜d3 ♜e5** Now it is up to the knight to induce additional weaknesses in White's position. **49 ♜c2 ♜d4** **50 ♜b1 ♜e6** **51 ♜c2 ♜d8** In this type of position the knight is able to reach almost any square; it is just a matter of time. **52 ♜b1 ♜f7** **53 ♜c2 ♜d6** **54 ♜d3 ♜b7** **55 ♜c2 ♜a5** **56 ♜b1 ♜c6** **57 ♜c2 ♜b4** **58 ♜b1 a6** **59 a3** Unavoidable, but now b3 becomes a target. **59 ... ♜c6** **60 ♜c2 ♜a5** **61 ♜d3 ♜c6** **62 ♜e3 ♜d4** Paving the way for ... f5 and the entry of his king into White's camp. **63 ♜d1 f5!** **64 exf5 ♜xf5+** **65 ♜f2 ♜d4** **66 ♜c2 ♜g7** **67 ♜e2**

68 ♜c3 While White is obliged to await events, Black improves his position.

69 ♜c1 ♜f6 70 ♜d1 ♜d7 71 ♜g6 ♜f6 72 ♜c2 ♜b2 73 ♜d2
Better: 73 a4 ♜d7 74 ♜d2. 73 ...
74 ♜xa3 74 ♜c3 b5 75 cxb5 axb5 76 ♜g6 ♜d5+ 77 ♜c2 b4 77 ...
♜e3+ 78 ♜d3 ♜f1 only draws.
78 ♜xh5 c4! 79 ♜g6 cxb3+ 80
♜d3 b2 81 ♜d4 ♜f6 82 ♜b1 ♜h5
83 ♜e5 ♜xg3 84 ♜f4 ♜f1! 84 ...
♜h5+ is not good enough. 85
♜xg4 ♜d2 86 ♜d3 ♜c4! 87 ♜f4
♜b3 88 h5 ♜a3 89 h6 ♜c2 and
Black won.

Eliskases–Flohr
Semmering, 1937



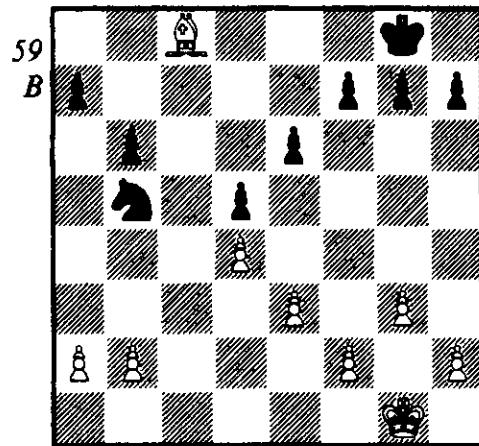
White's central pawns require protection and limit the scope of his bishop; Black's knight is an ideal blockader. However, the realization of Black's advantage is onerous and the final outcome uncertain.

Black first endeavours to mobilize the pawn majority on the queenside. 30 ... b5 31 ♜d2 a5 32 ♜d3 ♜f6 33 ♜f3 ♜e7? 34 h4? A serious weakening. 34 ... h6 35

♜d1 ♜d8 36 a4 bxa4? In his book *Judgment and Planning in Chess*, Euwe considers the text move a mistake and analyses 36 ... b4! as leading to a forced win.

37 ♜xa4 ♜c7 38 ♜c2 ♜b6 39 ♜c3 ♜b5 40 ♜b3 ♜c5 41 ♜a4
♜c4 42 ♜b3? Missing 42 ♜b1!
♜d2 43 ♜d3, preventing ... ♜f1,
when White's passed pawn saves
the day. 42 ... ♜d2 43 ♜c2 ♜f1
Now the game is over. 44 ♜xa5
♜xg3 45 ♜a4 ♜h5 46 ♜b3 ♜d4
The final phase requires precise
calculation but the result is no
longer in doubt. 47 ♜b4 ♜f6 48
d6 g5 49 hxg5 hxg5 50 ♜b5 g4 51
♜d1 g3 52 ♜f3 ♜e3 53 ♜h1 ♜f2
54 ♜c6 g2 55 ♜xg2 ♜xg2 56 d7
♜xd7 57 ♜xd7 ♜f3 0-1

Keene–Miles
British Ch., 1982

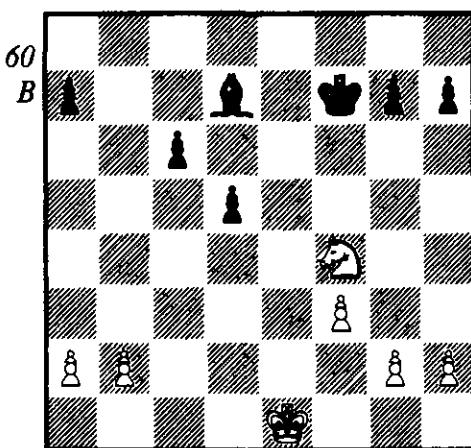


In the next example, Black succeeds in exploiting the awkward position of White's bishop.

23 ... ♜d6 24 ♜a6 ♜d7 does not make much difference. 24 ... b5 25 b3 ♜f8 26 a4 ♜e7! 27 axb5
The pawn ending after 27 ♜xb5
♜xb5 28 axb5 is in Black's

favour. 27 ... ♜e4! 28 b6 To free the bishop. 28 ... axb6 29 ♜d3 ♜d2 Here the knight is more effective than the bishop. Moreover, White encounters difficulties in the deployment of his king. 30 b4 ♜f3+! 31 ♜h1 Forced! 31 ... h6 32 ♜e2 ♜d2 33 ♜g2 ♜d6 34 b5 34 f4 loses to ... ♜c4 35 ♜f2 ♜c6-b5. 34 ... e5 35 ♜d1 ♜e6 36 f3 ♜c4 37 ♜f2 ♜d6 38 dxe5? 38 ♜a4 is necessary. 38 ... ♜xe5 39 f4+ ♜e6 40 ♜b3 ♜e4+! 0-1 In view of ... ♜d6-c5.

Matulovic-Korchnoi Ohrid, 1972



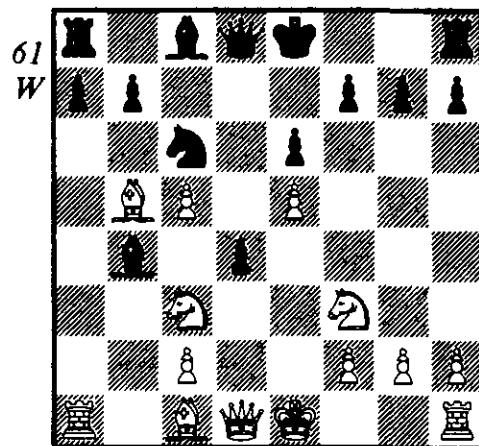
If White were to place his knight on c5 (or d4), supported by b2-b4, the knight would be better than the bishop. But it is Black's turn to move.

28 ... ♜f5! Designed against ♜d3-c5, the pawn ending after 29 ♜d2 a5 30 ♜d3 ♜xd3! being untenable for White. 29 h4? White ought to contain Black's pawns with 29 b4. 29 ... a5 30 ♜d2 d4! Within a few moves, the pawn

configuration has changed; and with it, the course of the game.

31 a3 c5 32 g4 ♜g6 33 h5 Again, the pawn ending after 33 ♜xg6 is lost for White. 33 ... ♜b1 34 g5 This enfeebles the pawn on h5, but Black was threatening to penetrate with his king. 34 ... h6! 35 gxh6 gxh6 36 ♜e2 a4 37 ♜g3 ♜e6 38 f4 ♜d5 39 ♜e1 ♜d3 In this type of ending, the knight is no match for the bishop. 40 ♜d2 ♜b1 41 ♜c1 ♜d3 42 ♜d2 c4 43 ♜c1 c3 44 ♜h1 White's pieces beat an abject retreat. 44 ... ♜c4 45 ♜g3 ♜b3 46 bxc3 dxc3 47 f5 ♜xa3 48 f6 ♜c4 49 ♜f5 Too late. 49 ... ♜b4 50 ♜d4 a3 51 ♜b1 ♜f7 52 ♜c6+ ♜c5 53 ♜e5 a2+ 54 ♜a1 c2 55 ♜d3+ ♜d4 56 ♜c1 ♜e5 0-1

Fine-Botvinnik Avro, 1938

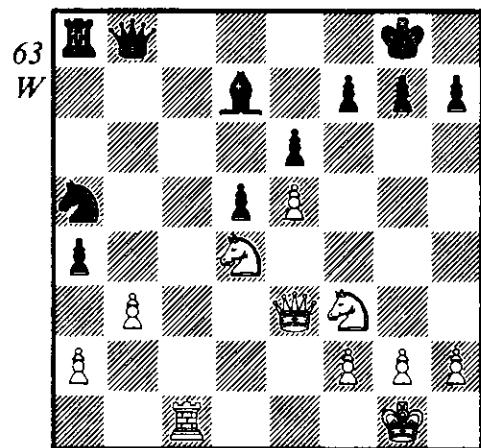


The diagram was arrived at after the following opening moves: 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 ♜c3 ♜b4 4 e5 c5 5 dxc5 (Fine's prepared variation) 5 ... ♜e7 6 ♜f3 ♜bc6 7 ♜d3 d4 8 a3 ♜a5 9 b4 ♜xb4 10

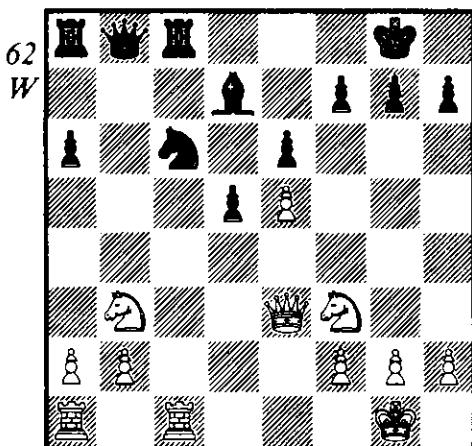
axb4 ♜xb4 11 ♜b5+ ?! Now Botvinnik, who expected 11 0-0 ♜xc3 12 ♜b1, went astray with 11 ... ♜c6? instead of 11 ... ♜d7 12 ♜xd4 ♜xc3+ and 13 ... ♜xb5, which is good for Black.

In the sequel, Fine relentlessly demonstrated the superiority of his good knight over Black's lame bishop: 12 ♜xc6+! bxc6 13 ♜a4! ♜xc3+ 14 ♜d2 f6 Black is positionally lost. His white-squared bishop is a mere spectator. 15 0-0 0-0 16 ♜xc3 dxc3 17 ♜e1 a5 18 ♜xc3 ♜a6 19 ♜fa1 ♜b5 20 ♜d4 ♜e7 21 ♜d6 a4 22 ♜e3 ♜a7 23 ♜d2 a3 24 c4 ♜a4 25 exf6 ♜xf6 26 ♜xa3 ♜fe8 27 h3 ♜aa8 28 ♜f3 ♜b2 29 ♜e5 ♜b1+ 30 ♜h2 ♜f5 31 ♜g3 1-0

Karpov–Taimanov Moscow, 1972



basis for the opening of a second front. 26 ... h6 27 g4! This 'weakening' attacking move involves no risk. 27 ... ♜b7 28 h5 ♜c6 29 g5 ♜xd4 30 ♜xd4 hxg5 31 ♜xg5 ♜h7 32 ♜c3 ♜b4 33 ♜g3 ♜g8 34 ♜f3 The knight leaves d4 to take part in the final onslaught. 34 ... axb3 35 axb3 ♜xb3 36 ♜c1! ♜a2 37 ♜g5+ ♜h8 38 ♜xf7+ ♜h7 39 ♜g5 ♜b1+ 40 ♜h2 1-0 Note how the bishop remained idle throughout.

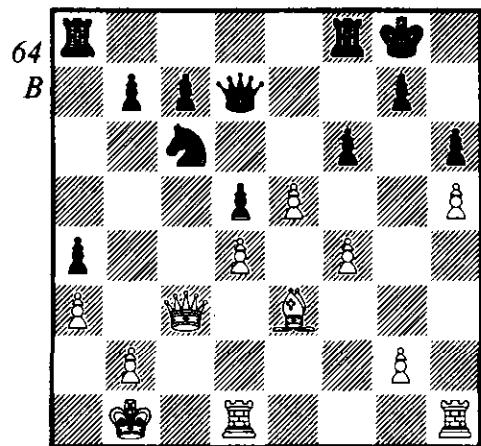


Here White's control of the key square d4 is the determining factor.

21 ♜c5 a5 22 ♜ac1 a4 23 ♜bd4 ♜a5 24 ♜xc8+ ♜xc8 25 b3 ♜d7(63)

26 h4! White's hold on the blocked centre serves as a good

Quinteros–Larsen Manila, 1973



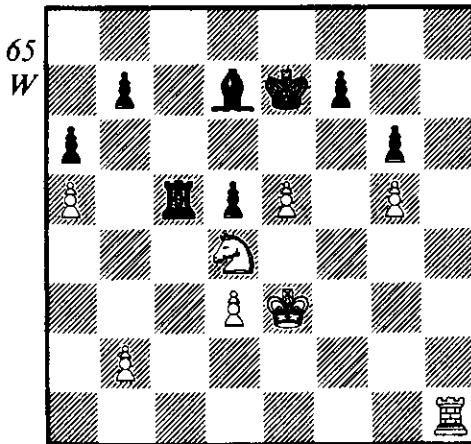
White's bishop is bad but his pawn majority on the king's wing may become ominous. In the sequel, Larsen is quick to occupy c4

with his knight, which enables him to launch a powerful attack on White's king.

20 ... ♜a5 21 ♜d3 ♜c4 22 ♜d2 fxe5! 23 dxe5 23 fxe5 is answered by ... ♜g4. 23 ... ♜ad8 24 ♜c1 b5 25 ♜he1 ♜fe8 26 ♜f3 c5 Whilst White's kingside pawns are paper tigers, Black's queen-side infantry, shielded by his advanced knight, is menacing. 27 ♜d3 d4 28 ♜ed1 ♜a5 Switching outposts. 29 g4 ♜b3 30 ♜e1 c4 31 ♜dd1 b4! 32 axb4 There is nothing better. Black's attack plays itself. 32 ... d3 33 ♜d2 a3 34 bxa3 ♜d4 35 ♜f2 ♜a4 36 ♜c3 ♜e2 37 ♜b2 ♜c2+ 0-1 38 ♜a1 c3 39 ♜c1 ♜d4.

Suetin-Cherepkov

Kislovodsk, 1967



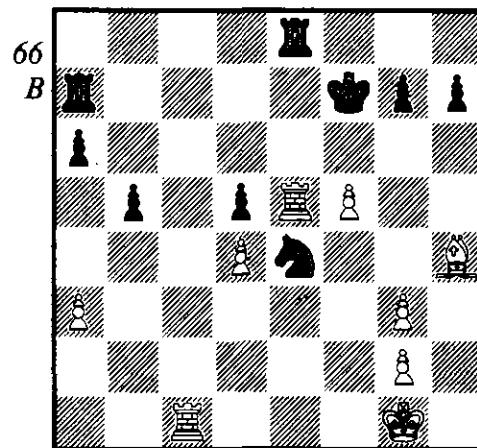
Here the knight's dominant position carries the day.

41 b4 ♜c3 Seeking counterplay. 41 ... ♜c8 is answered by 42 ♜f1-f6, with ♜b3-c5 in the offing. 42 ♜h8! ♜e8 43 e6! fxe6 44 ♜h7+ ♜d6 44 ... ♜f7 fails against 45 ♜f3, threatening 46 ♜e5. 45 ♜xb7 e5 46 ♜b6+ ♜c7

If 46 ... ♜c6 47 b5! exd4+ 48 ♜xd4 ♜c5 49 ♜xc6+ with a won pawn ending for White. 47 ♜e6+ ♜c8 48 ♜c5 ♜b5 49 ♜xg6 e4 50 ♜g8+ ♜c7 51 g6 ♜xd3 52 g7 1-0

Avner-Gelfer

Ramat-Gan, 1979



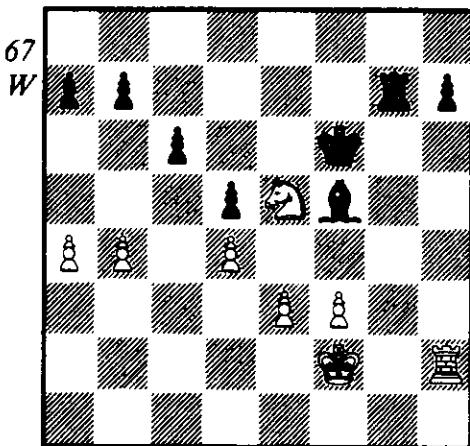
Black's knight stands well, but so do White's rooks. A hard struggle might be expected—were it not for the unfortunate position of White's bishop, which Black adroitly exploits to bring about a won ending:

32 ... ♜xe5! 33 dxe5 g5! Forcing White's next move. Within two moves, a seemingly double-edged position has become decidedly one-sided! 34 fxg6+ hxg6 35 ♜d8 White is at a loss for good moves. 35 ... ♜e6 36 ♜b6 ♜f7 37 ♜c7 d4 38 ♜e1 ♜d5 39 ♜a5 ♜xe5 40 ♜d2 ♜d5 0-1

Flohr-Bondarevsky

Moscow, 1939

Here White's good knight and active rook collaborate well in mobilizing his central pawns:

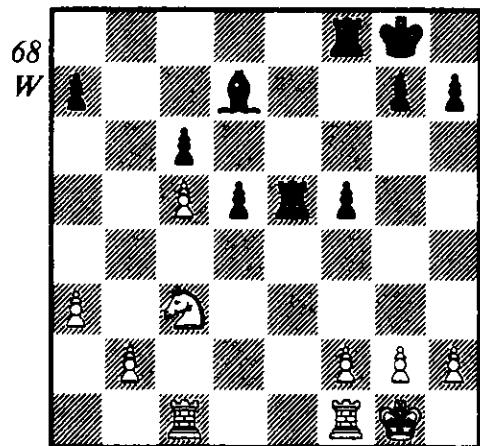


1 a5 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}c1!$ The threat a5-a6 forces Black's hand and prepares the ground for the next phase. 4 ... a6 5 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 8 $\mathbb{Q}h4!$ It is time to advance the centre pawns. 8 ... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 9 e4 dx e 4 10 fx e 4 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 11 $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 13 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ The point of inducing ... a6 becomes clear; the knight is firmly entrenched on c5.

14 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 16 e5 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}xe8$ The rook has fulfilled its task. 17 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe8$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ b6 19 $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ Keeping the black king at bay and fixing his weak pawn at a6. Black's passed pawn is useless. 19 ... bx a 5 20 bx a 5 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}h6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ The king heads to c5. 29 ... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 1-0

Botvinnik-Konstantinopolsky
Sverdlovsk, 1943

White's first task is to ensure the confinement of Black's bishop.



20 f4! $\mathbb{Q}e7$ When playing his last move, White had to satisfy himself that the black rook had no entry: 20 ... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ d4 22 $\mathbb{Q}cd1$ winning the d-pawn. 21 $\mathbb{Q}fe1$ White now proceeds to assert control of the key squares e3 and d4. 21 ... $\mathbb{Q}fe8$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ Next step: to simplify into a favourable knight versus bishop ending.

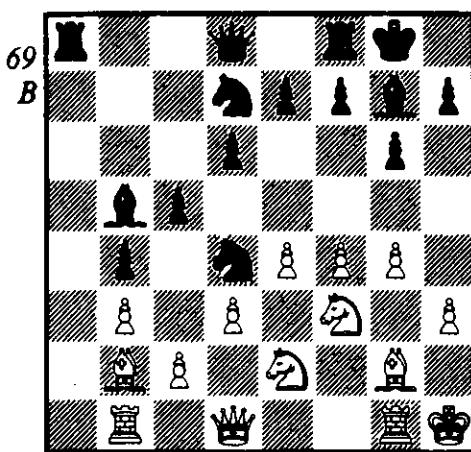
23 ... $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ A positional trap: if now 24 $\mathbb{Q}el$ $\mathbb{Q}xe1!$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ d4! 26 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}xd4+$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ and Black has freed himself. 24 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ h6 26 $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ Exchanging rooks will no longer do, since White can prevent the black king's entry.

27 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ Commencing the next phase: centralization of the king coupled with the advance of the queenside pawns. 27 ... $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 30 b4 g5 Seeking counterplay. On 30 ... a5 White plays 31 bx a 5 $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 33 a4, together with $\mathbb{Q}b2$, winning easily.

31 g3 gxf4 32 gxf4 a6 33 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 34 a4 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 36 b5 The rest is technique. 36 ... ax b 5 37 ax b 5 cx b 5 38 $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ Designed against ...

$\blacksquare d1+$. 39 ... $\spadesuit f7$ 40 $\blacksquare b2$ $\blacksquare f1$ 41 $\spadesuit e2$ $\blacksquare e1$ 42 $\spadesuit e5$ d4 Otherwise comes 43 c6 coupled with $\blacksquare b7+$ and the king's march to d6. 43 $\spadesuit xd4$ $\spadesuit g6$ 44 $\spadesuit c3$ $\spadesuit h5$ 45 $\blacksquare e2$ $\blacksquare xe2$ 46 $\spadesuit xe2$ $\spadesuit g4$ 47 $\spadesuit e5$ $\spadesuit c8$ 48 $\spadesuit d4$ h5 49 $\spadesuit xf5$ $\blacksquare d7$ 50 $\spadesuit g7$ $\blacksquare a4$ 51 f5 $\spadesuit g5$ 52 $\spadesuit e6+$ 1-0

Shaw–Keene
Brisbane, 1979



At times, it is possible to resolve the strategic potential of a position by resorting to a series of

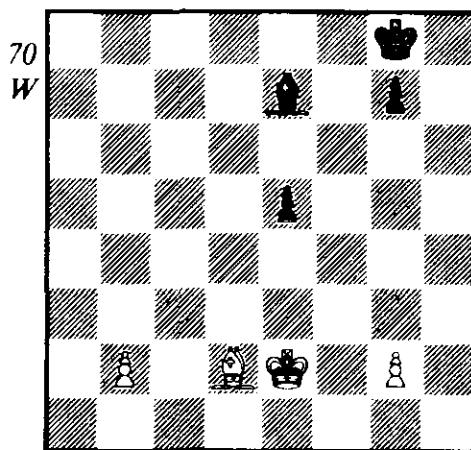
well-conceived exchanges. Here Black simplifies neatly into a good knight versus bad bishop middle-game.

19 ... $\spadesuit xf3$ 20 $\blacksquare xf3$ $\spadesuit xb2$ 21 $\blacksquare xb2$ e5! Limiting the scope of the white bishop and gaining control of the black squares. 22 $\blacksquare b1$ 22 f5 is necessary. Now Black can post his knight on e5. 22 ... $\spadesuit h4$ 23 $\spadesuit f1$ exf4! The rest is technique.

24 $\spadesuit xf4$ $\blacksquare a2$ 25 $\blacksquare c1$ $\spadesuit e5$ 26 $\spadesuit h2$ $\blacksquare fa8$ 27 $\blacksquare g2$ $\blacksquare c6$ 28 $\spadesuit d5$ This plays into Black's hands. However, White's position is beyond repair. 28 ... $\blacksquare xd5!$ 29 exd5 h5! A neat point: if 30 gxh5 $\spadesuit f4+$ 31 $\blacksquare g3$ $\spadesuit xf3+$ gains material. 30 $\blacksquare g3$ hxg4 31 $\blacksquare xg4$ $\spadesuit g7$ 32 $\spadesuit g2$ $\blacksquare a1$ 33 $\blacksquare g1$ $\blacksquare xg1$ 34 $\spadesuit xg1$ $\blacksquare a2$ 35 $\spadesuit b1$ $\blacksquare a3$ 36 $\spadesuit d1$ $\spadesuit f6$ 37 $\spadesuit g2$ $\spadesuit f4$ 38 $\spadesuit f1$ $\blacksquare d4$ 39 $\spadesuit f2$ $\spadesuit xd5+$ 40 $\blacksquare f3$ $\spadesuit d4$ 41 $\blacksquare e4$ $\blacksquare a2$ 42 $\spadesuit d2$ $\spadesuit c3$ 0-1

4 Bishops—Same Colour

Lasker
1932

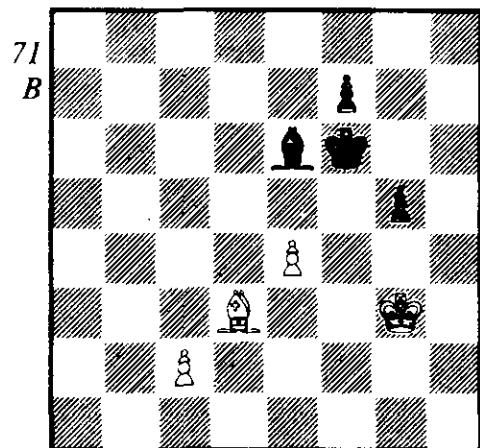


1 $\mathbb{A}c3 \mathbb{A}d6$ 2 $\mathbb{A}e3 \mathbb{A}f7$ 3 $\mathbb{A}e4$

The capture of the key square e4 fixes Black's e5 pawn, prevents ... $\mathbb{A}d5$ and prepares the advance of the distant b-pawn. 3 ... $\mathbb{A}e6$ 4 $b4$ $\mathbb{A}c7$ 5 $b5$ $\mathbb{A}f6$. Otherwise 6 $b6$. 6 $g4$ $\mathbb{A}e6$ 7 $g5$ $g6$ 8 $\mathbb{A}b2$ $\mathbb{A}d6$ 9 $b6$ $\mathbb{A}b8$ or 9 ... $\mathbb{A}c5$ 10 $b7$ $\mathbb{A}d6$ 11 $\mathbb{A}a3$ $\mathbb{A}b8$ 12 $\mathbb{A}c5$ $\mathbb{A}d7$ 13 $\mathbb{A}d5$ $e4$ 14 $\mathbb{A}e3$. 10 $\mathbb{A}a3$ $\mathbb{A}d7$ 11 $\mathbb{A}f8$ $\mathbb{A}e6$ 12 $\mathbb{A}g7$ $\mathbb{A}d6$ 13 $\mathbb{A}f6$ $\mathbb{A}b8$ 14 $\mathbb{A}d8$ and after the exchange of bishops White wins the pawn ending.

Elo-Fischer
Milwaukee, 1957

This ending is akin to Lasker's position (70), except that in this example the stronger side (in this case, Black) cannot boast of a passed pawn. This lightens the defender's task without, however,



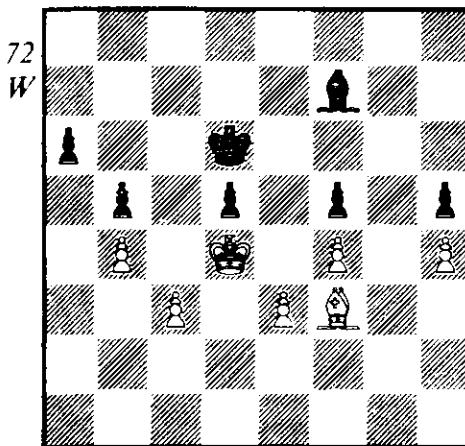
making it easy. Fischer was 14 years and 4 months old when this game was played.

38 ... $\mathbb{A}e5$ 39 $c3$ $\mathbb{A}d7$ 40 $\mathbb{A}c4$ $f6$ 41 $\mathbb{A}d5$ Though seemingly well-entrenched, the bishop lacks prospects. 41 ... $\mathbb{A}e8$ 41 ... $f5$? 42 $exf5=$. 42 $c4?$ Ceding the important square d4. 42 $\mathbb{A}b7$ is correct. 42 ... $\mathbb{A}d4!$ 43 $\mathbb{A}g4$ $\mathbb{A}g6$ 44 $\mathbb{A}f3$ $\mathbb{A}h5+$ 45 $\mathbb{A}f2$ $\mathbb{A}d1$ Black makes the most of the scarce material. 46 $\mathbb{A}g3?$ Speelman has shown that even now White could draw with 46 $\mathbb{A}b7!$ $\mathbb{A}xc4$ 47 $\mathbb{A}c8$ (or 47 $\mathbb{A}e3$) 47 ... $\mathbb{A}d4$ 48 $\mathbb{A}f5$.

46 ... $\mathbb{A}e2$ 47 $c5$ White is lost.
47 ... $\mathbb{A}xc5$ 48 $\mathbb{A}e6$ $\mathbb{A}d4$ 49 $\mathbb{A}f5$
 $\mathbb{A}e3$ 0-1.

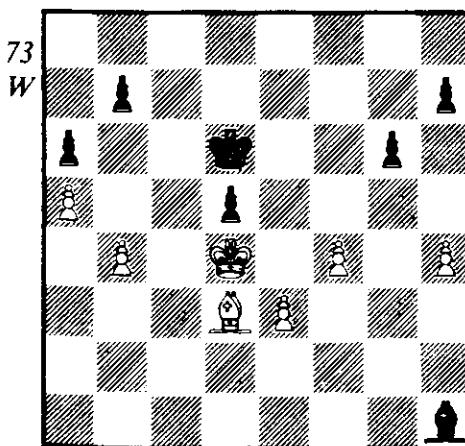
Averbakh
1954

A typical winning position in a good versus bad bishop ending.



The black pawns on h5, f5, d5 and a6 are vulnerable and curtail Black's bishop's movements. To seal Black's fate, all White need do is lose a move; that is, repeat the initial position with Black to move. This may be accomplished as follows: 1 $\mathbb{A}e2$ $\mathbb{A}e8$ 1 ... $\mathbb{A}g6$ 2 $\mathbb{A}d3$ $\mathbb{A}h7$ 3 $\mathbb{A}f1$ leads to instant zugzwang, be it after 3 ... $\mathbb{A}g6$ 4 $\mathbb{A}g2$ $\mathbb{A}f7$ 5 $\mathbb{A}f3$, or after 3 ... $\mathbb{A}g8$ 4 $\mathbb{A}e2$ $\mathbb{A}f7$ 5 $\mathbb{A}f3$. 2 $\mathbb{A}d3$ $\mathbb{A}g6$ 3 $\mathbb{A}c2$ $\mathbb{A}h7$ 4 $\mathbb{A}b3!$ $\mathbb{A}g8$ 5 $\mathbb{A}d1$ $\mathbb{A}f7$ 6 $\mathbb{A}f3!$ and so on.

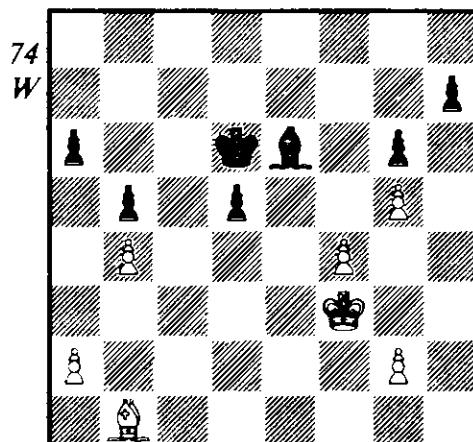
Polugayevsky-Mecking Mar del Plata, 1971



White's king and bishop are superior to Black's, who suffers from a weak pawn formation.

1 $\mathbb{A}e2$ $\mathbb{A}g2$ 2 $\mathbb{A}g4$ $\mathbb{A}e4$ 3 $\mathbb{A}c8!$ $\mathbb{A}c7$ 4 $\mathbb{A}e6$ $\mathbb{A}d6$ 5 $\mathbb{A}g8$ $\mathbb{h}6$ 6 $\mathbb{A}f7$ $\mathbb{h}5$ 6 ... $\mathbb{A}c6$ 7 $\mathbb{A}e5$ is bad, but after the text move all Black's pawns occupy White squares. 7 $\mathbb{A}e8$ $\mathbb{A}c2$ 8 $\mathbb{A}f7$ $\mathbb{A}e4$ 9 $f5!$ $\mathbb{A}xf5$ 9 ... $gxf5$ loses to 10 $\mathbb{A}xh5$. The move chosen leads to zugzwang: 10 $\mathbb{A}xd5$ $\mathbb{A}c8$ 11 $e4$ Compelling Black to cede space to White's king. 11 ... $\mathbb{A}e7$ 12 $\mathbb{A}e5$ $g5$ 13 $hxg5$ $h4$ 14 $g6$ $h3$ 15 $g7$ $h2$ 16 $g8(\mathbb{W})$ $h1(\mathbb{W})$ 17 $\mathbb{A}f7+$ $\mathbb{A}d8$ 18 $\mathbb{A}f8+$ 1-0.

Karpov-Hort Budapest, 1973



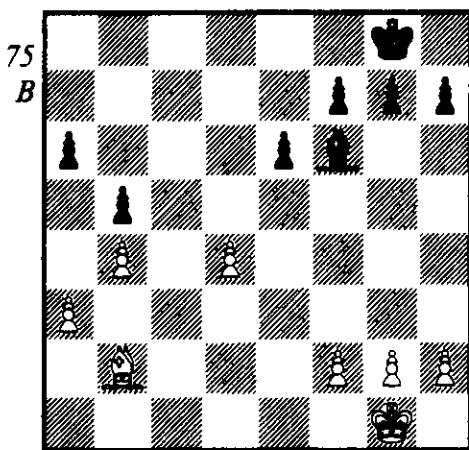
This is the end of one of Karpov's finest positional achievements on the road to the World Championship. White's pawn structure, on both wings, suits the colour of his bishop whilst Black's pawn structure, dispersed and weak, makes his bishop 'bad'.

38 $\mathbb{A}e3$ The conquest of d4 is the key to White's strategy. 38 ... $\mathbb{A}g4$ 39 $\mathbb{A}d3$ $\mathbb{A}e6$ 40 $\mathbb{A}d4$ $\mathbb{A}g4$ 41 $\mathbb{A}c2$ $\mathbb{A}e6$ On 41 ... $\mathbb{A}e2$, 42 $f5!$ underscores the feebleness of h7.

42 ♜b3! A manoeuvre characteristic of good versus bad bishop endings: the better bishop dictates to its weaker counterpart which diagonal it will inhabit. **42 ... ♜f7** **43 ♜d1 ♜e6** **44 ♜f3 ♜f7** **45 ♜g4!** **1-0.**

To forestall **46 ♜c8**, Black is obliged to offer the exchange of bishops, **45 ... ♜e6**, leading to a lost pawn ending after **46 ♜xe6 ♜xe6** **47 g4!** **♗d6** **48 a3.**

Akonia-Grau
Argentina, 1929



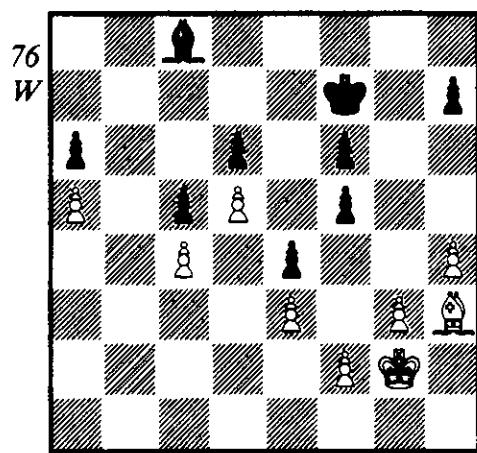
The vulnerability of the pawn on d4 and of the pawn configuration on the queen's wing affords Black a clear advantage. First he posts his king on d5, and then attempts to create an additional weakness on the king's wing.

26 ... ♗f8 **27 ♗f1 ♗e7** **28 ♗e2 ♗d6** **29 ♗d3 ♗d5** **30 f3** Other pawn moves are no better. **30 ... h5** **31 g3** On **31 h3** comes **31 ... h4** and **... ♗g5**. **31 ... h4!** **32 ♗c3** Or **32 gxh4 ♗xh4** **33 ♗c3 ♗g5**. **32 ... h3** **... ♗xg3** is in the air. **33 ♗a1 g5** **34 ♗c3 ♗g7** **35 ♗b2 ♗f8**

36 ♗c1 **36 ♗c3 ♗d6** **37 ♗e1 f5** **38 ♗f2 e5!** **39 dxе5 ♗xe5** brings to light the weakness of a3.

36 ... ♗d6 **37 f4** Another forced concession. **37 ... gxf4** **38 gxf4 ♗e7** **39 ♗e3 ♗h4** **40 ♗g1 f5!** **41 ♗e3 ♗g3** **0-1**

Polugayevsky-Balashov
Leningrad, 1977



Black suffers from weaknesses on f5 and a6. His king and bishop also lack manoeuvering space.

49 f3 Paving the way for the king. **49 ... exf3+** **50 ♗xf3 h5?** This prevents **51 ♗f4 ♗g6** **52 ♗xf5+!** etc., leading to a won pawn ending for White, but creates an additional weakness. **50 ... ♗d7** **51 ♗f4 ♗a4-b3**, seeking counterplay, may offer more chances.

51 ♗f4 ♗g6 **52 ♗f1** The pawn ending after **52 e4 ♗d7** **53 ♗xf5+** **♗xf5** **54 exf5+** cannot be won. **52 ... ♗d7** **53 ♗d3 ♗c8** **54 ♗b1 ♗d7** **55 ♗c2** Zugzwang. **55 ... ♗c8** **56 ♗a4 ♗f7** If **56 ... ♗b7** **57 ♗d7.** **57 ♗f3** A well

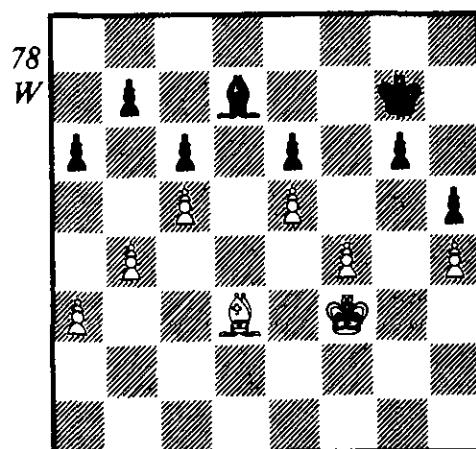
known strategy whose aim is to win the f-pawn. 57 ... ♜e7 58 ♜f2 f4 Or 58 ... ♜f7 59 ♜e1! ♜g7 60 ♜e8 ♜h6 61 ♜f2 ♜b7 62 ♜f3 etc. 59 gxf4 ♜f5 60 ♜e2 ♜d8 61 ♜d2 Simpler is 61 ♜c6. 61 ... ♜g6 62 ♜c6 ♜c7 63 ♜e2 f5 64 e4 fxe4 65 ♜e3 ♜c8 66 ♜a4 ♜d8 67 ♜d1! ♜e7 68 f5 ♜xf5 Now the h-pawn becomes passed. However, 68 ... ♜e8 69 ♜xe4 ♜f6 70 ♜f4 ♜f7 71 ♜a4 is equally hopeless.

69 ♜xh5 ♜f6 70 ♜f4 ♜h3 71 ♜e2 ♜f5 72 ♜g4 e3 72 ... ♜g6 fails against 73 ♜c8, whilst 72 ... ♜xg4 73 ♜xg4 ♜e5 loses to 74 h5. 73 ♜e2 ♜d7 74 ♜xe3 ♜f5 75 ♜h5 ♜f6 76 ♜f4 ♜f5 77 ♜e2 ♜c2 78 ♜e3 ♜f5 79 ♜d3 ♜g4 80 ♜c2 ♜h3 81 ♜h7 ♜f1 82 ♜d3 ♜h3 83 ♜f4 ♜d7 84 h5 ♜a4 85 h6 ♜b3 86 h7 ♜g7 87 ♜f5 1-0

1 b4! axb4 If 1 ... ♜xa4 2 bxa5 and ♜b2-a3-b4-c5, or 1 ... b6 2 bxa5 bxa5 3 ♜b5! 2 ♜c2 ♜c6 3 ♜b2 b6 4 ♜b3 ♜f8 5 ♜xb4 ♜e8 6 a5! 1-0 After 6 ... bxa5+ 7 ♜xa5 ♜d8 8 ♜b6 ♜e8 9 ♜c5! ♜c7 10 ♜d3 Black is in zugzwang.

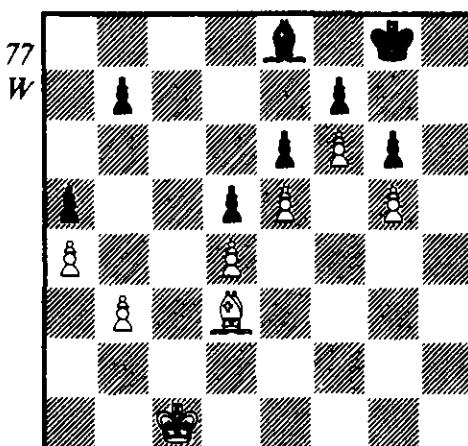
Baslavsky-Kondratiev

Tallinn, 1947



Estrin-Ivashin

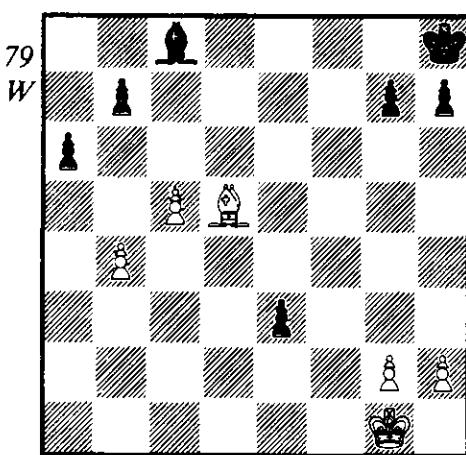
Correspondence, USSR 1947



The pawn chain, with its spearhead at f6, cramps Black's two pieces.

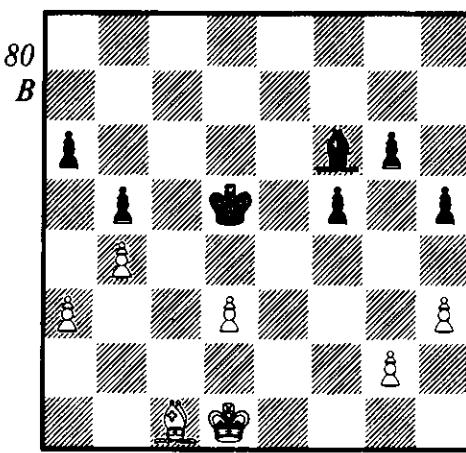
1 ♜e3 ♜f7 2 ♜d4 ♜e8 3 ♜c3 ♜e7 4 ♜b3 ♜d8 5 ♜a4 ♜c7 6 ♜a5 ♜f7 Black cannot allow ♜b6 and is reduced to waiting moves with his bishop. 7 ♜c4! ♜g8 8 a4 ♜f7 9 b5 axb5 10 axb5 ♜g8. On 10 ... cxb5 11 ♜xb5 ♜g8 12 ♜e8 wins forthwith. 11 b6+ From now on Black has to constantly guard against ♜a6, which leaves White with a free hand on the king's flank.

11 ... ♜d8 12 ♜b4 ♜f7 13 ♜c3 ♜d7 14 ♜d4 ♜d8 15 ♜e3 ♜d7 16 f5! Elementary. 16 ... gxf5 17 ♜f4 ♜g6 18 ♜g5 ♜e8 19 ♜f6 f4 20 ♜e2 and wins.

Kamishev–Shamaev*Correspondence, 1936*

White's bishop straddles the long diagonal and ties down its colleague to the defence of the b7 pawn.

1 ♜f1 g5 2 ♜e2 ♜g7 3 ♜xe3 ♜f6 4 ♜d4 h5 5 h3 ♜f5 6 ♜f7! This soon leads to zugzwang. 6... h4 7 ♜h5 ♜f4 8 ♜f3 ♜g3. If 8... g4 9 hxg4 h3 10 gxh3 ♜xf3 11 ♜e5, presently annexing the pawn on b7. 9 ♜e3! Zugzwang. 9 ... ♜h2 10 ♜f2 1-0 In view of 10 ... ♜h1 11 g3+ ♜h2 12 gxh4 gxh4 13 ♜g4!

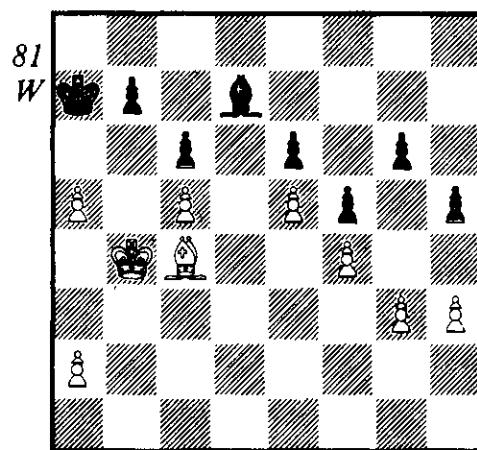
Zatulovskaya–Chiburdanidze*L'vov, 1977*

Black's king is centralized, her bishop well placed, and her pawn

majority on the king's wing a potential trump. Moreover, White's queenside pawns require constant protection.

1 ... g5 2 ♜e2 g4 3 ♜f2 ♜e5 4 ♜e2 f4 5 hxg4 hxg4 6 ♜f1 ♜e6 7 ♜e2 ♜f5 8 ♜f1 ♜d4!

Setting the stage for the final act. 9 ♜e2 ♜e5 10 ♜f1 f3 11 gxh3 gxh3 12 ♜h6 ♜d5 13 ♜f8 ♜e6 14 ♜e1 ♜e5 15 ♜f1 ♜f4 16 ♜h6+ ♜g4 17 ♜f8 ♜b2 The fall of the feeble a-pawn is fatal. 18 ♜c5 ♜xa3 19 d4 ♜f5 20 d5 a5 21 d6 ♜e6 and Black won.

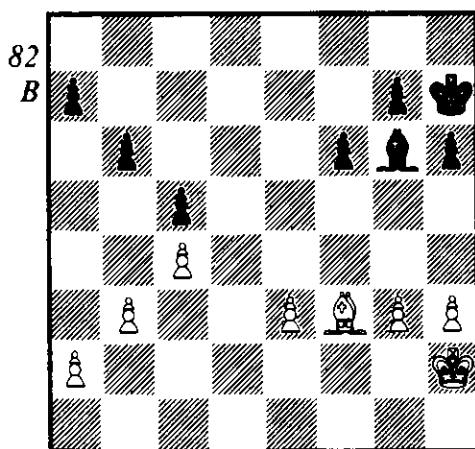
Petrosian–Zeinaly*Leningrad, 1946*

At first sight, it is not clear how White can institute a breakthrough. However, Black's colour-complex and the constricted state of his king and bishop make his defeat inevitable.

1 a6! Doubled pawns can be useful! 1 ... bxa6. On 1 ... b6 White penetrates with 2 a4, 3 cxb6+, 4 a5+ and ♜c5. 2 ♜a5 ♜b7 Or 2 ... ♜c8 3 h4 ♜d7 4 ♜xa6 ♜e8 5 ♜c8 ♜f7 6 ♜d7

$\spadesuit b7$ 7 a4 $\spadesuit c7$ 8 $\spadesuit a6!$ $\spadesuit x d7$ 9 $\spadesuit b7$ and the a-pawn promotes.
 3 $\spadesuit x a6+$ $\spadesuit c7$ 3 ... $\spadesuit a7$ 4 a3.
 4 $\spadesuit c4$ $\spadesuit b7$ 5 h4 $\spadesuit c7$ 6 $\spadesuit a6$ $\spadesuit c8+$ 7 $\spadesuit a7$ $\spadesuit d7$ 8 a4 $\spadesuit c8$ 9 a5 $\spadesuit d7$ 10 $\spadesuit a6$ $\spadesuit e8$ 11 $\spadesuit c8!!$ Such resources may appear fortuitous. In reality, they are typical of such positions. 11 ... $\spadesuit x c8$ 12 $\spadesuit b6$ $\spadesuit b8$ 13 a6 $\spadesuit a8$ Black's monarch has been cornered. 13 ... $\spadesuit d7$ would succumb to 14 a7+ $\spadesuit a8$ 15 $\spadesuit c7$ $\spadesuit e8$ 16 $\spadesuit d8$ etc. 14 $\spadesuit c7$ $\spadesuit a7$ 15 $\spadesuit d8$ $\spadesuit f7$ 16 $\spadesuit e7$ $\spadesuit g8$ 17 $\spadesuit d7!$ 17 $\spadesuit f8$ is less accurate: 17 ... $\spadesuit h7$ 18 $\spadesuit g7$ $\spadesuit x a6$ 19 $\spadesuit x h7$ $\spadesuit b5$. 17 ... $\spadesuit f7$ 18 $\spadesuit x c6$ $\spadesuit e8+$ 19 $\spadesuit d6$ $\spadesuit x a6$ 20 c6 $\spadesuit b6$ 21 c7 $\spadesuit b7$ 22 $\spadesuit e7$ and wins.

Smyslov-Keres Moscow, 1952



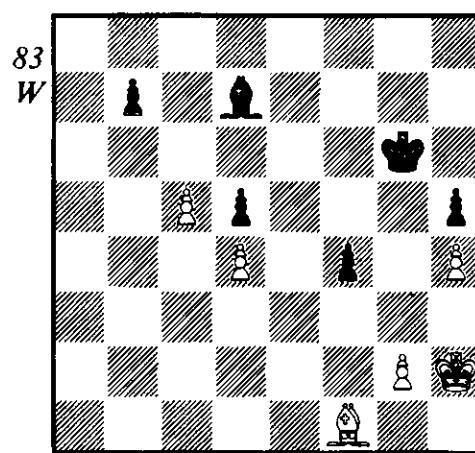
Black's pawn formation makes his bishop better than White's. To succeed in forcing the entry of Black's king, some softening up operations are called for.

36 ... $\spadesuit b1$ 37 a3 a5! Fixing the white pawns. 38 $\spadesuit d1$ $\spadesuit g6$ 39 $\spadesuit g2$ $\spadesuit f5$ 40 $\spadesuit f3$ $\spadesuit e5$ 41 a4

Placing yet another pawn on a white square. 41 ... $\spadesuit g5$ 42 $\spadesuit e2$ $\spadesuit f5!$ 43 $\spadesuit g4$ 43 h4 $\spadesuit g4+$ leads to a lost pawn ending; but the text move constitutes a further weakening. 43 ... $\spadesuit b1$ 44 $\spadesuit f3$ f5 45 $\spadesuit gxf5$ $\spadesuit xf5$ 46 $\spadesuit f2$ $\spadesuit e4$ 47 $\spadesuit g3$ $\spadesuit g6!$ The final phase, involving the advance of the h-pawn, thus fixing White's h-pawn.

48 $\spadesuit f2$ h5 49 $\spadesuit g3$ h4+ The h3 pawn is now fixed. 50 $\spadesuit f2$ $\spadesuit f5$ 51 $\spadesuit g2$ $\spadesuit f6$ 52 $\spadesuit h2$ $\spadesuit e6$ 0-1 After 53 $\spadesuit g2$ $\spadesuit e5$ 54 $\spadesuit h2$ $\spadesuit b1$ 55 $\spadesuit g2$ $\spadesuit e4$ the invasion of the king is lethal.

Eliskases-Broyer Correspondence, 1933



Here the battle revolves around the control of the vital square f4. 1 $\spadesuit g3!$ Now 1 ... $\spadesuit x g3$ + 2 $\spadesuit x g3$ helps White (2 ... $\spadesuit f5$ 3 $\spadesuit h3+$) whereas 1 ... $\spadesuit f3$ 2 $\spadesuit g1$ costs a pawn. Lastly, if 1 ... $\spadesuit e6$ not 2 $\spadesuit gxf4$ $\spadesuit f5$ 3 $\spadesuit h3+$ $\spadesuit f6=$; but 2 $\spadesuit g2!$ $\spadesuit f5$ 3 $\spadesuit f3$ $\spadesuit x g3$ 4 $\spadesuit d3+$, winning the contest for f4.

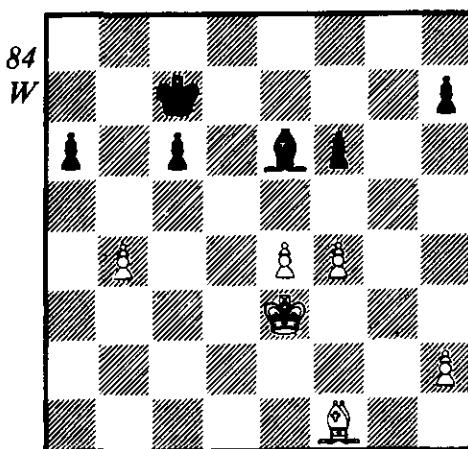
Black tried 1 ... $\spadesuit g4$ hoping for 2 $\spadesuit gxf4$ $\spadesuit f5=$, and White

avoided the pitfall with 2 ♜g2! There followed 2 ... f3 2 ... ♜e6 3 gxf4! ♜f5 4 ♜g3 and Black's king is denied the square e4. 3 ♜f1 ♜f5 4 ♜d3+ ♜e6 5 ♜g1 ♜d7 6 ♜f2 ♜c6 7 ♜c2 b6 7 ... ♜b5 loses to 8 ♜b3 ♜e6 9 ♜e3! (not 9 ♜xf3? ♜b4! gaining time, since White's bishop is unable to retreat to d1) 9 ... ♜b4 10 ♜d1 and ♜f3. 8 cxb6 ♜xb6 9 ♜d1 ♜e6 10 ♜xf3 ♜f7 11 ♜e3 ♜b5 12 ♜f4 ♜b4 13 ♜e5 ♜c4 14 ♜h1 ♜g8 15 ♜g2 ♜f7 16 ♜f3 and wins.

Several years later, Eliskases outplayed Capablanca in another complex bishop-ending.

Eliskases—Capablanca

Semmering, 1937



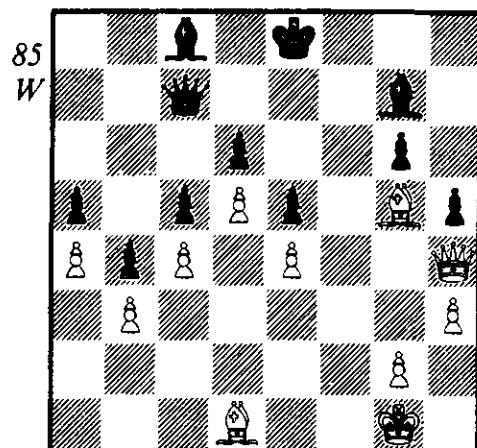
To conserve winning chances, White must avoid early simplification and, if possible, keep the pawns on both wings. Thus 1 ♜xa6 ♜b6 followed by ... c5 constitutes a wrong approach, whereas 1 ♜d4 is the right one.

1 ... ♜b6 Otherwise 2 ♜c5. 2 ♜c4 ♜g4 The pawn ending is lost. 3 e5 fxe5+ 4 fxe5 h6 5 h4

6 h5 6 e6 ♜e8 and Black had many problems to overcome (White ultimately won).

Suetin—Matanovic

Belgrade, 1974



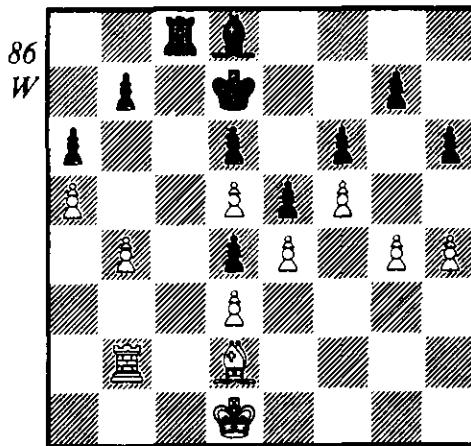
While White's advantage is evident, it is not clear how he can make headway. Suetin forces the exchange of the white-squared bishops and proves that the resulting ending is won for him:

47 g4! hxg4 48 ♜xg4 ♜xg4 49 ♜xg4! ♜d7 To forestall ♜e6+. 50 ♜xd7+ ♜xd7 51 ♜g2 ♜e8 The pawn ending after 51 ... ♜f8 52 ♜g3 ♜e7 53 ♜g4 ♜e8 54 ♜xe7 ♜xe7 55 ♜g5 ♜f7 is lost: 56 ♜h6 ♜f6 57 h4! ♜f7 58 ♜h7 ♜f6 59 ♜g8 etc. 52 ♜f3 ♜d7 53 ♜g4 ♜e8 54 h4 ♜f8 55 h5! gxh5+ 56 ♜xh5 ♜g7 57 ♜g6 ♜f8 58 ♜f6 ♜e7+ 59 ♜f5 ♜f8 60 ♜g6! 1-0. The need to prevent ♜d8 immobilized the black king.

Karpov—Ribli

Bath, 1973

In the position above, the pawn configuration is much in White's

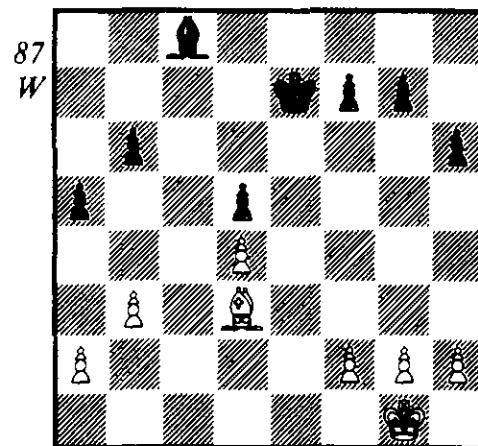


favour; his bishop is free to attack Black's pawns and to support an eventual g4–g5; and Black's pawn at g7 is vulnerable.

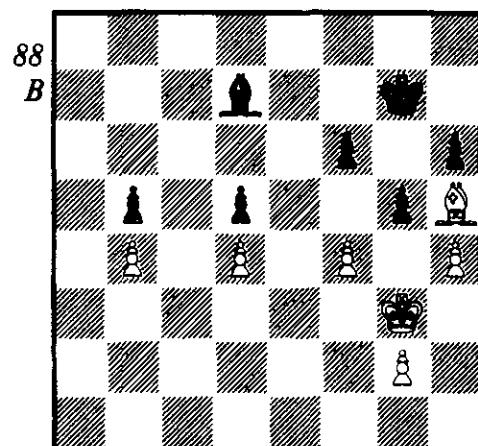
52 b5 axb5 53 ♜xb5 ♜c7 54 ♜e2 ♜b8!? 55 ♜b4 ♜c7? 56 a6! Taking advantage of Black's indecision. 56... b6 is to be countered by 57 ♜xd6! ♜xd6 58 ♜xb6+ ♜c7 59 ♜b7+ with three pawns for the piece and good winning chances. 56... ♜a7 57 axb7 ♜b8 58 ♜d2 ♜xb7 59 ♜xb7+ ♜xb7 60 g5! Preparing the king's journey. The superiority of White's bishop stands out. 60... hxg5 61 hxg5 ♜d8 If 61... fxg5 62 ♜xg5 coupled with ♜e7–f8. 62 ♜f3 ♜c8 63 ♜g4 ♜d7 64 ♜h5 ♜e8 65 ♜b4! The beginning of the end. On 65... ♜e7 66 gxf6 gxf6 67 ♜g6 and the f6 pawn is doomed. 65... fxe5 66 ♜xd6 ♜f6 67 ♜b4 ♜f7 68 ♜d2 ♜e7 69 ♜xg5 ♜a3 70 ♜d8 ♜d6 71 ♜g5 1–0 There is no defence against 72 f6 etc.

Browne—Grefe
USA, 1975

Although roughly equal, we shall see that this ending is by no means dead drawn.



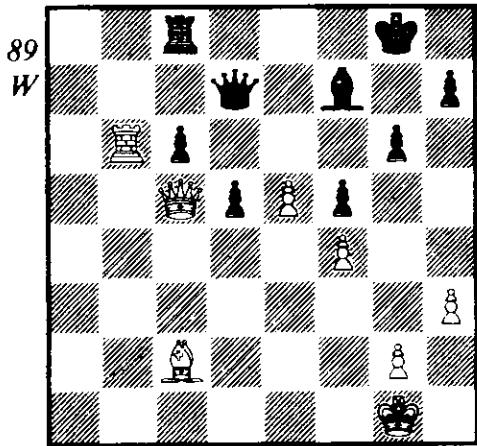
23 ♜f1 ♜d7 24 a3 Thwarting ... b6–b5–b4. 24... ♜f6 25 ♜e2 ♜e7 26 ♜e3 b5? An elementary positional mistake, placing pawns on squares of the colour of one's bishop. To be fair, the text move should not lose. 27 b4! axb4 28 axb4 g5 29 f4 f6 30 ♜g6 ♜g4 31 h3 ♜d7 32 ♜f3 ♜f8 33 ♜g3 ♜g7 34 ♜h5 ♜c6 35 h4! The only available winning attempt. 35... ♜d7 (88)



36 ♜f3 ♜e6 37 ♜e2 ♜d7 38 ♜h5 ♜f8? This loses. Correct is 38... gxh4+ 39 ♜xh4 f5, establishing a blockade. 39 hxg5 hxg5 40 fxe5 fxe5 41 ♜f3 Here, and on White's 43rd move, ♜g4 is quicker. 41... ♜e6 42 ♜e2 ♜d7 43 ♜f3 ♜e6 44 ♜e2 ♜d7 45 ♜g4! Assuring his king's entry. 45

... ♜c6 46 ♜c8 ♜g7 47 ♜g4 ♜g6 48 g3 ♜f6 49 ♜h5 ♜e8+ 50 ♜h6 ♜c6 51 ♜h7 Black is being out-flanked. 51 ... ♜e8 52 ♜g4 ♜g6+ 53 ♜g8 ♜f5 54 ♜e2 ♜d7 55 ♜f8 g4 55 ... ♜c6 loses to 56 ♜g4 ♜b7 57 ♜e8. 56 ♜f1 ♜c6 57 ♜g2 ♜b7 58 ♜e8 ♜e6 59 ♜d8 ♜d6 60 ♜f1 ♜c6 61 ♜d3! 1-0 If 61 ... ♜e6 62 ♜c7 and on 61 ... ♜d7 62 ♜e2 wins a pawn and the game.

Aloni–Kotov
Amsterdam, 1954

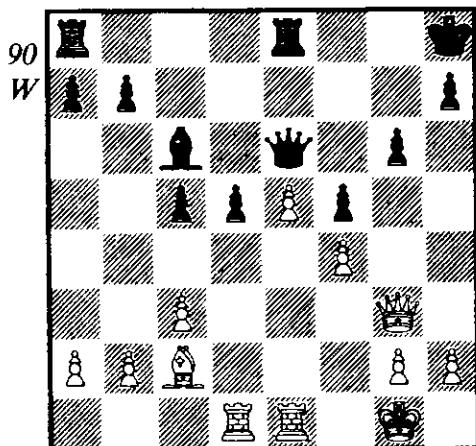


Here White's active pieces and the passed pawn on e5 are ample compensation for a pawn.

40 ♜d3 ♜e8? 40 ... ♜a7! is essential. 41 ♜a6 ♜c7 42 ♜b8 ♜f7 43 ♜b6! Black's pieces have been reduced to total inactivity. 43 ... ♜f8 44 e6! The winning move: opening the a1–h8 diagonal and further curtailing the black bishop. 44 ... ♜e7 45 ♜b2! ♜g8 46 ♜e5 Black cannot avoid material loss. 46 ... h5 47 ♜xe8+

and White won.

Gligoric–Alexander
Dublin, 1957



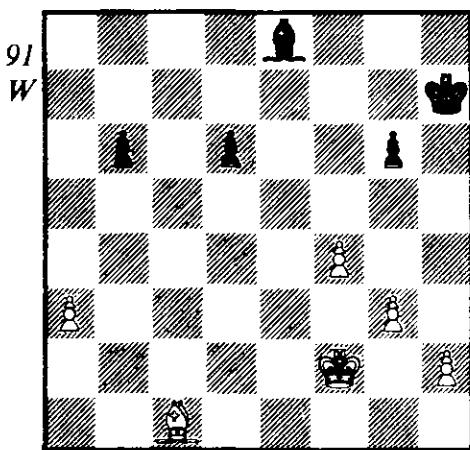
Superficially, Black's position looks secure. However, White's protected passed pawn on e5 is a nuisance (the queen is not an ideal blockader); the pawns on d5 and f5 are vulnerable; and the advance g2–g4 cannot be prevented for long.

26 ♜d2 a5 27 ♜d1 Piling up pressure against the d5 pawn. 27 ... ♜ad8 28 ♜f3 ♜d7 29 ♜f2 b6 30 h3 White carries out his plan slowly and methodically. 30 ... ♜ed8 31 ♜h4! ♜f6+ and c4 are in the air. 31 ... ♜f8 32 ♜h2 ♜g7 33 ♜g5 ♜d7 34 ♜ed1 ♜g7 35 ♜h4 h5 Delaying g2–g4, for a short while. 36 ♜g5 ♜h7 37 ♜e1 ♜e8 38 g4! Decisive. 38 ... hxg4 39 hgx4 ♜g8 49 ♜g3 ♜h7 41 c4 White's strokes are not limited to one wing: proof of good strategic planning. 41 ... fxg4 52 ♜xg4 1-0

5 Bishops—Opposite Colour

Korchnoi–Botvinnik

Moscow, 1960



A simple ending, illustrating the power of connected pawns, supported by a king (and bishop).

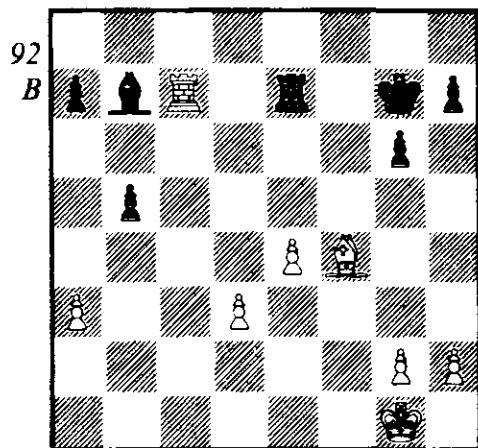
31 g4 ♜g7 32 ♜g3 ♜c6 33 ♜h4 ♜g2 34 ♜g5 ♜h3 35 ♜b2+ ♜f7 36 a4! A pawn is sacrificed in order to divert the black bishop. This will enable White to create two mighty connected passed pawns.

36 ... ♜g2 37 h4 ♜c6 38 h5 gxh5 39 ♜xh5 ♜xa4 40 f5 ♜d1 41 ♜g5 b5 42 ♜c3 1–0 Note how black's unsupported isolated pawns pose no threat.

Bogoljubow–Ed. Lasker

New York, 1924

A pawn down, Black can force a clear-cut draw by sacrificing yet



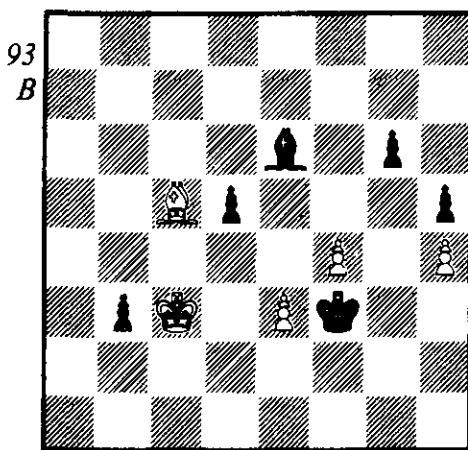
another pawn. The idea is to lure White's central pawns to d4 and e5, thus establishing an impregnable blockade: 36 ... ♜xc7 37 ♜xc7 b4!! 38 axb4 ♜a6 39 d4 ♜d3! 40 e5 ♜c4, when White can make no headway.

Instead, Lasker's routine 36 ... ♜f7? allowed White to mobilize his central pawns by means of 37 ♜xe7+ ♜xe7 38 ♜d2! accompanied by ♜f2–e3 and d3–d4–d5 (not e4–e5), which led to an easy victory.

Kotov–Botvinnik

Moscow, 1955

1 ... ♜g3 (g4) 2 ♜e7 leads nowhere. Clearly, if he is to win such a position, Black must resort to a violent breakthrough. This is



exactly what he accomplishes in a study-like manner:

59 ... g5!! 60 fxg5 True, capturing with the rook's pawn is too costly since after 60 h_xg5 h4 61 ♜d6 ♜f5 the only way to stop Black's h-pawn from queening consists in giving up the g- and h-pawns as well as the bishop, whereupon Black's remaining material is just sufficient to win. How is Black to proceed now?

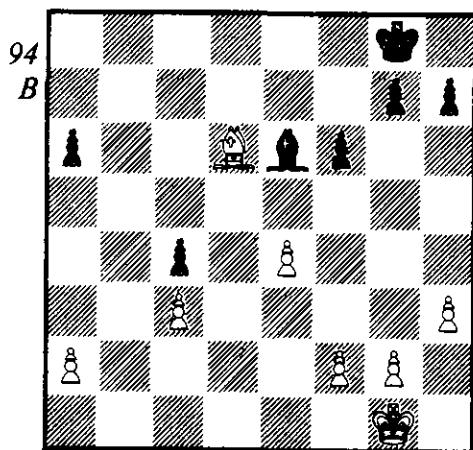
60 ... d4+!! Before capturing White's h-pawn, Black first protects his b-pawn. **61 exd4** Likewise, on 61 ♜xd4 ♜g3 Black's bishop controls all the key squares. **61 ... ♜g3!** 61 ... ♜g4? would be careless, owing to 62 d5 and 63 ♜f2. **62 ♜a3 ♜xh4 63 ♜d3 ♜xg5 64 ♜e4 h4 65 ♜f3 ♜d5+ 0-1.**

Rubinstein—Treybal

Carlsbad, 1929

Here the presence of pawns on both wings, coupled with the vulnerability of the pawn on c4, affords White distinct winning chances.

31 ... f5 32 f3! In order to conserve any winning chances,



White must avoid 32 exf5. In the next 25 moves we see White improve the position of his king and advance his pawn to e7 before creating himself another passed pawn by trading off his a-pawn for Black's c-pawn by means of 57 a4.

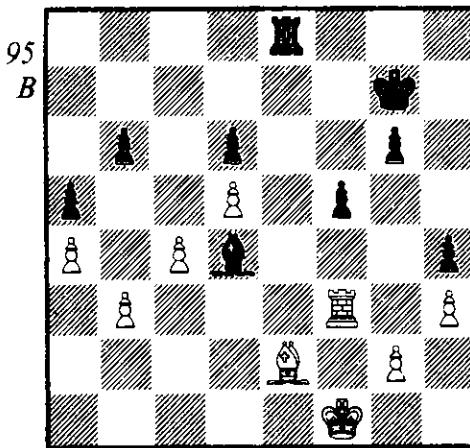
32 ... fxe4 33 fxe4 ♜d7 34 ♜f2 ♜f7 35 ♜e3 ♜e6 36 ♜f8 ♜f7 37 ♜d6 ♜e6 38 ♜f4 ♜e8 39 ♜d4 ♜b5 40 ♜c5 ♜d7 41 e5 ♜e6 42 g4 g6 43 a3 h5 44 gxh5 gxh5 45 h4 ♜f5 46 ♜g3 ♜e6 47 ♜h2 ♜e7 48 ♜d5 ♜d7 49 e6+ ♜e7 50 ♜e5 ♜f8 51 ♜f4 ♜g7 52 ♜g5 ♜g6 53 ♜d5 ♜f5 54 e7 ♜g6 55 ♜c5 ♜f7 56 ♜b4 ♜e6 57 a4! ♜c6 58 ♜xc4 ♜xa4 59 ♜c5 ♜d7 60 c4 ♜c7 61 ♜d5 ♜d7 62 ♜e5 ♜d1 63 ♜f6 ♜e8 64 c5 1-0 64 ... a5 65 c6 a4 66 c7 ♜g4 67 ♜c1 ♜c8 68 ♜a3 ♜d7 69 ♜g6 ♜g4 70 ♜b4 is zugzwang.

It is instructive to compare the respective roles of the two kings in this ending.

Evans—Shamkovich

USA, 1980

In the next position, all Black's pieces and pawns are better



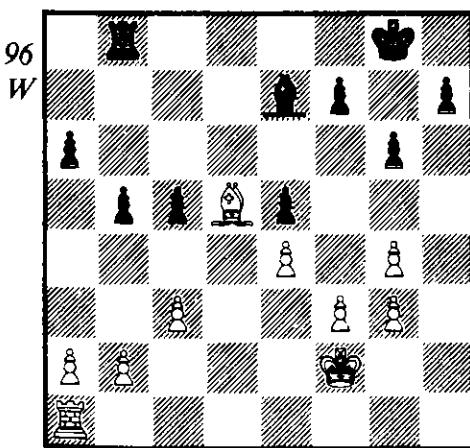
placed than White's and his pawn majority on the kingside is both mobile and menacing.

32 ... ♜e3! **33 ♜e1 ♜f6** **34 ♜d1 ♜g5!** Black's plan is to manoeuvre his king to b4 via e5, d4 and c5; and thereafter to force the entry of his rook behind White's lines.

35 ♜d3 ♜e3! White's last move has thwarted the king's foray, but now the stage is set for a pawn advance on the other wing. **36 ♜e1 ♜g5!** **37 ♜f1 ♜f4** **38 ♜f3 g5** **39 ♜h5 ♜e7** **40 ♜d1 g4** **41 hxg4** **fxg4** **42 ♜g6 ♜g3** **43 ♜e1 h3** **44 gxh3 gxh3** **45 ♜e2 ♜e5!** **0–1**

The passed h-pawn will cost White a piece.

Keres–Lilienthal Leningrad, 1941

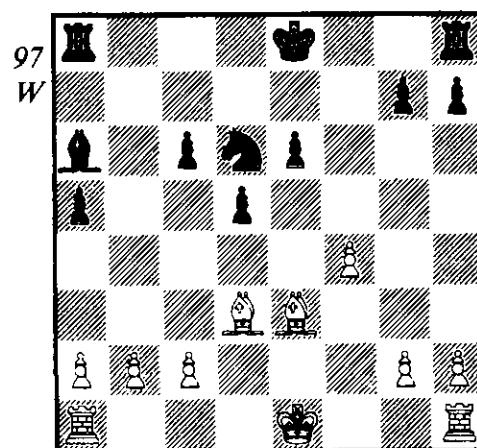


White's advantage, consisting of a more active bishop, is minimal and should not suffice for victory against best play. However, this is one of those positions in which the stronger side ought to play on, at least for a while.

31 b3 ♜g7 More exact is 31 ... a5. After 32 a4 b4 33 cxb4 ♜xb4 34 ♜c4 Black has time to contest the d-file with his rook with ... ♜b8–d8. **32 a4 b4** **33 cxb4 ♜xb4** If 33 ... cxb4 34 ♜c1–c7. **34 ♜c4 a5** **35 ♜d1** White has gained control of an open file and also eyes the a-pawn.

35 ... ♜b7 **36 ♜d5 f6** **37 g5 fxg5** **38 ♜xe5 ♜f6** **39 ♜d5 ♜d4+** **40 ♜e2 ♜e7** **41 ♜d3** Although, strictly speaking, Black's resources should still prove adequate to hold the game, White finally eked out a win on move 94(!).

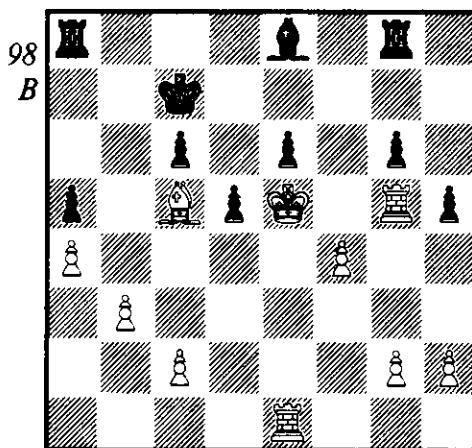
Bernstein–Mieses Coburg, 1904



It is not always advisable to steer blindly into an ending with opposite-coloured bishops, especially when other pieces are present. In the diagram, for example,

in reply to 19 $\mathbb{B}d2$, instead of exchanging bishops on d3, Black opted for 19 ... $\mathbb{B}c4+$? and soon found himself facing an untenable ending—despite, rather than because of, the bishops of opposite colour.

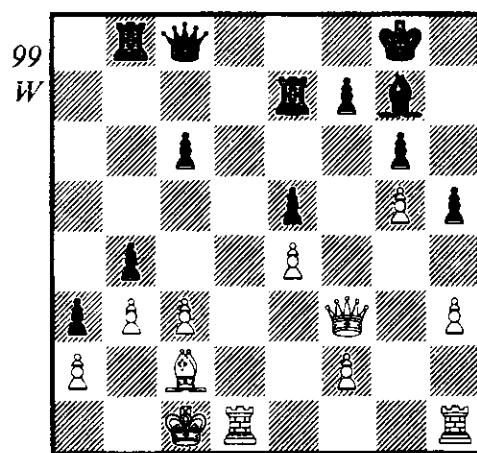
20 $\mathbb{A}xc4!$ $\mathbb{A}xc4$ 21 a4! It is important to fix the pawn on a5. 21 ... $\mathbb{B}d7$ 22 b3 $\mathbb{A}a6$ 23 $\mathbb{A}b6$ White asserts his supremacy over the black-coloured squares. 23 ... $\mathbb{A}c8$ 24 $\mathbb{B}e3$ $\mathbb{A}a6$ 25 $\mathbb{A}c5$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 26 $\mathbb{B}d4$ $\mathbb{A}d7$ 27 $\mathbb{A}he1$ h5 28 $\mathbb{A}e5$ g6 29 $\mathbb{A}g5$ $\mathbb{A}g8$ 30 $\mathbb{B}e5$ $\mathbb{A}e8$ 31 $\mathbb{A}e1$ $\mathbb{A}a8$ (98)



The diagram speaks for itself. White's pieces occupy dominating posts and as long as he avoids traps like 32 $\mathbb{B}xe6?$ $\mathbb{A}d7+$, victory cannot but be a matter of time.

32 $\mathbb{B}f6$ $\mathbb{A}d7$ 33 g3 $\mathbb{A}ae8$ 34 $\mathbb{A}ee5$ White is in no hurry to gain material. 34 ... $\mathbb{A}h8$ 35 $\mathbb{A}xg6$ $\mathbb{A}h7$ 36 $\mathbb{A}g7$ $\mathbb{A}eh8$ 37 $\mathbb{A}xh7$ $\mathbb{A}xh7$ 38 $\mathbb{B}g6$ $\mathbb{A}h8$ 39 $\mathbb{B}g7$ $\mathbb{A}d8$ 40 $\mathbb{A}xh5$ and White won.

Vilner–Romanovsky Moscow, 1925

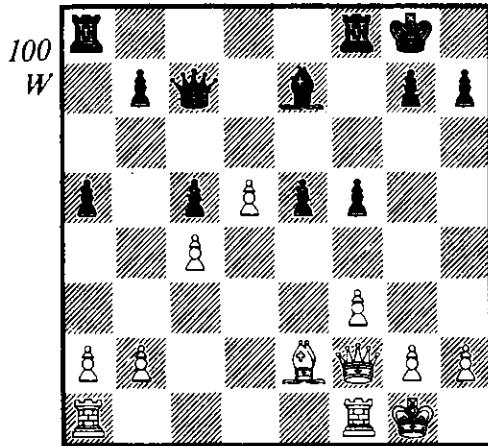


The following example is not devoid of instructional value. Instead of continuing 28 $\mathbb{A}d3-c4$, with the better bishop, White chose the positionally suicidal 28 $c4??$ which, apart from ceding the square d4 to the black bishop, voluntarily hemmed in his white-squared bishop. The sequel was:

28 ... $\mathbb{A}e6$ 29 $\mathbb{A}d3$ Again, 29 c5 is mandatory, to clear c4 for the white bishop. 29 ... $\mathbb{A}f8$ 30 $\mathbb{A}hd1$ $\mathbb{A}c5$ 31 $\mathbb{A}e2$ $\mathbb{A}d4$ 32 $\mathbb{B}b1$ c5 The outcome is no longer in doubt. 33 $\mathbb{A}f3$ $\mathbb{B}d8$ 34 h4 $\mathbb{A}e7$ 35 $\mathbb{A}g1$ $\mathbb{A}f8$ 36 $\mathbb{A}d3$ $\mathbb{B}h7$ 37 $\mathbb{A}fg3$ $\mathbb{A}d6$ 38 $\mathbb{A}1g2$ f6 Black is about to penetrate through the f-file, whereupon the qualitative difference between the bishops is bound to tell in his favour.

39 gxf6 $\mathbb{A}fxf6$ 40 $\mathbb{A}g5$ $\mathbb{W}f7$ 41 $\mathbb{A}c2$ $\mathbb{A}f4$ 42 $\mathbb{A}h2$ $\mathbb{A}df6$ 43 $\mathbb{A}gg2$ $\mathbb{A}xf2$ 44 $\mathbb{A}d1$ $\mathbb{A}d4$ 45 $\mathbb{B}c1$ $\mathbb{A}f1$ 46 $\mathbb{B}c2$ $\mathbb{A}6f3$ 47 $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{A}c3+$ 48 $\mathbb{B}b1$ $\mathbb{W}f3$ 49 $\mathbb{A}e2$ $\mathbb{A}xb3+$ 50 $\mathbb{A}xb3$ $\mathbb{W}xb3+$ 51 $\mathbb{B}c1$ $\mathbb{W}b2+$ 0-1

Liu–Ljubojevic Lucerne, 1982

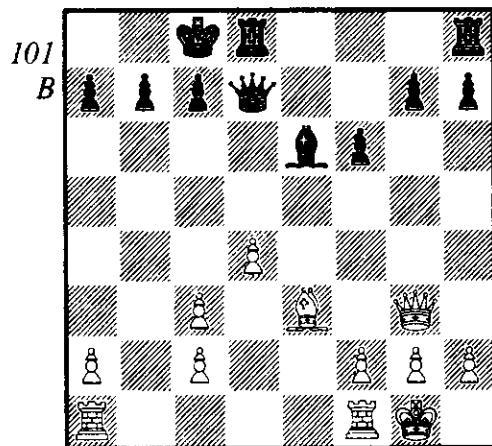


1 e4 c5 2 ♘f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ♘xd4 ♘f6 5 ♘c3 a6 6 ♜e2 e5 7
 ♘b3 ♜e7 8 0-0 0-0 9 ♜e3 ♜e6
 10 ♖d2 ♗c7 11 ♘d5 ♜xd5 12
 exd5 ♘bd7 13 c4 a5! To hinder
 b2–b4 after the exchange of
 knights on c5 and to gain control
 of the black squares on the queen-
 side.

14 ♕e1 ♘e4 15 f3 ♖ec5 16 ♘xc5 ♘xc5 17 ♜f2 f5 18 ♗xc5 dxc5 (100) Black's prophylactic measures have stymied White's prospects on the queen's flank. Black can now concentrate his efforts on the king's wing. **19 ♕e1 ♘d6 20 g3 ♘f6 21 ♘d3 ♘af8 22 ♘d1 h5!** and Black's initiative on the kingside ultimately carried the day.

Karpov–Larsen *Tilburg, 1980*

Rather than neutralize each other, bishops of opposite colour frequently favour the attacker.



1 e4 e5 2 ♘f3 ♘f6 3 d4 ♘xe4 4
 ♘d3 d5 5 ♘xe5 ♘d7 6 ♜e2 ♘xe5
 7 ♜xe4 dxе4 8 ♜xe4 ♜e6 9 ♜xe5
 ♜d7 10 0-0 0-0-0 11 ♜e3 ♜b4??

To induce 12 c3, thus robbing the knight of that square. 12 ♘c3?! f6
 13 ♜g3 ♜xc3!

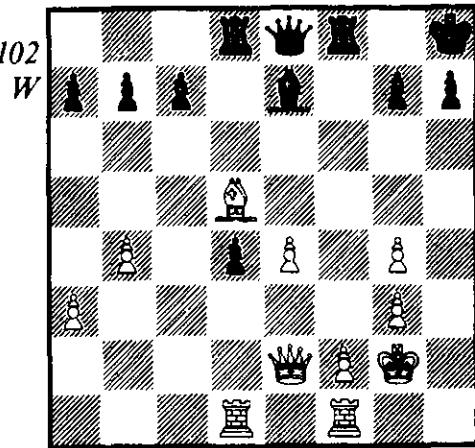
A pawn down, Black's prospects in the ensuing opposite-coloured middle game are superior. The exchange safeguards the outposts d5 and c4 for the black bishop. Moreover, White's a- and c2-pawns are potential weaknesses.

14 bxc3 (101) 14... h5 15 h4 g5!
 Exploiting the fact that this pawn
 is immune to capture, Black im-
 proves the formation of his
 pawns. **16 f3 ♕dg8 17 ♕f2 ♖c6**
18 ♔d2 g4 Forcing White's reply
 and thus accentuating the power
 of Black's bishop. **19 f4 ♔c4** Here
 Larsen comments: 'White is
 crushed, smashed and finished.
 That the game lasted another 46
 moves is neither here nor there.'

20 d5 A desperate try to gain more scope for White's bishop. **20** ... ♜xd5 **21 f5** ♜e8 **22 a3** ♜e4 **23** ♜e1 ♜he8 **24** ♜xe4 ♜xe4 **25**

102 **W** **h2 c5** Black's positional advantage is bound to yield an advantage in material. 26 **f4 e1** 27 **d2 a1** 28 **w e3 d6+ 29 f4 b6 30 c4 x c4 31 d4 x d4** 32 **x d4 b5 33 h6 x a3 34 g7 d7 35 f4 a5 36 x f6 x f5** and White finally resigned some 30 moves later.

Botvinnik–Tal
Moscow, 1961



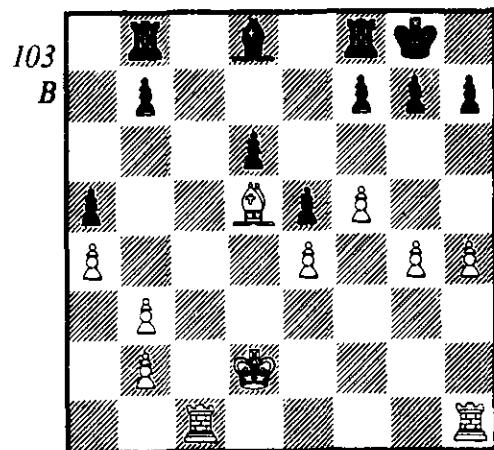
Here White's advantage is manifest: strong bishop, positional pawn roller, open h-file.

35 c4! Disdaining the pawn on b7. **35 ... c5 36 b5** Imprisoning the black bishop. **36 ... f6 37 f4 d3** A desperate attempt to free his bishop. Otherwise White proceeds with 38 e5. **38 x d3 x d3 39 x d3 d4 40 e5 g6 41 h1** The final assault. **41 ... g7 42 w e4 b6 43 c4 1–0.**

A possible finish: **43 ... w e7 (43 ... d7 44 w c6 x c6 45 bxc6 c8 46 e6!) 44 g5 (threat: 45 w c6–f6+) c8 45 f5 gxf5 46**

xh7+! xh7 47 w h4+ and mate next move.

Karpov–Mecking
Hastings, 1971

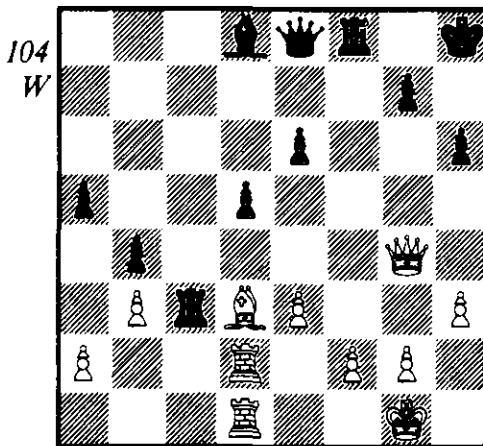


White controls the only open file, and his bishop enjoys more scope than Black's, which is hampered by the need to prevent a rook incursion to c7. With passive play affording few chances of survival, Black decides to undertake action on the king's wing. This opens additional avenues for White's pieces and facilitates a mating attack.

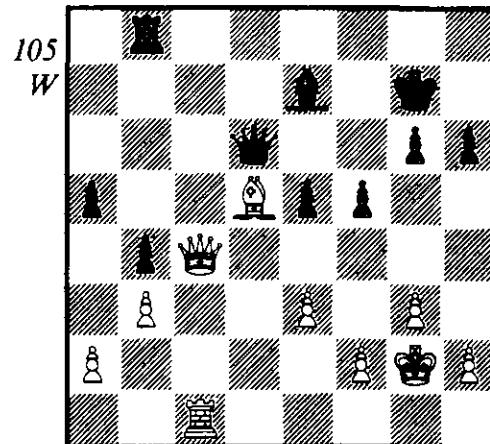
23 ... g5 24 f x g6 h x g6 25 d3 g7 26 h5 b6 26 ... g5 allows c7, but now Black's king becomes exposed. **27 h3 c5 28 f1 f6 29 h x g6 x g6 30 f1 b8 31 h7 g5 32 e2 f4 33 h3 d4 34 g7 1–0**

Karpov–Kasparov
Moscow, 1985

Here, in addition to having the better pawn formation (two



Karpov–Hübner
Montreal, 1979



islands against Black's three), White succeeds in creating direct threats along the b1–h7 diagonal. In such positions, opposite-coloured bishops, far from being an offsetting factor, are a dangerous weapon.

32 e4! Thematic. If 32 ... d4 33 e5! 32 ... ♜g5 33 ♜c2 ♜xc2 Otherwise 34 exd5 and 35 ♜e2. 34 ♜xc2 ♜c6 35 ♜e2 ♜c5 36 ♜f1 ♜c3 37 exd5 exd5 38 ♜b1 ♜d2 39 ♜e5! The queen joins the attack. The exchange of queens followed by 40 ♜d1 is clearly less promising.

39 ... ♜d8? Better chances are afforded by centralizing the bishop: 39 ... ♜f6 (–d4). **40 ♜f5** White's next task is to activate his rook. **40 ... ♜g8** Here the game was adjourned.

**41 ♜e6+ ♜h8 42 ♜g6 ♜g8 43 ♜e6+ ♜h8 44 ♜f5 ♜c3 45 ♜g6 ♜g8 46 ♜e6+ ♜h8 47 ♜f5 ♜g8 48 g3 ♜f8 49 ♜g2 ♜f6 50 ♜h7 ♜f7 51 h4 ♜d2 52 ♜d1 ♜c3 53 ♜d3 ♜d6 54 ♜f3 ♜e7 55 ♜h8!
d4 56 ♜c8 ♜f6 57 ♜c5+ ♜e8 58 ♜f4 ♜b7+ 59 ♜e4+ ♜f7 60 ♜c4+ ♜f8 61 ♜h7 ♜f7 62 ♜e6 ♜d7 63 ♜e5 1–0**

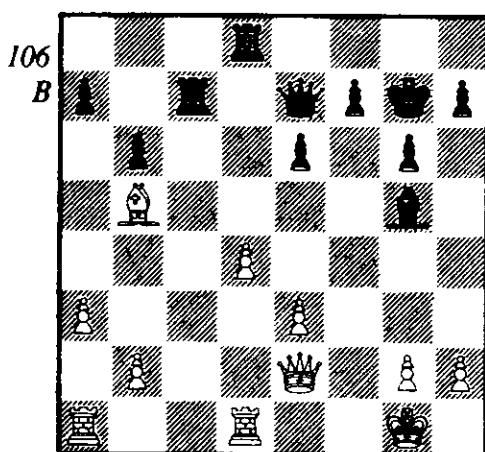
White controls the open file; his bishop is superior to Black's. Lastly, Black's kingside pawns are none too solid. These factors grant White good winning chances.

35 e4! Fortifies his bishop on d5, restrains the black bishop and hinders ... e5–e4, which would equalize. **35 ... f4 36 ♜d3 ♜b6 37 ♜c8** Underlining the difference between the respective roles of the adverse bishops. **37 ... fxe3 38 fxe3 ♜d7?** A mistake in a difficult position.

39 ♜c4? One of Karpov's rare lapses. With half an hour on his clock, he fails to notice 39 ♜g8+ ♜h7 40 ♜xg6! (40 ... ♜xg6 41 ♜f7+), or 40 ♜e3! ♜d8 41 ♜h8+! with mate to follow. The text move enables Black to rush his rook to the defence of his king.

39 ... ♜f6! 40 ♜c7 ♜d6 41 h4 ♜f8 42 ♜a7 h5 43 ♜c6 and after the exchange of queens, White's advantage proved insufficient for victory.

Braga—Karpov
Mar del Plata, 1982



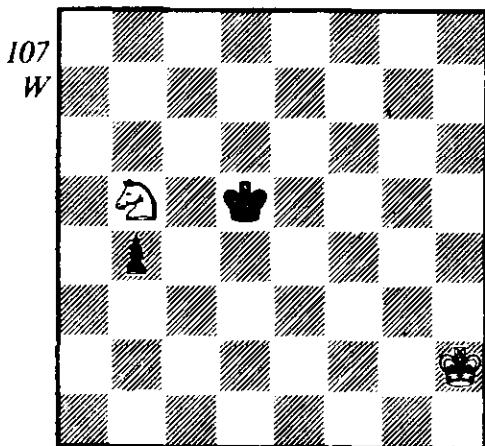
In this position, where Black enjoys a superior pawn formation (two islands against White's three), the opposite-coloured bishops are certainly no impediment to the stronger side.

29 . . . e5! Hitting White's weaknesses. **30 dx_e5** $\blacksquare x\text{d}1+$ **31** $\blacksquare x\text{d}1$ $\blacksquare \text{c}5$ **32 e4** $\blacksquare x\text{e}5$ **33** $\blacksquare \text{d}3$ The white bishop is passive and his king is none too secure. **33 . . . h5** **34** $\blacksquare \text{f}3$ **h4** **35** $\blacksquare \text{f}1$ $\blacksquare \text{f}6$ **36 b3 b5!** Aimed against $\blacksquare \text{c}4-\text{d}5$. **37** $\blacksquare \text{h}1$ $\blacksquare \text{c}5$ **38** $\blacksquare \text{e}2$ $\blacksquare \text{e}5$ **39** $\blacksquare \text{f}3$ **a5** **40 a4** $\text{bxa}4$ **41** $\text{bxa}4$ $\blacksquare \text{c}5$ **42** $\blacksquare \text{b}5$ $\blacksquare \text{c}3$ **43** $\blacksquare \text{f}4$ **h3!** Inducing an additional weakening. Black's advantage has assumed decisive proportions. **44** $\blacksquare \text{f}3$ On **44** $\text{g}3$ $\blacksquare \text{g}5$ **45** $\blacksquare \text{g}4$ **f5!** wins. **44 . . . h**_x**g2+** **45** $\blacksquare \text{xg}2$ $\blacksquare \text{e}5$ Black's pressure bears fruit. **46** $\blacksquare \text{g}4$ $\blacksquare \text{c}2+$ **47** $\blacksquare \text{f}2$ $\blacksquare \text{x}\text{f}2+$ **48** $\blacksquare \text{x}\text{f}2$ $\blacksquare \text{xh}2$ and White resigned some 20 moves later. He is a pawn down and his king is exposed.

6 Knights

To begin with, a few studies, to illustrate the knight's extraordinary agility.

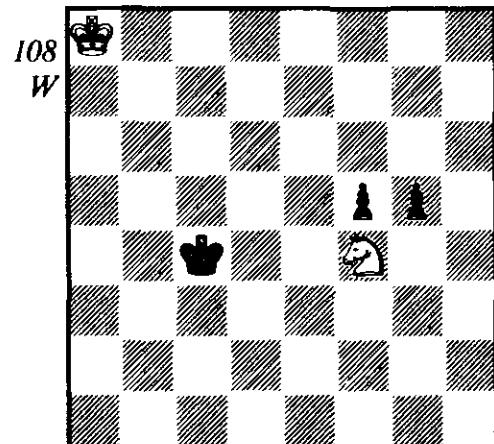
Grigoriev
1938



1 $\mathbb{N}c7+$ $\mathbb{N}c4$ Best. 2 $\mathbb{N}e8!!$ Only by dint of this paradoxical move can the white knight stop the black pawn from queening. 2 ... b3 3 $\mathbb{N}d6+$ $\mathbb{N}b4$ 4 $\mathbb{N}e4$ and draws. Or 2 ... $\mathbb{N}c5$ 3 $\mathbb{N}f6$ $\mathbb{N}d4$ 4 $\mathbb{N}e8!$ $\mathbb{N}e5$ 4 ... b3 5 $\mathbb{N}d6$ b2 6 $\mathbb{N}b5+$ - a3 =. 5 $\mathbb{N}c7!$ $\mathbb{N}d6$ 6 $\mathbb{N}e8+!$ and draws by repetition.

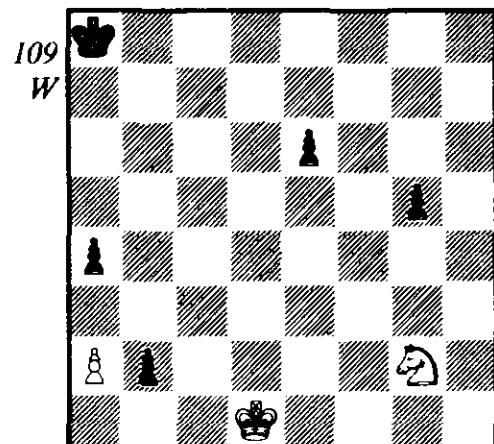
Chekhover
1955

1 $\mathbb{N}e6!$ g4 2 $\mathbb{N}g7!!$ f4 3 $\mathbb{N}h5$ f3 4 $\mathbb{N}f6$ g3 Or 4 ... f2 6 $\mathbb{N}xg4$



f1 = (W) 6 $\mathbb{N}e3+$. 5 $\mathbb{N}e4$ g2 6 $\mathbb{N}d2+$ and 7 $\mathbb{N}xf3=.$

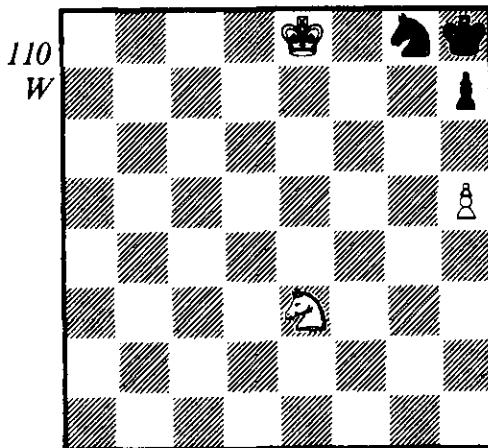
Korolkov
1946



1 $\mathbb{N}c2$ a3 2 $\mathbb{N}e3!$ $\mathbb{N}b7$ 3 $\mathbb{N}g4$ $\mathbb{N}c6$ 4 $\mathbb{N}e5+$ $\mathbb{N}d5$ 5 $\mathbb{N}f3$ g4 6 $\mathbb{N}h2$ Forcing the pawn's advance—and capture. 6 ... g3 7 $\mathbb{N}f1$ g2 8 $\mathbb{N}e3+$ and 9 $\mathbb{N}xg2.$

Or 4 ... ♜c5 5 ♜b1 ♜b5 6 ♜c2 ♜b4 7 ♜g4 ♜c4 8 ♜e5+ and the knight stops the king from crossing over to the kingside.

Bron
1948



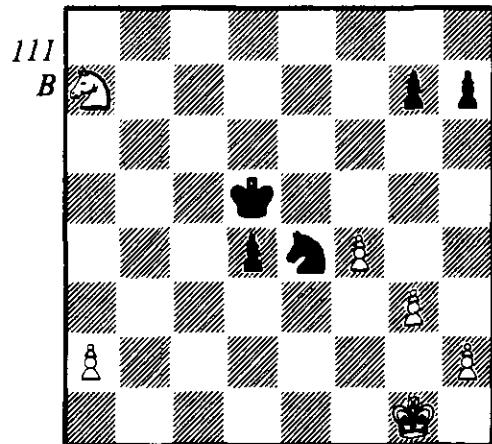
Methodically, White ties the noose around the black knight.

1 ♜f7! ♜h6+ 2 ♜f8 ♜g8 3 ♜g4 h6 4 ♜f7 ♜h7 5 ♜e5 ♜h8
Black's moves are forced. 6 ♜c4 ♜h7 7 ♜d6 ♜h8 8 ♜e8 ♜h7 9
爵e6! Before manoeuvring his knight to f8, White must lose a move without letting the black knight and/or king escape from the corner.

9 ... ♜h8 10 ♜d6 ♜h7 11 ♜d7
爵h8 12 ♜e6 ♜h7 13 ♜f7 ♜h8 14
爵c7 ♜h7 15 ♜e6 ♜h8 16 ♜f8
and wins.

Barcza-Simagine
Moscow, 1949

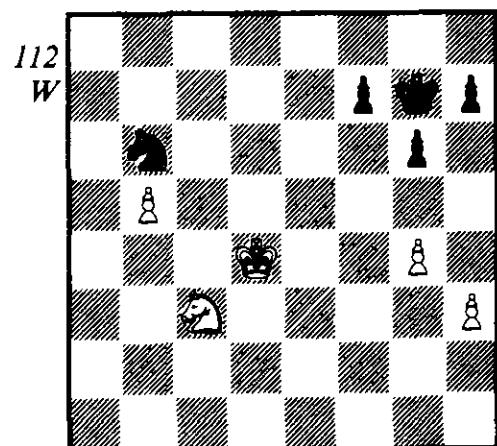
White is a pawn up and can boast of an outside passed pawn. In this case, however, the excellent placing of Black's king and



knight is sufficient to nurse the queen's pawn to its promotion square.

1 ... d3 2 ♜f1 ♜c3 3 ♜e1 ♜d4
4 ♜d2 Black was threatening 4 ...
爵e3. 4 ... ♜e4+ 5 ♜c1 ♜d6!
Thwarting 6 ♜b5. 6 ♜d2 If 6
爵c6+ ♜c3! 7 ♜e7 d2+ 8 ♜d1
爵e4 9 ♜d5+ ♜c4, followed by
... ♜d3. 6 ... ♜c4+ 7 ♜c1 d2+
8 ♜c2 ♜e3 9 ♜b5 ♜a3+! The final diversion forces instant capitulation.

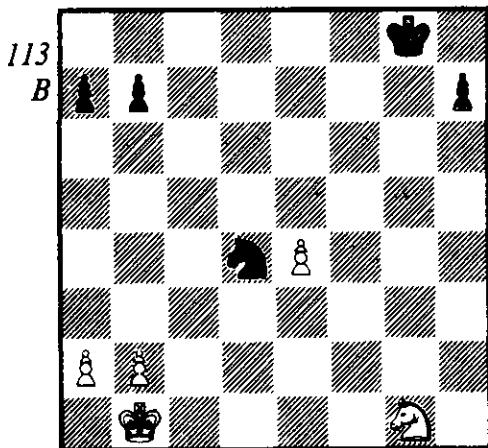
Chigorin-Marshall
Carlsbad, 1907



White's passed pawn and centralized king promise him victory—with a modicum of care.

1 $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 2 $g5!$ $h6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 4 $h4$ $hxg5$ 5 $hxg5$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 8 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 9 $b6$ and White won.

Lasker–Nimzowitsch Zurich, 1934



Here an outside passed pawn exists in the initial position, which means that virtually all transitions into pawn endings are anathema to White. The way Nimzowitsch converts his advantage into victory is justly regarded as a classic and will repay close study.

35... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $h5$ 39 $a3$ On principle, in this kind of position pawn moves are best avoided. However, after 39. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $h5$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ (42 $a4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$) 42... $b5$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ White will have to give ground. 39... $a5$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}c2+$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e1+$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g2$ So that if 43 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 45 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $h4$ 46 $e5$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ 47 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $h3$ Black queens with check.

43 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h4+$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 45 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 46 $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 47 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 48 $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ Stooping to

conquer, since 49 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ 50 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ leads to a typically won pawn ending. 49 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 50 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 51 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 51 $b3$ first, to halt ... $a4$ and rob the black knight of the square $c4$, offers stouter resistance.

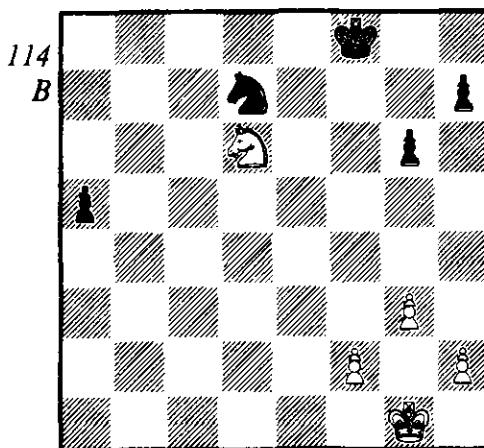
51... $a4!$ 52 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $h4$ 53 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $b6!$ Far superior to 53... $b5$ 54 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ 55 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ and on 55... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 56 $\mathbb{Q}g6+$. 54 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $b5$ If now 55 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ 56 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ (56 $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $h3$) 56... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ putting White into zugzwang. 55 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ 56 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 57 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 57 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 58 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ 59 $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 60 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ (else 60... $\mathbb{Q}d3$) 60... $h3$ is another nice variation on the same theme. 57... $b4!$ Forcing White's response, as 58 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ loses to 58... $bx a3$ 59 $bx a3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ 60 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$. 58 $axb4+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 59 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ 60 $\mathbb{Q}b1$ Or 60 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 61 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ 60... $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ Paralysing White's knight: 61 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ and the h-pawn advances.

61 $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 61 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 62 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ 61... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 62 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ 63 $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 64 $b4$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 65 $b5$ $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ 0-1. 66 $b6$ (66 $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 67 $b6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 68 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}d8)$ 66... $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 67 $b7$ $\mathbb{Q}c5+$.

Schmidt–Kasparov Dubai, 1986

The following ending is akin to the previous one. By winning it, the Soviet Union assured itself of first place in the Olympiad.

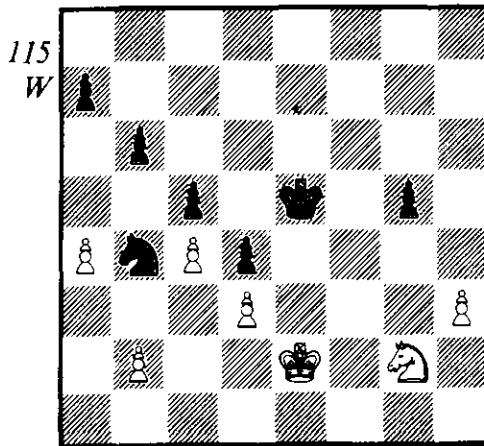
38... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $a4$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$



The black king has won the race for central control. 43 ♜d2 ♜e5 One of the significant advantages of an outside passed pawn is that the opposite side can scarcely consider a transition into a pawn ending (after ... ♜c4+, for example).

44 ♜c2 ♜d3 45 ♜d1 ♜e1+ 46 ♜b2 ♜f3 47 h4 ♜e5 Better than 47 ... ♜d3 48 ♜a3 ♜e2 49 ♜c3+ ♜xf2 50 ♜e4+. 48 ♜a3 ♜e4 49 h5 Or 49 ♜xa4 ♜f3 50 ♜b5 ♜g4. 49 ... gxh5 50 ♜c3+ ♜f3 51 ♜d5 ♜g4 52 ♜e7 ♜xf2 53 ♜f5 ♜e4 54 ♜xa4 ♜xg3 55 ♜h4+ ♜e4 56 ♜b4 ♜f5 0-1

Zichichi–Hort
Venice, 1969



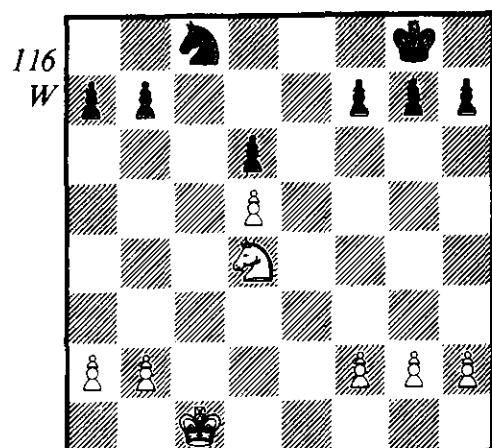
Black's centralized king is superior to White's and the white

pawns on d3 and h3 are weak. A breakthrough follows readily:

1 ♜e1 Cedes the square f4, but on 1 ♜d2 Black manoeuvres his knight to f4 with a winning pawn endgame. 1 ... ♜f4 2 ♜f2 ♜c6 3 ♜g2+ ♜f5 4 ♜e1 ♜e5 5 ♜g3 ♜g6 Heading for f4, the ideal square for the knight. 6 ♜f3 6 ♜g2 loses to 6 ... ♜e5 7 ♜el a6 8 b3 a5 9 ♜f2 ♜g6–f4, etc., as in the game.

6 ... ♜f4 7 ♜g3 a5 The final precautionary measure (against b2–b3–b4). 8 ♜h2 ♜xh3! Penetration. 9 ♜xh3 ♜f4 10 ♜g2 ♜e3 11 ♜f3 ♜xd3 12 ♜f2 ♜xc4 13 ♜e2 ♜b3 14 ♜xg5 ♜xb2 15 ♜d3 ♜b3 16 ♜e4 ♜xa4 and White's knight is no match for Black's four pawns.

Alekhine–Andersen
Folkestone, 1933



Despite the symmetrical pawn structure, White is able to create an outside passed pawn.

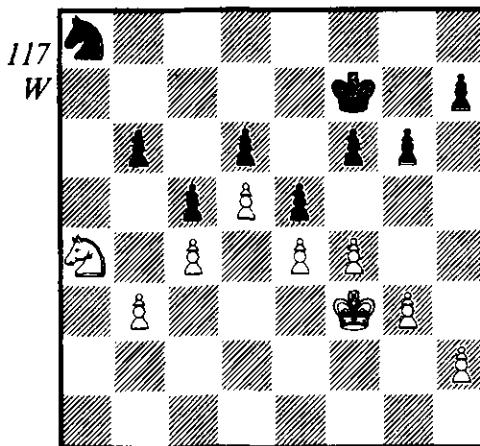
1 ♜b3! Gaining access to the key square c6, whether or not Black plays 1 ... b6. 1 ... ♜f8 Or

1 ... ♜e7 2 ♜a5 b6 3 ♜c6 ♜xd5 4 ♜xa7, as in the game. If, instead of 2 ... b6, Black captures on d5, then 3 ♜xb7 ♜f4 4 ♜xd6 ♜d3+ 5 ♜c2 ♜xf2 6 b4! ♜f8 7 a4 and on 7 ... ♜e7 (7 ... ♜g4 8 b5 etc.) 8 ♜c8+.

2 ♜a5 b6 3 ♜c6 ♜e8 4 ♜d2 ♜e7 Otherwise comes ♜c3–b4, and on ... a6, a2–a4–a5. 5 ♜xa7 ♜xd5 6 ♜b5 ♜d7 7 ♜d4 g6 8 a4 ♜c7 While the white knight restrains the movements of Black's king, White proceeds to mobilize his queenside majority. 9 ♜c3 g5 10 ♜b4 d5 11 ♜f3 f6 12 ♜d4 ♜d6?! 13 ♜b5+ Leading to an easily won pawn ending.

12 ... ♜e7, instead of 12 ... ♜d6, is defeated by 13 a5 bxa5+ 14 ♜xa5 ♜d7 15 b4 ♜c8 16 ♜b6.

Kasparov–Hübner Hamburg, 1985



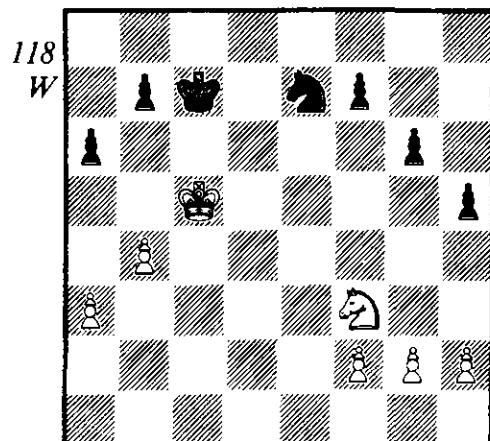
Here White's advantage in space and his more mobile knight afford him distinct winning chances.

36 h4 h6? In time-trouble, Black facilitates White's task. 37 g4 g5

This has the disadvantage of conceding the square f5. 38 fxg5 fxg5 39 h5! Now the vulnerability of the h6 pawn and the availability of the square f5 to White's knight ensure Kasparov's victory. The way he goes about attaining it is instructive in its simplicity.

39 ... ♜e7 40 ♜c3 ♜c7 41 ♜d1 ♜e8 42 ♜e3 ♜g7 43 ♜e2 With the black knight immobilized on the kingside— ♜f5+ cannot be allowed—White's king is scot-free on the other wing. 43 ... ♜d7 44 ♜d3 ♜c7 45 ♜c3 ♜c8 46 b4 ♜c7 47 ♜b3 ♜b7 48 ♜a4 ♜b8 On 48 ... ♜a6 49 ♜f5 wins. 49 bxc5 bxc5 50 ♜a5 ♜b7 51 ♜b5 ♜c7 52 ♜a6 ♜c8 53 ♜b6 ♜d7 54 ♜b7 Zugzwang. 54 ... ♜e8 55 ♜f5 The fruit of his 37th move! 55 ... ♜f6 56 ♜xh6 ♜xe4 57 ♜f5 ♜f6 58 h6 e4 59 ♜b6 ♜h7 60 ♜b5 1–0 The e4 pawn is doomed.

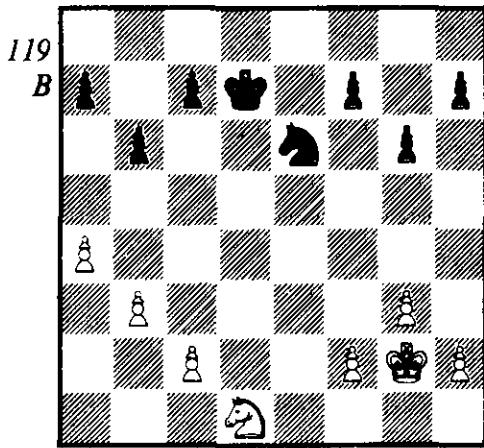
Botvinnik–Kholmov Moscow, 1969



Here too, White's more aggressively placed pieces soon render Black's position untenable.

36 ♜g5 f6 37 ♜h7 f5 38 h4
Fixing the g-pawn. 38 ... f4 39
♘f8 b6+ 40 ♜d4 ♜f5+ 41 ♜e4
♘xh4 42 ♜e6+ ♜c6 43 ♜xf4
♗b5 44 g3 ♜f5 45 ♜xg6 ♜h6 46
♘e5! ♜a4 47 ♜c4 ♜b3 Or 47 ...
b5 48 ♜e5 ♜xa3 49 ♜c6!. 48
♘xb6 ♜xa3 49 ♜d5 ♜b3 50 f4
♗c4 51 ♜c7 ♜xb4 52 ♜xa6+
1-0

Smyslov–Sax
Tilburg, 1979



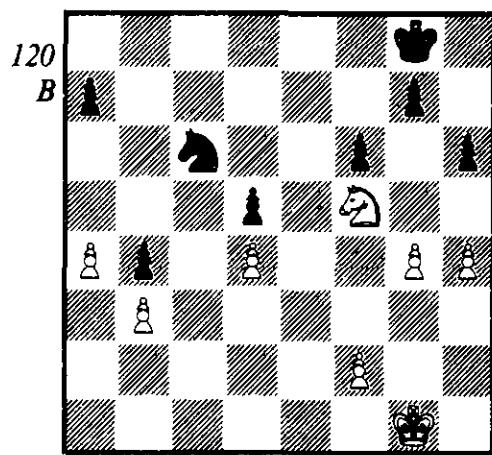
As in the previous example, the pawn configuration is symmetrical; again it is the better placement of the superior side's (Black) pieces that decides the issue, albeit by a hair's breadth.

30 ... ♜d4! 31 ♜e3 ♜d6 32 h4
♗c5 33 ♜f1 ♜b4 34 ♜e1 ♜c3 35
♗d1 c6 36 ♜c1 ♜f3 37 ♜e4 f5
His king and knight having occupied ideal posts, Black sets about creating weaknesses in White's camp.

38 ♜b2 f4 39 ♜c4 ♜d4 40 ♜e5
fxg3 41 fxg3 c5 42 a5 ♜xc2 43
AXB6 AXB6 44 ♜d7 ♜d4 45 ♜xb6
♘e2+ 46 ♜d1 ♜xg3 47 ♜d7
♗b4 48 ♜c2 ♜f5 49 ♜f8 ♜xh4

50 ♜xh7 ♜f5 51 ♜f6 ♜d4+ 52
♗d3 ♜xb3 53 ♜d7 ♜e6 54 ♜e5
g5 0-1.

Duz-Khotimirsky–Kan
Leningrad, 1933

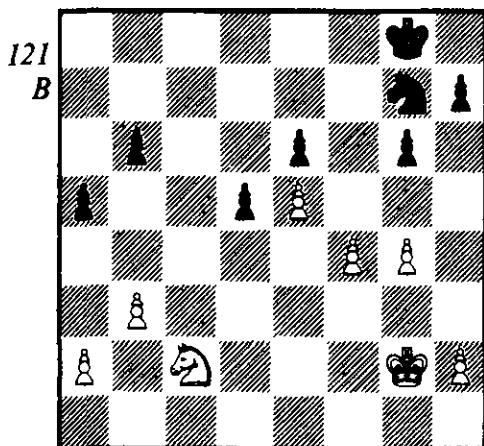


With a few forcing moves, Black exploits the weakness of the white pawn on b3 to obtain a menacing passed pawn:

1 ... g6! 2 ♜e3 2 ♜xh6+? ♜g7
3 g5 f5 leaves the knight trapped.
2 ... ♜xd4 3 ♜xd5 a5! Clearly, the passed pawn on the queenside is more important than the f6 pawn. 4 ♜xf6+ ♜f7 5 ♜e4
♜xb3 6 f4 ♜d4 7 ♜f2 b3 This pawn will immobilize a white piece. 8 ♜e3 b2 9 ♜d2 ♜b3 10
♜b1 ♜c5 11 ♜d4 ♜xa4 12 ♜c4
♜b6+ 13 ♜c5 ♜d7+ 14 ♜c4 14
♜b5 ♜f6 15 g5 h5! catches the white king napping.

14 ... h5! 15 gxh5 gxh5 16 ♜b3
♜f6 17 ♜xb2 ♜f5 18 ♜c3 ♜xf4
19 ♜c4 ♜g4 20 ♜b5 ♜xh4 21
♜c3 ♜g4 22 ♜d5 ♜f3! 23 ♜c7
♜f8 54 ♜xa5 h4 25 ♜b5 ♜e6
0-1.

Flohr–Jac. Bolbochan
Stockholm, 1937



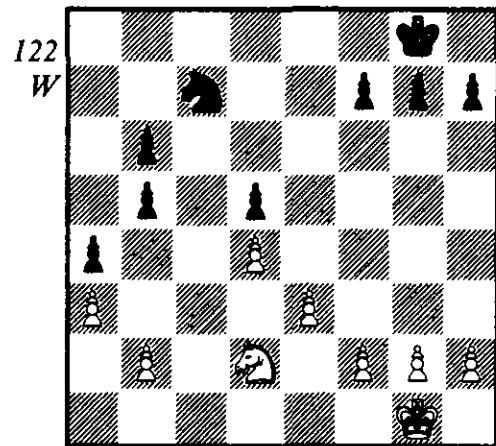
Black's three pawn-islands are inferior to White's two and d4 will serve as a pivot for White's knight and/or king.

42 ... ♜f7 42 ... ♜e8–c7, to contest b5, is a better defence. 43 ♜d4 ♜e7 44 ♜g3 h6 Weakening, but White can force this move by playing ♜h4. 45 ♜f3 ♜d7 46 a3 ♜e7 47 b4 axb4 48 axb4 ♜d7 49 ♜e3 ♜e7 50 ♜d3 ♜d7 51 ♜b5 Threatening 52 ♜d6 and compelling Black's answer.

51 ... ♜e8 52 ♜e3 ♜e7 53 ♜d4 ♜d7 54 f5! A timely thrust which, despite the ensuing reduction in material, enhances the strength of White's king. 54 ... gxf5 55 gxf5 exf5 56 ♜xd5 ♜c7+ Or 56 ... h5 57 e6+ ♜e7 58 ♜e5 ♜g7 59 ♜d4. 57 ♜xc7 ♜xc7 58 ♜d4 b5 59 ♜e3 ♜d7 60 ♜f4 ♜e6 61 h3 h5 62 h4 1–0

Botvinnik–Keres
Moscow, 1948

Black's doubled pawns are a serious impediment. In addition, White will soon take control of the key square b4.



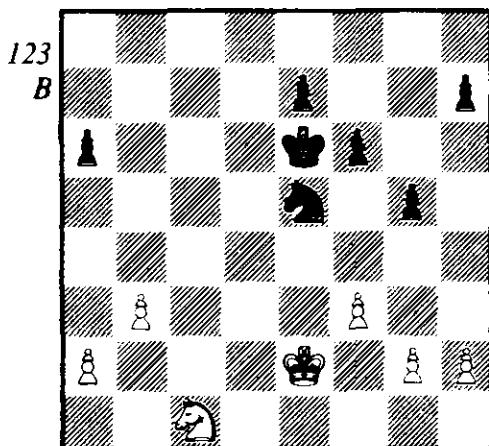
30 ♜b1 ♜f8 31 ♜f1 ♜e7 32 ♜e2 ♜d6 33 ♜d3 ♜c6 34 ♜c3 ♜e8 35 ♜a2 f6 36 f3 ♜c7 36 ... f5 cedes the square e5. 37 ♜b4+ ♜d6 38 e4 First blood: a passed pawn. 38 ... dxе4+ 39 fxе4 ♜e6 40 ♜e3 ♜c7 41 ♜d3 ♜e6 42 ♜d5 ♜c6 43 h4 ♜d8 44 ♜f4 ♜d6 45 ♜h5! The positional pressure is about to bear material fruit. 45 ... ♜e6 46 ♜e3 ♜e7 47 d5 ♜c5 Clearly, the pawn ending after 47 ... g6 48 ♜xf6 is hopeless.

48 ♜xg7 ♜d6 49 ♜e6! ♜d7 50 ♜d4 ♜e5 51 ♜g7 ♜c4 52 ♜f5+ ♜c7 53 ♜c3 ♜d7 54 g4 ♜e5 55 g5 fxg5 56 hxg5 ♜f3 57 ♜b4 ♜xg5 58 e5 h5 59 e6+ ♜d8 60 ♜xb5 1–0

Tarjan–Torre
Cleveland, 1975

Black's centralized pieces grant him a small advantage, but it is only because of White's collaboration that he contrives to convert it into victory.

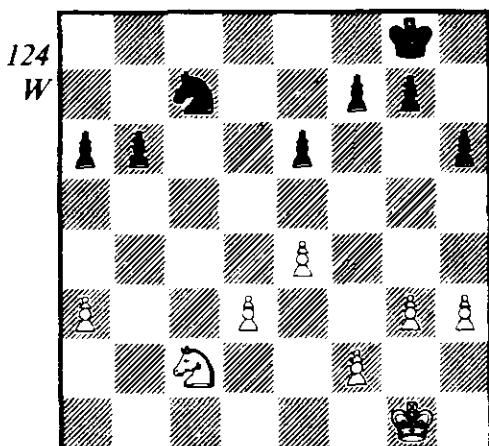
34 ... ♜d5! 35 ♜e3 f5 36 g3 ♜c6 37 h4? 37 ♜d3 is correct. The text move allows Black to drive the white king away from the centre, thus facilitating the pen-



retiation of Black's king. 37 ... f4+! 38 ♜f2 fxg3+ 39 ♜xg3 gxh4+ 40 ♜xh4 ♜d4! The rest is easy.

41 ♜e2+ ♜e3 42 ♜c3 ♜xf3 43 a3 e5 44 b4 e4 45 b5 axb5 46 ♜xb5 e3 47 ♜c3 ♜e7! 48 ♜b5 ♜f5+ 0-1

Andersson-Medina Palma de Mallorca, 1972



At first sight, Black's queenside majority appears to offer him good prospects. Alas, in this case White's central supremacy renders it impotent.

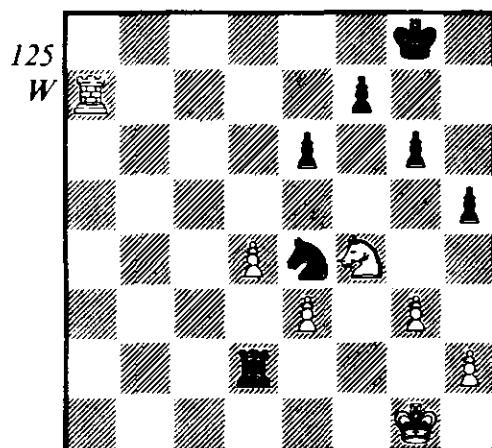
1 d4! Hindering ... e5 and thus denying the square e6 to the black knight. 1 ... f5 2 f3 ♜f7 3 ♜f2 ♜e7 4 ♜e3 ♜d6 5 ♜d3 g6 This weakens the pawn formation. Pre-

ferable is 5 ... b5, to prevent ♜c4.

6 ♜c4 White's advantage is obvious. 6 ... ♜e8 7 ♜b4 b5+ 8 ♜c3 a5 9 ♜d3 fxe4 10 fxe4 ♜e7 11 ♜e5 ♜d6 12 ♜d3 Not 12 ♜xg6+ ♜f6. 12 ... ♜f6 13 ♜c6 With Black's king tied down to the kingside, White is free to operate on the other wing.

13 ... ♜c4 14 ♜c3 e5? 14 ... ♜xa3 is more stubborn. 15 dxe5+ ♜e6 16 a4 ♜b6 17 axb5 a4 18 ♜b4 and White won easily enough.

Klein-Reshevsky USA, 1935

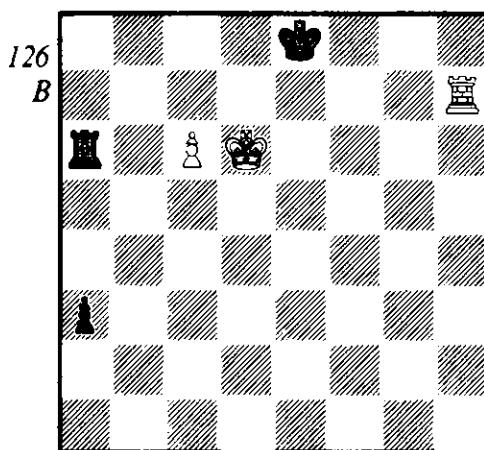


The dominating posts of the black knight and rook, together with Black's superior pawn structure, render White's position indefensible.

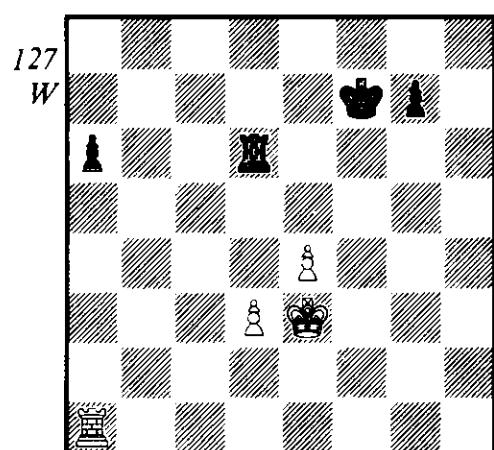
34 ♜a1 ♜c3 35 ♜e1 ♜g7 36 ♜h3 ♜e4! 37 ♜f4 ♜h6 The king's entry is all that is needed to clinch the game. 38 ♜e2 ♜d1+ 39 ♜g2 g5 40 ♜h3 ♜c3 41 ♜c2 ♜d3 42 ♜f2 ♜g6 43 ♜g1 ♜f5 44 ♜f3 Material loss is unavoidable. 44 ... ♜d1+ 45 ♜e2 ♜xe3+ 46 ♜xd1 ♜xf3 and Black won a few moves later.

7 Rooks

Bogoljubow–Thomas
Hastings, 1922



Alekhine–Alexander
Margate, 1937



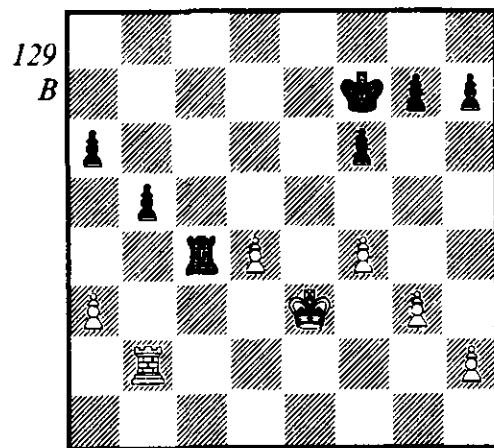
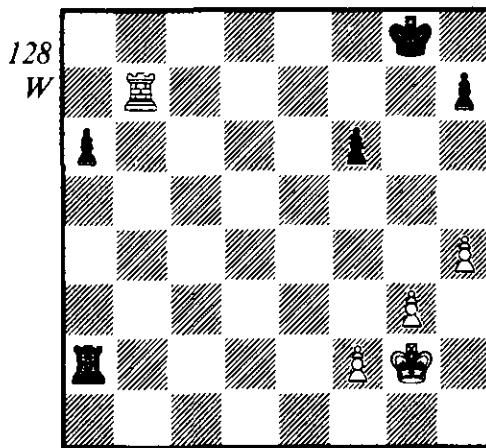
Need it be said that even in simplified positions, with little material on the board, care is always advisable. In the above position, for example, White played 72 ♜c5, unpinning his c-pawn. Instead of responding with 72 ... ♜d8=, Black carelessly advanced his a-pawn 72 ... a2? and had to admit defeat after 73 c7 ♜a5+ 74 ♜b6 ♜a6+ 75 ♜c5 ♜a5+ 76 ♜c6 ♜a6+ 77 ♜d5 ♜a5+ 78 ♜e6 ♜a6+ 79 ♜d5 ♜a5+ 80 ♜c4 ♜a4+ 81 ♜b3 ♜a3+ 82 ♜c2 ♜c3+ 83 ♜b2 1–0 If 83 ... ♜c1 84 ♜xa2.

Other things being equal, connected passed pawns are usually a more potent weapon than disconnected ones.

1 ♜a5! ♜b6 2 d4 ♜b3+ 3 ♜f4 ♜b4 4 d5 ♜b6 5 ♜c5! Transferring the rook to an ideal square, a7, whence it restrains the a-pawn from the rear and controls the seventh rank. 5 ... ♜b4 6 ♜c7+ ♜f8 7 ♜a7! 1–0 White simply advances his pawns.

Chigorin–Tarrasch
Budapest, 1896

With a rook on the seventh rank and one pawn chain versus three islands, White is clearly better. In such positions, one or



two errors on Black's part are a luxury he can ill afford.

1 ♜f3 h5 1 ... ♜a4, to cut off the white king (and if 2 h5 h6), is also adequate. **2 ♜c7 ♜a5** **3 ♜f4 ♜f8** **4 f3 ♜g8** **5 ♜a7 ♜f8** **6 g4** Creating a passed pawn of his own.

6 ... hxg4 **7 fxg4 ♜a1?** Letting the king traverse Black's fourth rank spells disaster. **7 ... ♜g8!** **8 h5 ♜b5!** **9 ♜xa6 ♜g7** **10 ♜a7+ ♜g8** **11 h6 ♜c5** **12 ♜g7+ ♜f8!** **13 ♜g6 ♜f7** **14 h7 ♜c8** **15 ♜h6 ♜g7** **16 ♜h1 ♜a8!** draws.

8 ♜f5 ♜f1+ **9 ♜g6 ♜f4** **10 g5! fxg5** **11 hxg5 ♜a4** **11 ... ♜g4** **12 ♜xa6 ♜g1** **13 ♜a8+ ♜e7** **14 ♜g8** gives rise to a theoretically lost position. **12 ... ♜a8+ ♜e7** **13 ♜h6** **1-0**

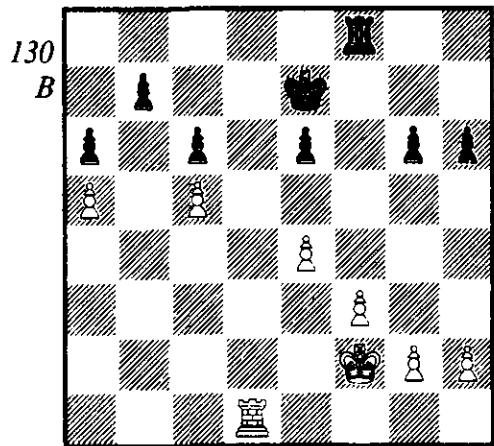
Marshall–Chigorin Barmen, 1905

The obvious **1 ... ♜c3+** **2 ♜e4 ♜xa3** **3 ♜d5** or **3 ♜c2** renders the win uncertain. Instead Black concentrates on augmenting the positional pressure:

1 ... ♜e6! **2 ♜b3** Forced. **2 ♜e4 f5+** **3 ♜d3 ♜d5** **4 ♜b4 ♜xb4** **5 axb4 h6** **6 h3 h5** results in

a lost pawn ending. **2 ... ♜d5** **3 ♜d3 f5** **4 h3 h5** Now White cannot avert the loss of a pawn, after which the outcome is certain.

Gligoric–Filip Zagreb, 1955

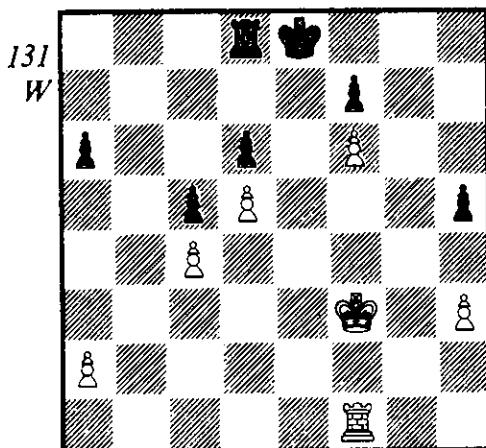


Whilst White's two pawns on the queenside hold Black's three, threats of invasion with White's rook along the d-file, and with his king on the kingside, soon result in the creation of a passed pawn.

32 ... ♜f7 **33 ♜e3 ♜f6** **34 h4 h5** **35 ♜f4!** **e5+** Forced: otherwise the white rook and king cannot be prevented from penetrating. But now White can create a passed pawn.

36 ♜e3 ♜g7 37 g3 ♜e7 38 f4 exf4+ 39 gxf4 ♜f6 40 ♜d6+ ♜g7 41 e5 ♜f7 42 ♜e4 ♜g7 43 f5! Simplest. 43 ... gxf5+ 44 ♜xf5 1-0

Botvinnik-Tal
Moscow, 1961



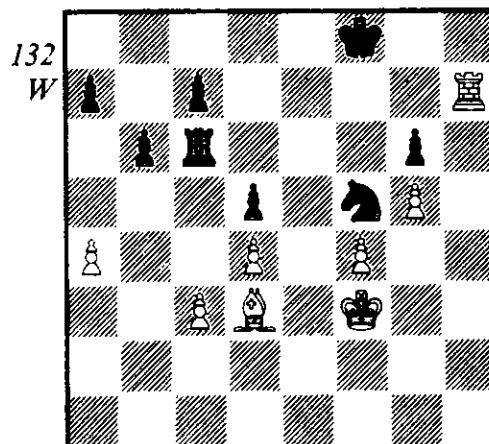
Here the pawn on f6 is a thorn in Black's flesh and both White's king and rook are far superior to Black's. The game concluded:

47 ♜b1! ♜f8 48 ♜b6 ♜g8 49 ♜f4! The hasty 49 ♜xa6 costs White his pride: the pawn on f6 (49 ... ♜h7-g6). 49 ... ♜h7 50 ♜g5 ♜g8+ 51 ♜xh5 ♜g3 Black has obtained some counterplay. However, two of his pawns are still under attack.

52 h4 ♜e3 Or 52 ... ♜c3 53 ♜xa6 ♜xc4 54 ♜xd6. 53 ♜xd6 ♜e5+ 54 ♜g4 ♜g6 55 ♜f4 ♜f5+ 56 ♜e3 ♜h5 57 ♜xa6 ♜xh4 58 ♜d3 ♜f5 59 ♜c6 1-0

Capablanca-Tartakower
New York, 1924

Black's prospects appear good, but Capablanca, who had envisaged the position several moves

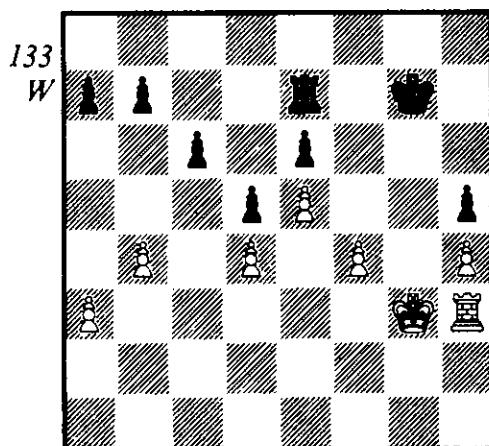


beforehand, proceeds to weave a mating net around the black king by mobilizing his own!

34 ♜xf5 gxf5 35 ♜g3! ♜xc3+ 36 ♜h4 ♜f3 36 ... ♜c1 37 ♜h5! 37 g6! ♜xf4+ 38 ♜g5 ♜e4 38 ... ♜xd4 39 ♜f6 leads to mate. 39 ♜f6 Note how the black pawn on f5 shields White from ... ♜f4+.

39 ... ♜g8 40 ♜g7+ ♜h8 41 ♜xc7 ♜e8 42 ♜xf5! Establishing material equality while maintaining his positional advantage. 42 ... ♜e4 43 ♜f6 ♜f4+ 44 ♜e5 ♜g4 45 g7+! ♜g8 46 ♜xa7 ♜g1 47 ♜xd5 1-0

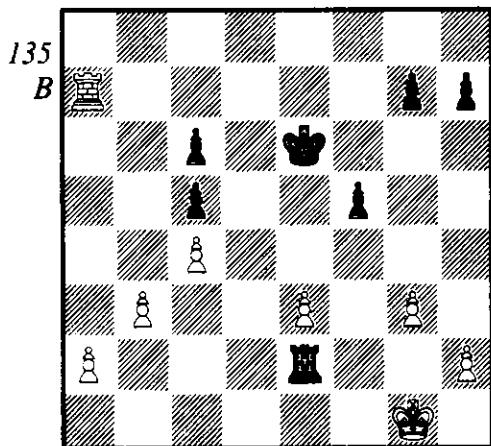
Capablanca-Eliskases
Moscow, 1936



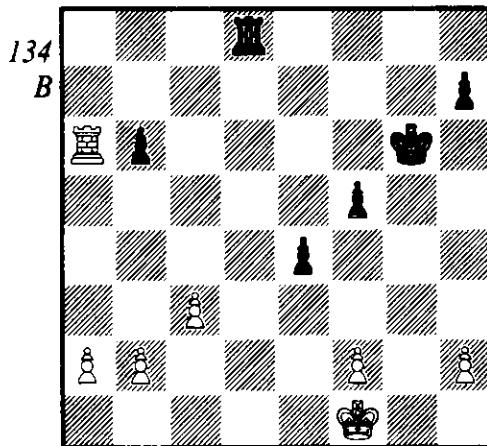
As in his celebrated game against Tartakower (diagram

132), Capablanca resorts to a favourite strategem: activating his king.

48 f5! exf5 48 ... ♜f7 loses to **49 ♜f4 ♜e8 50 ♜g3. 49 ♜f4 ♜e6 50 ♜xf5 ♜g6 50 ... ♜f7** is answered by **51. ♜g3-g5 51 e6! ♜g4 52 ♜e5 ♜e4+ 53 ♜d6 ♜xd4 54 ♜e3 1-0**



Tarrasch–Rubinstein *San Sebastian, 1911*



Black is a pawn down and the b6 pawn is under attack. Passive defence with **1 ... ♜d6** or **1 ... ♜b8** is doomed to failure. Rubinstein grasps his only chance: to mobilize his rook and king.

1 ... ♜d2! 2 ♜xb6+ ♜g5 3 ♜e1 3 a4 f4 4 a5 f3! is more than welcome to Black. **3 ... ♜c2 4 ♜b5 ♜g4! 5 h3+ ♜xh3 6 ♜xf5 ♜xb2** and Black drew without effort.

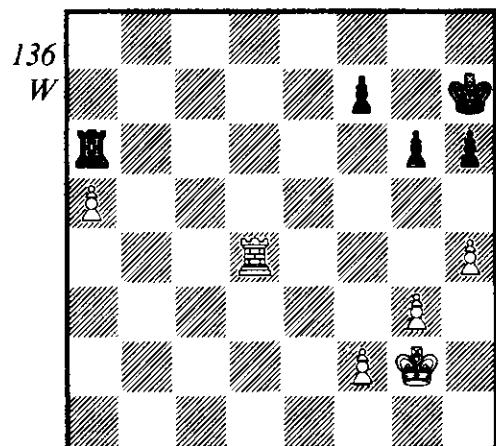
Lilienthal–Smyslov *Leningrad, 1941*

Like Rubinstein before him, the youthful Smyslov mobilizes his king to force a draw, this time by

perpetual check, from a precarious position.

29 ... g5! 30 ♜xh7 ♜xa2 31 ♜h6+ ♜e5 32 ♜xc6 ♜e4 33 ♜xc5 f4! 34 exf4 ♜f3! The black king has sheltered himself behind the white f-pawn and the threat of mate obliges White to concede a draw. **35 h3 ♜a1+ 36 ♜h2 ♜a2+ ½:½**

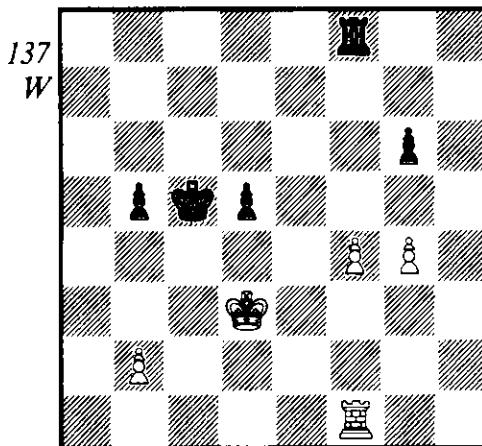
Alekhine–Capablanca *Buenos Aires, 1927*



Alekhine won the 34th game of the match—and with it, became World Champion—with **1 ♜a4**. The necessity of blocking the passed pawn with the rook severely curtails Black's mobility. Unlike Black, White has at his

disposal an endless reserve of rook moves along the a-file. An eventual zugzwang is inevitable: see Lasker–Rubinstein, the next example, for an illustration of the strength of a passed pawn supported by a rook from the rear.

Lasker–Rubinstein
St. Petersburg, 1914



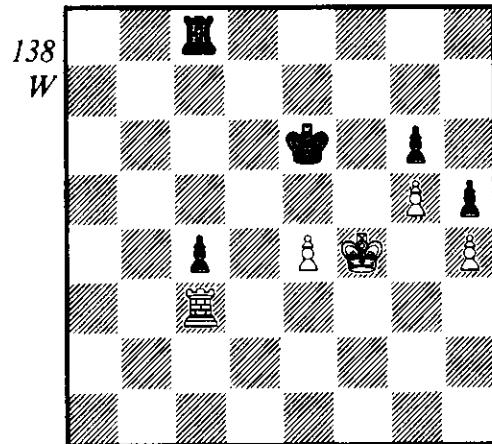
57 f5 gxf5 58 gxf5 58 xf5? g8 59 g5 is wrong: the rook belongs *behind* the passed pawn.
58 ... xf6 59 xf4 b4 The threat 60 b4+ obliges Black to choose between the text move and 59 ... d4, on which could follow: 60 e4 d6 61 f3 c4 62 b3+ b4 63 d3 c5 64 e5 d8 65 f6 e8+ 66 f5 d5 67 f7 f8 68 f6 e4 69 d1 d3 70 e7 h8 71 f8 (xf) xf8 72 xf8 e3 73 e7 d2 74 d6 and wins.

60 b3 Whilst Black is about to run out of harmless waiting moves and will soon be obliged to give ground with a rook move,

White can resort to endless waiting moves with his rook along the f-file. In the final stage, all transitions into a pawn ending are lost for Black.

60 ... xf7 61 f6 d6 62 d4 e6 63 f2 d6 64 a2! c7 64 ... xf6 leads to a lost pawn-ending. 65 a6+ d7 Now 66 xd5 c3 67 a8! f3 68 f7! xf7 69 a7+ etc. is the shortest way to victory. 66 b6 1–0 66 ... c3 67 xb4 f3 68 e5 f1 69 f4 xf4 70 xf4 e6 71 f7 xf7 72 e5.

Botvinnik–Euwe
Groningen, 1946



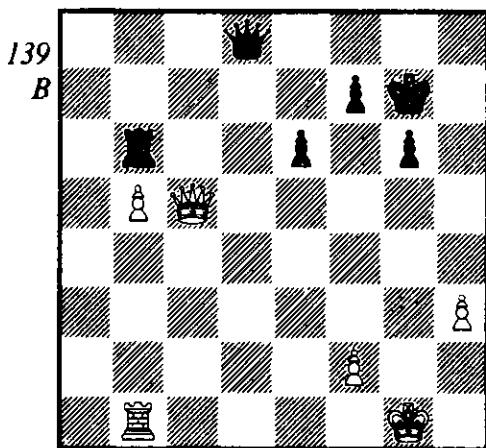
Here, the particular formation of pawns on the king's flank enables the weaker side (White) to scrape a draw in the pawn ending which ensues after the exchange of rooks: a truly miraculous escape.

41 e3 e5 42 c2! c3 43 d3 d8+ Unlike the previous ending, White need not fear the pawn ending after 43 ... c7 44 xc3! xc3+ 45 xc3 xe4 46

$\mathbb{Q}c4$ and draws by bringing his king to f6.

44 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ Simplest. 44 ... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ A last try. 45 $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$ 46 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 47 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ 47 ... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 48 $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ etc. 48 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ 49 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 50 $\mathbb{Q}f6+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ 51 $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ $\frac{1}{2}:\frac{1}{2}$

Korchnoi–Timman
Hilversum, 1982

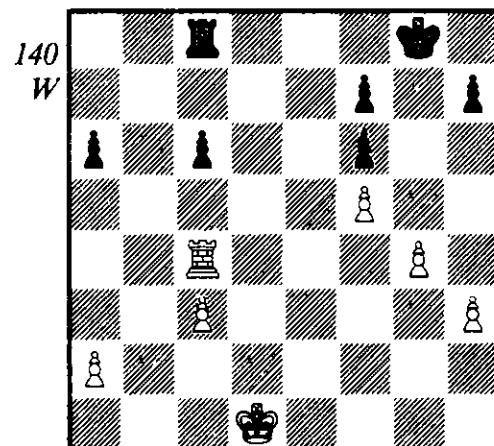


Although material is even, White's passed pawn limits the scope of Black's major pieces. Rather than defend patiently, Timman offers to exchange queens—which leads to a hopeless rook and pawn ending.

32 ... $\mathbb{Q}d6?$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}xd6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ 34 $b6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 35 $b7$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $f6$ 39 $h4$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}b6+!$ To prevent 40 ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$. 40 ... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 40 ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 41 $f4$ and $h4-h5$ is no improvement. 41 $f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 42 $f4!$ Black is without a move and must concede White a passed pawn. 42 ... $e5$ 43 $f5$ $gxf5+$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 45 $h5$ $e4$ 46

$\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 47 $h6$ $e3$ 48 $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 49 $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 50 $\mathbb{Q}h3!$ 1–0

Panno–Polugayevsky
Petrópolis, 1973



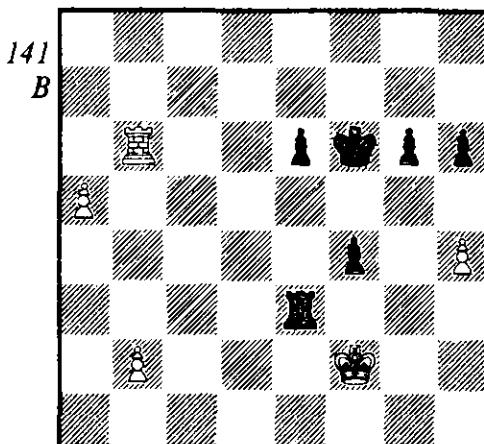
White's rook is more active than Black's and his kingside pawns are likewise the stronger.

25 $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ On 28 ... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ White marches his king to c5. 29 $a4$ $h5$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $h4$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}xh3$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ As usual, the rook belongs *behind* the passed (a-) pawn. 35 ... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 36 $a5$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 37 $a6$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $h3$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 40 $a7$ $h2$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 42 $c4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 1–0

Reshevsky–Fischer
Los Angeles, 1961

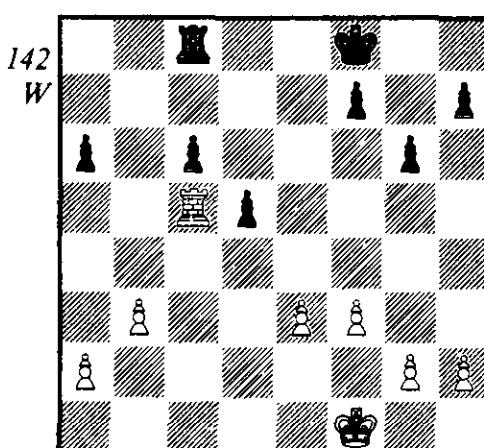
In this ending, Black spends two tempi just in order to position his rook at the rear of the white pawns.

37 ... $\mathbb{Q}e5!!$ 38 $b4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ 39 $a6$ $\mathbb{Q}a3$ From now on, Black's pawns, supported by both his



king and rook, will be able to advance more rapidly than White's. 40 $\mathbb{R}c6$?! Later analysis demonstrated that even the superior 40 b5 does not suffice to save White. 40 ... g5 41 hxg5+ $\mathbb{R}xg5$ 42 b5 g4 43 $\mathbb{R}c8$ $\mathbb{R}f5$ 44 b6 g3+ 45 $\mathbb{R}e1$ $\mathbb{R}a1$ + 46 $\mathbb{R}e2$ g2 47 $\mathbb{R}f8$ + $\mathbb{R}e4$ 48 $\mathbb{R}xf4$ + $\mathbb{R}xf4$ 49 b7 g1+(\mathbb{R}) 49 ... $\mathbb{R}e4$ decides instantly. 50 b8 (\mathbb{R})+ $\mathbb{R}f5$ 1-0 (after White's checks were exhausted).

Flohr–Vidmar Nottingham, 1936



A celebrated ending. White's more active rook and king, the frequently recurring theme of two

pawn-islands versus three and Flohr's patience suffice to convert his trumps into victory. Whether they should prevail against an impeccable defence is another matter.

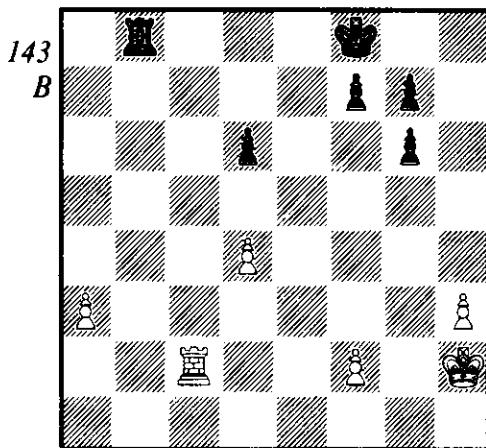
32 $\mathbb{R}e2$ $\mathbb{R}e7$ 33 $\mathbb{R}d3$ $\mathbb{R}d6$ 34 $\mathbb{R}a5$ $\mathbb{R}a8$ 35 $\mathbb{R}d4$ f5 36 b4 $\mathbb{R}b8$ Smyslov and Levenfish have suggested 36 ... $\mathbb{R}c7$, so as to free the rook from its defensive duties, continuing with 37 $\mathbb{R}c5$ $\mathbb{R}b7$ 38 $\mathbb{R}d6$ $\mathbb{R}e8$ 39 $\mathbb{R}a3$ d4! 40 exd4 $\mathbb{R}e2$ 41 $\mathbb{R}c3$ $\mathbb{R}xg2$ 42 $\mathbb{R}xc6$ $\mathbb{R}xh2$ 43 a4 g5!. Here it seems that 38 a4 offers White a better winning chance, e.g., 38 ... $\mathbb{R}e8$ 39 b5 cxb5! (39 ... axb5 40 axb5 cxb5 41 $\mathbb{R}xb5$ + and 42 $\mathbb{R}d4$) 40 axb5 $\mathbb{R}xe3$ 41 bxa6+ $\mathbb{R}a7$ 42 $\mathbb{R}a2$.

37 a3 $\mathbb{R}a8$ 38 e4! Enhancing the scope of his rook along the fifth rank. 38 ... fxe4 39 fxe4 dxe4 40 $\mathbb{R}xe4$ $\mathbb{R}a7$ Smyslov and Levenfish recommend 40 ... $\mathbb{R}c7$ –b6, aiming at ... a5 at an opportune moment. 41 $\mathbb{R}f4$ h6 42 h4 $\mathbb{R}e6$ 43 $\mathbb{R}g4$ $\mathbb{R}a8$ 44 h5! g5 44 ... gxh5+ 45 $\mathbb{R}xh5$ $\mathbb{R}g8$ 46 g4 is inadequate. After the text move, the h6 pawn becomes an obvious target.

45 g3 $\mathbb{R}a7$ 46 $\mathbb{R}f3$ $\mathbb{R}a8$ 47 $\mathbb{R}e4$ $\mathbb{R}a7$ 48 $\mathbb{R}d4$ $\mathbb{R}d6$ 49 $\mathbb{R}e4$ $\mathbb{R}e6$ 50 $\mathbb{R}e5$ +! Turning his attention to the h6 pawn. 50 ... $\mathbb{R}d6$ 51 $\mathbb{R}e8$ c5 52 $\mathbb{R}d8$ + $\mathbb{R}c6$ If 52 ... $\mathbb{R}c7$ 53 $\mathbb{R}h8$, answering 53 ... cxb4 with either 54 axb4 or 54 $\mathbb{R}h7$ + etc. 53 $\mathbb{R}c8$ + $\mathbb{R}b6$ 54 $\mathbb{R}xc5$ $\mathbb{R}h7$ 55 $\mathbb{R}e5$ $\mathbb{R}c6$ 56 $\mathbb{R}e6$ + $\mathbb{R}b5$ 57 $\mathbb{R}f5$ $\mathbb{R}f7$ + 58 $\mathbb{R}f6$ 1-0

Spielmann–Rubinstein

St. Petersburg, 1909



White's pawns are dispersed and Black's king is closer to the centre of events.

40 ... ♜a8 Going after a pawn with **40 ... ♜b3** grants White counterplay: **41 ♜a2 ♜d3 42 a4 41 ♜c3** On principle, both **41 ♜c6 ♜e7 42 ♜c7+ ♜f6** (**42 ... ♜e6 43 d5+**) **43 ♜c6 ♜e6 44 ♜c7 ♜a5 45 ♜b7**; and **41 ♜a2 ♜a4 42 ♜g3**, in order to push the a-pawn forward as soon as the black rook leaves a4, should offer White more fighting chances than the text move.

41 ... ♜a4 42 ♜d3 ♜e7 43 ♜g3 ♜e6 44 ♜f3 White cannot prevent the black king from occupying d5: **44 d5+ ♜e5 44 ... ♜d5 45 ♜e2 g5!** It is too early to capture the pawn: **45 ... ♜xd4 46 ♜e3!**; so Black quietly strengthens his position.

46 ♜b3 f6 47 ♜e3 47 ♜b7 ♜xa3 48 ♜xg7 ♜xh3 is equally unsatisfactory. **47 ... ♜c4 48 ♜d3 d5 49 ♜d2 ♜a8 50 ♜c2 ♜a7 51 ♜d2 ♜e7 52 ♜c3+** White

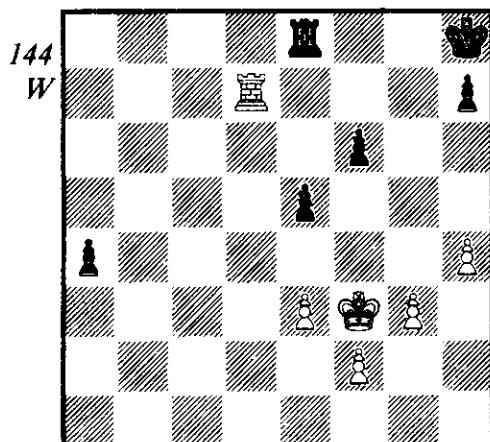
cannot avoid the loss of a pawn: **52 ♜c2** (**52 ♜e3 ♜b7!**) **52 ... ♜e2+ 53 ♜d2 ♜xd2+ 54 ♜xd2 ♜b3!**.

52 ... ♜xd4 53 a4 ♜a7 54 ♜a3 ♜a5! It is important to prevent the passed pawn from advancing too close to the queening square. This way the king is also able to keep an eye on it. **55 ♜a1 ♜c4 56 ♜e3** Or **56 ♜c1+ ♜b3 57 ♜c7 ♜xa4** and **... ♜f4**. However, in this line (**56 ♜c1**), **57 ♜b1+ ♜a3** (**57 ... ♜xa4 58 ♜d3**) **58 ♜b7 ♜xa4 59 ♜xg7 ♜f4 60 ♜e2 ♜b3 61 ♜c7!** constitutes a better try.

56 ... d4+ 57 ♜d2 ♜f5 58 ♜e1 On **58 a5** Black captures the pawn on f2 and returns with his rook to a8. **58 ... ♜b4 59 ♜e2 ♜a5** Frees the rook. **60 ♜a3 ♜f4 61 ♜a2 ♜h4 62 ♜d3 62 ♜a3 ♜b4 62 ... ♜xh3+ 63 ♜xd4 ♜h4+** **64 ♜d3 ♜xa4 65 ♜e2 ♜f4** with a technical win. **0–1** A classic ending.

Korchnoi–Tal

Wijk aan Zee, 1968

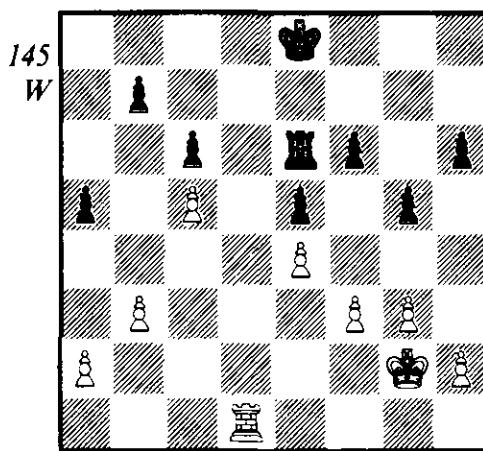


With the a-pawn about to fall and the white king about to enter

f5, Black's position is beyond repair:

44 ♜a7 ♜b8 **45** h5! Forestalling 45...h5. **45**...♝g8 **46** ♜xa4 ♜b7 46...f5, to hold back 47. ♜g4, fails against 47 ♜a5 ♜e8 48 e4. **47** ♜g4 ♜g7 **48** ♜a2 ♜h6 **49** ♜f5 ♜b6 **50** e4 ♜c6 **51** f4 exf4 **52** gxf4 ♜c5+ Otherwise **53** ♜a7–f7. **53** ♜xf6 1–0

Bronstein–Panno Amsterdam, 1954



White's winning chances revolve around the possibility of invading the light-coloured squares on the kingside with his king. As **30** ♜h3 immediately is answered by **30**...h5, he played: **30** h4 ♜e7? Correct is **30**...gxh4 **31** gxh4 h5!, to hinder the penetration of the white king.

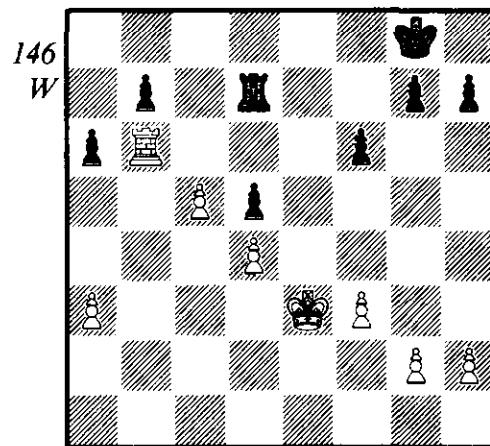
31 ♜d6 ♜f7 **32** h5! Fixing the pawn formation and preparing the ground for the king's entry to f5 via h3 and g4. **32**...g4! The only way to thwart White's plan. **33** fxg4 ♜e6 **34** ♜d8 The pawn ending is only a draw.

34...♜e8 **35** ♜d2 ♜e7 **36** ♜f3 ♜g8 White threatened **37** g5! followed by ♜g4–f5. **37** ♜d1 ♜g7

38 ♜b1! ♜g8 **39** b4 axb4 **40** ♜xb4 ♜b8 With the black rook tied to the defence of b7, White will be able to execute a breakthrough on the king's wing.

41 a4 ♜e6 **42** g5! fxg5 **43** a5 ♜f8+ Or **43**...♜a8 **44** ♜xb7 ♜xa5 **45** ♜h7, demonstrating the usefulness of **32** h5!. **44** ♜g4 ♜f7 Black has improved the position of his rook, but the weaknesses in his pawn structure are fatal. **45** ♜b6! ♜c7 **46** a6 bxa6 **47** ♜xa6 ♜f7 **48** ♜a8 1–0 If **48**...♜g7, to prevent **49** ♜h8. **49** ♜e8 or **49** ♜f5.

Szabo–Kotov Zurich, 1953

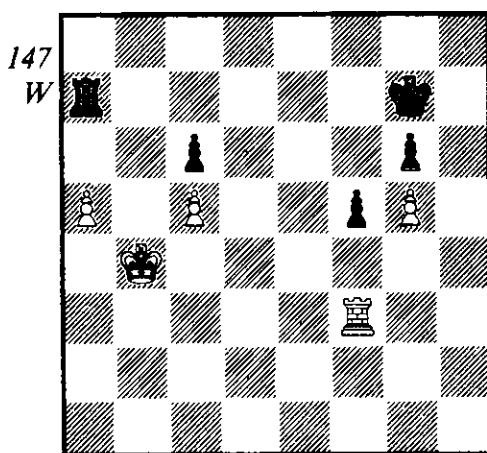


The vulnerability of the b7 and d5 pawns proves fatal.

35 h4 ♜f7 **36** h5 g5 **37** hxg6+ ♜xg6 Capturing with the pawn is slightly better. **38** ♜f4 h5 **39** g3 ♜h7 **40** ♜e3 ♜e7+ **41** ♜f4 ♜h7 **42** a4 h4 **43** gxh4 ♜xh4+ **44** ♜e3 ♜h7 **45** ♜d6 ♜e7+ **46** ♜d3 ♜g5 **47** ♜xd5+ ♜f4 **48** ♜d6 f5 **49** ♜f6 ♜e1 **50** ♜f7 ♜b1 **51** a5 ♜b3+ **52** ♜c4 ♜b1 **53** ♜f6 ♜h1 **54** ♜b6 ♜h7 **55** ♜b3 ♜d7 **56** d5

$\text{xe}5$ 57 $\text{d}6$ $\text{f}4$ 58 $\text{b}1$ $\text{h}7$ 59
 $\text{e}1+$ $\text{f}6$ 60 $\text{c}6$ $\text{bxc}6$ 61 $\text{c}5$
 $\text{h}2$ 62 $\text{d}1$ 1–0

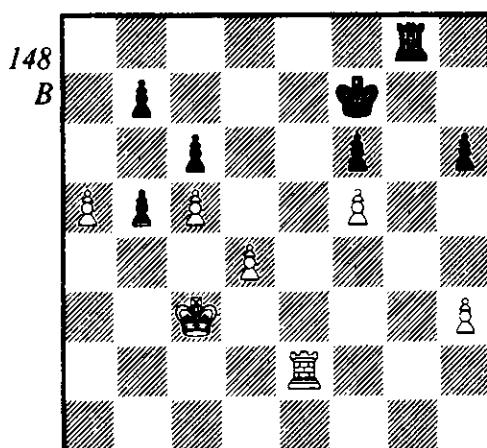
Bronstein–Boleslavsky
Moscow, 1950



58 $\text{a}3!$ The threat 59 a6 compels 58 ... $\text{a}6$ and gains a tempo for White. 58 ... $\text{a}6$ 59 $\text{d}3!$ $\text{f}7$ 59 ... $\text{a}7$ is defeated by 60 $\text{d}6$ $\text{b}7+$ 61 $\text{a}4$ $\text{f}4$ 62 a6 $\text{f}7$ 63 $\text{a}5$ $\text{f}3$ 64 $\text{f}1$.

60 $\text{d}6$ $\text{g}7$ 61 $\text{d}7+$ $\text{g}8$ 62
 $\text{a}4$ $\text{f}8$ 63 $\text{b}7$ $\text{f}4$ Otherwise comes $\text{b}6$. 64 $\text{b}4$ $\text{e}7$ 65
 $\text{xf}4$ $\text{e}6$ 66 $\text{f}6+$ $\text{d}5$ 67
 $\text{b}4$ 1–0

Korchnoi–Karpov
Baguio, 1978



This is the ending from the dramatic 31st game in the 1978 match

for the World Championship where Korchnoi, after trailing 2:5, and crawling up to 4:5, equalized the score at 5:5 (only to lose the 32nd game, and the match). White's winning chances depend principally on the possibility of penetrating the queenside with his king after a5–a6.

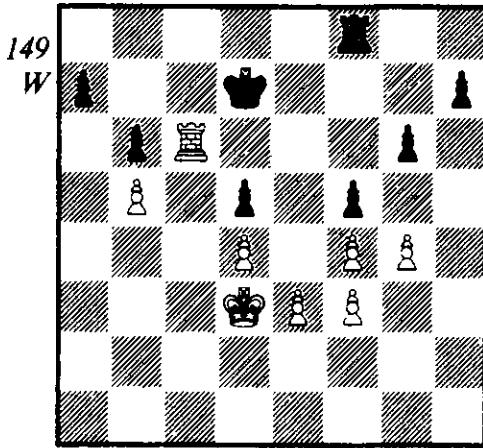
49 ... $\text{e}8?$ Surprisingly, the Soviet laboratory errs. 49 ... $\text{g}1$ and 49 ... $\text{g}3+$ 50 $\text{b}4$ $\text{d}3!$ have been suggested. 50 $\text{d}2$ $\text{e}4$ Black's plight is not easy. If, for instance, 50 ... $\text{e}1$ 51 $\text{d}5!$ $\text{c}1+$ 52 $\text{b}2!$ $\text{xc}5$ 53 $\text{dxc}6$ with good winning chances. But now White penetrates with his king. Therefore, it is possible that 50 ... $\text{e}7-\text{d}7$ was comparatively better.

51 $\text{b}4!$ $\text{e}8$ 52 $\text{a}6!$ $\text{bxa}6$ 53
 $\text{a}5$ $\text{d}7$ 54 $\text{b}6!$ 54 $\text{xa}6?$ $\text{c}7$ is feeble. 54 ... $\text{b}4$ 55 $\text{d}5$ $\text{cxd}5$ 56
 $\text{xd}5+$ $\text{c}8$ 57 $\text{d}3!$ A multi-purpose move, stopping the b-pawn and intending $\text{g}3$. 57 ...
 $\text{a}5$ 58 $\text{g}3$ $\text{b}3?$ 58 ... $\text{c}4!$ may still draw with best play.

59 $\text{c}6!$ $\text{b}8$ 60 $\text{xb}3+$ $\text{a}7$
61 $\text{b}7+$ $\text{a}6$ 62 $\text{b}6+$ $\text{a}7$ 63
 $\text{b}5$ $\text{a}4$ 64 $\text{xf}6$ $\text{f}4$ 65 $\text{xh}6$ $\text{a}3$
66 $\text{a}6+$ $\text{b}8$ 67 $\text{xa}3$ $\text{xf}5$ 68
 $\text{g}3$ $\text{f}6$ 69 $\text{g}8+$ $\text{c}7$ 70
 $\text{g}7+$ $\text{c}8$ 71 $\text{h}7$ 1–0

Rubinstein–Alekhine
Carlsbad, 1911

White's two pawn-clusters are superior to Black's three; all the more so, as the pawn on b5 restrains two pawns on a7 and b6

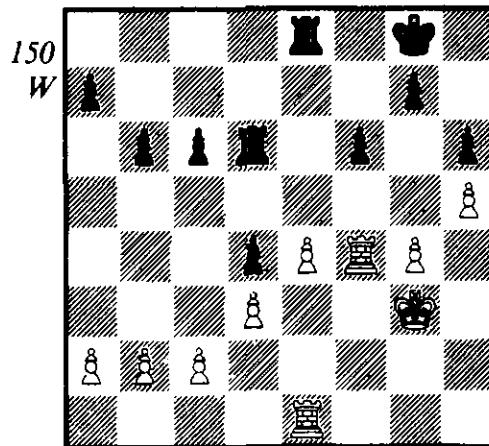
149
W

$\text{g}f8 \text{d}1 71 \text{e}8 \text{e}1 + 72 \text{d}8 \text{f}1 73 \text{d}7+!$ Not 73 $\text{e}7?$ $\text{a}1!$ 74 $\text{d}7+$ $\text{e}6$ and Black draws. 73 ... $\text{c}6 74 \text{e}8 \text{f}4 75 \text{e}7 \text{b}5 76 \text{c}7!$ 1-0 The conclusion might be: 76 ... $\text{e}4+$ 77 $\text{d}7 \text{f}4 78 \text{e}7 \text{e}4+$ 79 $\text{d}6 \text{f}4 80 \text{x}d5.$

Possibly the finest rook and pawn ending ever played.

Charousek–Pillsbury

Budapest, 1896



150

W

and the pawn on d5 is a potential liability.

46 $\text{e}2!$ $\text{f}7$ The pawn ending after 46 ... $\text{c}8$ 47 $\text{x}c8 \text{x}c8$ 48 gxf5 gxf5 49 $\text{e}4 \text{b}7$ 50 $\text{f}2$ is lost for Black. 47 $\text{f}2 \text{f}8 48 \text{g}3 \text{e}8 49 \text{c}3 \text{e}7 50 \text{h}4 \text{h}6$ 51 $\text{g}3$ Having induced an additional weakness in Black's camp, the king can return to d3 (threat: gxf5 gxf5 ; $\text{c}6 \text{e}6$; $\text{xe}6 \text{xe}6$; $\text{e}4$). Another plan is to play $\text{f}2$ and $\text{g}1$ (threat: gxf5). Black is therefore compelled to seek active counterplay.

51 ... $\text{h}5$ 52 $\text{h}4!$ $\text{h}7 53 \text{g}5 \text{fxg4} 54 \text{fxg4 hxg4} 55 \text{xg4 h}1$ To the passive 55 ... $\text{e}7$ 56 $\text{g}5 \text{e}6$, White responds with $\text{g}5\text{--h}6\text{--g}7\text{--f}7$ when ... $\text{d}6$, to guard against $\text{c}7+$ xc7 ; $\text{xe}6$, fails against $\text{a}3$. 56 $\text{g}5 \text{b}1$ 56 ... $\text{g}1+$ 57 $\text{f}6 \text{d}6$ is answered by 58 $\text{c}6+$ coupled with $\text{e}5!$. 57 $\text{a}3 \text{xb}5 58 \text{xa}7+ \text{d}6 59 \text{xg}6 \text{b}3 60 \text{f}5 \text{xe}3 61 \text{f}6 \text{g}3+ 62 \text{h}7 \text{f}3 63 \text{f}7 \text{f}4 64 \text{g}7 \text{g}4+ 65 \text{f}6 \text{f}4+ 66 \text{g}5! \text{f}1 67 \text{g}6 \text{g}1+ 67 ... \text{e}6 (67 ... $\text{f}4 68 \text{a}8) 68 \text{b}7 68 \text{f}6 \text{f}1+ 69 \text{g}7 \text{g}1+ 70$$

On the kingside, White's two pawns restrain Black's three, so White sets out making something out of his extra pawn in the centre.

30 $\text{f}5 \text{de}6 31 \text{f}4 \text{e}5$ More stubborn is 31 ... $\text{f}7$ 32 $\text{c}3$ (32 $\text{e}5 \text{g}5+$ 33 hxg6 xg6) 32 ... $\text{d}8 33 \text{c}4 \text{a}5!$ 34 $\text{b}1 \text{a}8$, which makes it more difficult for White to break through on the queenside 32 $\text{c}3!$ Confronting Black with a hard choice: on 32 ... dxc3 comes 33 bxc3 and 34 $\text{d}4$; on 32 ... $\text{c}5$ 33 cxd4 cxd4 comes 34 $\text{c}1$ and the rook penetrates. There remains: 32 ... $\text{xf}5+$ 33 $\text{gxf5 d}8 34 \text{c}4!$ White can now

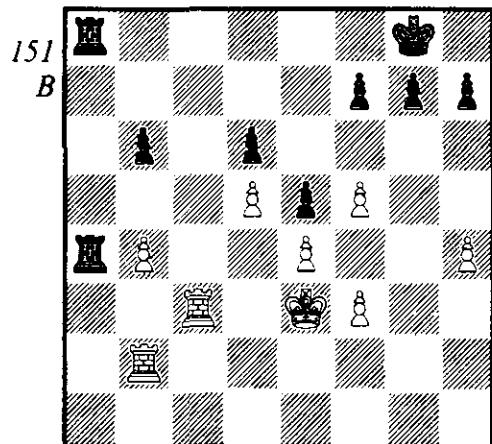
operate on both wings, not to mention the possibility e4–e5, which he holds in reserve. 34 ... ♜f7 35 b4 ♜e8 36 a4 ♜d7 37 ♜a1 ♜d8 38 a5 While White's initiative gains momentum, Black is reduced to waiting tactics.

38 ... ♜c7 39 axb6+ ♜xb6 40 ♜a5 ♜e7 41 ♜f3 ♜e5 52 c5+ ♜b7 43 ♜e2 ♜e8 44 ♜d2 ♜d8 45 ♜c2 a6 46 ♜b3 ♜d7 47 ♜c4 ♜d8 48 ♜a1 ♜d7 49 ♜e1 ♜c7 50 e5 The beginning of the end. 50 ... fxe5 51 ♜xe5 ♜b7 52 ♜e4 ♜d5 53 ♜e7+ ♜b8 54 ♜xg7 ♜xf5 55 ♜g6 ♜xh5 56 ♜xc6 ♜b7 57 ♜b6+ ♜a7 58 ♜xd4 ♜h1 59 ♜d5 h5 60 d4 h4 61 ♜h6! Combining attack and defence. 61 ... ♜b1 62 ♜h7+ ♜b8 63 ♜c6 ♜xb4 64 d5 ♜g4 65 ♜h8+ ♜a7 66 d6 1–0

Karpov–Miles

Bugojno, 1978

White's advantage in space—the protected pawns on d5 and f5—underlines the weakness of



the d6 pawn and ensures him a comfortable win.

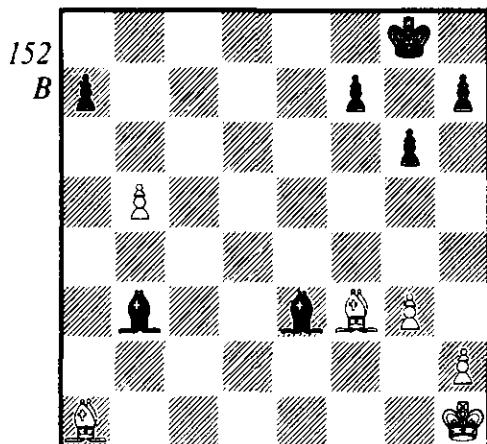
38 ... ♜a3 White can always bring about an exchange of rooks with ♜b2–c2. 39 ♜bc2 ♜f8 40 ♜xa3 ♜xa3+ 41 ♜f2 ♜b3 42 ♜c6 ♜xb4 43 ♜xd6 ♜e7 44 ♜c6 ♜d7 45 h5 Each white pawn plays its part. If 45 ... h6, to stop h5–h6, 46 f6! wins. 45 ... ♜b2+ 46 ♜g3 ♜b1

47 h6! Decisive. 47 ... g6 48 fxg6 hxg6 49 ♜c2! According to rule, the rook supports the passed pawn from the rear. 49 ... ♜g1+ 50 ♜g2 ♜a1 51 ♜h2 ♜a8 52 ♜g4 f6 53 ♜b2! ♜c7 54 ♜c2+ ♜b7 If 54 ... ♜d7 55 ♜c6. 55 d6 b5 56 d7 1–0

8 Two Bishops

Sköld-Keres

Stockholm, 1966–67

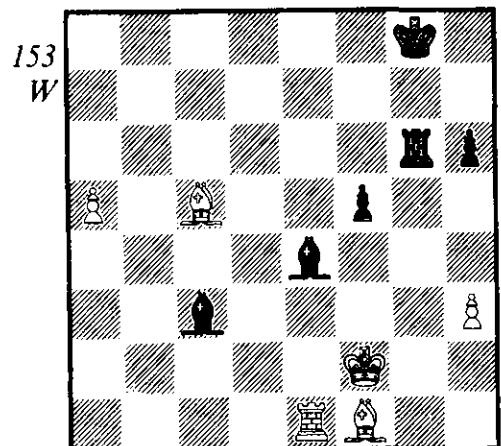


Mating threats generated by his bishops dispense Black from engaging in an otherwise tedious technical struggle.

31 ... $\mathbb{A}a4$ 32 $\mathbb{A}e2$ $a6!$ This would follow in reply to 32 $\mathbb{A}c6$ as well. 33 $\mathbb{A}g2$ $\mathbb{A}xb5$ 0–1

D. Bernstein-Murey
Israel, 1980

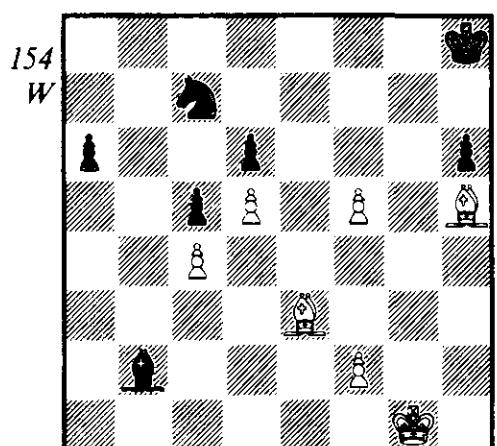
Here the sacrifice of the exchange is merely the most economic means of paving the way for the advance of White's passed a-pawn, which will cost Black a piece.



40 $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$ $f xe4$ 41 $a6$ $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ 42 $\mathbb{A}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ 43 $\mathbb{A}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 44 $a7$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 45 $\mathbb{A}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 46 $\mathbb{A}d5$ 1–0

Gelfer-Ein-Dor

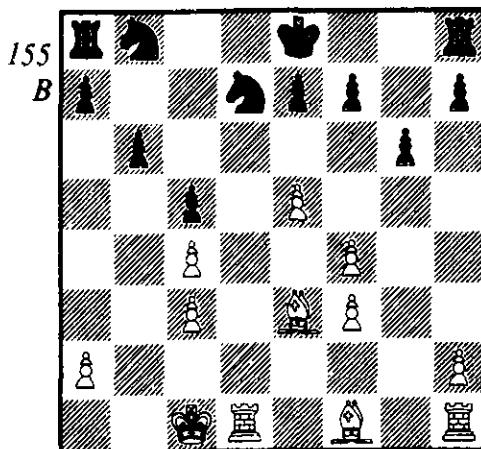
Israel, 1980



White's bishops paralyse the black knight.

35 $\mathbb{A}d2!$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ The alternative is 35 ... $\mathbb{A}a8$ 36 $\mathbb{A}a5$. 36 $\mathbb{A}a5$ $\mathbb{A}d8$ 37 $f6$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 38 $f4$ 1–0

Spassky–Gheorghiu
Moscow, 1979



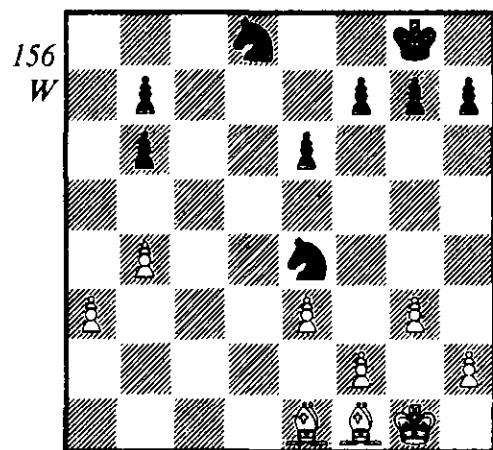
To avoid the wrath of the bishops, Black must endeavour to keep the position as closed as possible. However, 14 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ e6 16 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}hd1$ is useless (18 ... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ –a6–b5+). Nor is 15 ... $\mathbb{Q}c8$, to answer 16 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ with 16 ... f5 entirely satisfactory in view of 16 h4 (16 ... h5? 17 e6).

Black's actual move, 14 ... f5 also allowed White's bishops too much scope: 15 exf6! $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 16 f5! $\mathbb{Q}c6$ The pawn is poisoned: 16 ... gxf5 17 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ e6 18 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ (18 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}hd1$ $\mathbb{Q}bd7$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$) 19 $\mathbb{Q}hd1$. 17 fxg6 hxg6 18 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 19 h4 $\mathbb{Q}ad8$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}el$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 26 ... e6 and ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ is more stubborn. 27 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 28 ... $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 29 h5! 29 f4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 31 f5! Establishing an outside passed pawn.

31 ... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 32 fxg6+ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ e6 35 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$

36 a4 $\mathbb{Q}6h7$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 1–0 a4–a5 will saddle Black with an additional weakness, irrespective of whether he captures on a5 or not.

Korchnoi–Matanovic
Palma de Mallorca, 1968



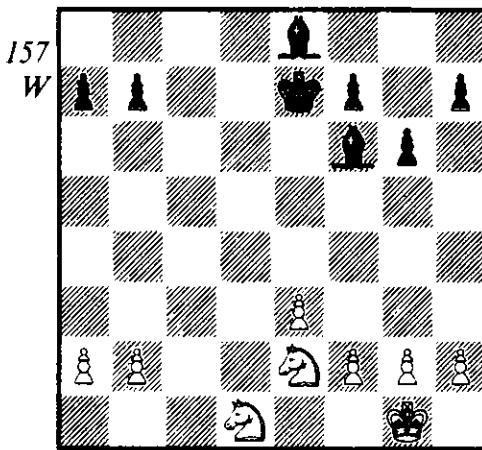
Here again the two knights do not stand a chance against the two bishops.

25 f3 A prelude to the mobilization of the bishops and king. 25 ... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 26 b5! Enhancing the influence of his bishop on e1, containing the knight on d8 and preventing ... b5 coupled with ... $\mathbb{Q}c4$. 26 ... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ f6 28 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ h6 29 $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 30 f4 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 31 e4 $\mathbb{Q}8f7$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ g6 Trying for 32 ... e5, which does not work at once because of 33 f5 and the king's journey to g6. If now 33 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ e5! 34 f5 gxf5 35 exf5 h5 and ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ resists.

33 e5! Opening lines. 33 ... fxe5 34 $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ exf4 35 gxf4 e5 36 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 37 a4 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 38 h4 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}b3+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 41 fxe5+ $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ h5 45 $\mathbb{Q}xb6$

2d7 The race of the passed pawns on opposite wings is scarcely even. 46 $\mathbb{A}d4+$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 47 a5 h4 48 $\mathbb{A}d5$ h3 49 $\mathbb{A}xb7$ $\mathbb{B}d6$ 50 $\mathbb{A}g1$ $\mathbb{B}c5+$ 51 $\mathbb{B}f3$ $\mathbb{B}e5+$ 52 $\mathbb{B}g3$ h2 53 $\mathbb{B}xh2$ $\mathbb{B}xb7$ 54 a6 $\mathbb{B}f3+$ 55 $\mathbb{B}h1$ 1–0 55 ... $\mathbb{B}c7$ 56 a7.

Capablanca–Fine New York, 1931

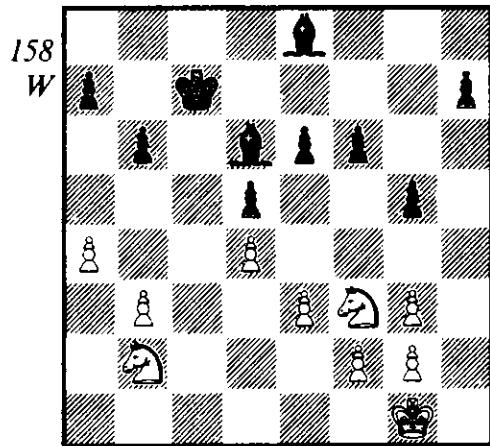


157

W

hold on the square c3; on 30 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{B}c2$ penetrates. 30 b3 $\mathbb{A}c6$ 31 h4 White is pushed: 31 $\mathbb{B}f4+$ $\mathbb{B}c3$ 32 $\mathbb{B}c1$ g5 33 $\mathbb{B}h3$ h6 34 f3 $\mathbb{B}d3$. 31 ... f6 32 $\mathbb{B}f4+$ $\mathbb{B}c3$ 33 $\mathbb{B}c1$ g5! 34 hxg5 fxg5 35 $\mathbb{B}e6$ $\mathbb{A}xg2$ 36 $\mathbb{B}xg5$ h5 37 $\mathbb{B}d1$ Or 37 f4 h4 38 f5 h3 39 $\mathbb{B}xh3$ $\mathbb{A}xh3$ 40 f6 $\mathbb{A}e6$ 37 ... h4 38 $\mathbb{B}e2$ h3 39 f3 h2 40 $\mathbb{B}e4+$ $\mathbb{B}b4$ 41 $\mathbb{B}f2$ h1 (\mathbb{W}) 42 $\mathbb{B}xh1$ $\mathbb{A}xh1$ 43 $\mathbb{B}f2$ $\mathbb{B}c3$ 44 e4 $\mathbb{B}d4$ 45 a3 a5 46 a4 b6 47 $\mathbb{B}g3$ $\mathbb{B}e3$ 48 e5 $\mathbb{A}xf3$ 0–1

Cintron–Botvinnik Munich, 1958



158

W

22 $\mathbb{B}dc3$ Preventing ... $\mathbb{A}b5$ but permitting the black king to advance. Here and his next move White ought to usher his king to the centre: 22 $\mathbb{B}f1-e1-d2$. 22 ... $\mathbb{B}g7$ To play ... $\mathbb{B}d6$ without fear of $\mathbb{B}e4+$. 23 $\mathbb{B}d4?$ $\mathbb{B}d6$ 24 $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{B}c5$ 25 $\mathbb{B}de2$ Acknowledging the loss of two tempi, a luxury White can ill afford.

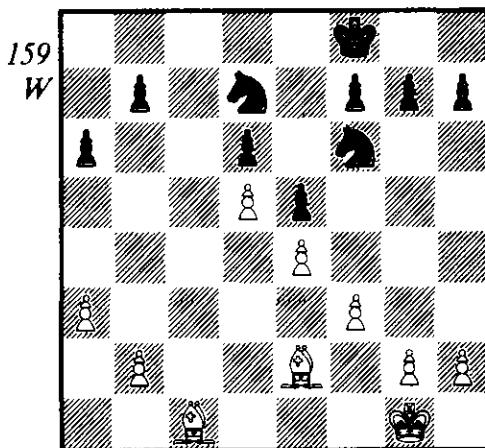
25 ... $\mathbb{B}c4$ 26 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{B}d3$ 27 $\mathbb{B}d1$ $\mathbb{A}xc3!$ One of the main advantages of bishops over knights is, precisely and paradoxically, the former's ability to elect the appropriate moment of renouncing the bishop pair! 28 $\mathbb{B}xc3$ $\mathbb{A}c6$ 29 $\mathbb{B}e2$ Protecting the pawn indirectly: 29 ... $\mathbb{A}xg2?$ 30 $\mathbb{B}f4+$. 29 ... $\mathbb{A}a4+!$ Weakening White's

The knights are no match for the bishops in the position above.

33 $\mathbb{B}f1$ b5! Swift action: on 34 axb5 $\mathbb{A}xb5+$ 35 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{A}b4+$ and ... $\mathbb{A}f1$ is decisive. 34 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{A}a3$ 35 $\mathbb{B}ed3$ e5! Exploiting the interdependence of the white knights. 36 $\mathbb{B}d1$ bxa4 37 bxa4 e4! This is even more telling than 37 ... exd4 38 exd4 $\mathbb{A}xa4$ 38 $\mathbb{B}3b2$ $\mathbb{A}h5!$ Keeping the white king at bay. 39 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{A}b4+$ 40 $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{B}b6$ 0–1

Flohr–Botvinnik

Moscow, 1933



Both Flohr and Botvinnik state that the following ending should be tenable for the owner of the two knights—with best play. In practice, however, the task of the defender is onerous and unenviable.

25 ♜f2 ♜e7 26 ♜e3 ♜d8 27 ♜e1 ♜c7 28 ♜d2 ♜c5 29 b4 Profiting from the fact that, for the moment, the attempt to blockade the queen's flank with 29 ... ♜a4, coupled with ... b5, is unsatisfactory, owing to 30 ♜d1 b5 (if 30 ... ♜b6 31 ♜c3, followed by a3–a4–a5) 31 ♜xa4 bxa4 32 ♜c3 ♜b7 33 ♜c4 ♜d7 34 b5 a5 35 b6 ♜a6 36 b7 ♜b8 (36 ... ♜xb7 37 ♜b5 etc.) 37 f4 f6 38 f5, accompanied by g2–g4–g5, after which Black's kingside pawns will become vulnerable to attack from the rear.

29 ... ♜cd7 30 g3 If White wishes to forestall ... ♜b6-a4, coupled with ... b5, he can do so by playing 30 a3–a4–a5 30 ... ♜b6 31 ♜c2 ♜bd7 Black lets this opportunity slip. 32 a4 ♜b6 33 a5

Fixing the black queenside pawns and creating the latent threat b4–b5. Meanwhile the squares b6 and c5 are out of bounds for the black knights.

33 ... ♜bd7 34 ♜c1 ♜d8 35 ♜b2 ♜e8 36 ♜d2 ♜c7 Waiting tactics. Admittedly, the more enterprising 36 ... ♜e7, intending ... g6, ... ♜g7 and ... f5, suffers from the inherent drawback of opening lines for the white bishops. 37 ♜e3 ♜e7 38 ♜f1 ♜b5 39 h4 ♜c7 40 ♜h3 ♜e8 41 f4 f6

42 ♜f5! This is clearer than 42 ♜e6 ♜c7 43 ♜g8 (or 43 f5 ♜xe6! 44 dxе6 ♜b8 45 g4 g5!, blockading) 43 ... exf4+! (otherwise f4–f5 and g3–g4–g5 decide) 44 gxf4 ♜f8! 45 e5 ♜e8, when the white bishop finds itself stranded on g8. **42 ... g6** On 42 ... h6 the white king penetrates via f3, g4 and h5.

43 ♜h3 h6 So as to meet 44 f5 (threat: 45 fxg6 hxg6 46 g4 and h4–h5, creating an outside passed pawn) with 44 ... g5, when 45 ♜f3 ♜g7 46 hxg5 may be answered by 46 ... hxg5 rather than by 46 ... fxg5 47 f6+! ♜xf6 48 ♜c8. **44 ♜c1 ♜g7** Keeping an eye on the squares f5 and h5 and lending support to an eventual ... f6–f5.

45 fxе5! Well timed! Black must recapture with the d-pawn since the knight on d7 is required to fend off 46 ♜c8 while 45 ... fxе5 costs material to 46 ♜f3 h5 47 ♜g5+ ♜f6 48 ♜c8 or 47 ... ♜e8 48 ♜h6, winning one of the knights. **45 ... dxе5 46 ♜f3** Not

46 ♜d3? ♜h5 47 g4 ♜f4+ and the knight on d7 plants itself on e5. Likewise, 47 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 48 g4 ♜f4+ squanders White's advantage.

46 ... h5 After 46 ... g5 47 hxg5 hxg5 (47 ... fxg5 48 ♜b2) White immobilizes the knight on g7 with 48 ♜g4 and proceeds with ♜f1 and b4–b5, opening the mighty a3–f8 diagonal for his bishop. **47 ♜e3 ♜d6 48 ♜h6 ♜e8 49 g4 hxg4+** Otherwise 50 gxh5 gxh5, ♜f5 and ♜g6. **50 ♜xg4 ♜c7** 50 ... ♜e7, suggested by Botvinnik, is tougher to crack, since on 51 ♜e3 ♜d6 52 ♜c5 ♜xc5 53 bxc5 ♜c4 draws; and after 51 h5 gxh5 52 ♜xh5 it is not so easy for White to make headway.

51 ♜e3 ♜b5 Thwarting 52 ♜e6 ♜e7 53 ♜c5+? because of 53 ... ♜xc5 and 54 ... ♜d4+. **52 ♜e2 ♜c7** 52 ... ♜c3+ 53 ♜d3 ♜xe4, hoping for 54 ♜xe4 f5+ 55 ♜xf5 ♜f6+, fails against 54 ♜xd7. **53 ♜d3 f5** This enhances the scope of the bishops and grants White an outside passed pawn. However, Black has little choice: if 53 ... ♜b5 (to answer 54 ♜c4 with 54 ... ♜a3+) 54 ♜e6 (–f7) is strong, e.g., 54 ... ♜f8 55 ♜c5+. If the knight on d7 moves, 54 ♜c5+ is mate (not to mention 54 ♜c8), while on 53 ... ♜e7 comes 54 ♜c5+, accompanied by d5–d6 and ♜c4–d5, invading.

54 exf5 gxf5 Better is first 54 ... ♜f6 55 ♜h3 (55 ♜f3 gxf5 56 ♜c5+ ♜d7 57 ♜c4 ♜b5) 55 ... gxf5, when Black is a tempo

better off than in the game. **55 ♜xf5 ♜xd5** Black's knights have attained a measure of liberty, but the unbalanced pawn configuration and the existence of the outside passed h-pawn favours the bishops.

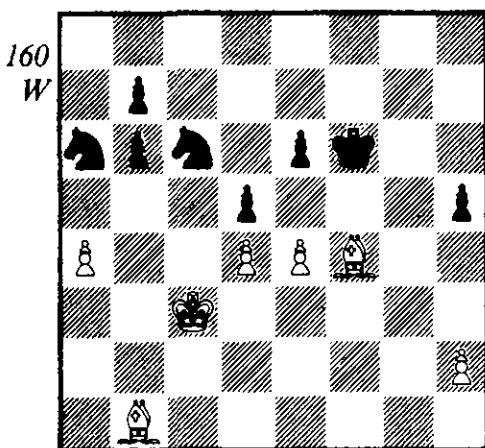
56 ♜d2 ♜f6 57 ♜c4 ♜c6 58 ♜g6 b5+ 59 ♜d3 ♜e7 60 ♜e4+! More precise than either 60 h5 ♜xg6, or 60 ♜f7 ♜f5. The ending resulting from 60 ... ♜xe4 61 ♜xe4 is an easy win, whereas on 60 ... ♜d6 (60 ... ♜c7 61 ♜g5) 61 ♜b7 does the trick. **60 ... ♜ed5 61 ♜g5 ♜h5** On 61 ... ♜xe4 62 ♜xe4 ♜xb4 63 h5 promotes. **62 ♜f3 ♜g3 63 ♜d2!** 63 h5 ♜xh5 64 ♜xh5 ♜xb4+ grants Black unnecessary chances.

63 ... ♜d6 Another trap: 64 h5? e4+! 64 ♜g4 ♜f6 64 ... e4+ 65 ♜d4. **65 ♜c8 ♜c6 66 ♜e1 e4+ 67 ♜d4 ♜gh5 68 ♜f5** More restrained than 68 ♜xa6 ♜f4 (–g2). **68 ... ♜d6 69 ♜d2 1–0** If 69 ... ♜g3 70 ♜f4+.

An ending which will repay close study.

Botvinnik–Bronstein Moscow, 1951

The lesson learnt from Flohr in the previous example stood Botvinnik in good stead some 18 years later, in the critical 23rd match game for the World Championship against Bronstein. By winning the ending, Botvinnik equalized the score and salvaged his title.



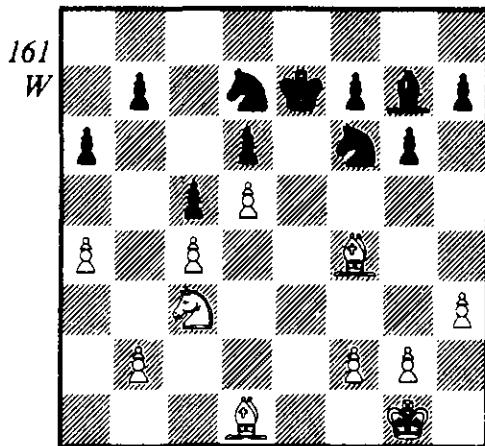
The fact that the h-pawn requires the vigil of the black king prevents the latter from assisting in the defence of the pawn on d5. Alas, because of the constant presence of zugzwang, this is a task which the knights are ill-equipped to tackle on their own.

47 exd5 Eliminating 47 ... dxe4 followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}e7-d5+$, when it is difficult for White to make progress. **48 h4** $\mathbb{Q}ab8$ **49 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$** $\mathbb{Q}f7$ **49 ... $\mathbb{Q}e6$** **50 $\mathbb{Q}g6$** . **50 $\mathbb{Q}f5$** The white bishops dominate the board. **50 ... $\mathbb{Q}a7$** Defending against **51 $\mathbb{Q}c8$** and trying for ... b6–b5. Against the alternative **50 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$** White's best is **51 $\mathbb{Q}h3$** (**51 $\mathbb{Q}xe7$** $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ **52 $\mathbb{Q}g6$** $\mathbb{Q}c6$ **53 $\mathbb{Q}xh5$** $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ is less clear) **51 ... $\mathbb{Q}bc6$** **52 $\mathbb{Q}g2$** $\mathbb{Q}g7$ **53 $\mathbb{Q}xe7$** $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ **54 $\mathbb{Q}b4$** $\mathbb{Q}c6+$ **55 $\mathbb{Q}b5$** $\mathbb{Q}xd4+$ **56 $\mathbb{Q}xb6$** , queening the a-pawn.

51 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}bc6$ **52 $\mathbb{Q}d3$** $\mathbb{Q}c8$ **53 $\mathbb{Q}e2$** $\mathbb{Q}g6$ **54 $\mathbb{Q}d3+$** White repeats moves before the second time control. **54 ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$** **55 $\mathbb{Q}e2$** $\mathbb{Q}g6$ **56 $\mathbb{Q}f3$** $\mathbb{Q}6e7$ Zugzwang occurs equally after **56 ... $\mathbb{Q}8e7$** **57 $\mathbb{Q}g5$** (or **57 $\mathbb{Q}c7$** $\mathbb{Q}f5$ **58 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$**

fxd4 **59 $\mathbb{Q}xb6$** etc.) **57 ... $\mathbb{Q}f5$** **58 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$** $\mathbb{Q}fxd4$ **59 $\mathbb{Q}e4+$** $\mathbb{Q}f7$ **60 $\mathbb{Q}c4$** **57 $\mathbb{Q}g5!$** **1–0** The end could be: **57 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$** **58 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$** $\mathbb{Q}d6$ **59 $\mathbb{Q}f3$** $\mathbb{Q}f5$ (so that if **60 $\mathbb{Q}xh5$** $\mathbb{Q}e4+$) **60 $\mathbb{Q}c1!$** **b5** (**60 ... $\mathbb{Q}g6$** **61 $\mathbb{Q}f4$** $\mathbb{Q}f5$ **62 d5**) **61 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$** $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ **62 a5** and so on.

Uhlmann–Gligoric Hastings, 1970–1



In the early 1970s, Uhlmann, Gligoric and Polugayevsky, among others, tested an ending arising from a fashionable variation in the King's Indian Defence on several occasions. In all cases the argument turned in White's favour.

White's first move from the diagram, **22 a5**, is essential to stop Black from blocking the queen-side with ... a6–a5 and thus reserve the possibility of b2–b4. **22 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$** **23 $\mathbb{Q}d2$** **h5** **24 $\mathbb{Q}f1$** **$\mathbb{Q}d4$** **25 b3** $\mathbb{Q}g7$ **26 $\mathbb{Q}c2$** $\mathbb{Q}e8$ **27 $\mathbb{Q}e2$** $\mathbb{Q}b2$ **28 f3** $\mathbb{Q}g7$ **29 $\mathbb{Q}f2$** $\mathbb{Q}f6$ **30 $\mathbb{Q}c3$** $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ **31 $\mathbb{Q}e2$** **f5** **32 f4!** Denying Black the square e5 and

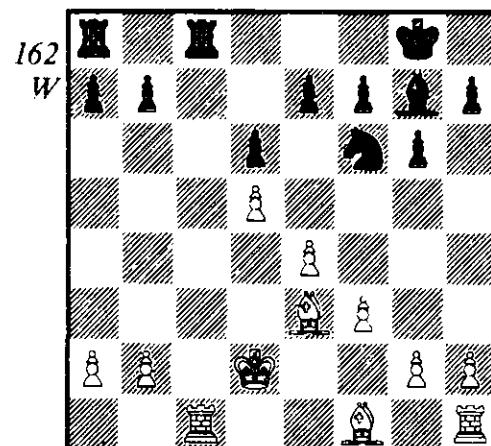
preparing the breakthrough ♜f3 and g2–g4.

32 ... ♜e8 33 ♜d3 ♜xc3 If Black refrains from this capture, White proceeds with ♜f3, ♜e2, g4 and, if necessary, ♜g3. After the exchange, White can operate on both wings. 34 ♜xc3 ♜ef6 35 ♜e1 ♜f7 36 ♜e3 ♜e7 37 ♜c2 ♜f7 38 b4! cxb4 39 ♜xb4 ♜c5 40 ♜d4 ♜fd7 41 ♜d1 ♜e7 42 g4! hxg4 43 hxg4 ♜f6 44 ♜e3 b6 A concession, no doubt, but alternatives fail against the crossfire of the bishops: (a) 44 ... g5 45 ♜c3+ ♜g6 46 ♜c2; (b) 44 ... ♜f7 45 gxf5 gxf5 46 ♜h5+ ♜e7 47 ♜g6 ♜f6 48 ♜h7!, with ♜c3+ to follow, winning the f-pawn and the game.

45 gxf5 gxf5 46 ♜xc5! Once again, the owner of the bishop pair is the one who determines when the right moment has come to renounce them. 46 ... ♜xc5 A last try, since 46 ... bxc5 47 ♜a4 ♜b8 (else 48 ♜b5!) 48 ♜f3–g3–h4, coupled with appropriate waiting moves along the a4–e8 diagonal, will presently compel Black to give ground by ... ♜g7, whereupon ♜g5 will win easily.

47 axb6 Now while the bishop keeps an eye on the f5 pawn, the white king will be free to march towards the queenside. 47 ... a5 48 ♜c2 ♜e7 Despair. 49 ♜d2 ♜d8 49 ... ♜f6 50 ♜a4 or 50 ♜c3–b2–a3 first. 50 ♜xf5 ♜a4 51 b7 ♜c7 52 ♜c8 ♜c5 53 f5 ♜e4+ 54 ♜c2 ♜b8 55 ♜b3 ♜d2+ 56 ♜a4 ♜xc4 57 f6 ♜e5 58 ♜xa5 1–0

Polugayevsky–Ivkov Belgrade, 1969



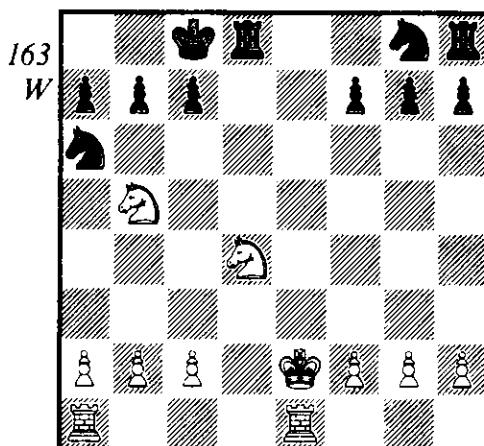
It took several games to convince theoreticians that the opening variation which leads to the diagram is unpromising for Black.

Against Ivkov, Polugayevsky slowly ground down his opponent with 15 ♜e2 a6 16 b4 ♜f8 17 a4 ♜d7 18 a5 ♜b2 19 ♜c2 ♜xc2+ 20 ♜xc2 ♜g7 21 ♜b3 ♜c8 22 ♜d2 ♜d4 23 g4 ♜g7 24 g5 ♜c7 25 ♜d1 ♜f8 26 f4 ♜g7 27 ♜g4 ♜e8 28 ♜f1 ♜d4 29 h4 ♜g7 30 h5 ♜d4 31 ♜h1 ♜g7 32 ♜h3 ♜f8 33 h6! ♜d4 34 ♜d3 ♜a7 35 ♜h3 ♜g1 36 ♜c3 ♜e8 37 e5 ♜h2 38 exd6 exd6 39 ♜e3+ ♜d8 40 ♜e4 ♜g1? 40 ... ♜c8 holds out longer. 41 ♜xd7! 1–0 After 41 ... ♜xd7 42 ♜f6 Black has no defence against ♜e7+–e8–h8. The careful advance of the white h-pawn to h6 has borne fruit.

Even more convincing was Polugayevsky's victory over Osto-jic from the same tournament: 15 ♜xc8+! ♜xc8 16 g3! ♜c7 17 ♜h3 ♜d7 18 ♜c1 ♜xc1 19 ♜xc1 ♜b6 20 ♜c2 ♜f8 21 b3 ♜e8 22 a4! ♜d8 23 a5 ♜c8 24 ♜xc8 ♜xc8 25 ♜xa7 and White won.

9 A Rook versus Two Minor Pieces

Tarrasch–Mieses
Gothenburg, 1920

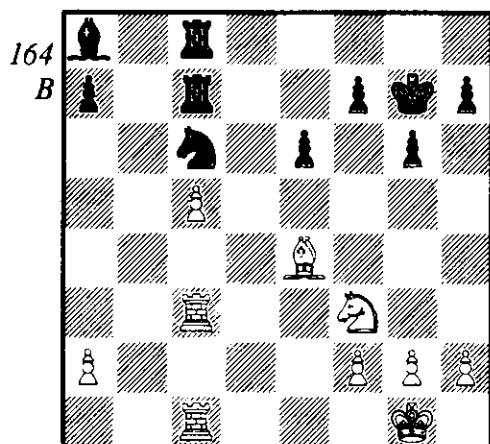


14 ♜xa7+! ♜b8 15 ♜ac6+!
Not 15 ♜(either)b5, because of 15 ... c6. 15 ... bxc6 16 ♜xc6+ ♜c8 17 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 18 ♜ad1+ Mobilizing all his pieces, the king included. 18 ... ♜e8 18 ... ♜c8 is preferable. 19 ♜d3+ ♜e7 20 ♜c4 h5 21 ♜d3 ♜b8 22 ♜de3 ♜c6 23 b4 f6 24 f4 Preventing ... ♜e5+ in reply to b5.

24 ... ♜f7 A trap: if now 25 b5 ♜a5+ 26 ♜b4 ♜d5+! 27 ♜xa5? ♜a8 mate. 25 a4 ♜b8 26 c3 ♜d8 27 ♜d3! With pawns on both sides of the board, a rook and two pawns are usually superior to two minor pieces. 27 ... ♜xd3 28 ♜xd3 ♜e8 29 a5 ♜d7 30 a6 ♜d5

31 ♜a1 ♜a7 32 g3 c6 33 ♜a4 To support c3–c4. 33 ... ♜b6 34 ♜a5 g6 35 c4 ♜bc8 36 ♜a1 ♜d6 37 ♜d4 ♜dc8 38 ♜c5 ♜c7 39 ♜e1 ♜b6 40 ♜e7+ ♜d7+ 41 ♜xd7+! 1–0

Grigorian–Tal
Moscow, 1967

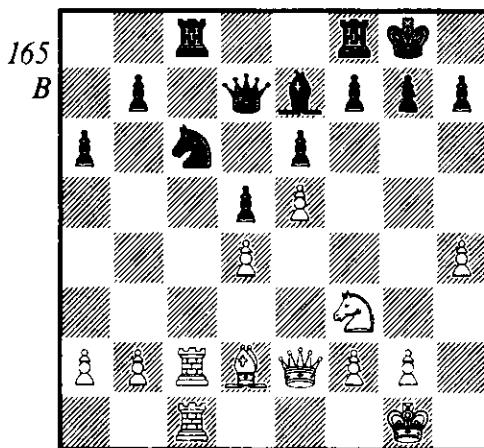


Here too Tal simplifies into a clearly winning ending.

30 ... ♜b4! 31 ♜xa8 ♜xa2! 32 ♜e4 ♜xc3 33 ♜xc3 ♜xc5 The passed a-pawn leaves White few saving chances. 34 ♜e3 ♜c1+ 35 ♜e1 ♜d8 36 ♜f1 ♜d2 37 ♜e2 ♜d4 38 ♜f3 ♜b4 39 ♜c2 ♜xc2

40 $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{B}b2$ 41 $\mathbb{R}d1$ a5 42 $\mathbb{Q}e2$
 a4 43 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{B}b3+$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{B}b1$ 45
 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{B}g1$ 46 $\mathbb{R}f3$ $\mathbb{B}f1$ 47 $\mathbb{Q}d3$
 $\mathbb{B}xf2$ 48 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ e5 49 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{B}f6$ 50
 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{B}b6$ 51 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ f5 52 $\mathbb{R}d5$ $\mathbb{B}b1$
 0–1

Hort–Hübner
West Germany, 1982

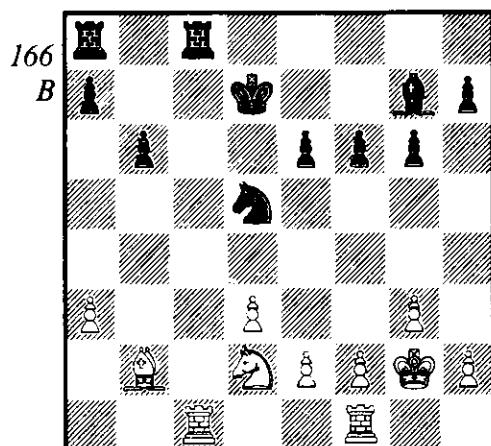


White's last move, 16 h4?, presents Black with a nice opportunity to launch a profitable combination:

16... $\mathbb{Q}xh4!$ 17 $\mathbb{B}xc6$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}xh4$
 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ gives rise to similar play. 17
 ... $\mathbb{B}xc6$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ $\mathbb{B}xc1+$ 19
 $\mathbb{B}xc1$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 21 a3
 $\mathbb{Q}c2!$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 23 b4 $\mathbb{B}c8$ 24
 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{B}d1+$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 26 g3
 $\mathbb{B}c3$ 27 a4 $\mathbb{B}b3$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 28 $\mathbb{R}d2$
 h6.

28... $\mathbb{B}xb4$ 29 a5 $\mathbb{B}b1$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}f3$
 $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ b6 32 axb6 a5 33
 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ a4 34 $\mathbb{R}e7$ $\mathbb{B}xb6$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}e1$
 $\mathbb{B}b2$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ h5 37 $\mathbb{Q}d3?$ a3! 38
 $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ $\mathbb{B}b3$ 0–1

Hübner–Karpov
Tilburg, 1977



By exchanging two light pieces for a rook and two pawns, Karpov brings about an ending where White is saddled with weak pawns.

22... $\mathbb{R}h6!$ 23 e3 Forced, since on 23 $\mathbb{R}fd1$ (23 f4? $\mathbb{Q}e3+$) comes 23... $\mathbb{B}xc1$ 24 $\mathbb{R}xc1$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 25 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}a2$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ (26 e3 $\mathbb{B}c8$ 27 $\mathbb{B}b2$ $\mathbb{B}c2$) $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ $\mathbb{B}c8$.
 23... $\mathbb{R}xe3!$ 24 $\mathbb{R}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3+$ 25
 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ $\mathbb{B}xc1$ 27
 $\mathbb{B}xc1$ $\mathbb{B}c8$ This is the position foreseen by Karpov five moves earlier.

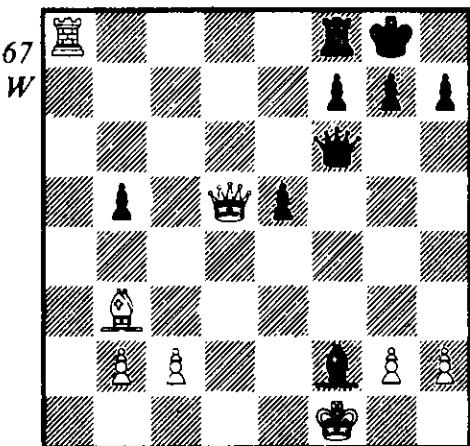
28 $\mathbb{R}b2$ $\mathbb{B}c2!$ Obtaining two passed pawns on the queenside. This is far more convincing than 28... e5 29 $\mathbb{Q}e3$. 29 $\mathbb{R}xf6$ $\mathbb{B}a2$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{B}xa3$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ b5 32 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ b4 32... a5 is quicker. 33 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ a5 34 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{B}a2$ 35 h4 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 36 $\mathbb{R}d4$ $\mathbb{B}e2$ 37 $\mathbb{R}e5$ $\mathbb{B}e1$ 38 $\mathbb{R}f6$ $\mathbb{B}b1$ 39
 $\mathbb{R}e7$ e5 40 g4 $\mathbb{B}c1+$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$
 42 $\mathbb{R}g5$ $\mathbb{B}b1+$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{B}h1$ 44
 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{B}h3!$ 45 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 46
 $\mathbb{Q}xh7$ $\mathbb{B}xd3+$ 47 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ a4 48 $\mathbb{R}e7$
 $\mathbb{B}c3+$ 0–1

10 Choosing an Endgame; Some Aspects of the Endgame

Larsen–Gligoric

Moscow, 1956

167



W

28 $\mathbb{W}xf7+$! Introducing a series of exchanges which lead to a won pawn ending. 28 ... $\mathbb{W}xf7$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 30 $\mathbb{B}xf8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ presently creating a passed pawn on the queen's wing
1–0

Smyslov–Reshevsky

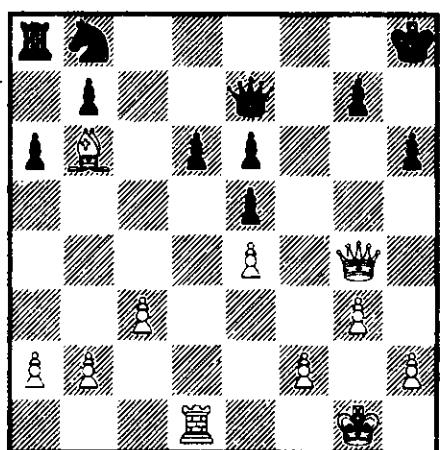
Moscow, 1948

26 $\mathbb{W}h4!$ The offer to exchange queens wins the d-pawn in all variations, owing to Black's backward development.

The game continued 26 ... $\mathbb{W}d7$ 27 $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{W}xd8$ 28 $\mathbb{A}xd8$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 29 $\mathbb{A}c7$ with a won ending.

168

W

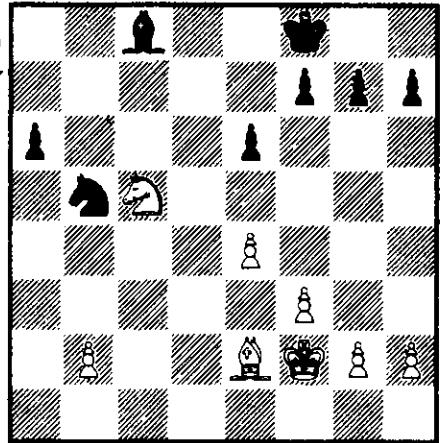


Gelfer–Banks

London, 1985

169

W



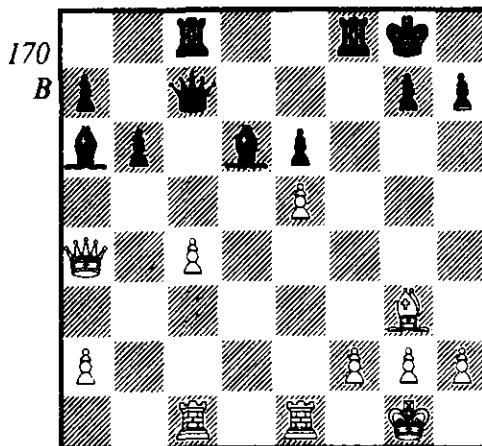
Here a timely transition into a good knight versus bad bishop ending ensures White's victory.

30 $\mathbb{A}xb5!$ $\mathbb{A}xb5$ 31 $e5!$ Completing the internment of the bishop. 31 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 31 ... $f6$ should be tried, although after 32 $f4$, or even 32 $\mathbb{Q}e3$, Black's prospects are gloomy.

32 ♜e3 ♜d8 33 ♜d4 f6 34 b4! Preferable to going after a pawn with 34 exf6 gxf6 35 ♜e4 ♜e7 36 ♜c5 b4, releasing the bishop. 34 ... fxe5+ 35 ♜xe5 ♜e7 36 f4 h5 37 g3 ♜d7 38 ♜b3! 38 ♜xd7? is only a draw. 38 ... ♜c6 39 ♜d4 ♜d7 40 h3 g6 41 h4 Now any move will cost a pawn. Black played 41 ... ♜f7 which lost to 42 ♜d6.

Spielmann–Nimzowitsch

San Sebastian, 1911



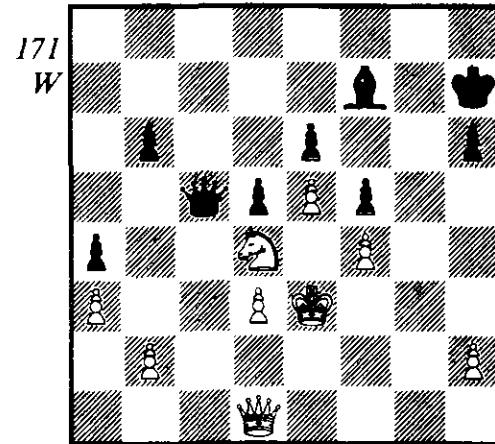
Black's bishops are both under attack. Which is the more valuable? Nimzowitsch played 20 ... ♜a3! 21 ♜xa3 ♜xc4 reasoning that the white-coloured bishop, to be posted on d5, will be far more useful than its counterpart on g3.

Pfeifer–Guimard

Dubrovnik, 1950

White steers the game to a knight versus bishop ending, relying on his superior knight and centralized king.

35 ♜c2! ♜xc2 Otherwise White exchanges queens himself and eventually wins a pawn.

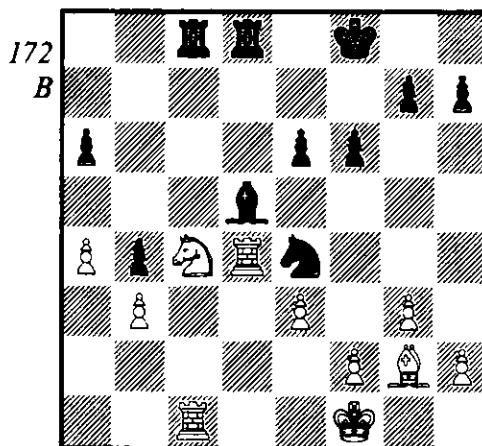


36 ♜xc2 ♜g6 37 ♜f3 ♜e8 38 ♜d4 ♜f7 39 ♜e3 ♜d7 40 ♜e2 ♜g6 41 ♜g3 Preventing the king's entry. 41 ... ♜b5 42 d4 ♜e8 43 ♜d2 ♜g7 44 ♜c3 ♜g6 45 b3! axb3 46 ♜xb3 ♜f7 Otherwise White breaks through with ♜b3–b4 and a3–a4–a5. 47 ♜h5 ♜e7 48 ♜f6 ♜f7 49 ♜b4 ♜d8 50 ♜b5 ♜c7 51 a4 ♜b7 52 a5 bxa5 53 ♜xa5 ♜c6 54 ♜a6 h5 Black can put up only token resistance against the joint action of White's knight and king. 55 ♜h7 ♜e8 56 ♜a5 ♜b7 57 ♜f8 ♜f7 58 ♜b5 ♜c7 59 ♜c5 ♜g8 60 h3 ♜f7 61 ♜h7 ♜e8 62 h4! ♜f7 63 ♜f6 ♜g6 64 ♜xd5!! The crowning point of White's manoeuvres. 64 ... exd5 65 ♜xd5 ♜e8 66 e6 ♜a4 67 ♜e5 ♜b3 68 d5 ♜d8 69 d6 ♜c2 70 ♜f6 ♜d3 71 e7+ ♜e8 72 d7+ 1–0

Kashdan–Reshevsky

USA, 1938

In this example, the American Grandmaster foresees that White's pawn on b3 is a potential burden, notwithstanding the presence of the white knight on c4. He begins by acquiring the 'minor



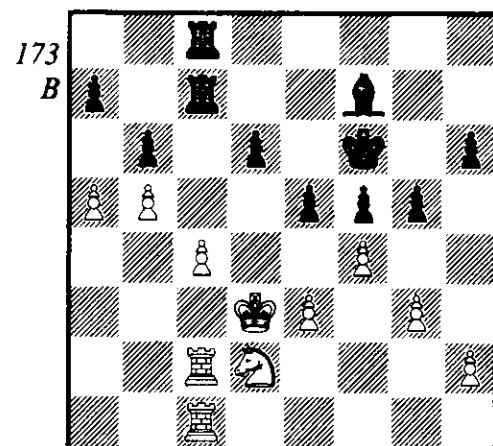
'exchange' (bishop versus knight) by means of a small combination:
26 ... ♜d2+ **27 ♜xd2 ♜xg2+**
28 ♜e1 ♜xd2 29 ♜xd2 ♜d5 30 ♜d3 e5 31 e4 ♜e6 32 ♜c2 ♜e7 33 ♜d2 To free himself from the pin.
33 ... ♜xc2 34 ♜xc2 ♜d6 35 ♜d3 ♜c5.

While White's knight must guard b3, his king must halt Black's king from entering d4. **36 ♜e3 g6 37 ♜d3 f5 38 f3?** More chances are offered by 38 exf5 or 38 f4. **38 ... f4! 39 gxf4** Otherwise comes ... g5 threatening to create an outside passed pawn after ... fxg3, hxg3 h7–h5–h4 etc. On 39 g4 a5 accompanied by ... ♜c8–a6+ is simplest **39 ... exf4 40 h4 h6 41 a5** Despair. **41 ... ♜d7 42 ♜c2 ♜d4 43 ♜c4 ♜e6 44 ♜d2 ♜e3 45 ♜d1 ♜f2 46 ♜c2 ♜e2 47 ♜c1 h5 48 e5 g5!** **49 ♜e4 gxh4** and Black won.

Gheorghiu–Timman Lucerne, 1982

Here Black exchanges all rooks, to bring about a clearly won bishop versus knight ending.

34 ... d5! 35 fxe5+ ♜xe5 36 cxd5 ♜xc2 37 ♜xc2 ♜xe2 38

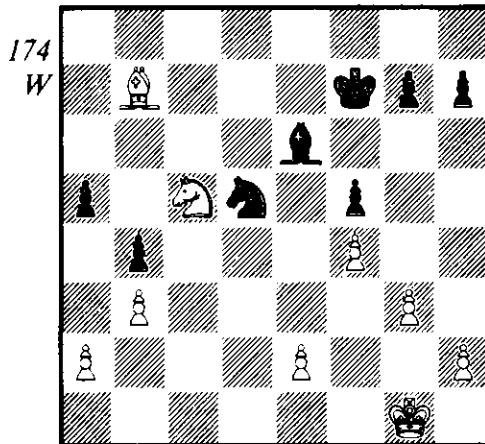


39 ♜xc2 ♜xd5 40 axb6 axb6 41 ♜c3 ♜h5! Preventing counterplay with ♜f3, which would be the answer to 40 ... ♜c5. Black's superiority is obvious and the b5 pawn will not run away.

41 ♜b3 ♜e8. Again, 41 ... ♜e4 grants White some chances after 42 ♜d2+ ♜xe3 43 ♜c4+ and 44 ♜xb6. **42 ♜b4 43 ♜d4** costs a pawn after 42 ... ♜e4 43 ♜d2 f4! 42 ... ♜e4 43 ♜d2+ ♜xe3 44 ♜c4+ ♜e2 Rather than go after White's remaining kingside pawns with 44 ... ♜f2, Black concentrates on promoting the f-pawn. **45 ♜xb6 f4 46 gxf4 gxf4 47 ♜d5 f3 48 ♜c3+ ♜e1 49 ♜e4 f2 50 ♜xf2 ♜xf2 51 ♜c5 ♜d7!** 51 ... ♜h5 enables White to draw by approaching the h-pawn: 52 ♜d4! ♜f3 53 ♜e5!. **52 b6 ♜c8 53 ♜d6 h5 0–1**

Reshevsky–A. R. B. Thomas Hastings, 1937–8

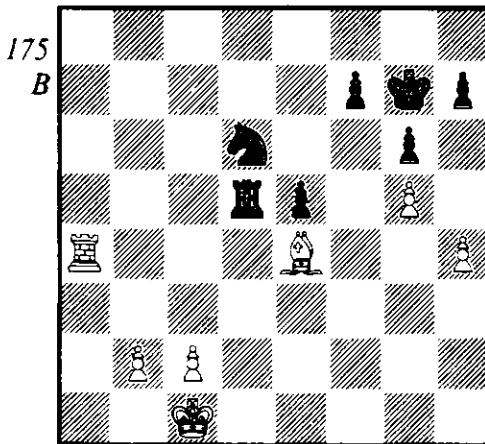
Here the decision as to what pieces to exchange is crucial: wholesale exchanges on e6 and d5 do not work since White's king is too far away; similarly, exchanging just on e6 exposes White to ...



$\mathbb{Q}d5-c3$. Thus the most effective way to make White's extra pawn tell is 36 $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ The king heads to d4.

37 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ With the white king firmly entrenched in the centre, he need no longer fear a transition into a pawn ending. 40 ... a4 41 $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 43 bxa4 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}a5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 45 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 46 a5 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 47 e3 $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 48 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e2$ 49 a6 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 50 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 51 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ and wins.

Kavalek-Kaplan Solingen, 1974



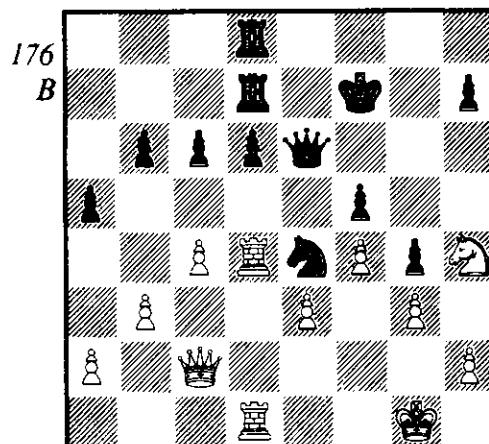
Black is faced with an awkward choice: Ought he to refrain from exchanges with 34 ... $\mathbb{Q}c5$?

Ought he to transpose into a rook ending with 34 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$? Or ought he to bring about a knight versus bishop ending with 34 ... $\mathbb{Q}d4$?

34 ... $\mathbb{Q}d4$? A serious error of judgement: with pawns on both wings, the long-ranging bishop is far superior to the short-paced knight. Instead, 34 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ f5! leads to a tenable rook and pawn ending.

35 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ h6 37 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ hxg5 38 hxg5 f6 39 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 40 b4 It is not an equal fight. 40 ... fxg5 41 b5 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 45 c4 1-0

Panno-Keres Los Angeles, 1963

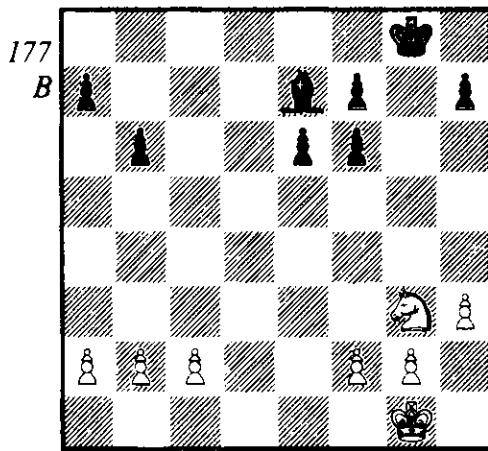


With White's knight so badly placed, not to mention other positional deficiencies, Black simplifies into a winning ending.

31 ... $d5!$ 32 $cxd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$

40 $\mathbb{W}c1$ c5 41 h3 $\mathbb{W}e2+$ 42 $\mathbb{W}h1$
 $\mathbb{W}e4$ 0–1

Reshevsky–Woliston
USA, 1940



In the following example, Black makes White's task far too easy.

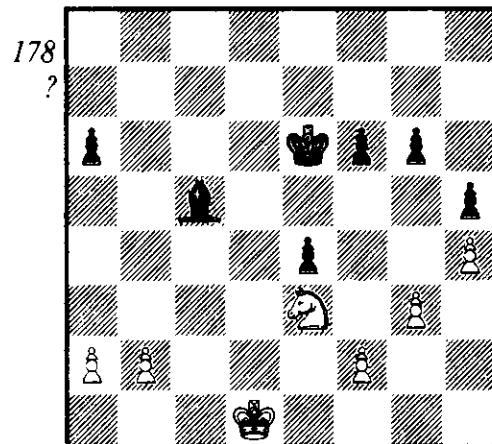
23 ... $\mathbb{W}f8$ 24 $\mathbb{W}f1$ $\mathbb{W}e8$ 25 $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ 26 $\mathbb{W}d3$ White's king hastens to the aid of his pawn majority. **26 ... $\mathbb{W}c6$ 27 $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{W}c5$ 28 f4 b5?** An elementary error which helps White in the creation of a passed pawn on the queen's flank. Correct is 28 ... f5. **29 g4!** Black's failure to play ... f5 has permitted White to safeguard the square e4 for his king, whence it will support the push f4–f5.

29 ... a6 30 $\mathbb{W}e4$ $\mathbb{W}f8$ 31 $\mathbb{W}d4+$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 32 $\mathbb{W}b3$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 33 $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{W}f8$ 34 c4! $\mathbb{W}c5$ 35 cxb5 axb5 36 $\mathbb{W}b3+$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 37 $\mathbb{W}d4$ $\mathbb{W}c5$ 38 f5 e5 Obligatory. Now White is virtually a pawn up.

39 $\mathbb{W}f3$ h6 40 h4 $\mathbb{W}e7$ 41 h5! 41 g5? only assists Black in straightening up his pawns. **41 ... $\mathbb{W}d6$ 42 a3 b4?!** This plays into White's hands. However, on other moves, White plays g4–g5! hxg5,

$\mathbb{W}h2$ –g4 with the advance of the h-pawn to follow. For example, **42 ... $\mathbb{W}c4$ 43 $\mathbb{W}d2+$ $\mathbb{W}c5$ 44 b4+ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 45 $\mathbb{W}f3$ $\mathbb{W}f8$ (else Black must allow $\mathbb{W}d5$) 46 g5! hxg5 47 $\mathbb{W}h2$ $\mathbb{W}g7$ 48 $\mathbb{W}g4$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 49 h6 $\mathbb{W}h8$ 50 h7 $\mathbb{W}g7$ 51 $\mathbb{W}h6$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 52 $\mathbb{W}d5$, winning the b-pawn. **43 a4 b3 44 $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{W}b4$ 45 a5 $\mathbb{W}xa5$ 46 $\mathbb{W}c4+$ 1–0****

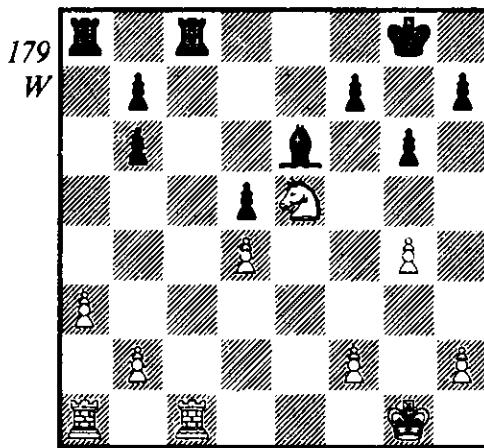
Koenig–Smyslov
Great Britain–USSR, 1946



Here, unlike the previous example, it is Black's pawn majority on the kingside, well supported by his king and bishop, that is far more potent than White's pawn majority on the other wing. Indeed, White resigned a few moves later.

Lilienthal–Bondarevsky
Moscow, 1940

Black's somewhat restricted bishop and his doubled b-pawns give White something to play for. Victory in this last-round game enabled the winner to tie with the



loser as co-champions of the USSR in 1940.

1 h3 f6 2 ♜d3 g5 Black places his pawns on squares opposite to the colour of his bishop, enables ... ♜f7–g6 and thwarts ♜f4. In the ensuing phase, White aims to gain control of the h-file by means of h3–h4 and ♜h1.

3 f3 ♜f7 4 ♜f2 ♜e7 4 ... h5 makes White's task more difficult. **5 ♜e3 ♜d6 6 ♜xc8 ♜xc8 7 h4!** White assumes control of h-file. **7 ... h6 8 hxg5 hxg5 9 ♜h1 ♜e8 10 ♜d2 ♜d7 11 ♜h6 ♜f8 12 ♜e1** Having immobilized the black rook, White proceeds to improve the position of his knight, which enjoys more freedom than Black's bishop.

12 ... ♜c7 13 ♜c2 ♜f7 14 ♜e3 ♜e6 15 ♜c3 The king is to play an active role on the queen's wing.

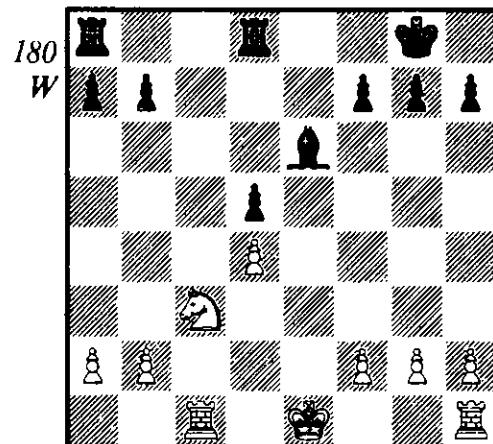
15 ... ♜d6 16 ♜b4 ♜d7 17 ♜f5+ ♜c7 The rook ending after **17 ... ♜xf5 18 gxf5** is untenable owing to zugzwang: **18 ... ♜c6 19 a4**, and Black has no way of preventing the entry of the white king or rook.

18 a4 ♜e6 19 ♜g3 ♜d7 20 ♜h5 f5 21 ♜f6 fxg4 22 ♜xd5+ ♜b8

23 fxg4 ♜xg4 24 ♜xb6 At last, the positional advantage has reaped material fruit. **24 ... ♜f2 25 b3 ♜d1 26 d5 ♜c7 27 a5 ♜d2 28 ♜h7+ ♜b8 29 d6** Another way is **29 ♜h8+ ♜c7 30 d6+** mating or winning the black rook. **29 ... ♜d4+ 30 ♜c5 ♜h4 31 d7 ♜c7 32 d8(+) ♜xd8 33 ♜d7+ 1–0**

Lev–Bruk

Israel, 1985



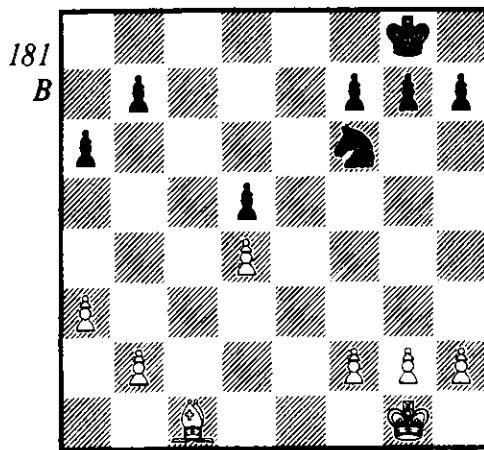
As in the preceding example, the pawn structure on the central file renders the white knight superior to the black bishop. **18 ♜d2 ♜ac8 19 b3 ♜f8 20 ♜he1 ♜c6 21 ♜a4 ♜dd6 21 ... ♜xc1 22 ♜xc1 ♜c8** is unplayable, owing to **23 ♜c5**.

22 ♜c5 ♜c8 23 a4 a5 Loosening, but Black wishes to halt b3–b4. **24 ♜d3 ♜f5 25 ♜f4 ♜xc1 26 ♜xc1 g5** To relieve the rook from the protection of d5. **27 ♜d3 ♜xd3?** Black is oblivious to the dangers inherent in simple positions. After **27 ... ♜e7** the defence should hold.

28 ♜xd3 ♜e7?? Missing White's retort. 28 ... ♜b6 looks better.

29 b4! The winning move. **29 ... axb4** 30 ♜c7+ ♜e6 30 ... ♜d7 31 ♜xd7+ ♜xd7 32 ♜c2 leads to a lost pawn ending. 31 ♜xb7 ♜c6 32 ♜xb4 ♜c1 33 ♜b6+ ♜f5 34 f3 h5 35 ♜d6 and White won.

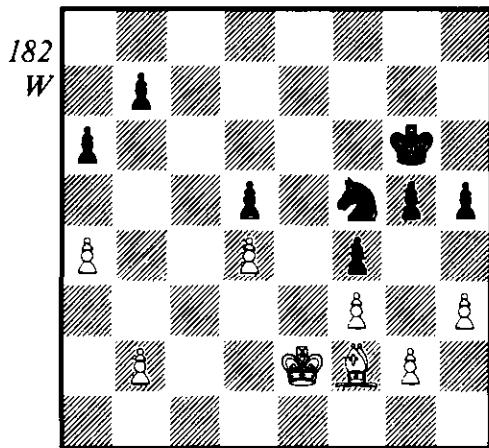
Saidy–Fisher USA, 1964



Here, again, the particular placing of the pawns on the central file makes Black's knight a more mobile piece than White's bishop. This factor is insufficient to tilt the balance in Black's favour, but as we shall see, it does make White's defensive task a delicate one:

23 ... ♜d7 24 ♜f1 ♜f8 25 ♜e2 ♜e6 The best square for the knight. The next step is to activate the infantry. **26 ♜d3 h5 27 ♜e3 ♜h7 28 f3 ♜g6 29 a4 ♜f5 30 ♜e2 ♜g5 31 ♜f2 ♜d8 32 ♜d2 ♜g6 33 ♜e3 ♜e6 34 ♜d3 ♜f5 35 ♜e3 f6**

36 ♜e2 ♜g6 37 ♜d3 f5 38 ♜e2 f4 39 ♜f2 ♜g7 40 h3 ♜f5 (182).



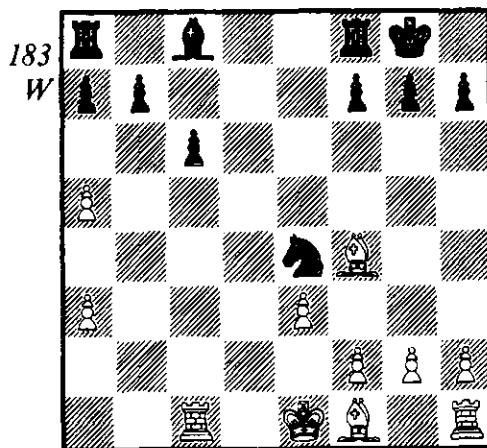
41 ♜d3 g4! 42 hxg4 hxg4 43 fxg4 White cannot permit ... g4–g3. **43 ... ♜h6 44 ♜e1?** 44 ♜e2 ♜xg4 45 ♜g1! ♜f5 46 ♜f3 ♜f6 47 ♜h2! (not 47 g3? fxg3 48 ♜xg3 ♜e4!) ♜h5 48 a5 draws.

44 ... ♜xg4 Now 45 ♜e2 ♜f5 46 ♜f3 (or 46 g3 fxg3 47 ♜xg3 ♜e4) fails against 46 ... ♜h2+. **45 ♜d2 ♜f5 46 ♜e1 ♜f6 47 ♜h4** If 47 g3 f3!. 47 ... ♜e4 48 ♜e1 ♜g4 49 ♜e2 ♜g3+ 50 ♜d3 ♜f5 51 ♜f2 ♜h4 Fischer's masterly manoeuvres are about to bear fruit. White loses a pawn and soon, the game.

52 a5 52 ♜xh4 ♜xh4 53 ♜e2 ♜g3 54 ♜f1 f3 is hopeless. **52 ... ♜xg2 53 ♜c3 ♜f3 54 ♜g1 ♜e2 55 ♜h2 f3 56 ♜g3 ♜e3 0–1**

Kasparov–Smyslov Vilnius, 1984

1 d4 d5 2 ♜f3 ♜f6 3 c4 c6 4 ♜c3 e6 5 ♜g5 ♜bd7 6 e3 ♜a5 7 exd5 ♜xd5 8 ♜d2 ♜b4 9 ♜c1 e5



10 a3 ♜d6 11 dxе5 ♜xe5 12 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 13 b4 ♜xc3 Now, rather than enter the middle game with 14 ♜xc3 ♜b6, Kasparov steers directly into the ending, with a view to benefiting from his two bishops and more aggressive pawn formation.

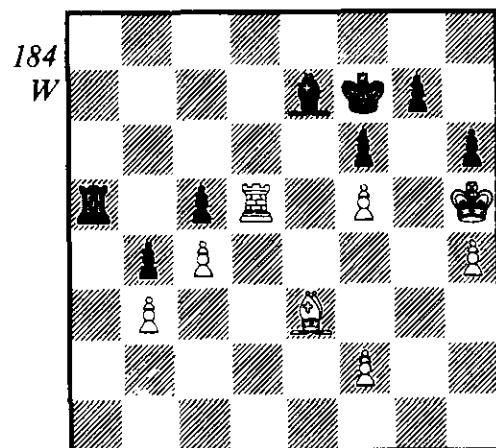
14 ♜xc3! ♜xc3 **15 bxa5 ♜e4 16 ♜f4 0-0** (183) **17 f3** Step by step, White's pawns and bishops assume control of the board.

17 ... ♜f6 18 e4 ♜e8 19 ♜f2 a6 20 ♜e2 ♜e6 21 ♜b1 ♜e7 22 ♜hd1 ♜ae8 23 ♜b2 ♜c8 24 ♜bd2 ♜d7 25 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 26 g4 With the pawn on a5 restraining Black's pawns on the queen's wing, White proceeds to mobilize his own pawn majority. **26 ... ♜c5 27 ♜e3 ♜d7 28 g5 ♜e5 29 ♜d4 ♜g6 30 ♜g3 ♜f8 31 h4 ♜d8 32 f4 ♜e6 33 ♜c3 ♜xd1 34 ♜xd1 ♜d7 35 f5** Sooner or later, White will create a passed pawn.

35 ... ♜c4 36 h5 h6 37 gxh6 gxh6 38 e5 ♜c5 39 ♜f4 ♜d5 40 ♜c2 f6 41 e6 ♜g7 42 ♜b4 ♜b3 43 ♜e3 c5 44 ♜c3 ♜f8 On other moves, 45 ♜e4 is strong. **1-0 45 ♜e4** is simplest.

Capablanca–Kostić

Havana, 1919



White's advantage is glaring. To clinch the game, he need only force Black to cede the square g6 to his king. **61 ♜d7 ♜e8 62 ♜d3 ♜f7 63 ♜d5** We now have the diagram with Black to move.

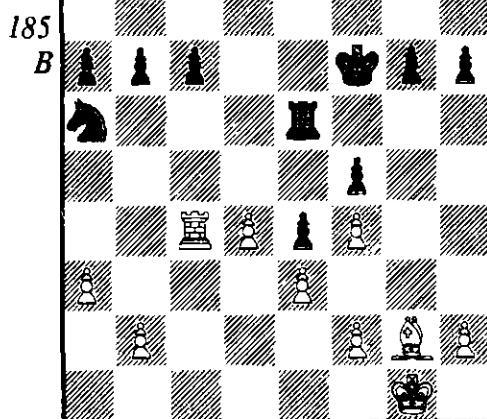
63 ... ♜a3 Black is in zugzwang. **63 ... ♜f8** loses to **64 ♜d7+ ♜e7 65 ♜c7! 64 ♜xc5 ♜xc5 65 ♜xc5 ♜xb3 66 ♜c7+ ♜f8 67 ♜g6** Decisive.

67 ... ♜f3 68 ♜f7+ ♜e8 69 ♜xg7 ♜f4 70 h5 ♜xc4 The alternative **70 ... ♜g4+ 71 ♜xf6 ♜xg7 72 ♜xg7 b3** gives rise to a lost queen ending. **71 ♜xh6 ♜f8 72 ♜b7 ♜g4 73 f3! ♜g5 74 ♜xb4 ♜f7 75 ♜g4 ♜xf5 76 f4 ♜a5 77 ♜g7+ ♜f8 78 ♜b7 f5 79 ♜g6 ♜a6+** **80 ♜xf5** Whilst in some instances the weaker side can draw this type of ending, here, with the white rook controlling the seventh rank, Black is helpless.

80 ... ♜a5+ 81 ♜g4 ♜a6 82 ♜g5 ♜c6 83 f5 ♜g8 84 f6 ♜c1 85

g7+ f8 86 h6 1-0 The h-pawn is unstoppable.

Euwe–Capablanca
Avro, 1938



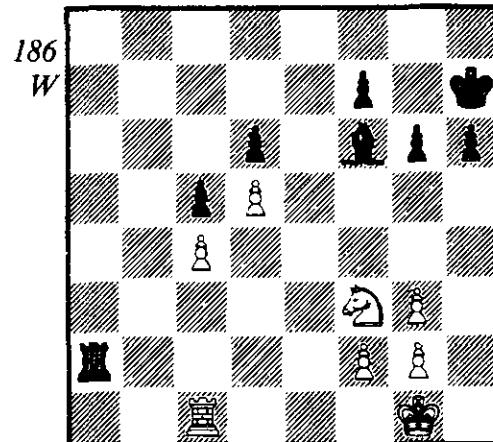
The last encounter between the two World Champions and Euwe's only victory against Capablanca.

25...b5? Too loosening. 25...c6, coupled with ...d7, appears more to the point. Now White can capitalize on Black's pawn weaknesses by activating his pawn phalanx.

26 c3 e6 27 f3! Liberating the bishop and thus accentuating the deficiencies in Black's pawn formation. 27...g6 28 fxe4 fxe4 29 a4! bxa4 30 c4 f6 31 x a4 c5 32 f1 winning a pawn and, presently, the game.

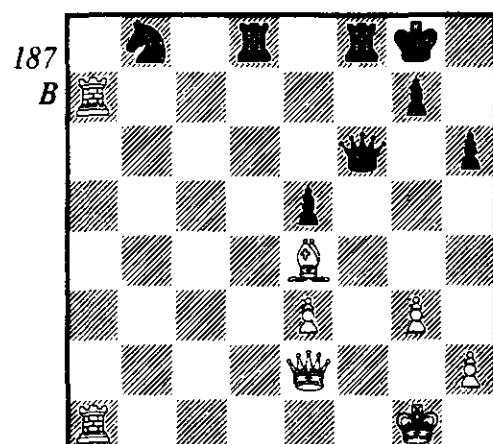
Uhlmann–Geller
Palma de Mallorca, 1970

In the diagram, 28 g4! is imperative. Instead White shifts his pieces aimlessly whilst Black constantly improves the position of his forces.



28 f1? h5! 29 e1 g5 30 c2 a1 31 e2 g6 32 f3 f5 33 d2 g4 Intending ...g1, which does not work immediately, owing to 34 f3 xg2 35 f1. 34 f1 d4 Zugzwang. If 35 e3+ e5 36 f1 f5. 35 d2 g1 36 b3 e5 37 d2 xg2 38 f1 h2 39 g1 h3 40 f1 h4 41 g2 hxg3 42 fxg3 e4 43 f2 f6 44 a2 h8 0-1

Rubinstein–Tarrasch
Carlsbad, 1923



White's bishop is superior to Black's knight. Moreover, Black is vulnerable along the b1–h7 diagonal. These factors explain why the position is far from drawish.

29 ... $\mathbb{E}d7$ 30 $\mathbb{E}a8$ $\mathbb{E}dd8$ 31 $\mathbb{E}f1$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 31 ... $\mathbb{W}xf1+$ 32 $\mathbb{W}xf1$ $\mathbb{E}xf1+$ is better. 32 $\mathbb{E}xf8+$ $\mathbb{E}xf8$ 33 $\mathbb{W}g2$ $\mathbb{W}b4$ 34 $\mathbb{W}d3$ $\mathbb{W}h8$ 35 $\mathbb{E}a7$ $\mathbb{W}b2+$ 36 $\mathbb{W}h3$ White's king is safer than Black's. 36 ... $\mathbb{W}b6$ 37 $\mathbb{E}a8$ $\mathbb{E}d8$ 38 $\mathbb{W}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ Too late. 38 ... $\mathbb{W}d6$ is indicated. 39 $\mathbb{W}c6!$ $\mathbb{E}xa8$ 40 $\mathbb{W}xa8+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 40 ... $\mathbb{W}b8$ 41 $\mathbb{W}xb8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ 42 $\mathbb{W}g4$ is the alternative.

41 $\mathbb{W}d5!$ Note how without rooks, White's threats have lost none of their venom. 41 ... $\mathbb{W}f6$ costs a pawn to 42 $\mathbb{W}b5!$ (42 ... $\mathbb{W}d6?$ 43 $\mathbb{W}e8+$). 41 ... $\mathbb{W}c7$ 42 $\mathbb{W}f5!$ Vintage Rubinstein: 42 ... $\mathbb{W}e7$ is countered by 43 $\mathbb{W}b5$. 42 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 43 $\mathbb{W}c4$ Mating threats loom both along the back rank and the b1-h7 diagonal. 43 ... $\mathbb{W}d6$ 44 $\mathbb{W}f7$ $\mathbb{W}d8$ 45 $\mathbb{W}g6!$ 1-0

2 ... $\mathbb{f}xe4$ On 2 ... $f4$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ is unpleasant. 3 $\mathbb{Q}cxe4$ $a5$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ Now White obtains the two bishops and presently reveals their potential.

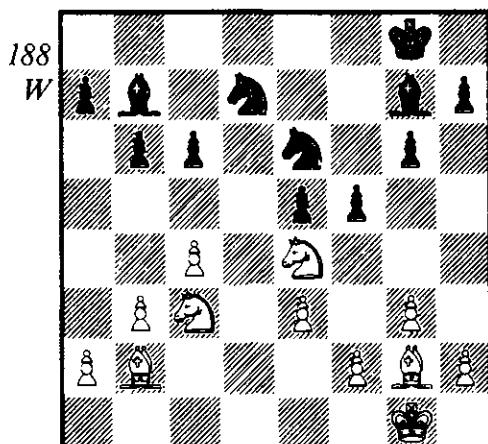
4 ... $\mathbb{W}f8$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}a3+$ $\mathbb{W}g8$ On 6 ... $c5$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}xc5!$ is possible. 7 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 8 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}d6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 10 $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 11 $\mathbb{Q}d6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 13 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $c5$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}d6+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}c8+!$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 16 $\mathbb{E}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ In the race to promote, two knights are seldom a match for two bishops.

17 ... $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 18 $h4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}g8$ $h5$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}h7$ $a4$ 23 $bxa4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{Q}b2$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $c4$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 27 $h5$ 1-0

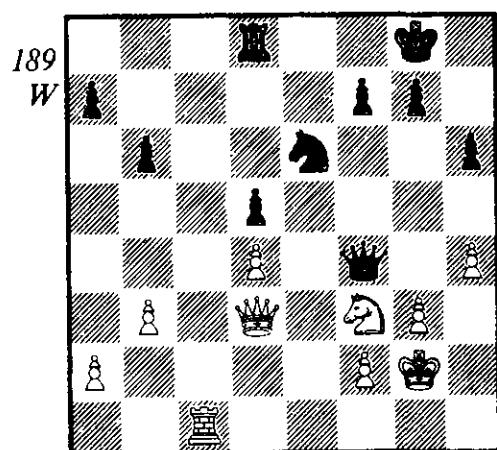
Petrosian–Portisch Palma de Mallorca, 1974

Yudovich–Bondarevsky

Tbilisi, 1937



1 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 2 $e4!$ The weakening of the square d4 is amply compensated by the opening of the long diagonal and the weaknesses in Black's pawn structure.



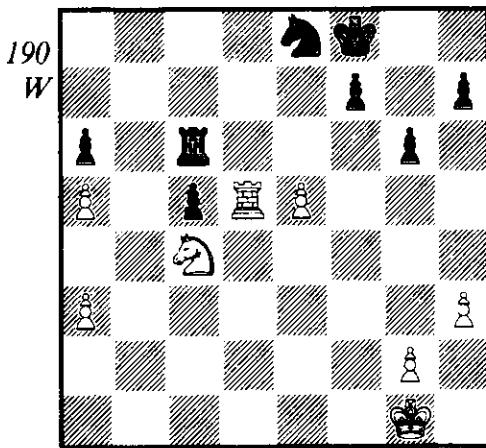
That mobility counts for more than material is demonstrated in the following example. Black's last move, 21 ... $\mathbb{W}f4$, attacking the white rook and intending to assume the initiative after 22 $\mathbb{E}c2$ or 22 $\mathbb{E}c6$ with 22 ... $\mathbb{W}e4$ (or 22 $\mathbb{E}e1$ $\mathbb{W}g4$), is refuted brutally.

22 gxf4! $\mathbb{Q}xf4+$ **23 ♜g3 ♜xd3** **24 ♜c3!** $\mathbb{Q}b4$ Paradoxically, 24 ... $\mathbb{Q}b2$ affords Black better chances. **25 a3 ♜a6 26 b4!** Black's knight is offside and White dominates the c-file.

26 ... ♜b8 27 ♜c7 a5 28 b5! ♜d7 29 ♜f4 And now the white king joins the fray. **29 ... h5 30 ♜e5! ♜f8 30 ... ♜xe5 31 ♜xe5** is no better. **31 ♜b7 f6 32 ♜c6 ♜g6+ 33 ♜g3 ♜d6 34 ♜xb6 ♜e6 35 ♜b8+ ♜f8 36 ♜a8 ♜e1 37 ♜d8 ♜h7 38 b6 ♜b1 39 b7 ♜d7 40 ♜xa5** 1-0

Botvinnik–Levenfish

Moscow, 1937



Here, the sight of White's pawns leaves something to be desired. However, it is the advantageous position of his rook and knight that gives him a pronounced edge.

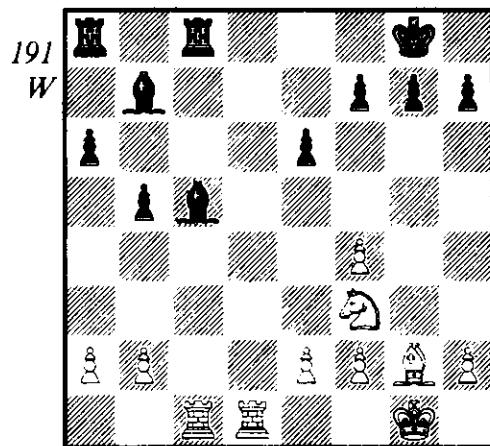
41 ♜d7 ♜c7 41 ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ loses nicely to 42 $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}d6!$; or 42 ... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}c8$; or 42 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}d6$. 41 ... $h5$, to play 42 ... $f6$, seems comparatively best. **42 ♜d8! ♜e7 43 ♜d6! ♜a7** Forced. **44 ♜c6 ♜d7 45 ♜b6!** 45

$\mathbb{Q}xc5 \mathbb{Q}c7!$ dissipates White's advantage. **45 ... ♜e7 46 ♜f2 f6 47 ♜e2 ♜a8 48 ♜c6 fxe5 49 ♜xc5 ♜d6 50 ♜c7+ ♜e6 51 ♜xd6 51 ♜c6 ♜d5!**

51 ... ♜xd6 52 ♜xh7 ♜b8 53 ♜g7 ♜b2+ 54 ♜f1 e4 55 ♜xg6+ ♜e5 56 ♜xa6 ♜a2 57 ♜a8 ♜f4 58 a6 ♜a1+ 59 ♜e2 ♜a2+ 60 ♜d1 ♜xa3 61 a7 ♜e3 62 h4 ♜d3+ 63 ♜c2 ♜d7 64 g4 ♜c7+ 65 ♜b3 ♜d7 66 ♜c3 ♜c7+ 67 ♜b4 ♜d7 68 ♜c5! 1-0

Ribli–Karpov

Amsterdam, 1980



White's small but persistent advantage consists in the better placement of his rooks and potentially active knight. Even if it should not quite suffice to force victory, it is certainly sufficient to cause Black several headaches.

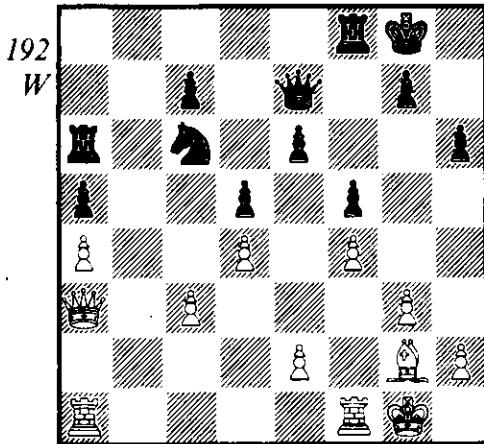
19 ♜e5! ♜xg2 20 ♜xg2 f6 20 ... ♜c7 21 ♜d3 ♜d6 22 ♜xc7 ♜xc7 23 ♜c1 does not solve Black's problems. **21 ♜f3 ♜f8** On 21 ... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ comes 22 $\mathbb{Q}d7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}cc7$. **22 e3 g6 23 b3** An inaccuracy. More exact is 23 h3.

23 ... ♜b4 24 h3 ♜f8 25 ♜d4 ♜f7 26 a4 bxa4 27 bxa4 ♜c5 28 ♜c4 ♜a3 28 ... ♜xd4 leads to an inferior ending after 29 ♜cxd4 ♜e8 30 ♜b4!. 29 ♜xc8 ♜xc8 30 ♜b1 ♜c4 31 ♜b7+ ♜e7 32 ♜a7 e5 32 ... ♜xa4? 33 ♜c6. On other moves, 33 ♜xa6 is strong. 33 fxe5 fxe5 34 ♜f3 Winning a pawn.

34 ... ♜xa4 35 ♜xe5+ ♜f6 36 ♜c6 ♜c5 3 ♜xh7 ♜a2 38 ♜f3 a5 39 h4 a4 40 ♜e4! ♜f8 If 40 ... ♜xf2 41 ♜e5, threatening 42 ♜f7+ and/or 42 ♜g4+/42 ♜d7+. Now White transposes into a won rook ending. 41 ♜a7 ♜d6 42 f4 ♜h2 43 ♜a6 ♜f7 44 ♜e5+ ♜xe5 45 ♜xe5 ♜g7 46 ♜a7+ ♜h6 47 ♜xa4 ♜xh4 48 ♜f6 ♜h5 49 e4 ♜h4 50 e5 ♜h5 51 e6 ♜f5+ 52 ♜e7 ♜g7 53 ♜d6 ♜f8 54 ♜a7+ ♜f6 55 ♜d7 1-0

Bronstein–Boleslavsky

Moscow, 1950



The position above is not easy to evaluate. In the sequel, it is his

ability to play c3–c4 under favourable circumstances that tips the scales in favour of the bishop.

22 ♜c5! ♜b8 Likewise, the immediate exchange of queens is in White's favour: 22 ... ♜xc5 23 dxc5 ♜b8 24 c4! dxc4 25 ♜ab1 ♜c6 26 ♜fc1. 23 ♜fb1 ♜xc5 On 23 ... ♜ab6 24 ♜xb6 ♜xb6 25 c4! is equally unpleasant. 24 dxc5 ♜f8 25 ♜b5 ♜aa8 26 ♜f2 ♜e7 27 ♜e3 ♜f8 28 ♜ab1 ♜fb8 29 ♜d3 ♜d7 30 e3 ♜e7 31 ♜d2 ♜c8 32 ♜f3 g6 33 ♜e2 h5?! 33 ... e5 is to be considered.

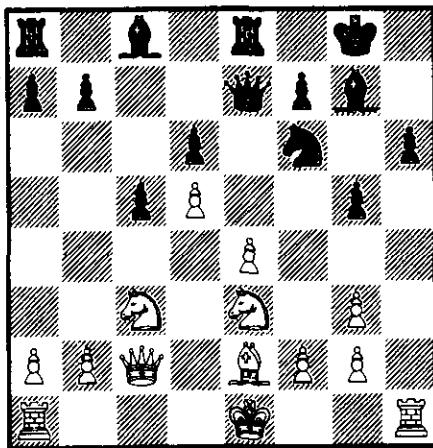
34 h3 ♜g8 35 ♜b7 ♜gc8 36 g4! hxg4 37 hxg4 ♜d8 38 ♜7b2 ♜f7 39 g5 ♜d7 40 c4! Opening lines for his bishop. 40 ... dxc4 The strength of the bishop is illustrated in the following line: 40 ... c6 41 cxd5 exd5 42 e4!! dxe4 43 ♜c4 ♜d8 44 ♜h1 ♜c7 45 ♜h6!.

41 ♜f3! ♜a7 42 ♜c3 c6 43 ♜h2 ♜e7 44 ♜e2 ♜f8 45 ♜xc4 ♜e8 46 ♜b6 ♜c7 47 ♜a6 White's pressure bears fruit. 47 ... ♜g7 48 ♜xa5 e5 49 ♜h3 ♜d7 50 ♜b3 exf4 51 exf4 ♜e4 52 ♜a8 ♜xf4 53 ♜xf7! Leads to a won rook and pawn ending. 53 ... ♜xf7 54 ♜ah8 ♜f3+ 55 ♜xf3 ♜xh8 56 a5 White's king, rook and pawns are all superior to Black's. 56 ... ♜a7 57 ♜b4 ♜g7 58 ♜a3! For the final part of the game, see diagram 147.

11 Key Squares—Strong Points

Larsen—Fischer
Santa Monica, 1966

193
W



Larsen played 17 ♝b5 . Fischer responded with 17 ... ♜d8 . The game continued 18 ♝e2 ♜e8 19 f3 with Black eventually winning.

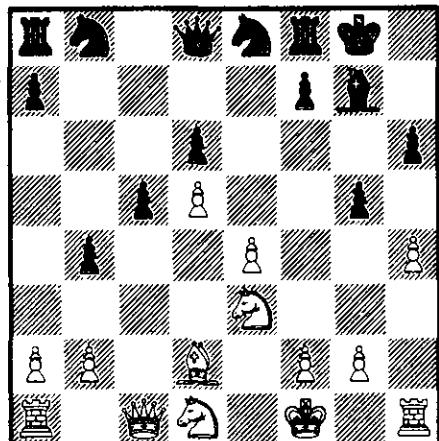
17 ... $\text{♜d7}?$, in reply to 17 ♝b5 , would be a grave positional mistake in that it would surrender the square f5.

Gelfer—Pedersen
Israel, 1979

1 d4 ♝f6 2 c4 c5 3 d5 e6 4 ♝c3 exd5 5 cxd5 d6 6 ♝f3 g6 7 ♝d2 ♝g7 8 ♝c4 0-0 9 ♝g5 h6 10 ♝f4 ♝e8 10 ... b6 11 ♝xd6 ♜e8 12 ♝g3 ♝e4 13 ♝xe4 ♜xe4 14 e3 b5 is a sharp line. 11 ♛c1! g5 11 ... ♝h7 costs material to 12 ♝b5! 12 ♝d2 b6 13 h4 ♜a6 14 e4 b5 15

♝e3 b4 16 ♝cd1 ♞xf1 17 ♝xf1 (194) Black's strategy, surrendering the square f5 (and c4), is tantamount to positional capitulation. This is borne out by the sequel.

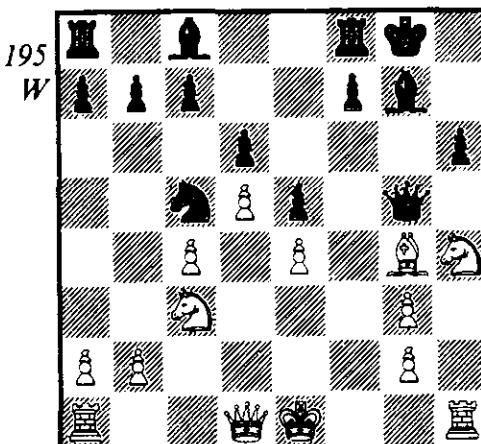
194
B



17 ... ♝f6 18 f3 ♝h7 19 ♝f5 ♝f6 20 hxg5 hxg5 21 ♝xg7 Exchanging a good knight for a bad bishop, to break open the king's defences. 21 ... ♛xg7 22 ♝e3 f6 23 ♝f5 ♝d7 24 ♝f2 a5 Despair. 25 ♛g1 ♜a7 26 ♝h6 ♝f7 27 ♝h2 ♜a6 28 ♝h1 1-0

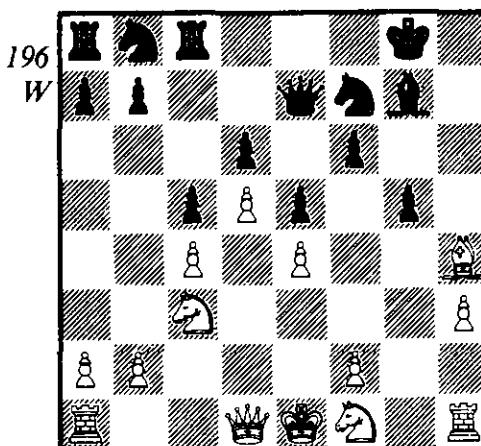
Balashov—Penrose
Hastings, 1966–7

1 d4 ♝f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♝c3 ♝g7 4 e4 d6 5 ♝e2 0-0 6 ♝f3 e5 7 d5 ♝bd7 8 ♝g5 h6 9 ♝h4 g5 10 ♝g3 ♝h5 11 h4 ♝xg3 12 fxg3 gxh4 13 ♝xh4 ♛g5 14 ♝g4! ♝c5 (195)



195
W
Here, rather than play the prosaic 15 $\mathbb{Q}f5$, White sacrificed a pawn with 15 $\mathbb{Q}xc8!$ and thus conquered the square f5. Indeed, after 15 ... $\mathbb{W}xg3+$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}axc8$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{W}f4+$ 18 $\mathbb{W}f3!$ White won easily enough.

Kasparov–Chiburdanidze Baku, 1980



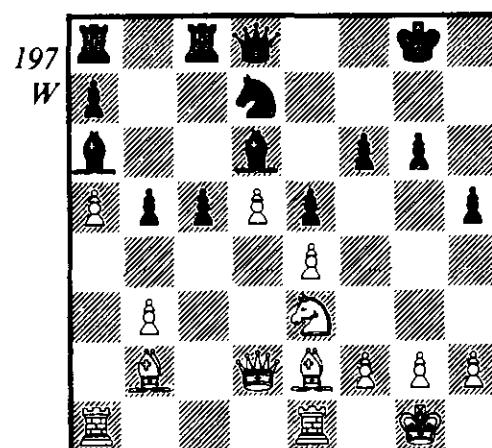
A struggle between the sexes: the future male World Champion feels that the conquest of the square f5 justifies more radical measures than the pedestrian 17 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ f5!.

17 $\mathbb{Q}e3!!$ From f5 the knight will paralyse all Black's pieces. In addition, after 17 ... $gxh4$ the g-file is opened. 17 ... $gxh4$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{W}d8$ 19 $\mathbb{W}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ Black is helpless against $\mathbb{Q}f5$, h3–h4 etc.

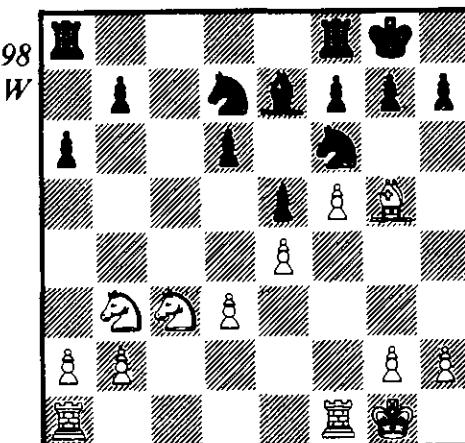
20 ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ a6 22 h4 $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}f8$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 25 a4 b6 26 $\mathbb{W}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}ag1$ $\mathbb{Q}ab7$ 29 $\mathbb{W}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}bc7$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ A piece down, White has all the time in the world!

31 ... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{W}c8$ 34 f4 The alternative is 34 $\mathbb{Q}eg3$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 35 $\mathbb{W}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}xd6$. 34 ... b5 35 axb5 axb5 36 cxb5 $\mathbb{Q}ab7$ 37 h5 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 38 $\mathbb{W}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 39 $hxg6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 40 gxf7+ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 1–0

Chekhover–Alatortsev Leningrad, 1938

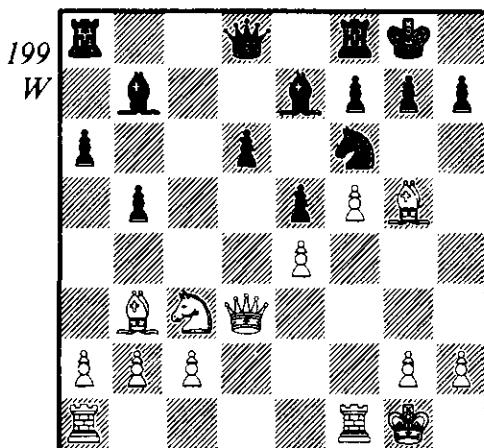


197
W
Here, too, the occupation of the square f5 justifies the sacrifice 1 $\mathbb{Q}xh5!!$ (1 ... $gxh5$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}f5$).



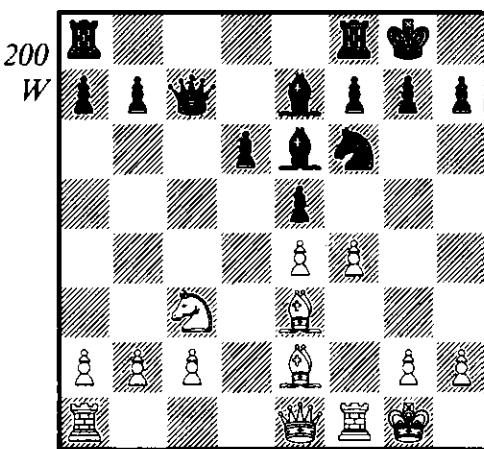
White gains control of the key square d5 by means of a forced

sequence: 1 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}a5!$ $\mathbb{Q}ab8$ If 2 ... b6 3 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ b5 4 $\mathbb{Q}e3$. 3 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ followed by $\mathbb{Q}e3-d5$.



Here the conquest of d5 is simpler: 1 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ and after the exchange of the white-squared bishops, White will remain with an all-powerful knight against a ‘dead’ bishop.

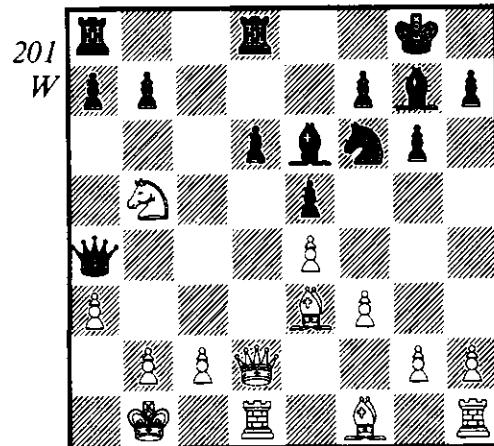
Smyslov–Rudakovsky Moscow, 1945



Smyslov obtains a winning strategic advantage by gaining control of the square d5.

13 f5! $\mathbb{Q}c4$ More obstinate is 13 ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$. **14 $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}g5!$** and after the exchange on f6, White accomplished his plan.

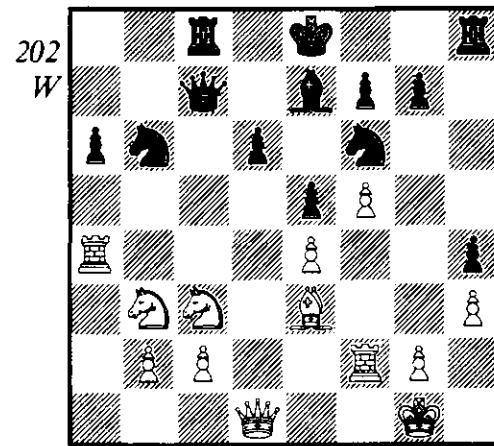
Boleslavsky–Lisitsin Moscow, 1956



Boleslavsky refrains from the obvious 15 $\mathbb{Q}c7$, threatening 16 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ and 16 $\mathbb{Q}xa8$, since that would allow Black counterplay after 15 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ d5. Instead he sacrifices a pawn, to obtain a positional bind based on his absolute control of d5.

15 c4! $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ and after the exchange on f6, White’s knight occupied the dominating square d5 with decisive effect.

Geller–Najdorf Zurich, 1953

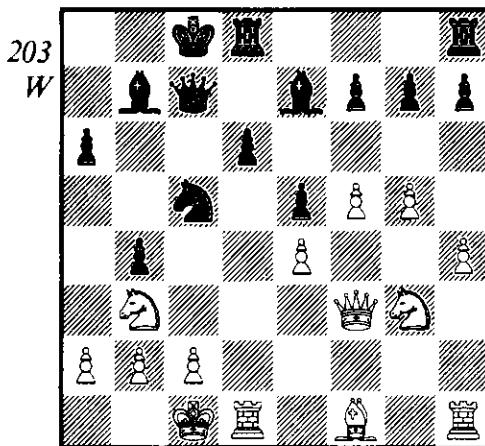


Capturing on a6 is not salubrious, owing to 19 ... $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 20

$\mathbb{A}c1 \mathbb{B}b7$. White's plan is to bring about a good knight versus bad bishop position and to station a knight on d5.

19 $\mathbb{A}xb6!$ $\mathbb{W}xb6$ 20 $\mathbb{W}e2 \mathbb{A}a8$ 21 $\mathbb{A}h2 0-0$ 22 $\mathbb{E}f1 \mathbb{A}a7$ 23 $\mathbb{E}fa1$ $\mathbb{E}fa8$ 24 $\mathbb{E}1a2 \mathbb{A}d8$ 25 $\mathbb{A}a5 \mathbb{E}c8$ To be considered is 25 ... d5, to hinder a knight's passage to d5, be it at the cost of a pawn. 26 $\mathbb{A}c4$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 27 $\mathbb{A}e3 a5$ 28 $\mathbb{E}c4 \mathbb{W}a6$ 29 b3 $\mathbb{A}b6$ 30 $\mathbb{E}xc8+$ $\mathbb{W}xc8$ 31 $\mathbb{A}ed5 \mathbb{A}xd5$ 32 $\mathbb{A}xd5$ and after stiff resistance, Black resigned on his 57th move.

Ljubojevic–Portisch Lucerne, 1982



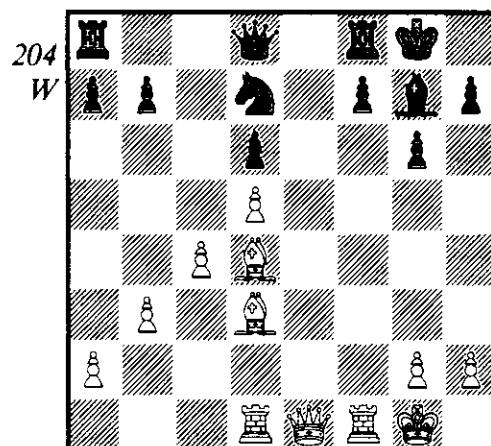
Although this is a more complex case than the preceding ones, the underlying theme is identical: to gain ascendancy of the central white squares.

18 $\mathbb{A}c4!$ $\mathbb{A}xe4$ 19 $\mathbb{A}d5!$ $\mathbb{A}xg3$ 20 $\mathbb{W}xg3 \mathbb{A}b8$ 21 $\mathbb{E}he1 \mathbb{E}c8$ 22 $\mathbb{W}g2!$ $\mathbb{A}xd5$ 23 $\mathbb{E}xd5 \mathbb{W}b6$ 24 $\mathbb{E}e4$ Imperceptibly, as it were, the black king finds itself denuded of the protection of pieces. 24 ... $\mathbb{E}c7$ 25 $\mathbb{W}g4 \mathbb{A}a7$ 26 $\mathbb{E}xb4$ $\mathbb{W}e3+$ 27 $\mathbb{A}b1 h5$ 28 $\mathbb{W}d1 \mathbb{E}hc8$

29 $\mathbb{W}f1!$ $\mathbb{A}a8$ 30 $\mathbb{E}a5 \mathbb{E}a7$ 31 $\mathbb{W}h1+$ 1–0

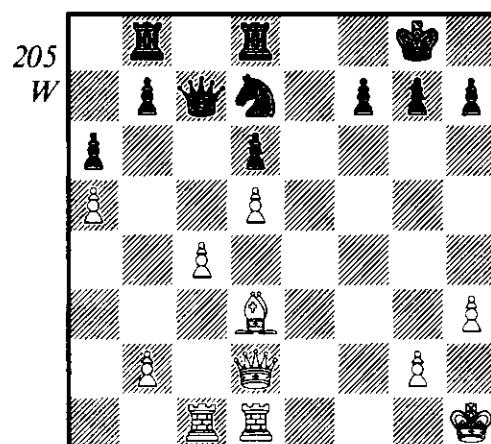
Browne–Spassky

Siegen, 1970



Here White's superior pawn formation and the fine positioning of his pieces are less significant than Black's control of the key square e5. True, in the game White succeeded in salvaging a draw with 1 $\mathbb{A}f2$ (which is comparatively better than 1 $\mathbb{A}xg7$).

Vasyukov–Ornstein Erevan, 1976



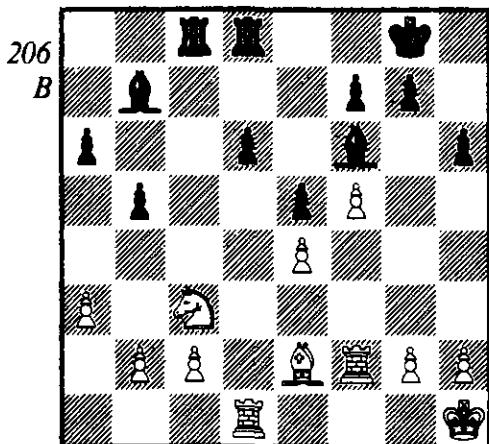
In contrast to diagram 204, it is White who controls the key

squares b4, c5 and b6 on the queen's wing. This means that he is in a position to mobilize his pawn majority before Black undertakes action on the king's wing.

1 c5! dxc5 Virtually forced. **2 d6** $\mathbb{w}c6$ **3 b4!** $g6$ **4** $\mathbb{B}c4!$ Suddenly, the white bishop comes to life. **4 ...** $\mathbb{B}g7$ **5 bxc5** $\mathbb{B}bc8$ **6** $\mathbb{B}f1$ The opening of the a2–g8 diagonal enables White to exert unbearable pressure in all directions. **6 ... f6** **7** $\mathbb{B}fe1$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ **8** $\mathbb{B}d5$ $\mathbb{B}b5$ **9 c6!** **1–0**

It has taken White only nine moves to win from the initial position. Such is the dynamic propensity of positions which undergo a swift change in the nature of one or more of their salient strategic features.

Petrosian–Smyslov Moscow, 1949



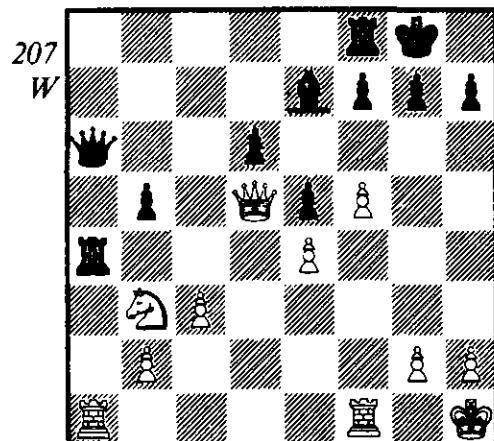
The position above bears a strategic resemblance to some of the positions examined before. But it is Black's turn and by a timely pawn-sacrifice he can prise open the position and benefit

from the vulnerability of the white pawns on c2 and b2.

23 ... d5! **24** $\mathbb{B}xd5$ **24 exd5** is preferable, although **24 ... e4!** **25** $\mathbb{B}xe4$ $\mathbb{B}xb2$ is advantageous to Black. **24 ...** $\mathbb{B}xd5$ **25 exd5** $\mathbb{B}xc2$ **26 b3 e4** and the passed e-pawn, coupled with the enhanced activity of Black's remaining pieces, led to Black's victory, notwithstanding the opposite-coloured bishops.

Unzicker–Fischer

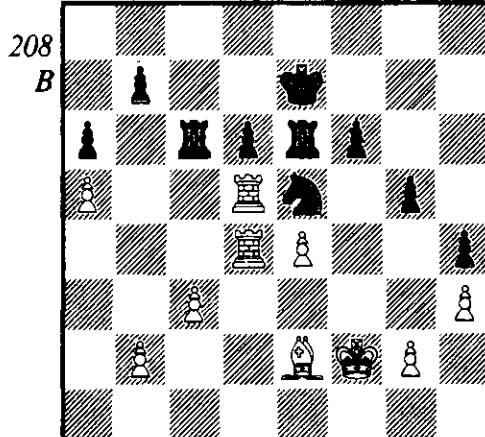
Varna, 1962



Superficially, the position above has the bearings of a good knight versus bad bishop plot. However, the white knight on b3 is not within easy reach of the key square d5; nor, as we shall see, is the bad bishop doomed to idleness.

21 h3 $\mathbb{B}c8$ **22** $\mathbb{B}fe1$ **h6** **23** $\mathbb{B}h2$ $\mathbb{B}g5$ **24 g3?** $\mathbb{B}a7!$ **25** $\mathbb{B}g2$ $\mathbb{B}a2$ **26** $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{B}xc3$ **0–1** On **27** $\mathbb{B}xa2$ (**27** $\mathbb{B}xc3$ $\mathbb{B}f2$ mate) **27 ...** $\mathbb{B}f3+$ **28** $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}f2+$ **29** $\mathbb{B}d3$ $\mathbb{B}xa2$ wins (note the usefulness of **22 ... h6**).

Karpov–Polugayevsky
Moscow, 1974

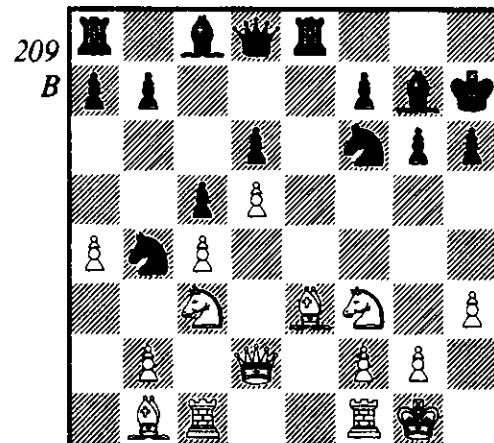


In the above position, although the black knight is centrally placed, the determining factor is the white bishop's ability to support the advance of his queenside pawn majority.

38 ... $\mathbb{N}d8?$ A mistaken plan. On c7 the black king does not contribute much to combat White's imminent pawn storm. 38 ... $\mathbb{B}g6$ is better. 39 c4 $\mathbb{N}c7$ 40 b4 $\mathbb{B}g6$ 41 b5 axb5 If 41 ... $\mathbb{E}c5$ 42 b6+ $\mathbb{N}c6$ 43 $\mathbb{A}d1$ and Black is defenceless. 42 cxb5 $\mathbb{E}c2$ 43 b6+ $\mathbb{N}d7$ 44 $\mathbb{E}d2!$ $\mathbb{E}xd2$ 45 $\mathbb{E}xd2$ $\mathbb{E}e5$ or 45 ... $\mathbb{E}xe4$ 46 $\mathbb{A}b5+$ $\mathbb{N}c8$ 47 $\mathbb{E}c2+$ $\mathbb{N}b8$ 48 a6! and wins. 46 a6 $\mathbb{N}c6$ 47 $\mathbb{E}b2$ $\mathbb{N}f4$ 48 a7 $\mathbb{E}a5$ 49 $\mathbb{N}c4$ 1–0 50 $\mathbb{E}a2$ follows.

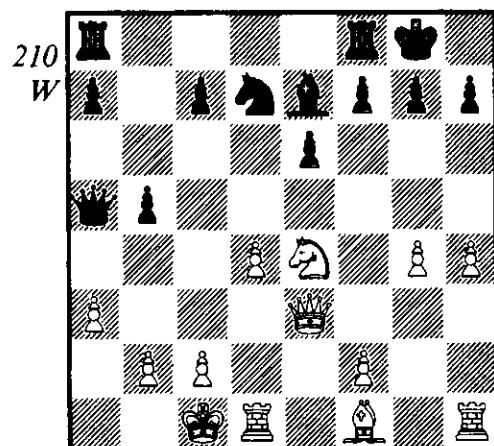
Gelfer–Gruenfeld
Israel, 1978

An impregnable outpost is not necessarily a desirable objective in itself. Such is the case in the diagrammed position above, where the black knight on b4, well-



entrenched though it may be, is manifestly out of play.

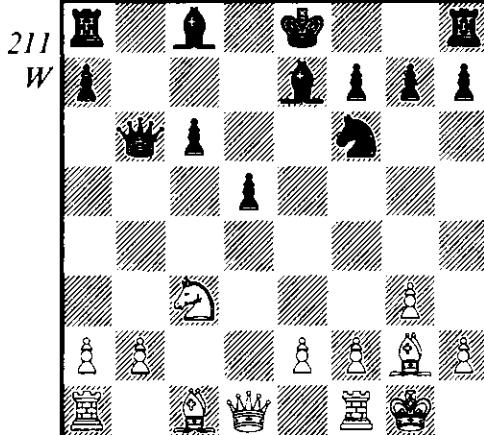
Bogoljubow–Reti
New York, 1924



Black has just played 16 ... b5 intending ... b5–b4 ... c7–c5 etc. This gave White an opportunity to pounce upon the newly created weakness c5 with 17 b4! After 17 ... $\mathbb{N}b6$ 18 $\mathbb{N}c5$, White's pawn configuration contains Black's pawns, which are liable to become targets in the ending.

Rubinstein–Salwe
Lodz, 1908

1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 $\mathbb{N}c3$ c5 4 cxd5 exd5 5 $\mathbb{N}f3$ $\mathbb{N}f6$ 6 g3 $\mathbb{N}c6$ 7 $\mathbb{N}g2$



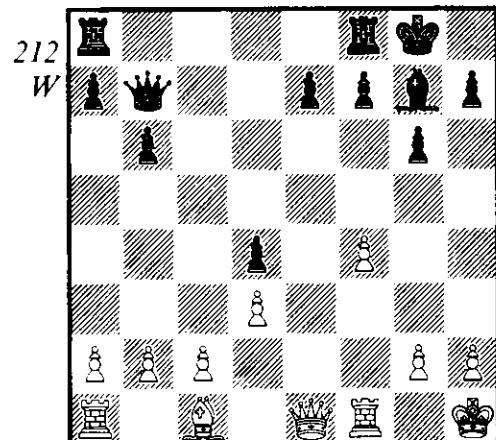
cxd4 8 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ One of the earliest examples of square control. True, the exchange of knights bolsters the isolated d-pawn, but this consideration is outweighed by White's blockade and domination of d4 and c5. 9 ... $\mathbb{B}xc6$ 10 0-0 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ (211) On 10 ... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 11 e4! is strong.

11 $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ $\mathbb{W}b5$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ White has gained absolute control of the key squares c5 and d4.

12 ... 0-0 13 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 14 f3 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ The exchange of bishops strengthens White's hold on the dark squares. On no account must Black be allowed to play ... c5 and ... d4. 15 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 18 $\mathbb{W}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}ee8$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}ec8$ 20 e3 $\mathbb{W}b7$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ Now Black is saddled with a bad bishop. 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ Hereabouts Black ought to prevent b2-b4 with ... a5. 23 $\mathbb{Q}fc2$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ 24 b4 a6 25 $\mathbb{Q}a5$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 26 a3 $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ and White won.

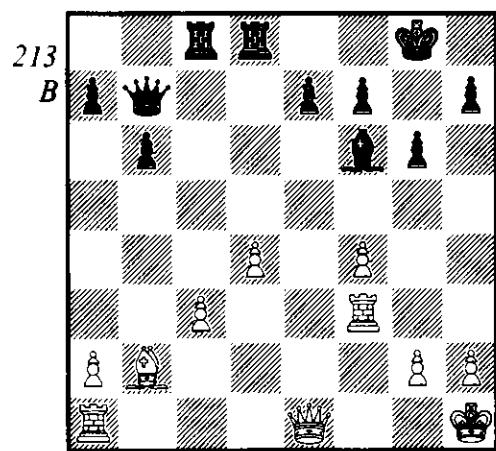
Sir George Thomas—Alekhine
Baden-Baden, 1925

Uncomfortable with the backwardness of his c2 pawn, White



hastens to advance it. This leads to a different pawn configuration, which has its own drawbacks. An apposite example of the conversion of one advantage to another.

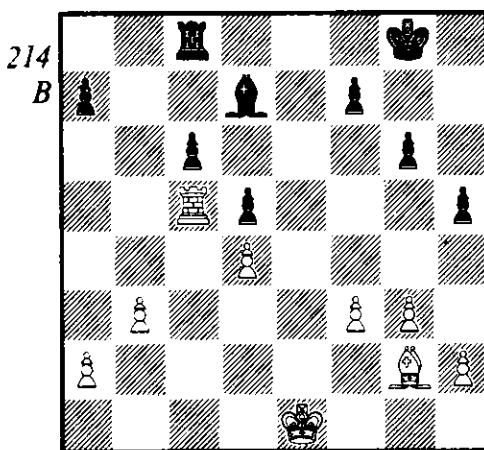
18 c4 dxc3 *En passant* captures suffer no delay! 19 bxc3 $\mathbb{Q}ac8$ Black induces White to play d3-d4, whereupon he will establish a bind on the squares c4 and d5. 20 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}fd8$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 22 d4 Aim achieved (213).



22 ... $\mathbb{W}d5$ 23 $\mathbb{W}e3$ $\mathbb{W}b5$ 24 $\mathbb{W}d2$ $\mathbb{W}d5$ 25 h3 e6 26 $\mathbb{W}e1$ $\mathbb{W}a4$ 27 $\mathbb{W}a1$ b5 28 $\mathbb{W}d1$ $\mathbb{W}c4$ 29 $\mathbb{W}b3$ $\mathbb{W}d6$ 30 $\mathbb{W}h2$ $\mathbb{W}a6$ 31 $\mathbb{W}ff1$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 32 $\mathbb{W}h1$ $\mathbb{W}cc6$ 33 $\mathbb{W}fe1$ $\mathbb{W}h4$ 34 $\mathbb{W}f1$ $\mathbb{W}c4$ As in the previous example, here too transition into the ending is an effective method of pursuing one's advantage.

35 $\mathbb{W}xc4$ $\mathbb{B}xc4$ 36 a3 $\mathbb{A}e7$ 37 $\mathbb{B}fb1$ $\mathbb{A}d6$ 38 g3 $\mathbb{B}f8$ 39 $\mathbb{B}g2$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 40 $\mathbb{B}f2$ $\mathbb{B}d7$ 41 $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}c6$ 42 $\mathbb{B}a2$ $\mathbb{B}ca4$ 43 $\mathbb{B}ba1$ $\mathbb{B}d5$ Black's game almost plays itself. 44 $\mathbb{B}d3$ $\mathbb{B}6a5$ 45 $\mathbb{A}c1$ a6 46 $\mathbb{A}b2$ h5 Threatening ... h5–h4. 47 h4 f6! 48 $\mathbb{A}c1$ e5 49 fxe5 fxe5 50 $\mathbb{A}b2$ exd4 51 cxd4 b4! 0–1

Portisch–Reshevsky Palma de Mallorca, 1970



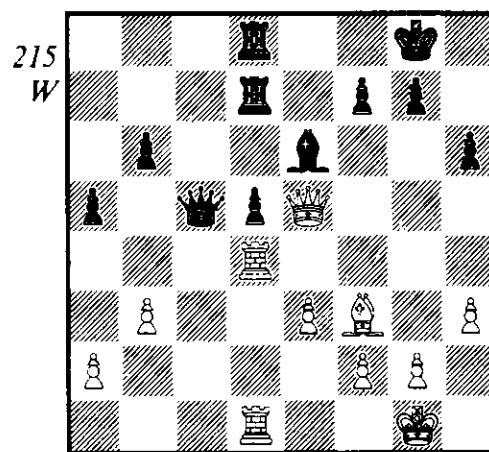
The cards are clearly stacked: good versus bad bishop, weak pawns on a7, c6 and d5.

29 ... $\mathbb{B}f8$ 30 $\mathbb{B}d2$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 31 b4 $\mathbb{B}d6$ 32 h4 $\mathbb{B}c7$ 33 $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{B}f5$ 34 $\mathbb{B}c3$ $\mathbb{B}b6$ 35 $\mathbb{B}a3$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 36 $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 37 $\mathbb{B}e3$ Leading to a clear-cut ending, this constitutes the most convincing winning method. 37 ... $\mathbb{B}xe3$ 38 $\mathbb{B}xe3$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 39 g4! $\mathbb{B}b1$ 39 ... hxg4 40 fxe5 $\mathbb{B}b1$ loses to 41 h5. 40 gxh5 gxh5 41 f4 $\mathbb{B}d6$ 41 ... $\mathbb{B}g6$ 42 f5 etc.

42 $\mathbb{B}xh5$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 43 a3 $\mathbb{B}f5$ 44 $\mathbb{B}f3$ $\mathbb{B}d7$ 45 $\mathbb{B}g3$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 46 $\mathbb{B}g4$ f5 47 $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}g7$ 48 h5 $\mathbb{B}h6$ 49 $\mathbb{B}h4$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 50 $\mathbb{B}d3$ $\mathbb{B}d7$ 51 $\mathbb{B}a6$ $\mathbb{B}e6$ 52 $\mathbb{B}b7$ $\mathbb{B}d7$ 53 a4 $\mathbb{B}e8$ Zugzwang! 54 $\mathbb{B}c8$ $\mathbb{B}xh5$ 55 $\mathbb{B}d7$ and the fall

of the c6 pawn led to immediate victory.

Botvinnik–Zagoriansky Sverdlovsk, 1943

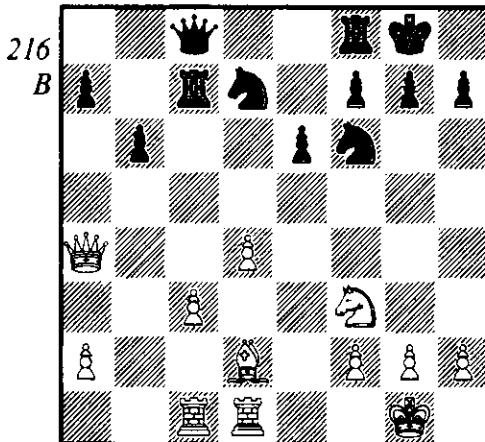


Black's pieces are all tied down to the defence of the d-pawn. The time is ripe for opening another front.

25 g4 $\mathbb{W}c6$ 26 g5 hxg5 27 $\mathbb{W}xg5$ f6 28 $\mathbb{W}g6$ $\mathbb{B}f7$ 29 $\mathbb{W}g3$ f5 30 $\mathbb{W}g5$ $\mathbb{W}e6$ 30 ... $\mathbb{W}g6$ costs the d-pawn. Or 30 ... $\mathbb{W}f6$ 31 $\mathbb{W}xf6$ with $\mathbb{B}h2$ –g3–f4 to follow. 31 $\mathbb{B}h1$ $\mathbb{W}e5$ 32 $\mathbb{B}g1$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 33 $\mathbb{W}h6$ $\mathbb{B}b8$ On 33 ... g6 (33 ... $\mathbb{B}d6$ 34 $\mathbb{B}xg7+$) comes h3–h4–h5. 34 $\mathbb{B}h4$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 35 $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ 36 $\mathbb{B}f4$ $\mathbb{B}bb7$ 37 $\mathbb{B}g5$ $\mathbb{B}f7$ 38 $\mathbb{W}h5$ $\mathbb{W}a1+$ 39 $\mathbb{B}h2$ g6 40 $\mathbb{W}xg6$ and wins.

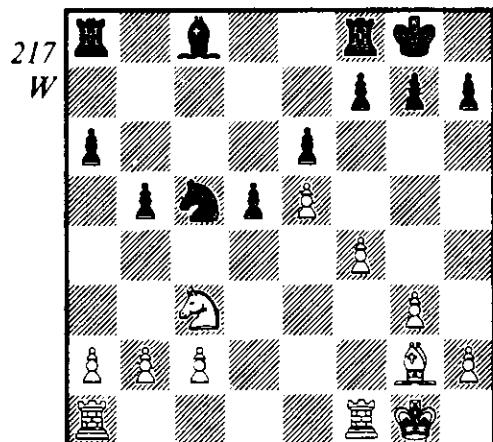
Taimanov–Karpov Moscow, 1972

White is about to advance his c-pawn to c4. So Karpov makes a courageous and well-thought-out decision: to block the pawn and blockade the light-coloured square—be it at the cost of a pawn.



216

B



217

W

17 ... $\mathbb{E}c4!$ 18 $\mathbb{W}xa7$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 19 $\mathbb{W}a3$ $\mathbb{E}c8$ White's bishop is kept passive. 20 $h3$ $h6$ 21 $\mathbb{E}b1$ $\mathbb{E}a4$ 22 $\mathbb{W}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 23 $\mathbb{E}dc1$ $\mathbb{E}c4$ 24 $\mathbb{E}b2$ $f6$! Denying the square $e5$ to the white knight. The square $e6$, though theoretically weakened, cannot be attacked.

25 $\mathbb{E}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 26 $\mathbb{W}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 27 $\mathbb{E}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 28 $\mathbb{W}b1$ $\mathbb{E}a8$ 29 $\mathbb{E}e4$
To be considered: 29 $\mathbb{W}d3$ and if 29 ... $\mathbb{E}xa2$ 30 $\mathbb{E}xe6$!?. 29 ... $\mathbb{E}ca4$ 30 $\mathbb{E}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 31 $\mathbb{W}d3$ $\mathbb{E}c4$ 32 $\mathbb{E}e1$ $\mathbb{E}a3$ 33 $\mathbb{W}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ Now White ought to go in for 34 $\mathbb{W}d3$, threatening 35 $\mathbb{E}xe6$!?. On 34 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 35 $\mathbb{E}b3$ is strong. 34 $\mathbb{E}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 35 $\mathbb{W}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e2+$ 36 $\mathbb{W}xe2$ $\mathbb{E}xc1+$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ $\mathbb{W}xc1+$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{E}xf3$! 39 $gxf3$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ and in this precarious situation (40 ... $\mathbb{W}g5$ and 40 ... $\mathbb{W}f4+$ are hard to parry) White overstepped the time limit.

Tarrasch–Teichmann San Sebastian, 1912

The pawn formation, stemming from a French Defence, guarantees White an ideal outpost for a piece on d4 and renders his bishop more useful than Black's, whose

scope is restricted by the presence of several of his pawns on white squares. Seeking counterplay with ... $f6$ only makes things worse after $\mathbb{E}el$, as does the advance of the f-pawn to f5, which augments the effect of $g3-g4$. Black's control of the half-open c-file hardly counter-balances these disadvantages.

16 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{E}d7$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{E}ac8$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{E}c7$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{E}e8$ 20 $\mathbb{E}f2$ A prelude to switching the bishop to d3. 20 ... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ *En route* to c6, in order to exchange the mighty knight on d4. 21 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 22 $b3$ Clearly, White cannot allow ... $\mathbb{Q}c4$. 22 ... $h6$? Tarrasch and other commentators in his wake castigate Black for this move, which assists White in opening lines on the kingside by means of $h2-h4-h5$ and $g3-g4-g5$. However, to use Tarrasch's own words: 'When there are no good moves, bad ones are easy to come by.'

23 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ Henceforth the need to guard against an eventual $\mathbb{Q}c5$ will tie down a black rook to the c-file. The respective parts played by the kings are striking.

25 ... ♜d7 **26** g4! Signalling the imminent opening of a second front. **26** ... ♜c8 **27** h4 g6 Defending against **28** g5 h5 **29** g6!. **28** ♜h1 ♜g7 **29** h5! ♜h8 **30** ♜fh2 ♜d7 **31** g5! hxg5 **32** fxg5? More incisive is **32** h6+! ♜h7 **33** fxg5, with an overwhelming position. **32** ... ♜xh5 **32** ... ♜h7 **33** h6+ confines the rook, whereas on **32** ... ♜e8 comes **33** hxg6 ♜xh2 **34** gxf7!. **33** ♜xh5 gxh5 **34** ♜xh5 ♜f8 **35** ♜h8+ ♜e7 **36** g6 **36** ♜h7 ♜e8 **37** g6 has been analysed exhaustively as leading to a forced win. In this variation, **37** c3 (instead of **37** g6), accompanied by ♜e2–h5, is another effective plan.

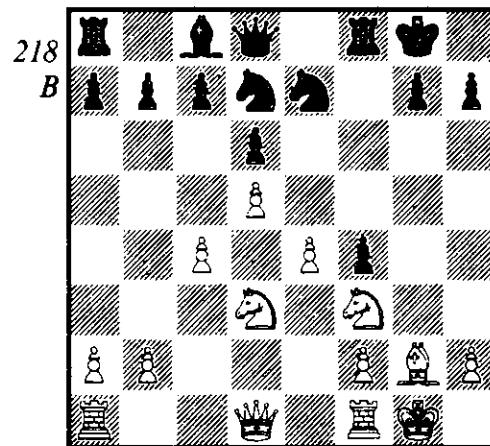
36 ... fxg6 37 $\text{h}x\text{g6}$ b4 37 ...
 $\text{h}c8$, inviting the exchange of
 rooks, results in a typically lost
 bishop ending: 38 $\text{h}h7+$ $\text{d}d8$ 39
 $\text{h}xc7$ xc7 40 $\text{c}c5$ $\text{d}d7$ 41 $\text{f}f7$
 $\text{h}c8$ 42 $\text{e}e8$ $\text{b}b7$ 43 $\text{b}b4$ $\text{c}c8$ 44
 $\text{c}c6$ (zugzwang). 38 $\text{h}h7+$ $\text{d}d8$
 39 $\text{d}d3$ $\text{c}c3?$ Hastening the end.
 However, after 39 ... $\text{c}c6$ White
 has the pleasant choice between
 either $\text{h}h1$ ($-a1$) and $a3$, and the
 somewhat more laborious shifting
 of his king to $f6$ (via $e3$, $f4$ and
 $g5$), followed by $\text{h}h8(+)$, $f6-$
 $e7$ and $\text{h}h8-d8-d6$. 40 $a3$ $a5$ 41
 $\text{h}h8+$ $\text{e}e7$ Or 41 ... $\text{c}c7$ 42
 $\text{a}a8$ $\text{b}b6$ 43 $\text{a}a6+$. 1-0

Alatortsev–Levenfish

Tbilisi, 1937

The struggle revolves around the central square e5.

1 ... ♕g6 Thwarting e4-e5. 2 ♕c1 ♘e7 3 ♕e1 ♖de5! Black can



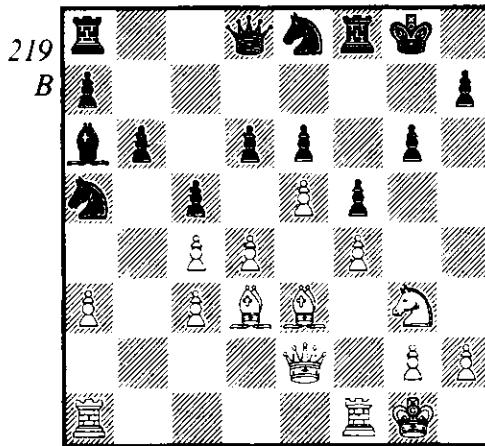
look forward to an ending where White will be saddled with a bad bishop. 4 ♘fxe5 ♘xe5 5 f3 b6 6 ♘xe5 ♜xe5 Now e5 serves as a pivot for the queen. 7 ♜d2 Levenfish recommends the more active 7 b4 a5 8 a3 axb4 9 axb4 and on 9 ... ♜a2 10 ♜c2. 7 ... ♜d7 8 ♜c3 ♜fe8 9 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 Now, for the rook. 10 a3 a5 11 b3 ♗f7! And now, it is the king who heads to e5.

12 ♜f2 ♜f6 13 ♜e2 ♜h5 14
 ♜h1 ♜e5 15 ♜d3 h6 15 ... g5 16
 h3 ♜f8-f6-h6 is more accurate.
 16 h3 ♜g5 17 ♜h2 ♜g3 Notice
 how Black constantly finds the
 best available squares for his
 pieces. In a nutshell, this is what
 chess is about. 18 h4 ♜g8 19 ♜e2
 g5 20 hxg5 hxg5 21 ♜f2 g4 22
 ♜h5+ ♜d4 23 ♜d1+ ♜c3 24
 ♜h7 gxf3 25 ♜f1 25 ♜xf3
 ♜xf3+ 26 ♜xf3 ♜g4+. 25 ...
 ♜c2 26 ♜d3 ♜h3 27 ♜xf3
 ♜xf3+ 28 ♜xf3 ♜xf1 0-1

Aloni-Matanovic

Tel Aviv, 1966

1 d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2 c4 e6 3 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 4 e3 c5 5 a3 $\mathbb{Q}xc3+$ 6 bxc3 $\mathbb{Q}c6$
 7 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 0-0 8 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ b6 9 e4 $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 10

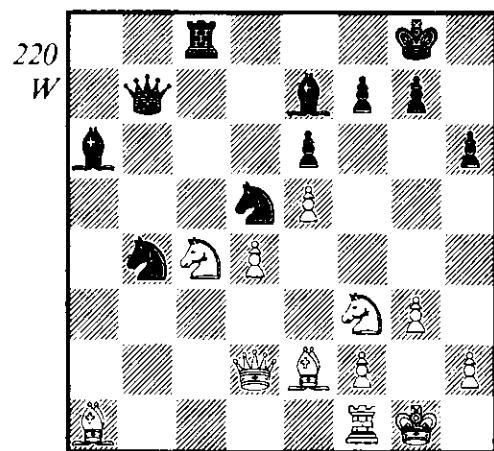


219

B

Korchnoi-Karpov

Moscow, 1973



220

W

219 $\mathbb{A}e3$ $d6$ 11 $f4$ $f5$ 12 $0-0$ $\mathbb{B}a5$ 13
 $\mathbb{B}g3$ $g6$ 14 $e5$ $\mathbb{A}a6$ 15 $\mathbb{W}e2$ (219)

White's handling of the opening phase leaves a lot to be desired: by dint of three timely exchanges, Black presently obtains absolute control of the white squares. 15 ... $cxd4!$ 16 $cxd4$ $d5!$ 17 $cxd5$ $\mathbb{A}xd3$ 18 $\mathbb{W}xd3$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$ White's bishop is passive and several of his pawns are potentially weak. With an unsailable outpost on $d5$ and a pawn majority on the queen's flank, the outcome cannot be in doubt.

19 $\mathbb{B}ac1$ $\mathbb{B}f7$ 20 $\mathbb{B}c3$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 21
 $\mathbb{B}b1$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ 22 $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}d5$ Black's game almost plays itself. 23 $\mathbb{B}c2$
 $\mathbb{B}c8$ 24 $\mathbb{B}d2$ $\mathbb{B}xc2$ 25 $\mathbb{W}xc2$ $\mathbb{W}c6$
26 $\mathbb{W}xc6$ Avoidance of exchanges will allow the black pieces to infiltrate decisively.

26 ... $\mathbb{B}xc6$ 27 $\mathbb{B}f2$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 28
 $\mathbb{B}b3$ $a5$ 29 $g3$ $\mathbb{B}ce7$ 30 $\mathbb{B}c3$ $\mathbb{B}c4$
31 $\mathbb{B}xd5$ $\mathbb{B}xd5$ 32 $\mathbb{B}d3$ $\mathbb{B}f7$ 33
 $\mathbb{B}e2$ $\mathbb{B}e7$ 34 $\mathbb{B}e3$ $\mathbb{B}c2+$ 35 $\mathbb{B}d2$
 $\mathbb{B}d7$ 36 $\mathbb{B}d1$ $\mathbb{B}c4$ 37 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{B}c6$ 38
 $\mathbb{B}d2$ $\mathbb{B}b5$ 39 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{B}a4$ 40 $\mathbb{B}d2$ $b5$
41 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $b4$ 42 $axb4$ $axb4$ 43 $\mathbb{B}d2$
 $b3$ 44 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{B}c2$ 45 $\mathbb{B}d2$ $\mathbb{B}a3$ 46
 $\mathbb{B}c1+$ $\mathbb{B}a2$ 47 $\mathbb{B}d2$ $\mathbb{B}xd2+$ 48
 $\mathbb{B}xd2$ $b2$ 0-1

Here again, absolute control of the key square $d5$, coupled with the glaring weakness created by $g2-g3$ and the lack of co-ordination of White's pieces, grant Black more than sufficient compensation for his material deficit.

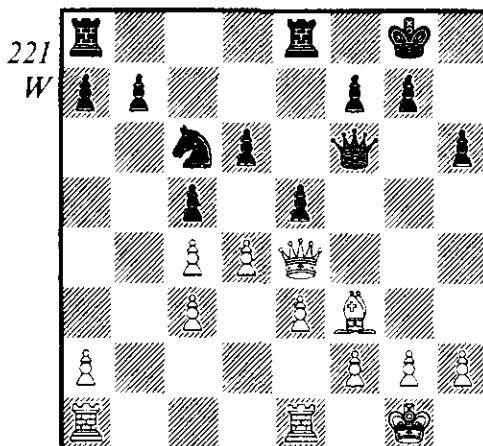
26 $\mathbb{B}e3$ $\mathbb{B}xe3$ 27 $\mathbb{W}xe3$ $\mathbb{B}xe2$
The exchanges accentuate the uselessness of White's bishop and the vulnerability of the white squares in White's camp. 28 $\mathbb{W}xe2$ $\mathbb{B}c2$ 29
 $\mathbb{W}d1$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 30 $h3?$ 30 $d5!$, forcing the exchange of queens (30 ... $\mathbb{B}xd5?$ 31 $\mathbb{B}d4$), is White's only drawing chance.

30 ... $\mathbb{B}d5$ 31 $\mathbb{W}d3$ $\mathbb{W}a4$ 32
 $\mathbb{B}d2$ $\mathbb{B}a2$ 33 $\mathbb{B}b3$ $\mathbb{B}b4$ 34 $\mathbb{W}b1$
 $\mathbb{B}d5$ 35 $\mathbb{B}c1$ $\mathbb{W}a8$ 36 $\mathbb{B}c8+$
 $\mathbb{W}xc8$ 37 $\mathbb{W}xa2$ $\mathbb{W}c4$ 38 $\mathbb{W}b1$ $\mathbb{W}e2$
The simplification has afforded White small relief. 39 $\mathbb{W}c1?$ 39
 $\mathbb{B}c5$ or 39 $\mathbb{W}f1$ is a better defence.

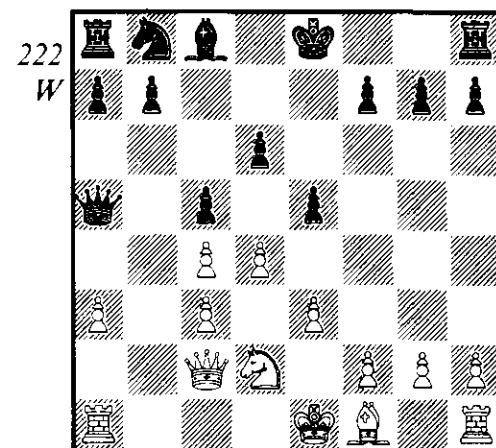
39 ... $\mathbb{B}g5$ 40 $\mathbb{W}f1$ $\mathbb{W}f3!$ Black cashes in on his concentration of forces on the kingside. 41 $h4$ 0-1
41 ... $\mathbb{B}e3!$ (41 ... $\mathbb{B}e3$ 42 $\mathbb{B}d2!$) leads to a forced win both after 42 $\mathbb{W}g2$ and 42 $fxe3$.

Botvinnik–Chekhover

Leningrad, 1938

221
W**Botvinnik–Kan**

Leningrad, 1939

222
W

The next two examples, bearing Botvinnik's stamp, must have appeared revolutionary in the late 1930s: White readily saddles himself with doubled c-pawns which, far from being a liability, control the key squares d4 and d5.

16 dxc5! dxc5 **17 ♜ad1 ♜ad8** **18 ♜d5!** The threat of capturing on c5 gains a tempo in the struggle for control of the open d-file. **18 ... b6** **19 ♜ed1 ♜a5 20 h3** xd5 **21 ♜xd5 ♜e7** **22 ♜g4 ♜b7** **23 ♜f5!** b8 **24 ♜d7 ♜d8** **25 ♜xe5!** xc4 **26 ♜xb8 ♜xb8**

The white rook on the seventh rank, collaborating with his strong bishop, guarantees victory. With his next move, rather than win a pawn, Botvinnik prefers to enhance the scope of his bishop. **27 ♜e4!** a3 **28 ♜d5 ♜f8** **29 e4** **a5** **30 c4 b5** **31 cxb5 ♜xb5** **32 e5**

While Black is reduced to waiting moves, White gradually strengthens his position. **32 ... a4** **33 f4 ♜d4** **34 ♜f2 g5** **35 g3 gxf4** **36 gxf4 ♜e6** **37 ♜e3 c4** **38 f5 ♜c5**

39 ♜c7 ♜d3 **40 e6 fxe6** **41 fxe6****1–0****Botvinnik–Kan**

Leningrad, 1939

11 dxe5! As in the previous example, the square d5 will fall under White's control, whereas the corresponding central square d4 is denied to Black's pieces. **11 ... dxe5** **12 ♜d3 h6** **13 0-0 0-0** **14 f4 ♜d7** **15 f5** Restricting the scope of the black bishop.

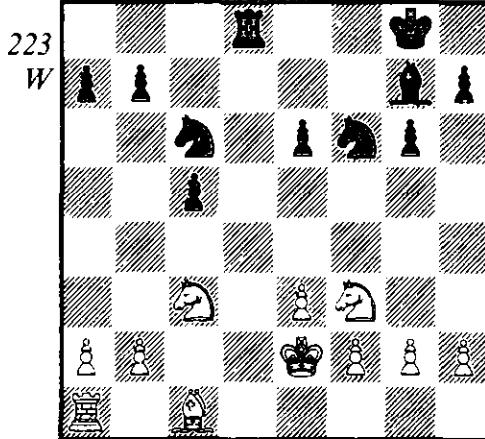
15 ... ♜f6 **16 ♜e4 ♜d8** **17 ♜xf6+** xf6 **18 ♜e4!** Again, d5 is the ideal square for White's bishop. **18 ... ♜ab8** **19 ♜ad1 b6** **20 h3 ♜a6** **21 ♜d5 b5** **22 cxb5** xb5 **23 c4 ♜b6** **24 ♜b1**

Thanks to his strong bishop, White won in 41 moves.

Petrosian–Botvinnik

Moscow, 1963

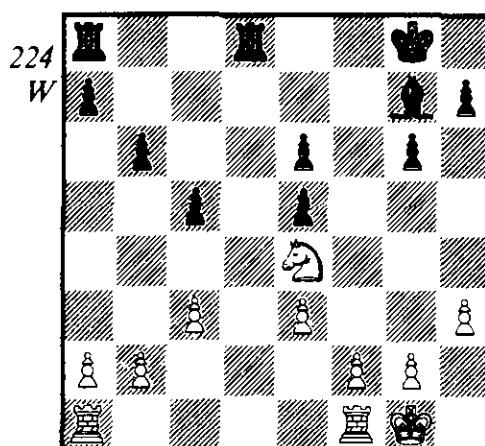
1 d4 ♜f6 **2 c4 g6** **3 ♜c3 d5** **4 ♜f3 ♜g7** **5 e3 0-0** **6 ♜e2 dxc4** **7 ♜xc4 c5** **8 d5 e6** **9 dxe6 ♜xd1+** **10 ♜xd1 ♜e6** **11 ♜xe6 fxe6** **12**



223 *W* ♖e2 ♜c6 13 ♕d1 ♜ad8 14 ♜xd8
♜xd8 (223)

In this innocuous-looking position, rather than complete his development with 15 ♔d2 etc., White exploited the presence of a pawn masking the e-file to plant a knight on e4: 15 ♜g5! Although, strictly speaking, Black's position may be deemed tenable with best play, in the game he was unable to surmount the difficulties inherent in it and lost in 48 moves.

Alekhine—Euwe *London, 1922*

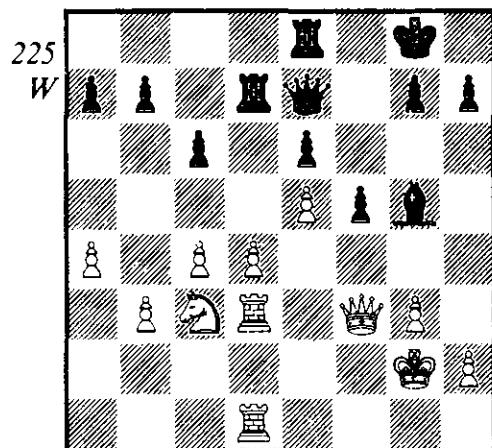


An even more drastic precedent to such strategy occurred 41 years earlier. By dint of methodical

play, White converted his manifest superiority into victory.

Botvinnik—Flohr

Moscow, 1936

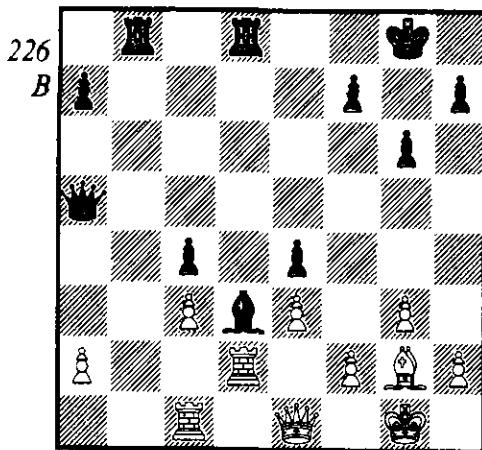


White attains a winning position by planting his knight on d6.

33 c5! The knight heads for d6. The surrender of the square d5 is insignificant. 33 ... a5 34 ♜b1 ♜f8 35 ♜a3 ♜d8 36 ♜c4 ♜c7 37 ♜d6 ♜b8 38 ♜b1 White profits from the fact that exchanging on d6 will always give him a protected passed pawn on that square.

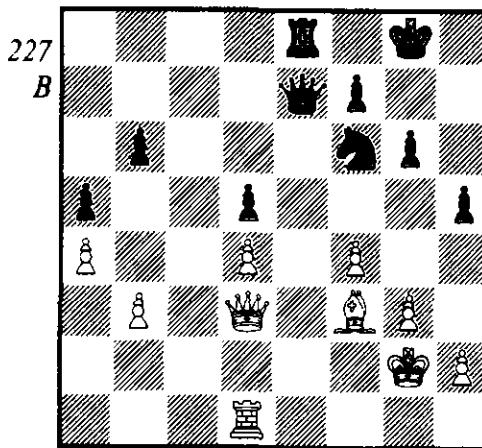
38 ... ♜d8 39 b4 axb4 40 ♜xb4
♜xd6 Not desirable, but there is nothing better. 41 exd6 ♜a5 42 ♜db3 ♜e8 43 ♜e2 ♜a8 44 ♜e3 ♜f7 45 ♜c4 Simpler is 45 ♜h3. 45 ... b5 46 ♜c2 46 axb5? fails against a discovered check. 46 ... ♜xd6 Or 46 ... bxa4 47 ♜xa4 ♜a7 48 ♜ea3. 47 cxd6 c5+ 48 ♜h3 cxb4 49 ♜c7+ ♜g8 50 d7 ♜f8 51 ♜d6 h6 52 ♜xe6+ ♜h7 53 ♜e8 b3 54 ♜xa8 ♜xa8 55 axb5 ♜d8 56 ♜xb3 ♜xd7 57 b6 1-0

Bilek–Smyslov
Polanica Zdroj, 1968



Black's advantage is overwhelming: White's queenside pawns are weak, his bishop passive, his rooks uncooperating. Exchanging bishops is futile since it yields Black a mighty passed pawn on d3. These factors, combined with Black's control of the b-file (note that the square b1 is denied to the white rooks), ensured Black a comparatively easy victory.

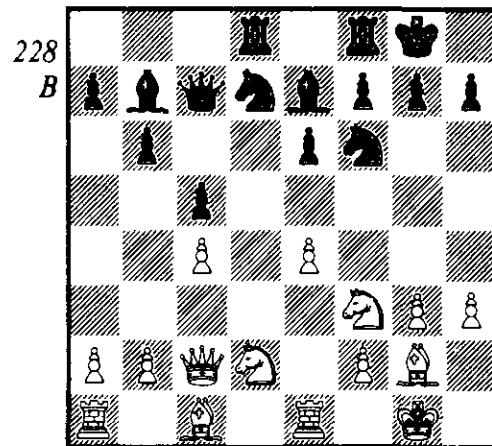
Botvinnik–Lilienthal
Moscow, 1941



In this position White has to contend with Black's advanced

outpost on e4, to wit, the possibility ... $\mathbb{Q}f6-e4$. The presence of a bishop on f3 does not quite solve this problem since after an eventual ... $\mathbb{Q}f6-e4 \mathbb{Q}f3xe4$, $d5xe4$ will give Black a potent passed pawn.

Olafsson–Karpov
Tilburg, 1977



White has played the opening somewhat insipidly and lags in the development of his pieces. Karpov's conduct of the next phase is exemplary:

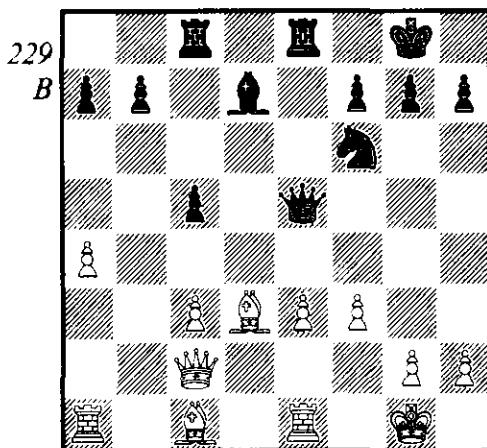
13 ... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 14 $b3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ An original manoeuvre: if White captures on e5, he ends up with an inferior bishop after 15 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ accompanied by ... $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ and ... $e6-e5$. By the same token, 15 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ is unpromising, in view of 15 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ e5 coupled with the planting of the knight on d4.

15 $\mathbb{Q}b1$ h6 16 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}f4?$ Loss of time, but White's position is uncomfortable enough. **17 ... e5** Black's solidly entrenched bishop is a thorn in

White's flesh. White resigned on his 40th move.

Gligoric–Matanovic

Bled, 1961



In the diagram Black committed the oft-repeated error of ceding the square d4 to a white piece:

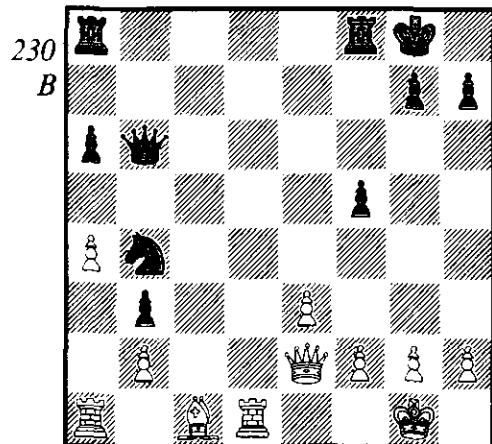
17 ... c4? 18 ♜f1 ♕a5 19 e4 ♜e6 20 ♜e3 ♜a6 21 ♜b2 b6?
Black's concentration of forces on the edge of the board grants White a free hand in the centre. 22 ♜d4! ♜xa4 23 e5 ♜e8 24 e6 f6
Comparatively best.

25 ♜e2 b5 26 ♜d1 ♜c7 27 ♜c2 ♜e7 28 ♜e4 ♜h8 29 ♜f2 g6 30 f4 ♜d6 31 f5 g5 32 ♜c2 ♜e8 33 ♜f3 ♜d8 34 ♜h5 ♜g8 35 h4 gxh4 36 ♜e4 ♜g7 37 ♜g4 ♜ad6 38 ♜xa4 ♜xd4 The last gasp. 39 cxd4 bxa4 40 ♜xa4 ♜h8 41 ♜f7 ♜xf7 42 exf7 1-0 (in 66 moves).

Euwe–Alekhine

Bad Mannheim, 1937

Instead of the cool 24 ... ♜ac8 25 ♜d2 ♜c2, coupled with 26 ... ♜a2, Black lets himself be enticed by the possibility of planting his knight on the alluring square c2:

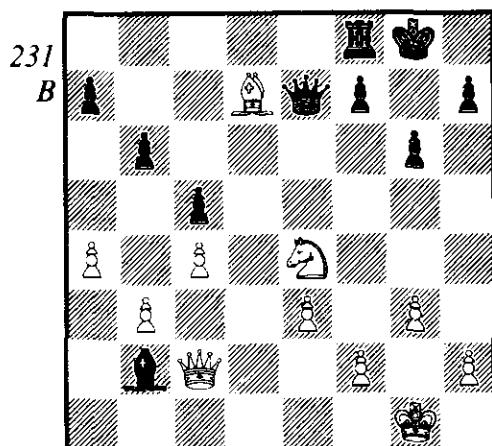


24 ... ♜c2? Ignoring the fact that the text move enables White to occupy the vital a1–h8 diagonal. 25 ♜b1 ♜c6 26 ♜d2! The roles played by the white bishop and the black knight make an amusing contrast.

26 ... ♜xa4 27 ♜c3 ♜b5 28 ♜f3 ♜ad8 29 ♜g3 ♜d7 30 ♜d6 ♜ff7 31 ♜bd1 f4 To foil a double exchange of rooks followed by 34 ♜b8+ and 35 ♜xb3. 32 exf4 a5 33 f5 a4 34 f6 g6 35 h4 ♜xd6 36 ♜xd6 h5 37 ♜e6 1-0

Tal–Kupreichik

Moscow, 1969



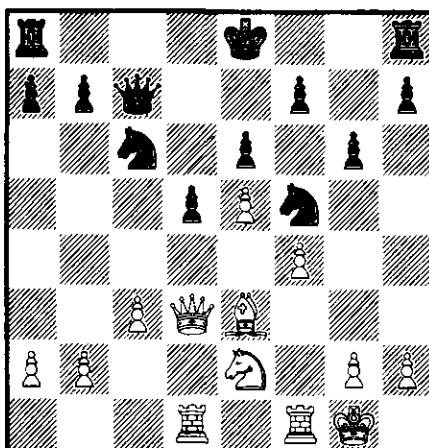
White, who had sacrificed the exchange, is slightly behind in material but his well-placed pieces compensate for that:

24 ... ♜d8 24 ... ♜xd7? 25

$\mathbb{W}xb2$ is feeble. 25 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ With Black's 'help', White actually won.

Nimzowitsch–Capablanca New York, 1927

232
W

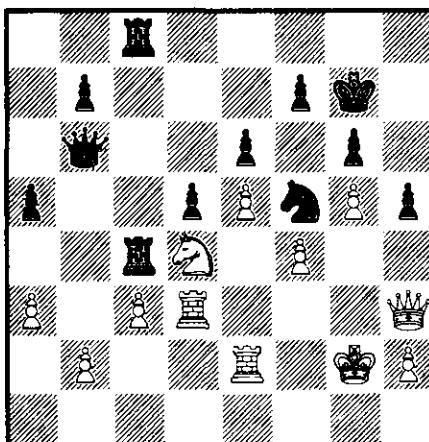


16 g4? A strategic error, which plays into Black's hands. 16 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 17 $\mathbb{W}xe3$ h5! 18 g5 Surrendering the square f5. The lesser evil is 18 h3, acquiescing in the opening of the h-file.

18 ... 0-0 19 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}fc8$ 21 a3 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}ed2$ $\mathbb{Q}ec8$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}ed2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ a5 30 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!$

Whatever he does, White can no longer prevent the infiltration of Black's heavy artillery into his camp.

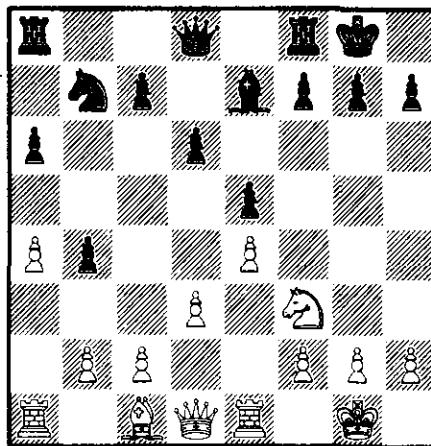
233
W



31 $\mathbb{Q}xf5+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}ed2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ Note how the square e4 has become a pivot for Black's pieces. 34 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}cxd4$ 37 cxd4 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ b5 39 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ b4 40 axb4 axb4 41 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}c1$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}h1$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e1$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d1$ 45 b3 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ Black's strategy has been crowned with success. White is without a move. 46 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 0-1

Ljubojevic–Hübner Tilburg, 1985

234
W

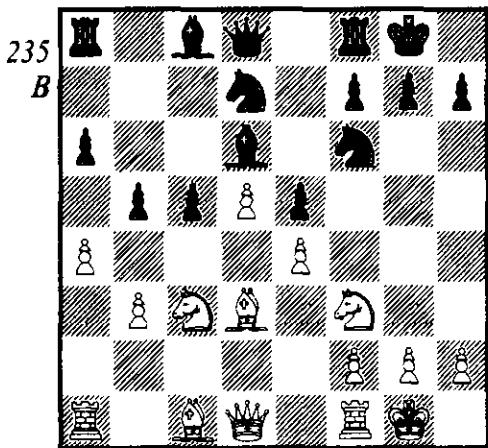


1 e4 e5 2 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ a6 4 $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 5 0-0 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ b5 7 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 0-0 8 a4 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 9 d3 d6 10 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ b4 11 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 13 $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ (234)

The exchange of two minor pieces has left the square d5 vulnerable. 14 c3! A difficult move to meet: 14 ... a5 is unsatisfactory owing to 15 cxb4, creating a passed a-pawn; whereas 14 ... bxc3 15 bxc3 presents White with an open b-file and a target on a6.

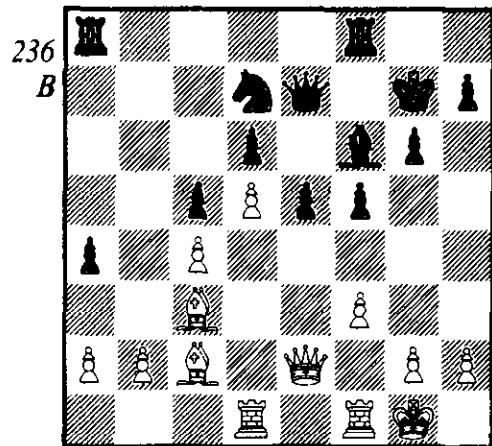
14 ... c5 15 cxb4 cxb4 16 $\mathbb{Q}b3!$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ And with the queen securely ensconced in the centre of the board, White won on move 42.

12 Strategic Advantages: Creation of Good Squares Improving Piece Position



Sacrificing a pawn, or pawns, to secure strategic outposts for one's pieces is a common positional theme. Here are a few examples.

Pilnik–Geller
Gothenburg, 1955



In the diagram, arrived at after 1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 4 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ e6 5 e3 $\mathbb{Q}bd7$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ dx $c4$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ b5 8 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ a6 9 e4 c5 9 d5 e5 10 b3 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 11 0-0 0-0 12 a4 (235), White aims at conquering the square c4 after 12 ... b4? 13 $\mathbb{Q}b1-d2-c4$.

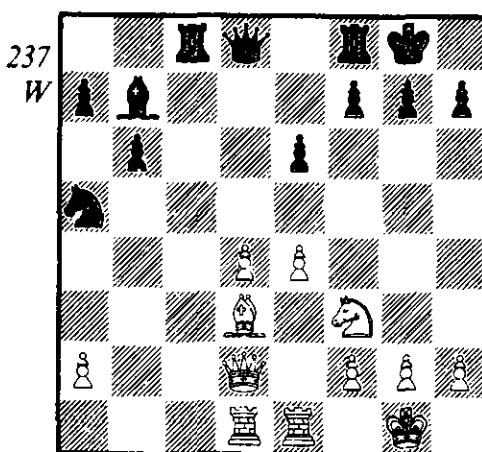
The indicated response to White's 12th move is 12 ... c4! 13 bxc4 b4 depriving White of the square c4; gaining the strategic square c5 for his knight; and establishing a passed pawn on the queenside: all in all, good value for the investment of a pawn.

22 ... e4! 23 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 24 fxe4 f4! The white bishop is manifestly bad and the black knight cannot be dislodged from e5, from where it exerts a marked influence. 25 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ Possibly White should avail himself of the last opportunity of playing 25 e5 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}e4$.

25 ... $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}df1$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ g5 Note how Black's mobile pawn majority on

the kingside is more significant than White's extra pawn. 29 $\mathbb{W}c3$ $\mathbb{A}af8$ 30 h3 h5 31 $\mathbb{A}e2$ g4! The beginning of the final phase. 32 $\mathbb{A}xf4$ $\mathbb{A}xf4$ 33 $\mathbb{A}xf4$ $\mathbb{A}xf4$ 34 g3 $\mathbb{A}f3+$ 34 ... $\mathbb{W}xh3$ 35 gxf4 g3 is even swifter. 35 $\mathbb{A}f2$ $\mathbb{W}xh3$ 36 gxf4 g3+ 37 $\mathbb{A}xf3$ g2+ 38 $\mathbb{A}f2$ $\mathbb{W}h2$ 0-1

Polugayevsky-Tal Moscow, 1969

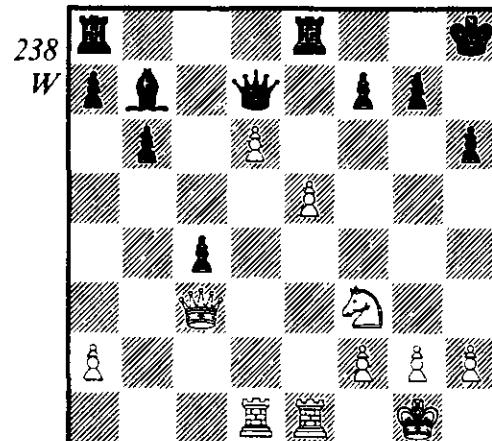


16 d5! exd5 17 e5 The a8-h1 diagonal has been blocked; the b1-h7 diagonal has been opened; and the e5 pawn plays an important part in the coming onslaught: 17 ... $\mathbb{A}c4$ 18 $\mathbb{W}f4$ $\mathbb{A}b2$ Provoking the winning sacrifice that follows, which decided the game some 15 moves later. In any case, Black's position is untenable.

19 $\mathbb{A}xh7+$! 1-0 in 37 moves.

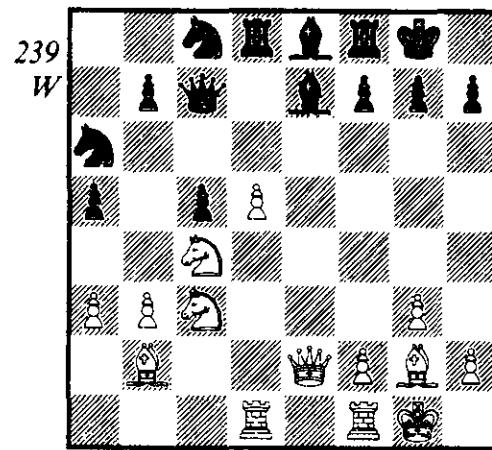
Ree-Beliavsky Lucerne, 1982

The advanced central pawns, supported by the white rooks, ensure White's victory. The mundane 26 $\mathbb{W}xc4$ or 26 $\mathbb{A}d4$, coupled with f2-f4, should both suffice.



More thematic, however, is the clearing sacrifice 26 e6! $\mathbb{A}xe6$ 27 $\mathbb{A}e5$ $\mathbb{A}xe5$ Compulsory. 28 $\mathbb{A}xe5$ and White won rapidly.

Glaz-De-Lagron Bad Lauterberg im Harz, 1985

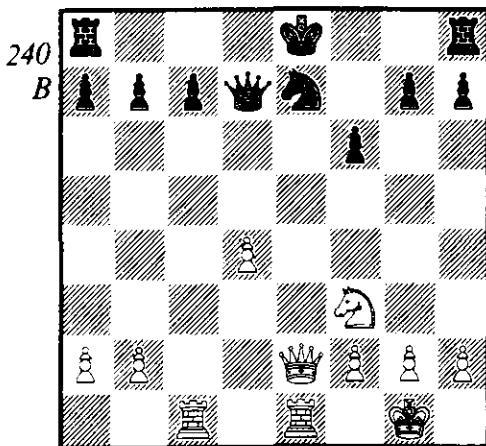


Again, a strategic pawn sacrifice to clear the square d5 for the knight, followed by a mating sacrifice.

22 d6! $\mathbb{A}xd6$ 23 $\mathbb{A}d5$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ 24 $\mathbb{A}f6+$! gxf6 25 $\mathbb{A}xf6$ b5 26 $\mathbb{W}h5$ $\mathbb{A}e7$ 27 $\mathbb{W}g5+$ 1-0

Steinitz-Bardeleben Hastings, 1895

Black's 16 ... $\mathbb{C}6?$ invites one of the founding fathers of positional chess to make a devastating clearing sacrifice (correct was 16 ... $\mathbb{A}f7$):

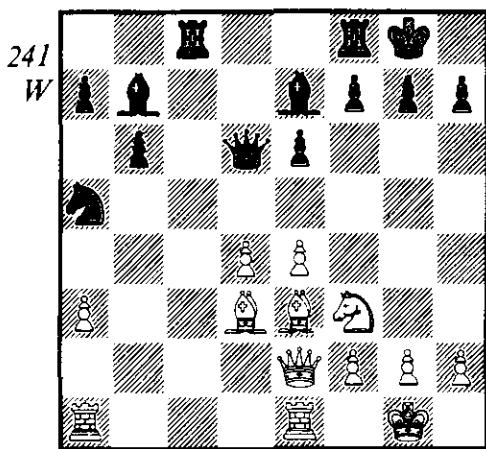


17 d5! cxd5 18 ♜d4 The idea behind 17 d5!. **18 ... ♗f7 19 ♜e6 ♜hc8 20 ♜g4 g6** White's forthcoming combination has become famous in chess history. **21 ♜g5+ ♗e8** Hereabouts Black is said to have left the playing hall in disgust.

Steinitz announced mate after:
22 ♜xe7+!! ♗f8 23 ♜f7+! ♗g8 24 ♜g7+ ♗h8 25 ♜xh7+ ♗g8 26 ♜g7+ ♗h8 27 ♜h4+ ♗xg7 28 ♜h7+ ♗f8 29 ♜h8+ ♗e7 30 ♜g7+ ♗e8 31 ♜g8+ ♗e7 32 ♜f7+ ♗d8 33 ♜f8+ ♗e8 34 ♜f7+ ♗d7 35 ♜d6 mate.

Kasparov–Najdorf

Bugojno, 1982



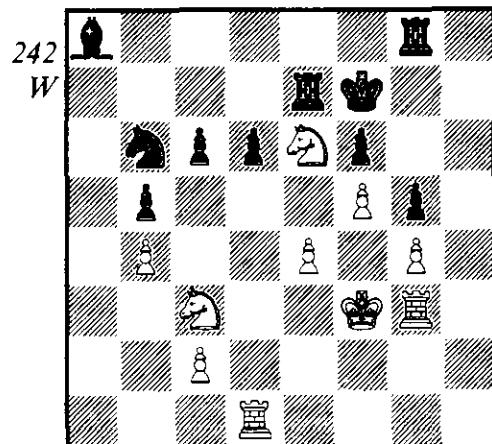
17 d5?! exd5 18 e5 Yet another example of the d4–d5 thrust, followed by e4–e5. **18 ... ♜e6 19**

♗d4 ♜xe5 20 ♜f5 ♜f6 During the game, and for a while thereafter, Kasparov estimated that 20 ... ♜c4 21 ♜f1 was in his favour; but on second thoughts, he revised his opinion, which led him to recommend 17 h4 instead of 17 d5!?.

21 ♜g4 ♜ce8? The losing move. 21 ... ♜c3 is correct. After 22 ♜e7+! ♜xe7 23 ♜d4, Black can defend with 23 ... ♜xd4 24 ♜xd4 ♜f6 25 ♜g4 ♜xa1. **22 ♜d2 ♜xa1** If 22 ... ♜c7 23 ♜h6+ ♗h8 24 ♜xe8 ♜xe8 25 ♜f5!. **23 ♜xa1 ♜xa1 24 ♜xg7? ♜xg7 25 ♜h6 1–0**

Lasker–Capablanca

St. Petersburg, 1914



One of the earliest clearing sacrifices in the history of chess:

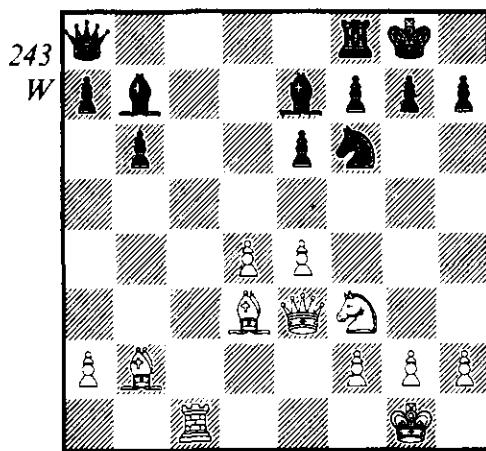
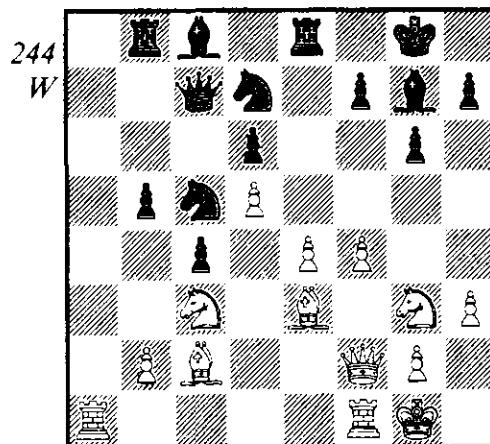
32 ♜h3 32 ♜xd6 ♜c4 (–e5+) grants Black counterplay. 32 ... ♜d7 32 ... ♜xe6 33 ♜h7+! 33 ♗g3 In preparation for his 35th move, White distances his king from the a8–h1 diagonal. 33 ...

34 ♜e8 34 ♜dh1 ♜b7 35 e5!! Enables the knight on c3 to occupy the key post e4.

35 ... dxe5 36 ♜e4 ♜d5 37 ♜c5 Presently winning material and thereafter the game. 1–0

Lilienthal–Flohr

Moscow, 1935



17 d5! exd5 18 ♜d4! The main threat is 19 ♜f5 and ♜g5. 18 ... ♜c5 19 e5?! The right idea, but 19 ♜xc5! bxc5 20 ♜f5 d4 21 ♜g5 is the correct way to go about it. 19 ... ♜e4 20 f3 ♜e8! White had counted merely on 20 ... ♜xd4 21 ♜xd4 ♜c5 22 ♜xc5.

21 fxe4 ♜xe5 22 ♜e1 ♜e8 23 ♜h1 dxe4 With three pawns for the piece and an eminently sound position.

Penrose–Tal

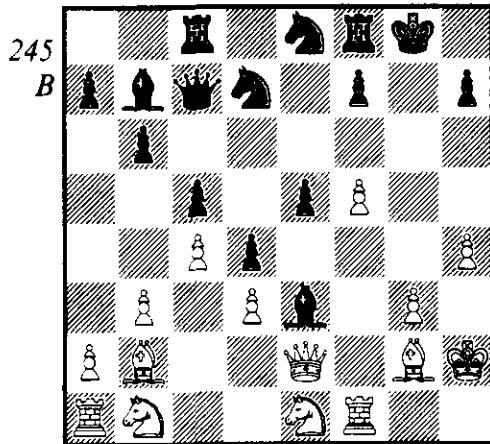
Leipzig, 1960

19 e5! dxe5 20 f5! The open f-file, the cleared square e4 and the passed d-pawn, not to mention the denial of e5 to a black piece, proved more than an adequate

return for the sacrificed pawn. 1–0 in 39 moves.

Polugayevsky–Petrosian

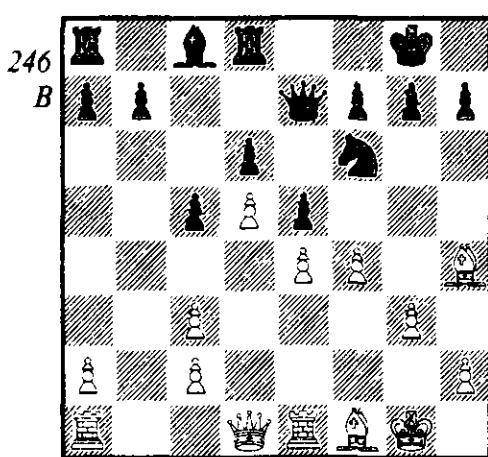
Moscow, 1970



19 ... e4! Clearing the square e5 for the knight. 20 ♜xe4 ♜xe4 21 dxe4 ♜ef6 The remainder of the game may be described as mopping up. 22 ♜g2 ♜fe8 23 ♜d2 ♜xd2 24 ♜xd2 ♜xg3+! 25 ♜xg3 ♜xe4+ 26 ♜f4 ♜xd2 27 ♜fe1 ♜f6 28 ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 29 ♜e1 ♜de4 30 ♜e2 ♜f8 31 ♜f3 Or 31 ♜el ♜h5+ 32 ♜f3 (32 ♜g4 ♜ef6+ 33 ♜f3 ♜xe2 34 ♜xe2 ♜g3+ and 35 ... ♜xf5) 32 ... ♜hg3. 31 ... d3 32 ♜e3 ♜d8

33 ♜e1 d2 34 ♜d1 ♜g4! 35 ♜e3 ♜ef2 36 ♜c3 ♜d3 0-1

Bondarevsky–Lilienthal
Moscow, 1941



246
B

Black takes drastic measures to rid himself of the awkward pin of his knight on f6. This gives rise to a fierce tactical skirmish, replete with positional undertones.

18 ... h6 19 ♜g2 19 ♜f3 is more taxing for Black. 19 ... exf4 20 gxf4 g5!? The idea behind 19 ... exf4. 21 fxg5 ♜g4 Now, on 22 ♜d2 comes 21 ... ♜e5, with ... ♜g6 to follow. 22 e5 The correct reaction: with the e-file open, the power of the knight on e5 is diminished.

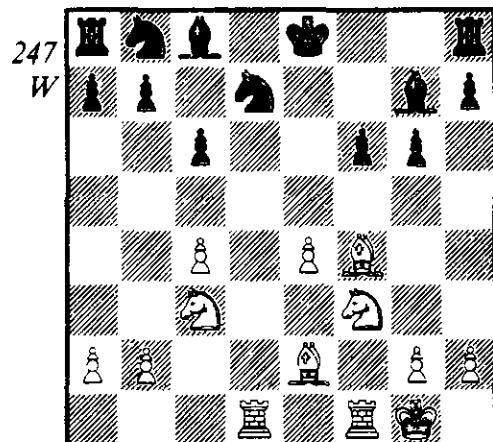
22 ... ♜xe5 23 ♜h5 hxg5 24 ♜xg5? Because of Black's knight, a white kingside attack is doomed to fail. Hence 24 ♜xg5+, exchanging queens, is indicated.

24 ... f6 25 ♜h4 White can ill afford to ignore the black knight on e5. Necessary is 25 ♜f4 or even 25 ♜xe5!? dxе5 26 ♜g6+ ♜g7 27 ♜xf6. 25 ... ♜g7 26 ♜g3 ♜g4 27 ♜h4 ♜f7! The scales have

shifted; Black mobilizes his forces rapidly:

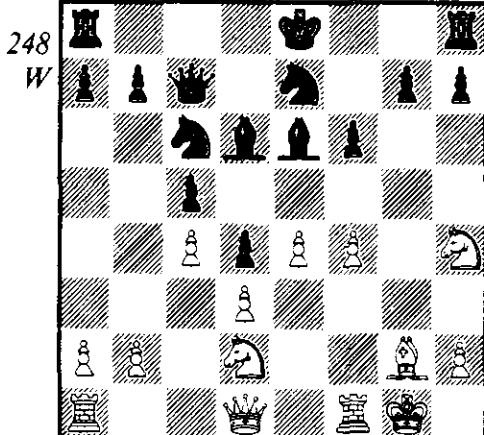
28 ♜xe5 dxе5 29 ♜e3 ♜h8 30 ♜f2 ♜ag8 31 ♜f1 ♜h6 32 h4 ♜xh4 33 ♜xh4 ♜xh4 34 ♜f2 34 ♜xe5 fails against 34 ... ♜h3 35 ♜e2 ♜hg4 36 ♜ff2 b5! followed by wholesale exchanges on g2, with a won pawn ending. 34 ... ♜h2 35 ♜g3 ♜h3 36 ♜xg8 ♜xg8 37 ♜g3 ♜xg2+ 38 ♜xh3 ♜g6! 39 ♜b1 b6 40 c4 ♜f7 41 ♜b3 f5 42 ♜g3! ♜h6+! 43 ♜g2 ♜h4 0-1

Pfleger–Domnitz
Tel Aviv, 1964



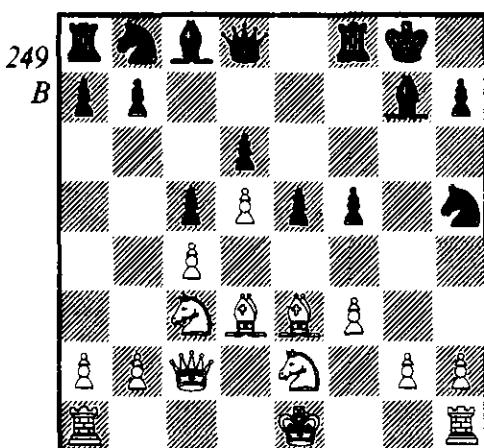
247
W

Having moved his king, Black can no longer castle. White adroitly exploits this circumstance with 13 e5!, opening lines for his pieces and clearing the square e4 (–d6) for his knight. 13 ... fxe5 14 ♜g3 ♜c5 Necessary, to stop ♜e4. 15 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 16 ♜xe5 ♜e6 17 b4 ♜cd7 18 ♜f3! Heading for g5. 18 ... ♜e7 19 ♜g5 ♜f8 20 ♜xe6 ♜xe6 21 ♜g4 ♜d7 22 ♜de1 1-0

Botvinnik–Pomar*Varna, 1962*

12 e5! fxe5 13 f5 Whilst depriving the black pieces of the use of e5, White's clearing sacrifice has vacated the square e4 for his own pieces.

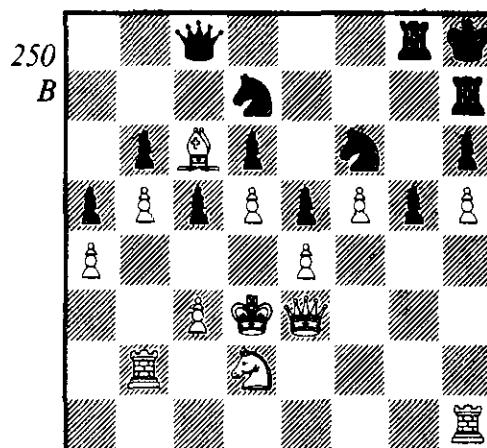
13 ... ♜f7 14 ♜e4 0-0-0 15 ♜g4 with ample compensation for the offered pawn.

Kotov–Gligoric*Zurich, 1953*

The same theme, with colours reversed:

11 ... e4 12 fxe4 f4 13 ♜f2 ♜d7 14 ♜g1 ♜g5 15 ♜f1 ♜e5 16 ♜f3 ♜e7 17 ♜xe5 ♜xe5 18 0-0-0 ♜f6 19 h3 ♜d7 20 ♜d3 a6 21 ♜b1 f3

The clearing theme recurs. Black sacrifices an additional pawn, to secure a strong-point for his knight. **22 gxf3 ♜h5** and after **... ♜f4** Black completed the blockade and retained a marked initiative.

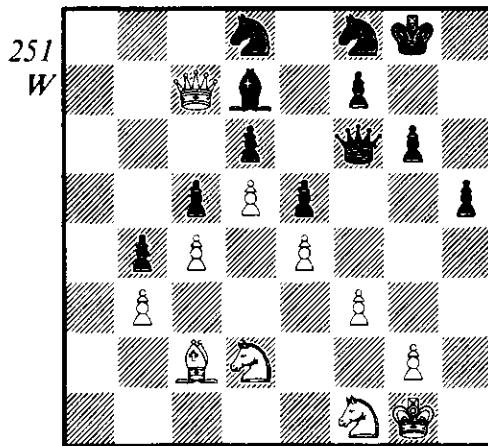
Atanasov–Hort*Leipzig, 1973*

1 ... c4+! Clearing c5 for his knight, from which square it eyes both the a- and e-pawns. Note that on other moves, White plays **2 ♜c4**, saddling Black with a lifeless game.

2 ♜xc4 On **2 ♜xc4 ♜c5** ties the noose around the white king. **2 ♜c2 ♜c5 3 ♜a2 g4** is similarly unappetizing. **2 ... ♜c5+ 3 ♜c2 ♜b8 4 ♜d2 ♜xa4 5 ♜bb1 ♜c5 6 ♜bd1 g4 7 ♜c4 ♜g5 8 ♜h4 ♜hg7** and Black's advantage is overwhelming.

Shishov–Bishev*Riga, 1954*

Black is a pawn ahead and can boast of a better bishop. However, it is the irking influence exercised by the solitary white queen

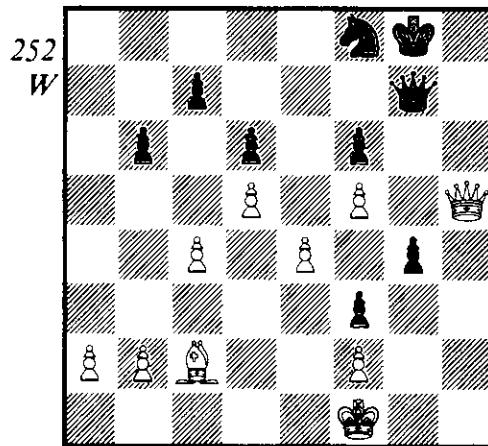


behind the lines that tips the scales in White's favour!

43 f4! exf4 Otherwise 44 fxe5. **44 e5!** dxe5 44 ... $\mathbb{W}xe5$ lasts longer. **45 $\mathfrak{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{W}h4$ 46 $\mathbb{W}xe5$ $\mathfrak{Q}h7$ 47 $\mathfrak{Q}xc5$ f3 48 $\mathbb{W}g3$ $\mathbb{W}d4+$ 49 $\mathbb{W}f2$ $\mathbb{W}xf2+$ 50 $\mathfrak{Q}xf2$ 1–0** Material loss is unavoidable.

Alekhine–Johner

Zurich, 1934



A pawn down, Black is about to manoeuvre his knight to e5, with excellent prospects.

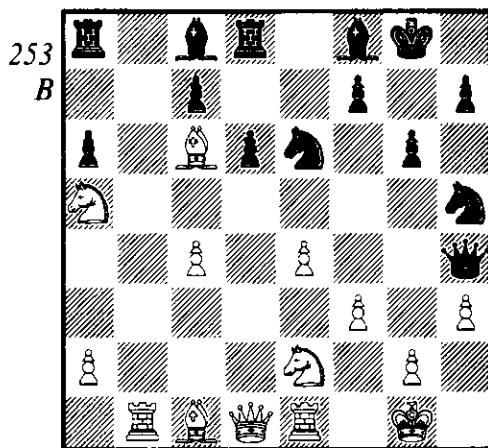
44 e5! Strategymingleswith tactics: the former demands to free the bishop; the latter makes it possible. **44 ... dxe5** If 44 ... fxe5 45 f6 $\mathbb{W}xf6$ 46 $\mathbb{W}xg4+$ $\mathfrak{Q}f7$ 47

$\mathfrak{Q}e4$ and Black will have little to show for his material deficit.

45 d6! The crux of White's combination. On 45 ... cxd6 46 c5! is murderous. **45 ... c5 46 $\mathfrak{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ 47 $\mathbb{W}h6$ 1–0** The end could be 47 ... $\mathfrak{Q}h7$ 48 $\mathfrak{Q}d5+$ $\mathfrak{Q}h8$ 49 $\mathbb{W}g6$ $\mathbb{W}d8$ 50 d7.

Ciocaltea–Barcza

Moscow, 1956



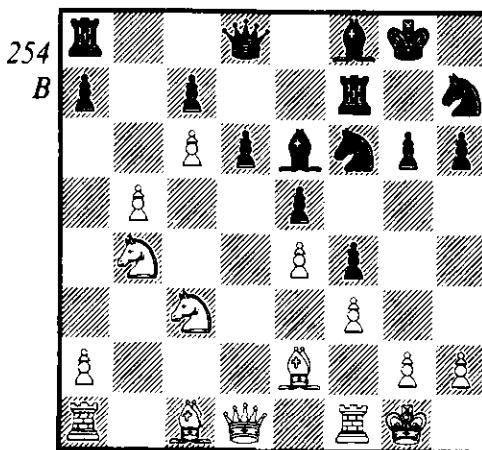
White's pieces are disjointed and his kingside littered with weaknesses. Barcza takes immediate advantage of these circumstances:

23 ... d5!! 24 cxd5 Capturing the rook succumbs to 24 ... dxe4 and ... $\mathfrak{Q}c5+$. **24 ... $\mathfrak{Q}c5+$ 25 $\mathfrak{Q}h2$ $\mathfrak{Q}d4!$ 26 $\mathfrak{Q}g1$** On 26 $\mathfrak{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}g3+$ and 27 ... $\mathfrak{Q}xh3$ wins instantly. Strangely, even the text move does not discourage ... $\mathfrak{Q}xh3$.

26 ... $\mathfrak{Q}xh3!$ 27 $\mathfrak{Q}xh3$ $\mathbb{W}g3+$ 28 $\mathfrak{Q}h1$ $\mathfrak{Q}xf3!$ 29 $\mathbb{W}xf3$ 29 $\mathfrak{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{W}xf4!$ leads to mate, be it after 30 $\mathfrak{Q}xf4$ $\mathfrak{Q}g3$ mate, or after 30 $\mathbb{W}xf3$ $\mathfrak{Q}g3+$ 31 $\mathfrak{Q}h2$ $\mathfrak{Q}f1++$ 32 $\mathfrak{Q}h1$ $\mathfrak{Q}h2$ mate.

29 ... $\mathbb{W}xe1+$ 30 $\mathbb{B}h2 \mathbb{A}d6+$
 31 $\mathbb{A}f4 \mathbb{W}xb1$ 32 $\mathbb{A}xd6 cxd6$ 33
 $\mathbb{A}xa8$ The black rook has been *en*
prise for the last ten moves! 33 ...
 $\mathbb{A}xa8$ 34 $\mathbb{B}c6 \mathbb{W}e1$ 35 $g4 \mathbb{W}d2+$
 36 $\mathbb{B}g1 \mathbb{W}c1+$ 37 $\mathbb{B}g2 \mathbb{W}d2+$ 38
 $\mathbb{B}g1 \mathbb{B}g7$ 39 $a4 \mathbb{A}e8$ 40 $\mathbb{B}f2 h5$
 0-1

Krogius–Stein
Moscow, 1960



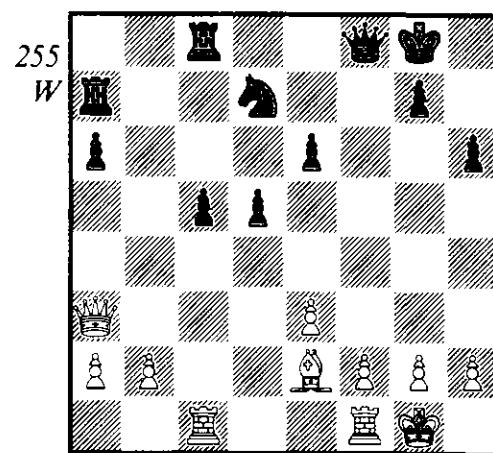
White's initiative on the queen's wing appears more menacing than Black's on the king's wing. Moreover, 18 $\mathbb{B}cd5$ is in the air. Leonid Stein hits upon an extraordinary resource, freeing his passive king's bishop and launching a vicious attack:

17 ... $d5!!$ 18 $\mathbb{B}xd5 \mathbb{A}c5+$ 19
 $\mathbb{B}h1 \mathbb{B}h5$ 20 $\mathbb{W}e1 \mathbb{B}g3+!$ 21
 $\mathbb{B}xg3 \mathbb{W}g5$ 22 $g4 h5$ 23 $g3$ 23 $\mathbb{B}a4$ is refuted by 23 ... $hxg4!$ 24 $\mathbb{B}xc5 g3$, when the king has no escape. 23 ... $hxg4$ 24 $\mathbb{B}g2 \mathbb{A}af8$ 25
 $\mathbb{A}d2?$ 25 $\mathbb{A}h1$ is a better defence.

25 ... $\mathbb{W}h6$ 26 $\mathbb{A}h1 \mathbb{W}g7$ 27
 $\mathbb{B}xf4 \mathbb{B}xf4$ 28 $\mathbb{A}d1 g5!$ 29 $e5 \mathbb{W}xe5$
 30 $\mathbb{B}xg4 \mathbb{W}xe2+!$ 30 ... $f3+$ is inadequate. The text move regains the offered piece while guarding

the initiative. 31 $\mathbb{W}xe2$ 31 $\mathbb{B}xe2$ fails against 31 ... $\mathbb{A}xd5+$ 32
 $\mathbb{B}h3$ (32 $\mathbb{B}f1 f3!$) 32 ... $\mathbb{B}f6$ 31
 ... $f3+$ 32 $\mathbb{W}xf3 \mathbb{A}xf3$ 33 $\mathbb{B}hf1$
 $\mathbb{A}xg4$ 34 $\mathbb{B}e4 \mathbb{A}h3+$ 35 $\mathbb{B}h2$
 $\mathbb{A}xf1$ 36 $\mathbb{A}xf1 \mathbb{A}xf1$ 0-1

Fischer–Spassky
Reykjavik, 1972

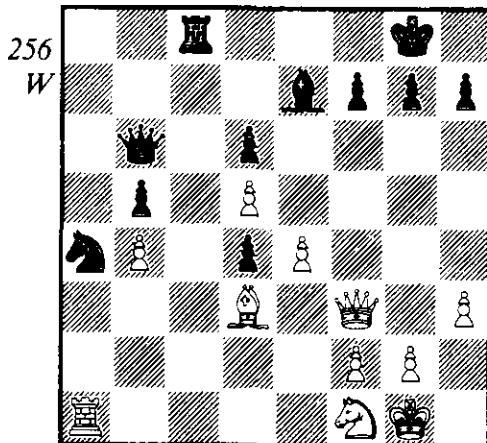


20 $e4!$ $d4$ Capturing on e4 compromises the black pawn structure. 20 ... $\mathbb{B}f6$ is comparatively best. 21 $f4 \mathbb{W}e7$ 22 $e5!$ Restricting the movements of the knight.

22 ... $\mathbb{A}b8$ 23 $\mathbb{A}c4 \mathbb{B}h8$ 24
 $\mathbb{B}h3 \mathbb{B}f8$ 25 $b3 a5$ 26 $f5 \mathbb{B}xf5$ 27
 $\mathbb{B}xf5 \mathbb{B}h7$ 28 $\mathbb{A}cf1 \mathbb{W}d8$ 29 $\mathbb{W}g3$
 $\mathbb{B}e7$ 30 $h4 \mathbb{A}eb7$ 31 $e6 \mathbb{A}c7$ 32
 $\mathbb{W}e5$ White's position is overwhelming. 32 ... $\mathbb{W}e8$ 33 $a4 \mathbb{W}d8$
 34 $\mathbb{A}1f2 \mathbb{W}e8$ 35 $\mathbb{A}2f3 \mathbb{W}d8$ 36
 $\mathbb{A}d3 \mathbb{W}e8$ 37 $\mathbb{W}e4 \mathbb{B}f6$ 38 $\mathbb{A}xf6!$
 $\mathbb{B}xf6$ 39 $\mathbb{A}xf6 \mathbb{W}g8$ 40 $\mathbb{A}c2 \mathbb{B}h8$
 41 $\mathbb{W}f4$ 1-0

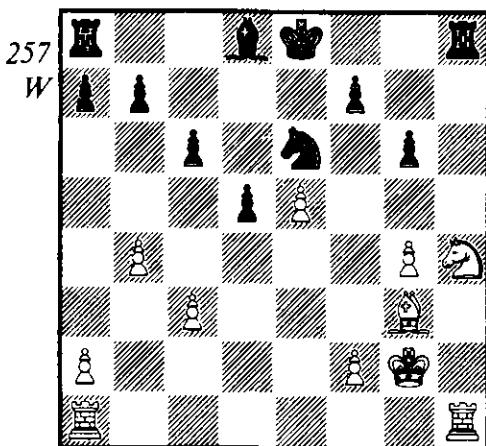
Capablanca–Duz-Khotimirsky
St. Petersburg, 1913

Black's knight is offside. A clearing sacrifice leads to a swift finish:



25 e5! Threatening 26 $\mathbb{w}f5$, with a double attack. **25 ... g6** **26 e6!** $\mathbb{f}8$ **27** $\mathbb{d}g3$ $\mathbb{w}b7$ **28** $\mathbb{d}f5!$ $\mathbb{f}xe6$ There is nothing better. **29** $\mathbb{d}xe6$ $\mathbb{w}c7$ **30** $\mathbb{w}c6!$ $\mathbb{w}d8$ **31** $\mathbb{d}xe7+$ $\mathbb{w}xe7$ **32** $\mathbb{x}b5$ and White won.

Fischer–Bisguier USA, 1963

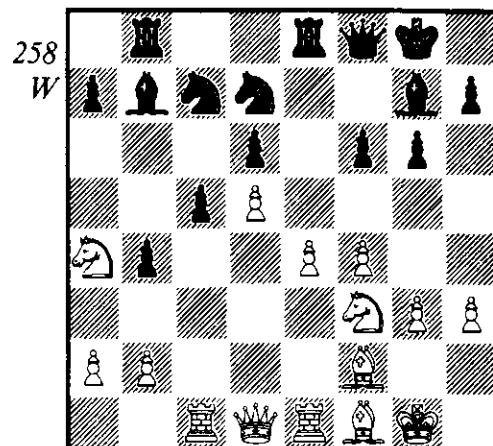


A small combination, involving an intermediate check, enables Fischer to clinch the vital last round game in the US Championship:

24 $\mathbb{d}f5!$ $\mathbb{x}h1$ **25** $\mathbb{d}6+$ $\mathbb{f}8$ **26** $\mathbb{x}h1$ With an active knight and control of the h-file, White has attained a winning position. **26 ... b5** **27** $f4$ $\mathbb{g}8$ **28** $f5$ $\mathbb{f}8$ **29**

e6!! **f6** **29 ... fxe6** **30** $\mathbb{e}5!$. **30** $\mathbb{f}7$ $\mathbb{e}7$ **31** $\mathbb{f}4$ $g5$ **32** $\mathbb{d}6$ $\mathbb{e}8$ **33** $\mathbb{d}xe7$ $\mathbb{x}e7$ **34** $\mathbb{d}8$ $\mathbb{e}8$ **34 ...** $\mathbb{c}7$ **35** $\mathbb{e}1.$ **35** $\mathbb{d}xc6$ **1–0**

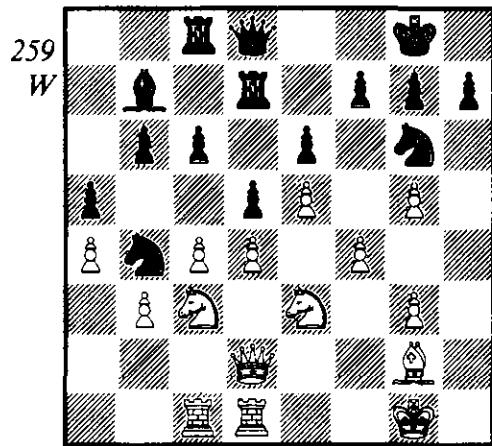
Korchnoi–Tringov Lucerne, 1982



Here too White is able to exploit the loose position of the black knight on c7 to launch a crushing manoeuvre:

22 $\mathbb{d}4!$ $\mathbb{h}8$ **23** $\mathbb{c}6$ $\mathbb{a}8$ **24** $\mathbb{x}b4$ and White won.

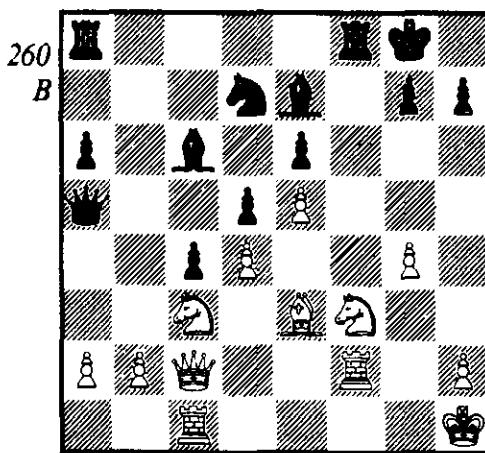
Korchnoi–Petrosian Moscow, 1975



A timely thrust enables White to improve the position of his knight on e3, which soon results in material gain.

28 f5! exf5 Otherwise 29 f6. **29 ♜xf5 ♜f8 30 ♜d6 ♜xd6** Compulsory. **31 exd6 ♜xd6 32 cxd5 cxd5 33 ♜f4** and White eventually won.

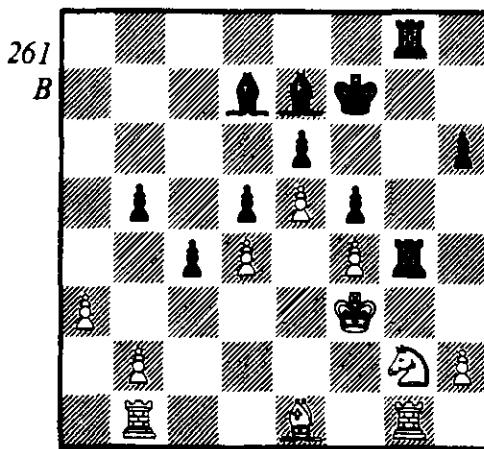
C. Torre–Fine Montreux, 1934



By means of **21 ... ♜c5!** (22 dxc5 d4) Fine adroitly brings his knight into play.

22 ♜cf1 ♜d3 23 ♜g2 ♜xe5! Now the clearing of the long diagonal can no longer be avoided. **24 dxe5 d4 0–1**

Janowsky–Capablanca New York, 1916



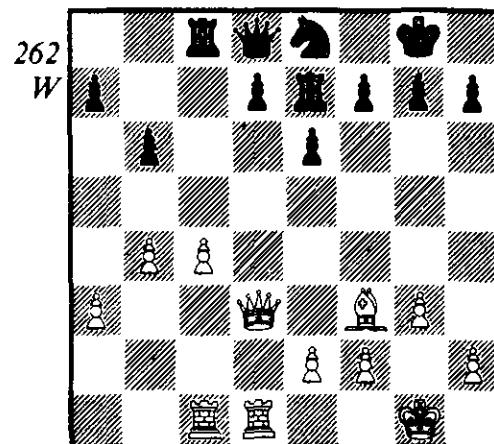
With the aid of a neat clearing sacrifice, Capablanca activates his

queen's bishop before White has time to consolidate.

32 ... b4! 33 axb4 ♜a4 34 ♜a1 34 ♜c1, to forestall ... ♜c2–e4, is defeated by **34 ... ♜xf4+ 35 ♜xf4 ♜g5+**.

34 ... ♜c2 35 ♜g3 ♜e4+ 36 ♜f2 h5 37 ♜a7 37 ♜e3 ♜g7 etc. 37 ... ♜xg2 38 ♜xg2 h4 39 ♜xh4 ♜xg2+ 40 ♜f3 ♜xh2 41 ♜xe7 ♜h3+ 42 ♜f2 ♜b3 43 ♜g5+ ♜g6 44 ♜e7 ♜xb2+ 45 ♜f3 ♜a8 46 ♜xe6+ ♜h7 0–1

Karpov–Andersson Madrid, 1973

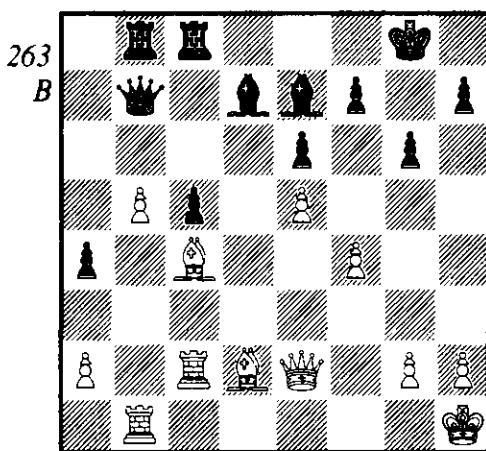


Before activating his queenside pawn majority, White nimbly transfers his bishop to a6, whence it controls c8 and thus prevents Black from contesting the c-file.

19 ♜b7! ♜c7 20 ♜a6 ♜c6 21 ♜b3 ♜b8 22 ♜a4 ♜c7 23 ♜b5 ♜f6 24 f3 d5 Otherwise comes e2–e4, with mounting pressure on the d-pawn. **25 c5! h5 26 a4 ♜e8 27 cxb6 axb6 28 a5 ♜xc1 29 ♜xc1 ♜e5 29 ... bxa5** leads to a lost ending. **30 ♜xb6** and White won quickly.

Liberzon–Larsen

Biel, 1976

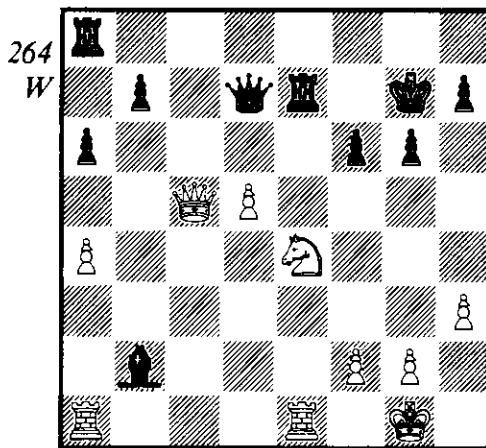


Exploiting the pin along the b-file, Black transfers his bishop to the long a8–h1 diagonal.

27 ... ♜c6! 28 b6 ♕d8 29 ♕c3 ♜e4 30 ♕b2 ♜c6 31 ♜b5 ♜a8 32 ♜d3 a3! 33 ♕b1 ♕xd3 34 ♕xd3 c4 and Black won.

Capablanca–Zubarev

Moscow, 1925



Yet another Capablanca gem, which was awarded the first brilliancy prize:

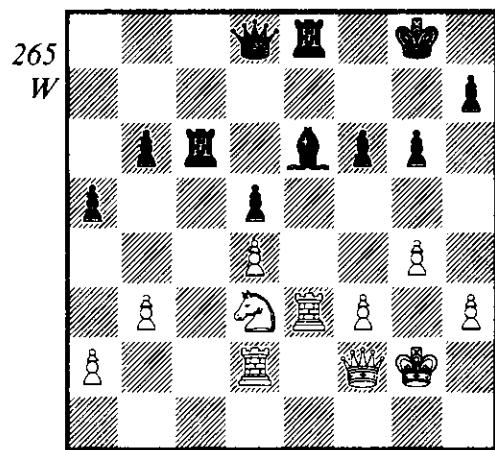
24 ♜g5! The knight joins the attack. Clearly, 24 ... ♕xe1 + 25 ♕xe1 fxg5? 26 ♕e7+ loses the

queen and the game. 24 ... ♕ae8 25 ♜e6+ ♜f7 26 ♕ab1 ♜e5 27 ♜c4 ♕c8 28 ♜b3 ♜b8 29 g3 ♜d6 30 ♜f4 Now it is the rook's turn to occupy e6.

30 ... ♕ce8 31 ♕e6 ♜d7 32 ♕xe7+ ♜xe7 33 ♜xb7 ♜xf4 The stage is set for a clearing combination. 34 ♕e1+! ♜e5 35 d6+! ♜e6 36 ♜b3+ ♜f5 37 ♜d3+ ♜g5 38 ♜e3+ ♜f5 39 ♜e4+ ♜e6 40 ♜c4+ ♜xd6 41 ♕d1+ 1–0

Botvinnik–Petrosian

Moscow, 1963



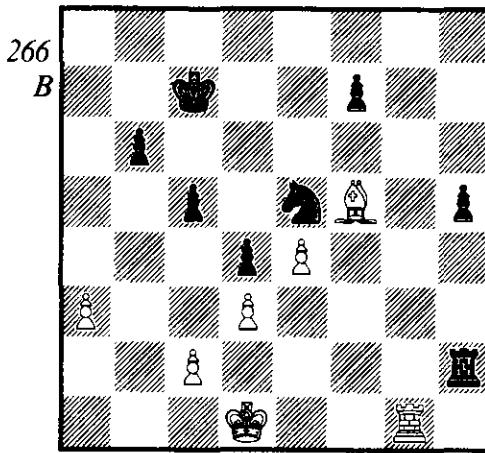
30 h4 ♜f7 31 ♕xe8+ ♜xe8 32 ♜e3 ♜f7 33 g5! To gain control of e5: first, for the knight; later on, for the king. 33 ... ♜e6 34 ♜f4 ♜f7 35 ♜d3 ♜e6 36 gxf6 ♜xf6 37 ♜g5 ♜xg5+ 38 hxg5 a4 39 bxa4 ♕c4 40 a5! To vacate c5 for the knight. 40 ... bxa5 41 ♜c5 ♜f5 42 ♜g3! Reaping the fruit of 33 g5!.

42 ... a4 43 ♜f4 a3 44 ♜e5 ♕b4 45 ♜d3 ♕b5 46 ♜d6 ♜f7 47 ♜c6 ♜xd3 Obligatory. 48 ♕xd3 ♕b2 49 ♕xa3 ♕g2 50 ♜xd5

$\blacksquare xg5+$ 51 $\spadesuit c6 h5$ 52 $d5 \blacksquare g2$ 53 $d6 \blacksquare c2+$ 54 $\clubsuit d7 h4$ 54 ... $g5$ is more stubborn. 55 $f4!$ $\blacksquare f2$ 56 $\clubsuit c8 \blacksquare xf4$ 57 $\blacksquare a7+$ 1-0

Fischer–Keres

Bled, 1959



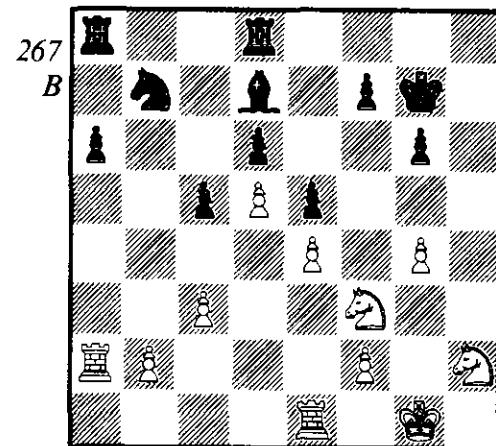
Keres wastes no time in mobilizing both his knight and king:

44 ... $c4!$ 45 $dxc4 \spadesuit xc4$ 46 $\blacksquare g7$ $\clubsuit d6!$ 47 $\blacksquare xf7 \spadesuit e3+$ 48 $\spadesuit c1 \blacksquare xc2+$ 49 $\spadesuit b1 \blacksquare h2$ 50 $\blacksquare d7+$ $\spadesuit e5$ and the penetration of the king proved decisive. The game ended: 51 $\blacksquare e7+$ $\spadesuit f4$ 52 $\blacksquare d7 \spadesuit d1!$ 53 $\spadesuit c1$ 53 $\blacksquare xd4 \spadesuit c3+$ loses the rook after 54 $\spadesuit c1 \spadesuit e2+$ or the king after 54 $\spadesuit a1 \blacksquare a2$ mate. 53 ... $\spadesuit c3$ 54 $\blacksquare h7 h4$ 55 $\blacksquare f7+$ $\spadesuit e3$ 0-1

Fischer–Keres

Curaçao, 1962

In the diagram, one would expect 24 ... $\blacksquare h8$, with the intention of doubling rooks along the h-file; or 24 ... $f5$. But Keres must have felt unhappy about allowing White to play the constricting c3–c4 and preferred 24 ... $c4??$. A truly double-edged move: on the

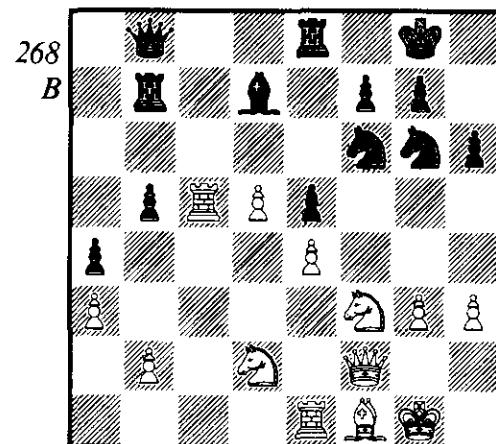


one hand, it exposes Black's c-pawn to attack by the white cavalry, and thereby condemns his bishop to the menial role of guarding it from b5; on the other hand, it hinders c3–c4 and builds a cosy nest for Black's knight on c5.

After 25 $\spadesuit d2 \blacksquare b5$ 26 $\spadesuit h1 \blacksquare h8$ 27 $\spadesuit e3 \blacksquare h4$ 28 $\spadesuit g2 \blacksquare ah8$, Black's counterplay on the king's front proved sufficient to divert White's attentions from the c-pawn. Following several vicissitudes, the struggle ultimately ended in Black's favour on the 73rd move.

Gruenfeld–Gelfer

Ramat Hasharon, 1980

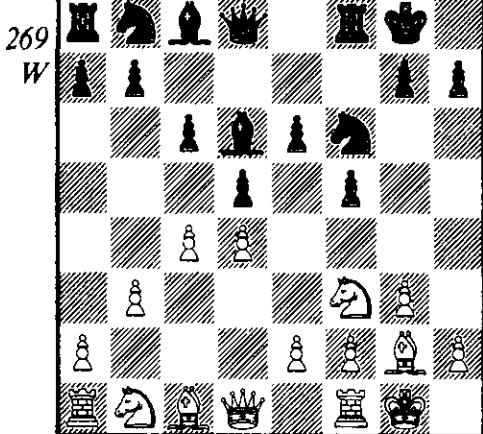


Black played 31 ... $h5$, intending to plant a knight on f4 after 32

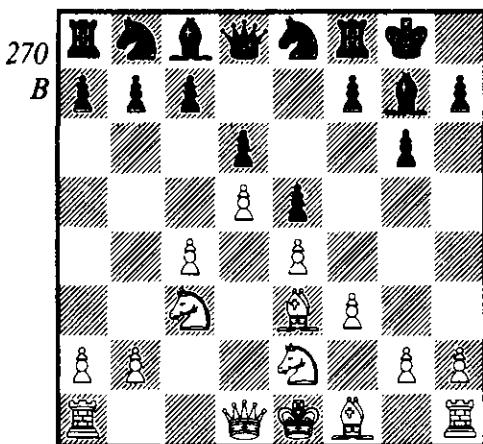
... h4!. Since 32 h4 relinquishes the square g4, White tried 32 \mathbb{Q} c1. There followed 32 ... h4 33 \mathbb{Q} xh4 giving up the fight for the dark-coloured squares, which

would be equally lost after 33 g4 \mathbb{Q} d8 (34 \mathbb{Q} xh4 \mathbb{Q} xg4!) and ... \mathbb{Q} h7. 33 ... \mathbb{Q} xh4 34 gxh4 \mathbb{Q} h5 (-f4), with a pronounced pull.

13 Exchanges

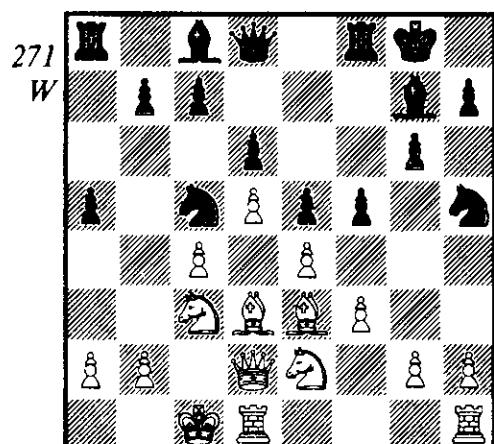


A well-known position in the Dutch Defence. Positionally, the exchange of the dark-coloured bishops is called for, be it by means of 9 $\mathbb{B}a3$, answering 9 ... $\mathbb{B}xa3$ with 10 $\mathbb{Q}xa3-c2-b4$ (e1)–d3–f4; or by means of 9 $\mathbb{B}f4$, not fearing 9 ... $\mathbb{B}xf4$, which only accentuates Black's dark square weakness.



1 $d4 \mathbb{B}f6$ 2 $c4 g6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{B}g7$ 4 $e4 d6$ 5 $f3 0-0$ 6 $\mathbb{B}e3 e5$ 7 $d5 \mathbb{B}e8$ 8 $\mathbb{B}ge2??!$ (270) 8 $\mathbb{W}d2$ is more accurate. Now Black can play 8 ... $\mathbb{B}h6$! answering 9 $\mathbb{B}xh6$ with 9 ... $\mathbb{W}h4+$ and 10 ... $\mathbb{W}xh6$, with a bind on the black squares. Similarly, after 9 $\mathbb{W}d2 \mathbb{B}xe3$ 10 $\mathbb{W}xe3$ Black has rid himself of his bad bishop.

Of course, White may refrain from exchanging bishops with 9 $\mathbb{B}f2$, but meanwhile Black has enhanced the scope of his bishop.

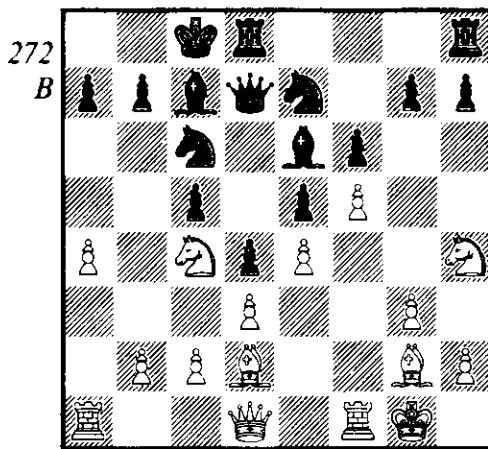


In the above position, also emanating from the King's Indian Defence, the capture of Black's knight on c5 is not recommended since it yields Black control of the black squares (... $\mathbb{B}h6$ will follow). Should Black play ... f5–f4? in response to, say, $\mathbb{B}c2$, then

$\mathbb{A}xc5$ would be good, for then the black bishop on g7 would be hemmed in.

Surprisingly enough, this distinction was lost on Grandmasters Kotov and Szabo in one of their encounters in the Candidates tournament in Zurich, 1953 where, in a similar position, White omitted to punish a faulty ... f4? with $\mathbb{A}xc5$ and continued instead $\mathbb{A}f2$.

Savon–Spassky
Baku, 1961

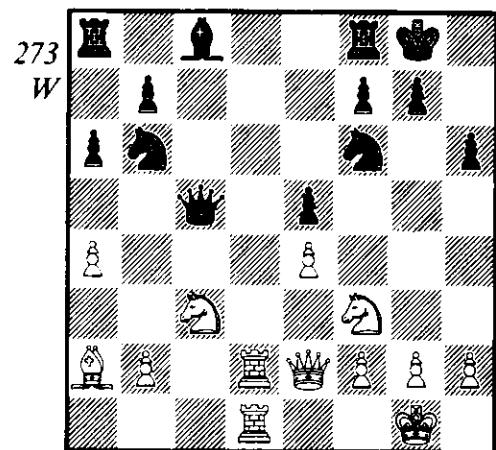


An example from actual play: after White's last move, 13 f5?, the exchange on c4 becomes desirable:

13 ... $\mathbb{A}xc4!$ 14 $dxc4$ $\mathbb{A}a5!$ Black's two knights will be far superior to White's knight and bishop, because of the latter's inactivity. 15 $\mathbb{A}f2$ If 15 $\mathbb{A}c1$ d3!. 15 ... $\mathbb{A}xd2$ 16 $\mathbb{A}xd2$ $\mathbb{A}b8$ 17 $\mathbb{W}f3$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 18 $\mathbb{A}f1$ $\mathbb{A}c8$ 19 $g4$ This further restricts the scope of his bishop and weakens the square f4: see Black's 33rd move.

19 ... $\mathbb{A}d6$ 20 $\mathbb{A}g2$ $\mathbb{W}f7$ 21 $\mathbb{W}e2$ g6 22 $f\mathbf{x}g6$ $h\mathbf{x}g6$ 23 $\mathbb{A}f3$ g5! Thwarting g4–g5 and tightening his grip on f4. 24 $\mathbb{A}f2$ $\mathbb{W}e6$ 25 $\mathbb{A}e1$ $\mathbb{A}h6$ 26 b3 $\mathbb{W}e7$ 27 $\mathbb{A}d3$ $\mathbb{A}e8$ 28 $\mathbb{A}g2$ $\mathbb{A}c7$ 29 $\mathbb{A}e1$ $\mathbb{A}e6$ 30 $\mathbb{A}f5$ $\mathbb{A}dh8$ 31 h3 $\mathbb{A}b4$ 32 $\mathbb{A}ef1$ $\mathbb{A}xd3$ 33 $\mathbb{W}xd3$ $\mathbb{A}f4$! 34 $\mathbb{A}1xf4$ Despair. 34 ... $gxf4$ 0–1

Botvinnik–Sorokin
Moscow, 1931



20 $\mathbb{W}e3!$ Forcing the exchange of queens (20 ... $\mathbb{W}c7$ 21 $\mathbb{A}xe5$). 20 ... $\mathbb{W}xe3$ 21 $f\mathbf{x}e3$ $\mathbb{A}g4$ 22 a5! $\mathbb{A}c8$ 23 $\mathbb{A}c1$ $\mathbb{A}xf3$ 24 $gxf3$ $\mathbb{A}e7$ 25 $\mathbb{A}d5$ $\mathbb{A}c6$ 26 $\mathbb{A}xf6+$ $gxf6$ 27 $\mathbb{A}d7$ $\mathbb{A}ab8$ 28 $\mathbb{A}f2$ $\mathbb{A}xa5$ 29 $\mathbb{A}cc7$ $\mathbb{A}bc8$ 30 $\mathbb{A}xf7$ $\mathbb{A}xc7$ 31 $\mathbb{A}xc7+$ $\mathbb{A}h8$ 32 $\mathbb{A}d5!$ Centralization. If 32 ... rook moves (32 ... $\mathbb{A}c6$ 33 $\mathbb{A}xb7$), 33 $\mathbb{A}f7$.

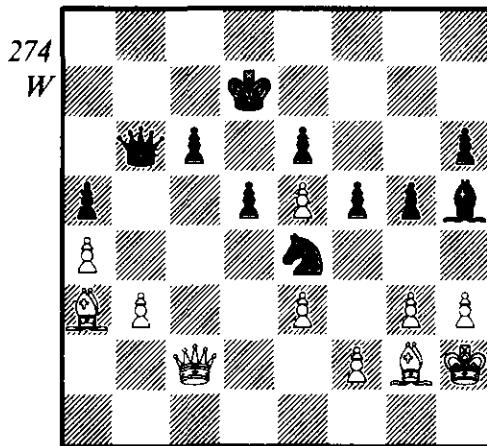
32 ... b5 33 b3 $\mathbb{A}d8$ 34 $\mathbb{A}g3$ f5 35 $\mathbb{A}h4$ $f\mathbf{x}e4$ 36 $f\mathbf{x}e4!$ First things first: maintaining the bishop on d5 is more important than anything else. 36 ... $\mathbb{A}d6$ 37 $\mathbb{A}h5$ $\mathbb{A}f6$ 38 h3 $\mathbb{A}d6$ 39 h4 $\mathbb{A}b6$ 40 $\mathbb{A}g4$ 40 $\mathbb{A}f7$ saves seven moves.

40 ... $\mathbb{A}f6$ 41 $\mathbb{A}a7$ $\mathbb{A}b6$ 42 $\mathbb{A}e7$ $\mathbb{A}d6$ 43 $\mathbb{A}c7$ 43 $\mathbb{A}xe5$ or 43

$\mathbb{Q}f5$ is also sufficient, but White conceives a mating plan. 43 ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 45 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 46 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 47 $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ If the king tries to escape (47 ... $\mathbb{Q}g7$) 48 b4! catches the knight.

47 ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 48 $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 49 $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 50 $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 51 $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 52 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ Forced. 53 $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 54 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 55 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 1-0

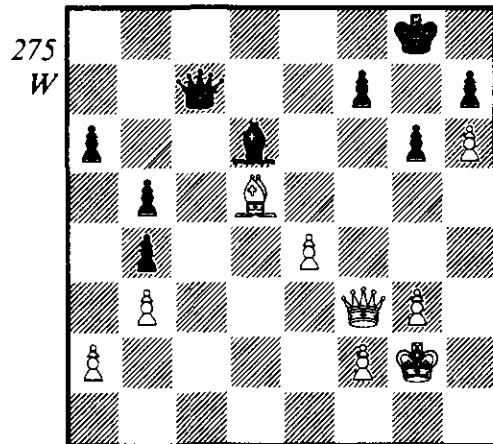
Lokvenc–Feigin Hamburg, 1930



Not relishing 32 f3 $\mathbb{Q}xe3$, with some counterplay, White opted for the clear-cut 32 $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$ $fxe4$ 32 ... $dxe4$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}d2+$. 33 g4 $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ winning a pawn and, notwithstanding the bishops of opposite colours, the game.

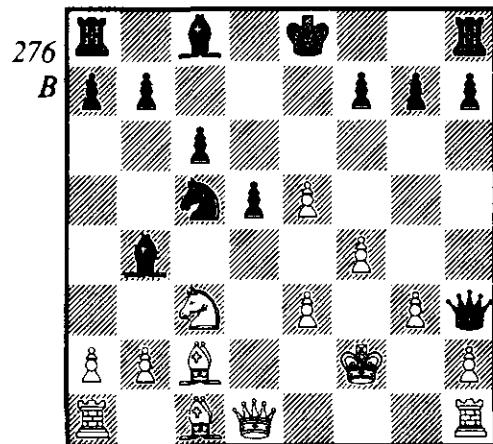
Polugayevsky–Padevsky Havana, 1966

The white h6-pawn, which serves to create mating threats on g7 and along the eighth rank, plays a vital part in the simplification that follows:



31 e5! $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ Otherwise 32 e6!. 32 $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$! $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ With his queen centralized and Black's queen handicapped by the need to guard g7, White won easily enough.

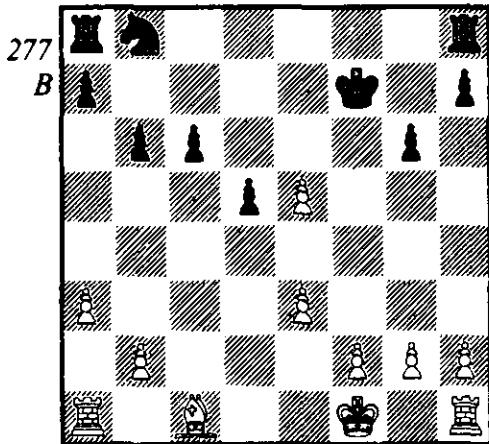
Makogonov–Botvinnik Sverdlovsk, 1943



13 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc3!$ The purpose of the exchange is to bring about a position where the black knight on e4 will dominate White's black-squared bishop. 14 $bxc3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ and Black's positional advantage is manifest.

Timman–Hübner Montreal, 1979

1 c4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2 d4 e6 3 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 4 e3 b6 5 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 6 a3 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}f4$

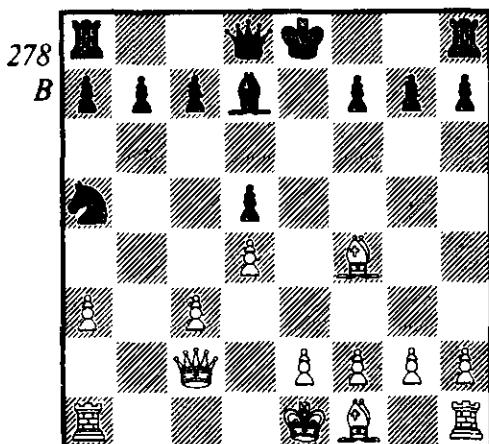


277
B

d5 8 cxd5 ♜xf1 9 ♜xf1 ♜xd5 10 ♜cxd5 exd5 11 ♜h5 c6 12 ♜e6 g6 13 ♜e5 ♜f6 14 ♜xd8+ ♜xe5 15 ♜xf7 15 ♜xc6 ♜xc6 16 dx5 ♜xe5 17 ♜d2 is slightly in White's favour.

15 ... ♜xf7 16 dxe5 (277) 16 ... ♜d7 Now Black will either regain the pawn after 17 ♜d2 ♜xe5 18 ♜c3, or plant his knight on e4 after 17 f4 ♜c5. The game ended in a hard-fought draw on move 59.

Lipnitsky–Smyslov Moscow, 1951



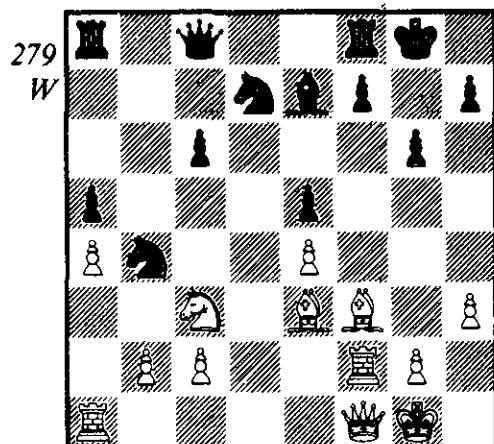
A shattering example of white-square strategy:

1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♜c3 ♜b4 4 ♜c2 ♜c6 5 ♜f3 d5 6 a3 ♜xc3+ 7

bx_c3?! ♜a5 8 ♜e5 ♜d7 9 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 10 cxd5 exd5 11 ♜f4 (278)
11 ... ♜b5! Discouraging 12 e3, which would surrender c4 to the black knight after the exchange of bishops.

12 h4 0-0 13 ♜b1 ♜d7 14 ♜h3 ♜fe8 15 ♜g3 ♜c4 16 ♜h6 g6 17 ♜c1 ♜d6! 18 ♜f4 ♜a6 19 e3 An admission of defeat, but there is nothing better. **19 ... ♜f5 20 ♜xa6 bxa6 21 ♜b7 ♜ab8! 22 ♜xc7 ♜b1+ 23 ♜e2 ♜a4! 0-1**

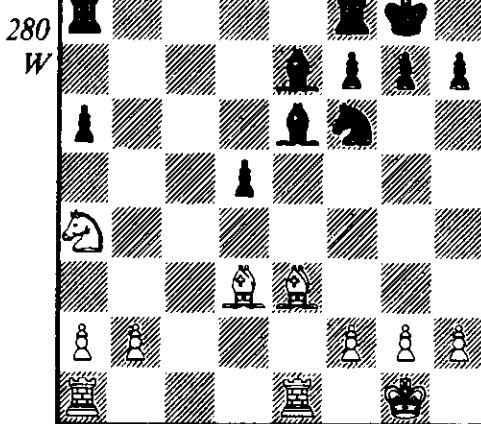
Karpov–Spassky Moscow, 1974



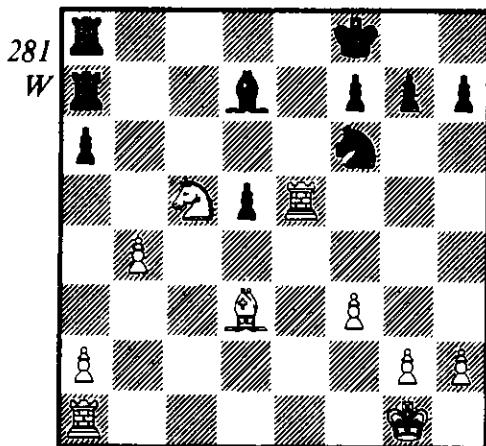
Black's previous move, 18 ♜f6–d7?, intending ... ♜c5 (and on 19 ♜c4, ♜a6), invites White to exchange his somewhat passive bishop with **19 ♜g4!** leaving Black with an unenviable position. **1-0 in 35 moves.**

Fischer–Petrosian Buenos Aires, 1971

16 ♜c5! 16 ♜c5 is playable, but the exchange of bishops is more in

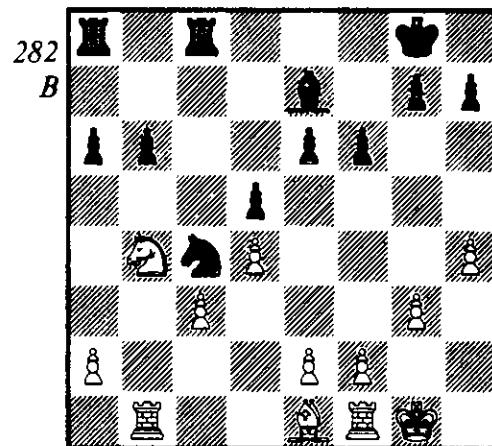


the spirit of the position. 16 ... $\mathbb{Q}fe8$ 17 $\mathbb{A}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 18 b4! Fastening his grip on c5. 18 ... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 20 f3! Denying squares to the black knight and making room for his king. 20 ... $\mathbb{Q}ea7$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$



22 $\mathbb{Q}xd7+$! This surprising exchange of a good knight for a bad bishop bears the stamp of a great player. 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ g6 26 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ The last piece joins in—and induces weaknesses in Black's camp. 26 ... h5 27 f4 h4 28 $\mathbb{Q}f3$! f5 29 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ White's play is exemplary. 29 ... d4+ 30 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}ee7$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}f7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 1-0

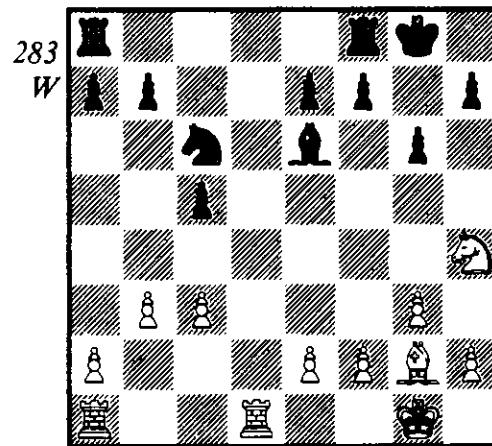
Najdorf–Averbakh Zurich, 1953



Black exchanges on b4, to attain a classic good knight versus bad bishop ending.

22 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb4$! 23 cxb4 23 $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ b5 is just as grim. 23 ... $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 25 e3 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ 26 a4 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 27 a5 b5 and Black won without much difficulty.

Smyslov–Tal Moscow, 1969

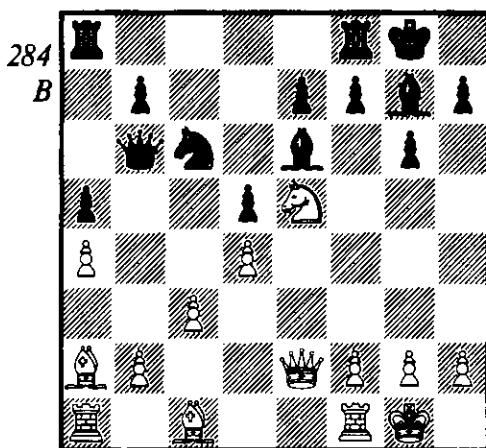


Static pawn weaknesses are the best of targets. Here a timely exchange by White creates such a weakness. Thereafter it becomes, as they say, a matter of technique:

14 ♜xc6! bxc6 15 ♜f3 f6 16 ♜d2 ♜fd8 17 ♜e4 An alternative is 17 c4. 17 ... c4 18 ♜c5 ♜f5 19 f3 ♜c2 20 ♜xd8+ ♜xd8 21 ♜f2 ♜f7 22 b4 ♜f5 23 ♜e1 e5 24 ♜b7! ♜d7 25 ♜a5 c5 Comparatively best.

26 bxc5 ♜d5 27 ♜b7 ♜d7 28 ♜d6+ ♜e7 29 g4! ♜e6 30 ♜b1 ♜c7 31 ♜b7 ♜xb7 32 ♜xb7 ♜d7 33 ♜d6 h6 34 ♜f2 ♜c6 35 ♜e3 a5 36 ♜e8 f5 37 ♜g7 ♜d7 38 gxf5 gxf5 39 f4! The final blow. 39 ... e4 40 ♜d4 is hopeless. 39 ... ♜d5 40 c6! ♜c8 41 c7 ♜d6 42 h4 1-0

Jiménez–Larsen Palma de Mallorca, 1967



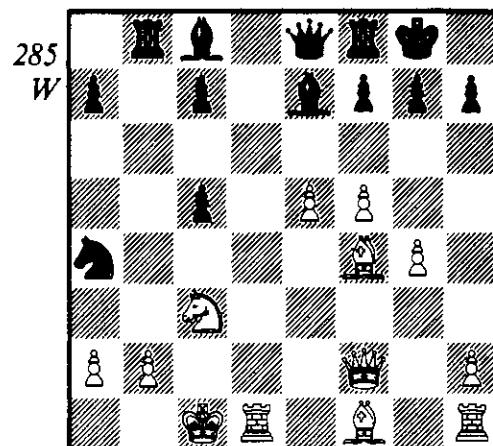
Larsen was justly proud of the following well-conceived exchanges: 14 ... ♜xe5 15 dxe5 d4! 16 ♜h6 ♜fd8 17 ♜xe6 fxe6 18 ♜fe1 ♜d5 19 ♜f4 ♜f8 20 g3 ♜f5

The exchanges have resulted in the disappearance of the white-squared bishops and in the opening of the d- and f-files. The doubled e-pawns are shielded by the white e5-pawn (which hampers the action of his bishop).

Last but not least, White's queen-side has been weakened.

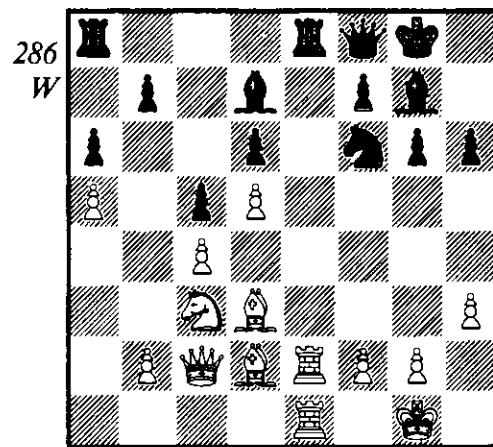
21 ♜ad1 ♜b3! and Black notched the point some 20 moves later.

Fischer–German Stockholm, 1962



A clever tactical exchange neutralizes Black's counterplay:

21 ♜b5! ♜xb5 22 ♜xa4 ♜b4 23 ♜c3 Having secured the safety of his king, White went on to exploit his advantage in the centre and on the king's flank.



In the above position, most White players would proceed to exchange both pairs of rooks (1 ♜xe8 ♜xe8 2 ♜xe8), or perhaps wait for Black to do so (1 ...

$\blacksquare x e 2$ 2 $\blacksquare x e 2$ $\blacksquare e 8$). A deeper examination reveals that a more promising plan involves the exchange of but one pair of rooks:

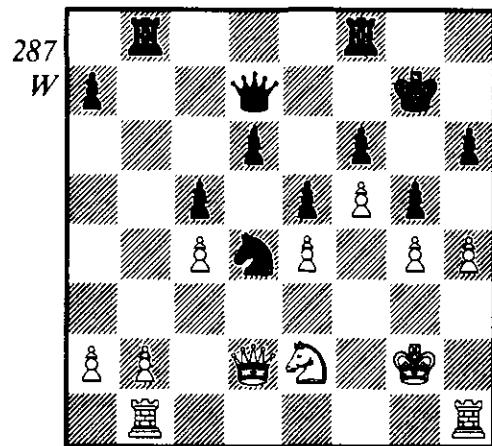
1 $\blacksquare x e 8$ $\blacksquare x e 8$ 2 $\blacksquare b 1$! Planning b2–b4, without fearing the consequences of Black's control of the e-file, since the squares e1, e2, e3, and e4 are well guarded.

Reti–Carls

Baden-Baden, 1925

Lastly, a case where it is clearly desirable to refrain from exchanging:

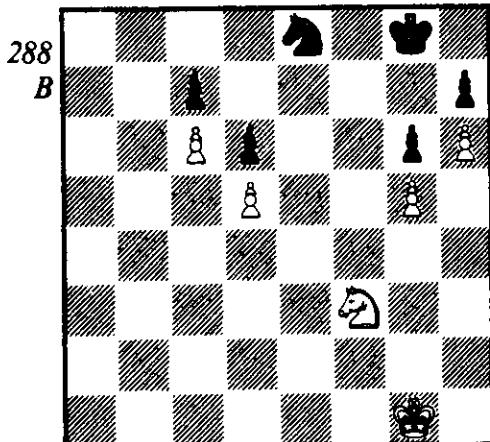
27 $\square c 3$! A White knight on d5 is more valuable than its counterpart on d4. Hence, he is right in avoiding the exchange of knights.



27 ... $\blacksquare h 8$ 28 $\blacksquare h 3$ $\blacksquare b g 8$ 29 $\blacksquare b h 1$ $\blacksquare d 8$ 30 $\square d 5$! Faced with the threat 31 $\blacksquare g 3$, coupled with 32 $\blacksquare h 2$ and 33 $h x g 5$ (answering 33 ... $h x g 5$ with 34 $\blacksquare h 7 +$ and 33 ... $f x g 5$ with 34 $\blacksquare x h 6$), Black chose 30 ... $g x h 4$ 31 $\blacksquare x h 4$ $\blacksquare f 7$ 32 $\blacksquare f 2$ $\blacksquare f 8$ 33 $\blacksquare x h 6$ $\blacksquare x h 6$ 34 $\blacksquare x h 6$ $\blacksquare g 7$ 35 $\blacksquare a 5$! 1–0

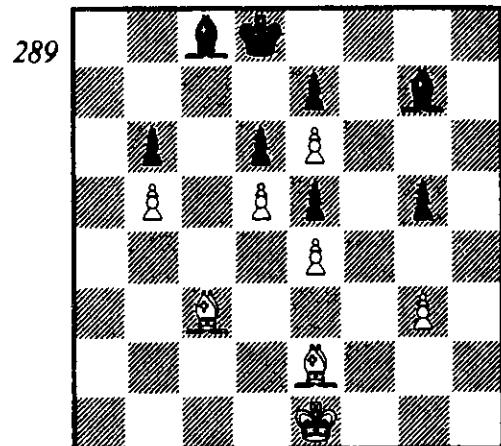
14 Cramped Positions, Restricted Pieces

The first two positions, emanating from Euwe, are extreme examples of pieces resembling dead wood: Black's pieces are denied access to useful squares by White's pawns as well as by his own.

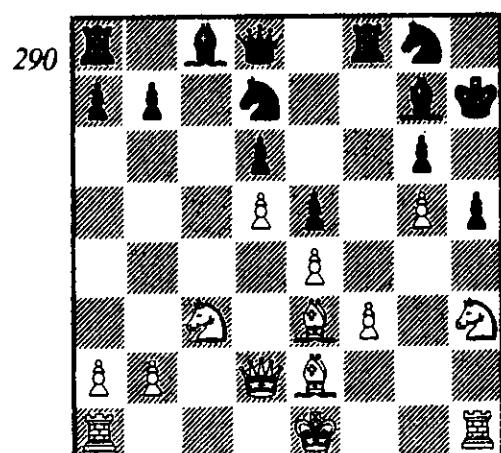


The black knight is without a move and the mobility of Black's king leaves something to be desired. White's threat of marching his king to b7 and c8 compels the black king to rush over to the queenside, whereupon $\mathbb{Q}h4\times g6$ or $\mathbb{Q}d4-e6-f8$ decides.

In the diagram—a somewhat less blatant case than the preceding one—Black is badly cramped and White's advantage in space and force will easily overcome all resistance on the queen's flank.



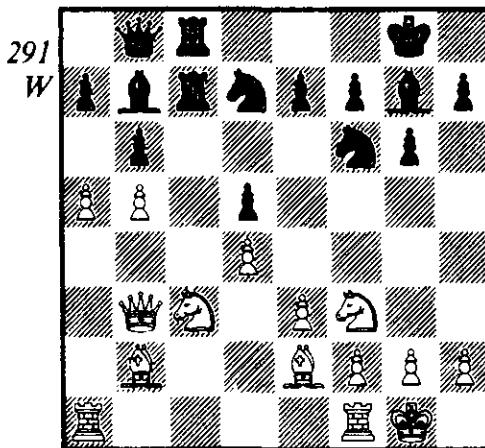
Clearly, White will at all costs refrain from the aggressive f3–f4?? which, after ... exf4, cedes Black the key square e5 and grants undeserved freedom to no less than three black pieces.



Here too the paralysis of the black bishops guarantees White a walk-over: after 1 $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{Q}f6 (h6) 2$

$\mathbb{Q}h5$ or first 2 $\mathbb{Q}e3$, the g-pawn is doomed.

Miles–Ribli
Tilburg, 1978



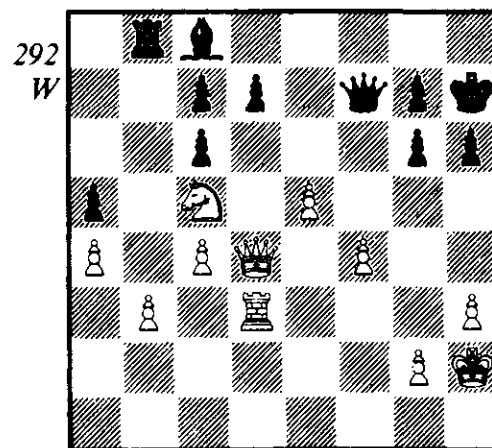
Black's last move, 14 ... $\mathbb{Q}fc8?$, permits White to seal the fate of his white-squared bishop.

15 $a6!$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}ac1$ $e6$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}a2!$ Exchanging on e4 vacates the square d5 for a black piece and gratuitously resuscitates his lame bishop. 18 ... $e5$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $exd4$ 21 $exd4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ 23 $g3$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ appears more logical: with the black bishop imprisoned on a8, every exchange favours White.

23 ... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}b4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $h6$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}ge5$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 36 $h4$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $h5$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $f6$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $dxe4$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 45 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 1–0

After 45 ... $e3+$ 46 $f3$ (not 46 $d5?$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 47 $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ $e2!$) the bishop on a8 is still out of play!

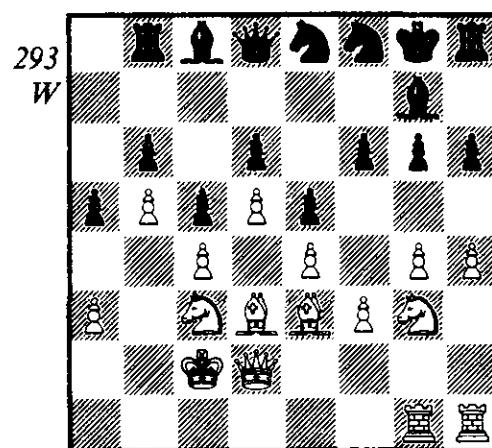
Schlechter–Janowsky
Paris, 1900



Here the lamentable placing of the black bishop and rook on the queenside enables White to launch a deadly onslaught on the opposite wing, where he enjoys a free hand:

31 $e6!$ $dxe6$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 33 $g4$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 35 $h4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 36 $h5$ $gxh5$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 39 $g5$ $h5$ 40 $g6+$! $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}xh5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 45 $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ 1–0

Capablanca–Menchik
Moscow, 1935

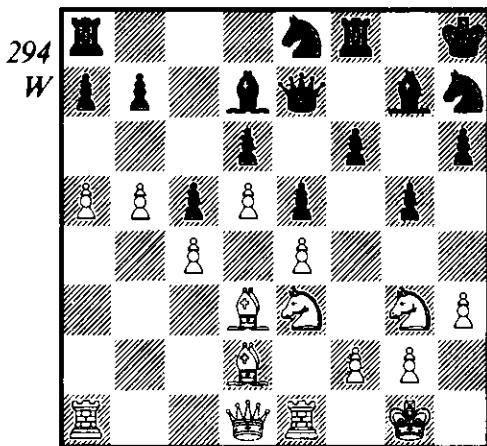


White has an advantage in space but what counts in the

above position is the (well-engineered) availability of an immediate breakthrough:

24 g5! fxg5 **25 hxg5 h5** Black appears to have averted the worst. However: **26 ♜f5!** wf7 **27 ♜h4** we7 **28 ♜h2 ♜c7** **29 ♜f1 ♜e8** **30 f4!** exf4 **31 ♜xf4 ♜d7** An error, but on **31 ... ♜e5** **32 ♜xe5** wxе5+ **33 ♜xe5+ dxe5** **34 ♜f6 ♜g8** **35 ♜e2**, with **36 ♜xg6** or **36 ♜hf1** to come, highlights Black's predicament. **32 ♜xd6 1-0**

Tarrasch–Munchoff Berlin, 1880

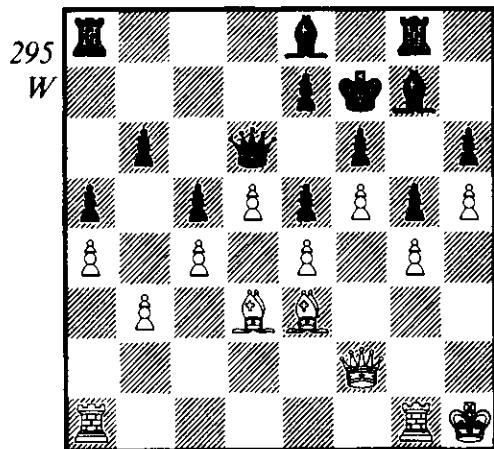


A cursory glance suggests that the diagram must be won for White. His first step, **22 b6!**, is designed to prevent **... ♜c7**, uniting the black rooks. Moreover, both black knights are without moves.

22 ... a6 **23 ♜ef5 wf7** **24 ♜e2!** wg8 **25 ♜h5 wf8** **26 ♜c1 ♜d8** **27 ♜a3 ♜c8** **28 ♜e3 ♜d7** **29 ♜ac1** qd8 **30 ♜ed1 ♜d7** **31 ♜xd6!** White pounces on the soft spot in Black's camp, which is forever present in such positions. **31 ... ♜xd6** **32 ♜xc5 ♜c8** **33 ♜g4**

34 ♜xg4 **34 hxg4 ♜d7** **35 ♜f5 wd8** **36 ♜xd6 1-0**

Bronstein–Pilnik Belgrade, 1954

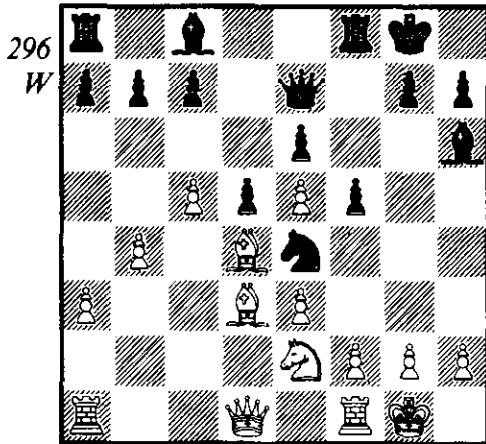


The position looks totally blocked, but the banished bishop on g7 allows White to break through forcefully:

34 b4!! axb4 **35 a5! ♜c8** **36 axb6** wb6 **37 wa2 ♜d7** **38 wa7 wd6** **39 ♜gc1 ♜c7** **40 wa6 ♜b8** **41 ♜c2 ♜f8** **42 ♜b3 ♜g7** **43 ♜g2** Being virtually a piece up, White is in no hurry. **43 ... ♜c8** **44 wa2** ad7 **45 wf2 ♜b6** **46 ♜a8 ♜a6** **47 ♜ca1 ♜a3** **48 ♜1xa3 bxa3** **49 ♜xa3 wb6** **50 wa2 ♜b7** **51 wf3** wb8 **52 ♜d1 wb4** **53 ♜d2 wb1** **54 wb1 ♜xb1** **55 we2 wf7** **56 ♜e3** and with the fall of c5, the outcome was clear. **1-0**

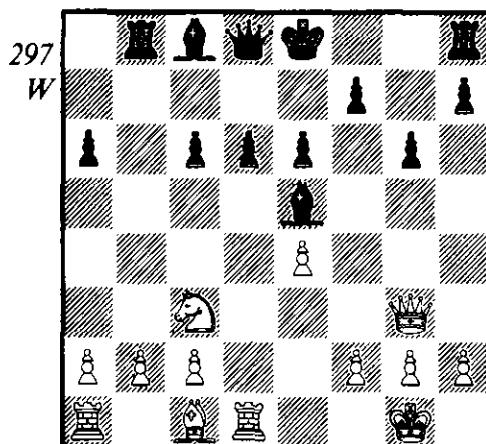
Petrosian–Fischer Bled, 1959

With the aid of a tactical twist, White imprisons the black bishop: **16 f3 ♜g5** **17 c6! b6** To forestall wc5 . On other moves, 18 b5 is equally powerful. **18 b5 a6** **19 a4**



With Black's bishop and rook out of play, White won easily.

Ubilava–Timoshenko
Chelyabinsk, 1974

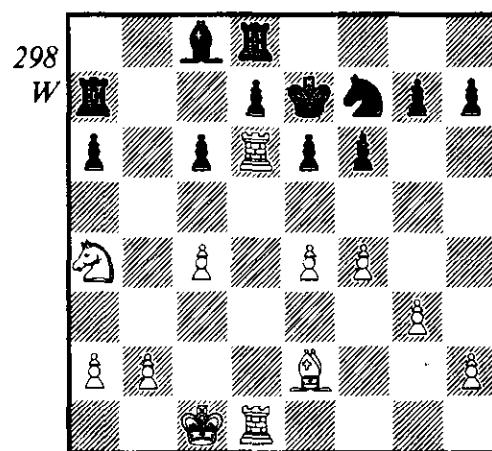


Black's last move, 13 ... ♜e5?, invites an Exchange sacrifice, after which his remaining pieces are left with little scope for manoeuvre:

14 ♜xe5!! dxxd8+
♜xd8 16 ♜g5+ ♜e8 If 16 ... ♜c7 17 ♜f6 and 18 ♜xe5+. 17 ♜f6 ♜g8 18 ♜d1 ♜d7 19 ♜a4!
♜b4 Black does his best to neutralize the white rook without, however, resolving the problem of his own incarcerated rook.
20 ♜c5 ♜d4 21 ♜xd4 21 ♜e1
♜c4 is weaker. 21 ... exd4 22 h4!

e5 A bid for freedom, which White ignores. 23 f3 ♜e6 24 b3 a5 25 g4 h5 26 g5 ♜h3 27 ♜f2 While Black is reduced to waiting moves, White's king marches to the queenside unmolested. 27 ... ♜f8 28 ♜e2 ♜g8 29 a4 and White won without difficulty.

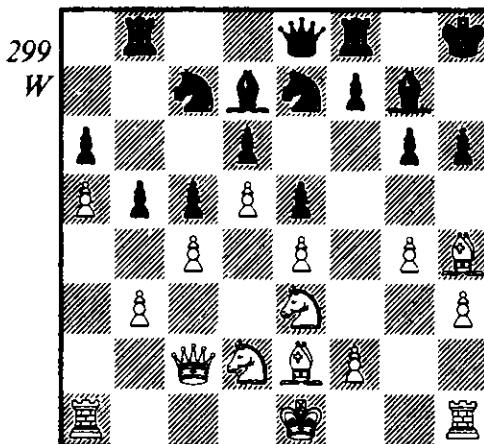
Psakhis–Romanishin
Irkutsk, 1986



White is not content with the small advantage resulting from 18 ♜d2 d6 and fastens his grip on the black squares with 18 c5!. Only after Black rejected the exchange sacrifice with 18 ... a5 (rightly fearing 18 ... ♜xd6 19 cxd6+ ♜f7 20 ♜c5 a5 21 b3 with a disagreeable bind), did White retreat his rook to d2. 1–0 in 42 moves.

Petrosian–Lutikov
Tbilisi, 1959

While former World Champion Petrosian was not averse to defending cramped, 'hedgehog' positions, his expertise in accumulating special advantages and



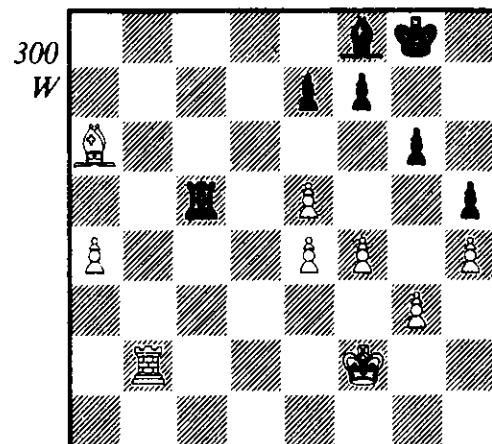
driving them home was second to none. In the following position, a powerful pawn-thrust serves to pin-point the awkward placing of the black knights.

24 b4! $\mathbb{Q}c8$ After 24 ... cxb4 25 c5 Black is hard-pressed to prevent 26 c6, since 25 ... dxc5 fails against 26 d6, attacking both knights.

25 bxc5 dxc5 26 cxb5 $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 27 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ is slightly better. **28 0-0** Castling late (or not castling at all) was another characteristic of Petrosian. **28 ... f5 29 f3** $\mathbb{Q}f7$ Hereabouts Black loses time. 29 ... h5 forthwith is essential. **30 $\mathbb{Q}dc4$ $\mathbb{Q}b4?$** 30 ... f4 holds out longer. **31 $\mathbb{Q}e1!$** The bishop is transferred to the a1-h8 diagonal, with tempo. **31 ... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ h5 33 gxf5 gxf5 34 exf5 e4 35 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 35 fxe4** is also good. The opening of the g-file led to Black's resignation 6 moves later.

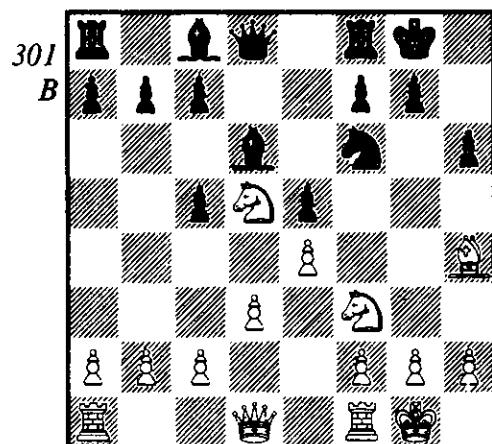
Balshan–Gutman Ramat Hasharon, 1980

Two pawns down, Black hopes to release his bishop with ... e7-e6. Therefore White played **1 e6!**, to answer 1 ... fxe6 with 2 e5,



keeping the black bishop incarcerated. 1 ... f6 amounts to much the same thing. **1-0**

Winter–Capablanca London, 1922

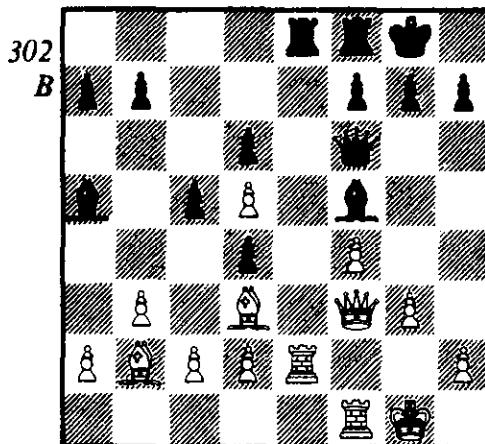


White has just played insouciantly **10 $\mathbb{Q}d5?$** and after **10 ... g5 11 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 13 h3 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 15 gxf3** was left with a caged bishop on g3.

Wolf–Alekhine Carlsbad, 1923

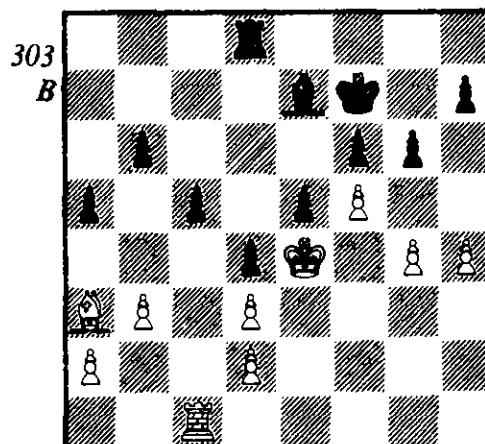
White's last move, **16 g3?**, furnishes Black an opportunity to incarcerate the bishop on b2.

16 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ Compelling White to recapture with the pawn (17



$\mathbb{W}xd3?$ $\mathbb{K}xe2$ 18 $\mathbb{W}xe2$ $d3!$ or 17 $\mathbb{K}xe8$ $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ 18 $\mathbb{K}xf8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ $\mathbb{Q}xd2$), thus encircling the white bishop.

Some 15 moves later, the following position was reached (303):

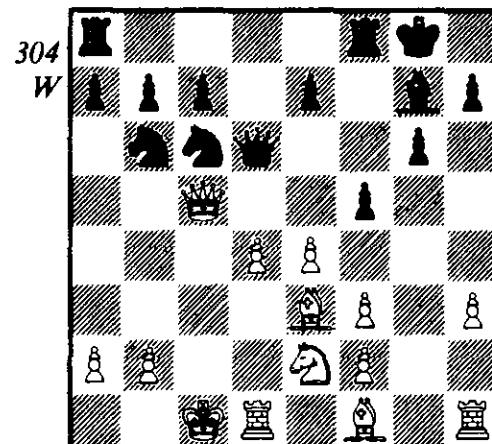


Although White's king and pawns are well placed, his luckless bishop is still out of play. This factor determines the result:

31 ... $h5!$ 32 $fxg6+$ On 32 $\mathbb{K}g1$ $\mathbb{K}g8$ is strong. 32 ... $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ 33 $gxh5+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7!$ 33 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh5?$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ is feeble. 34 $h6$ Or 34 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{K}h8$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$. 34 ... $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ 35 $\mathbb{K}g1$ $\mathbb{K}h8$ 36 $\mathbb{K}g6$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 0-1

Smyslov–Botvinnik Moscow, 1957

After 14 $e5$ Botvinnik exchanged erroneously on c5, 14 ...

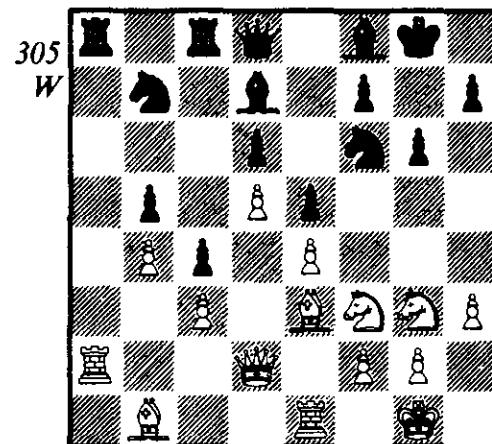


$\mathbb{W}xc5?$, allowing White to follow up with 15 $dxc5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 16 $f4$, blocking the path of the bishop on g7.

Correct was 14 ... $\mathbb{W}d5!$ and only if 15 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ (relinquishing the square f4), 15 ... $\mathbb{W}xc5$ 16 $dxc5$ $f4!$.

The game ended 16 ... $\mathbb{K}fd8$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 18 $fxe3$ $\mathbb{Q}b4$ Else 19 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ and $\mathbb{Q}d4$. 19 $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{K}ab8$ 20 $c6$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $e6$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 23 $\mathbb{K}xd5!$ $exd5$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ $\mathbb{K}dc8$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}xc8$ $\mathbb{K}xc8$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{K}xc6+$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 1-0

Karpov–Unzicker Nice, 1974

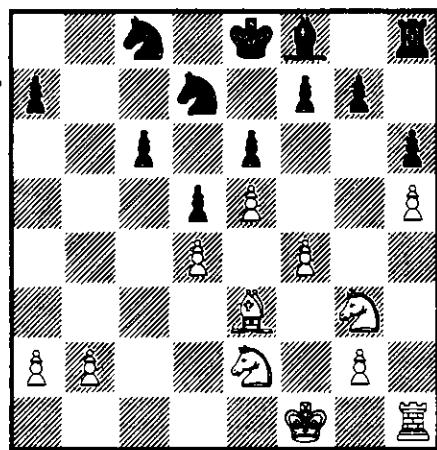


Before undertaking action on the kingside, White first avoids simplification: 24 $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 25

306 **B**

c2 c7 26 e1 e7 27 b1 e8 28 e2 d8 29 h2 g7 30 f4! Presenting Black with a difficult choice. **30 ... f6** **30 ... exf4** gives Black more leeway. **31 f5!** Constriction. **31 ... g5** **32 c2 En route to h5.** **32 ... f7** **33 g3 b7** Black's pieces lack manoeuvring space. **34 d1 h6 35 h5 e8 36 d1 d8 37 a3 f8 38 1a2 g8 39 g4 f8 40 e3 g8 41 xf7+ xf7 42 h5** The queen's entry is decisive. **42 ... d8 43 g6 f8 44 h5 1-0** The loser, a leading Grandmaster, is said to have made the following comment here: "Only against a World Champion is one entitled to reach such a miserable position."

Spassky–Liberzon Rostov, 1960



In the following example, Black is punished for neglecting the development of his king's rook.

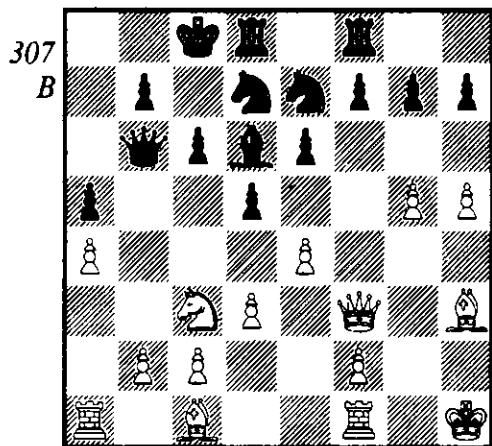
1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 e5 f5 4 e2 e5 5 g3 g6 6 h4 h6?! **7 h5 h7 8 d3 xd3 9 cxd3!** Black's counterplay hinges on ... c6–c5;

the text move prepares dx5 coupled with d3–d4 in response.

9 ... d7 10 c3 b6 11 ce2 c5 12 dxc5 xc5 13 d4 b4+ 14 f1 c8 15 e3 f8 Black's development cannot proceed smoothly: **15 ... e7?** **16 a3 etc. 16 c1 e7 17 xc8+ xc8 18 c1 c6 19 xc6 bxc6 20 f4** (306) Despite the exchanges, Black's pieces are cramped and his rook badly out of play. **20 ... f5?** Preferable is **20 ... c5.** **21 f2 db6 22 f1 c4 23 c1 e7 24 f3! 0-0**

25 g4! Exploiting his advantage in space. **25 ... fxg4+ 26 xg4 c5 Late!** **27 fg3 4b6 28 b3 d7 29 e3 cb6 30 f5 cxd4 31 xd4 c5 32 fxe6 xd4 33 xd4 xe5+ 34 h3 d3 35 g1 f2+ 36 g2 e4 37 gf5 c8 38 h2 g5 39 c1! b6 40 e7 e8 41 b5 1-0**

Fischer–Kagan Netanya, 1968



With most pieces on the board, Black's hopes lie in blockading all lines and diagonals. However, in the long run, he cannot prevent

White from engineering a breakthrough with b2–b4:

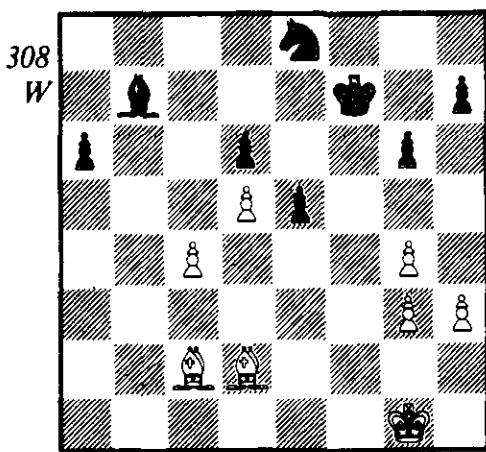
15 ... f5 16 ♜g2 g6 17 h6 ♜b8 18 f4 ♜fe8 19 e5! Further cramping Black. 19 ... ♜c5 20 ♜f3 ♜c8 21 ♜g2 ♜c7 22 ♜e2 ♜b8 The knights present a sorry picture. 23 c3 ♜d7 The only chance was 23 ... d4, with 24 ... ♜e7–d5 in mind.

24 ♜d2 ♜a6 25 ♜fb1 ♜f8 26 b4! axb4 27 cxb4 ♜xb4 28 a5 ♜c5 29 d4 ♜f8 30 ♜xb4 ♜xb4 31 ♜c3 ♜a6 32 ♜xb7+ ♜c7 33 ♜c1 Destination: c5 33 ... ♜e7 34 a6

1–0

Hort–Ciocaltea

Budapest, 1973

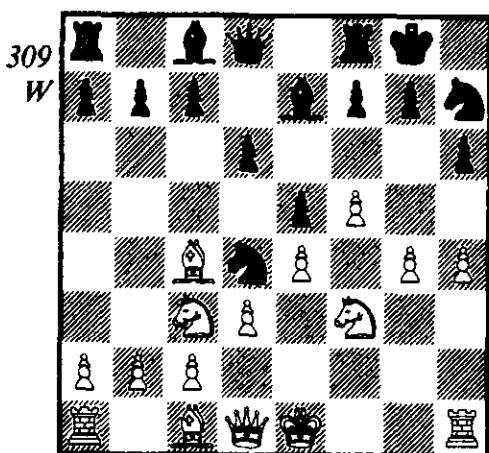


Only two moves are required to immobilize the black knight and pave the way for the victorious march of the white king to the deserted queenside:

1 g5! ♜c8 2 g4! Black's position is ripe for resignation.

15 Pawn Structures

Euwe

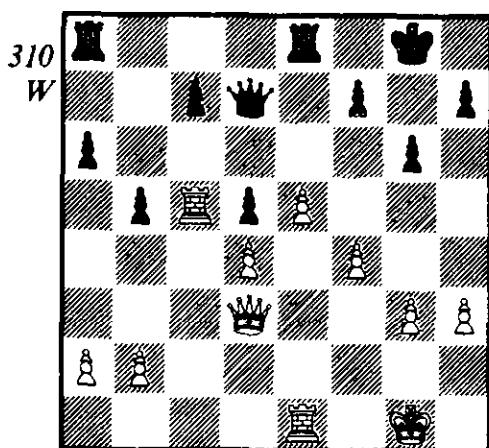


The correct procedure is 1 g5 hxg5 (forced). 2 hxg5 with a swift victory in sight, e.g., 2 ... ♜xg5 3 ♜xg5 ♜xg5 4 ♜h5.

1 h5? would be completely out of place, inviting Black to establish an impregnable blockade on the dark squares.

Capablanca–Salwe

Lodz, 1913



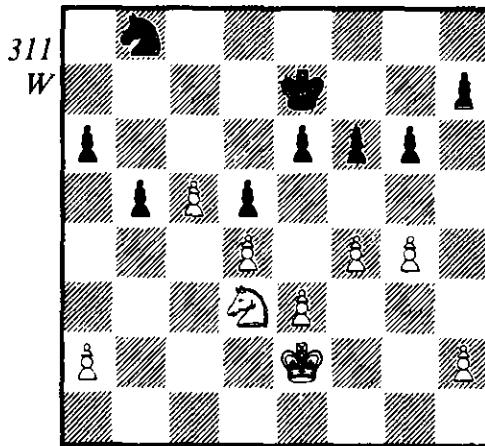
Whereas White's kingside pawn majority is mobile and he exerts pressure on the c-file, Black's pawn majority on the queen's wing is worthless, his c-pawn backward, and the hole on c5 glaring. Verdict: lost for Black.

24 g4 c6 25 ♜ec1 ♜ac8 26 ♜c3 ♜e6 27 ♜h2 ♜h8 28 ♜a3 ♜b7 29 ♜g3 f5 He cannot allow f4–f5. 30 ♜f3 ♜d7 31 ♜g3 ♜f8 32 ♜a3 ♜a8 33 ♜c3 ♜c8 34 ♜c2 ♜g8 35 ♜f3! fxg4+ Obligatory: White's last move simply threatened to capture twice on f5.

36 hxg4 ♜f7 37 ♜e3 Not hastily 37 f5? gxf5 38 gxf5 ♜h5+ 39 ♜e3 ♜g5+ 40 ♜e2 ♜h6, turning the tables. 37 ... ♜f8 38 ♜f1 ♜d7 39 ♜g2 ♜e7 40 ♜fc1 ♜ef6 41 ♜f1 ♜h8 42 ♜c2 ♜e8 43 ♜h2 ♜e7 44 ♜f3 ♜e6 45 ♜f2 a5 46 f5! No more cat and mouse manoeuvring. 46 ... gxf5 47 gxf5 ♜g5 48 ♜f4! ♜xf5 The last gasp. 49 ♜xf5 ♜d2+ 50 ♜f1 ♜g6 51 ♜f8+ ♜g8 52 ♜f6+ ♜g7 53 ♜f3 1–0

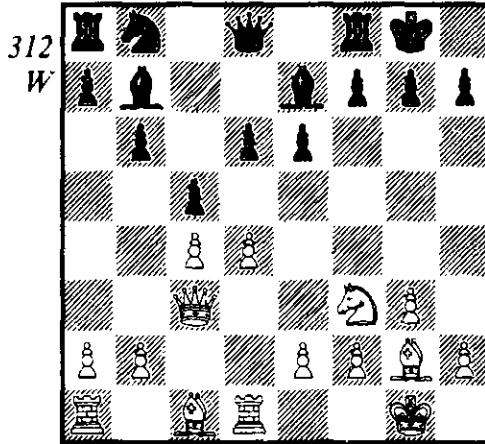
Pillsbury–Gunsberg
Hastings, 1895

The last phase of the last-round game which gave Pillsbury the

311
W

first prize. If Black's knight were on c6, his queenside majority would be a menace. As things stand, White can engineer a dramatic central breakthrough:

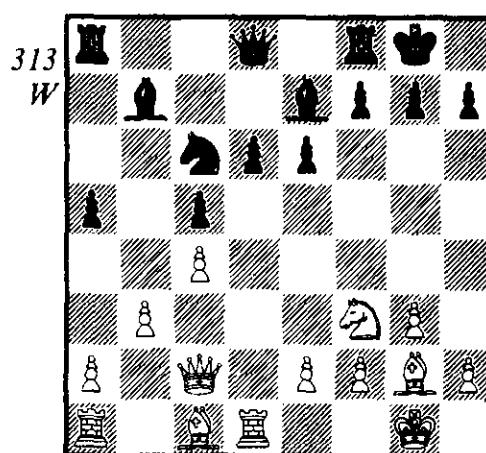
27 f5!! So that if 27 ... gxf5 (27 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}f4!$) 28 gxf5 exf5 29 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ wins. Black stops $\mathbb{Q}f4$, but succumbs to a brilliant diversion. **27 ... g5 28 $\mathbb{Q}b4$ a5 29 c6! $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 30 fxe6 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 32 e4!** with a winning pawn ending (32 ... dxe4 33 d5+ etc.).

312
W

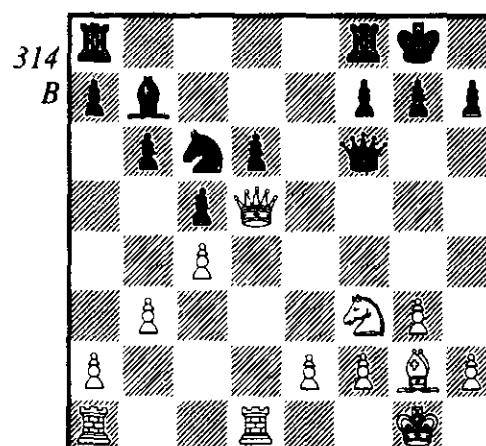
1 d4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 2 c4 e6 3 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ b6 4 g3 $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 0-0 7 0-0 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 8 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ c5 10 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ d6 (312)

The above position may give rise to a variety of pawn structures:

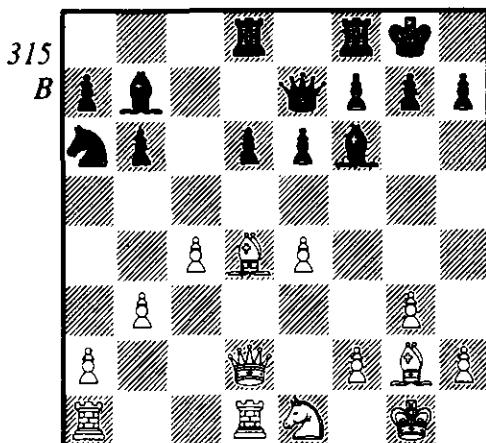
(1) **11 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 12 dxc5 bxc5 13 b3 a5!** (313) and the imminent ... a5-a4 will leave Black with a superior pawn formation (one chain against White's two islands). Of course, 14 a4, to hinder ... a5-a4, enfeebles the square b4 and renders the pawn on b3 backward. Keres-Karpov, Moscow, 1973.

313
W

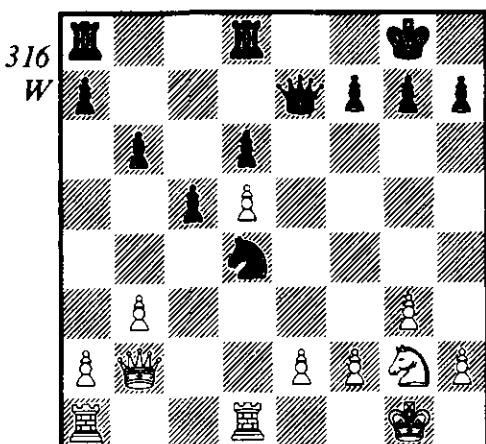
(2) **11 b3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 13 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6?$ 14 d5! exd5 15 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$** (314) with advantage to White. Ivkov-Najdorf, Wijk aan Zee, 1971.

314
B

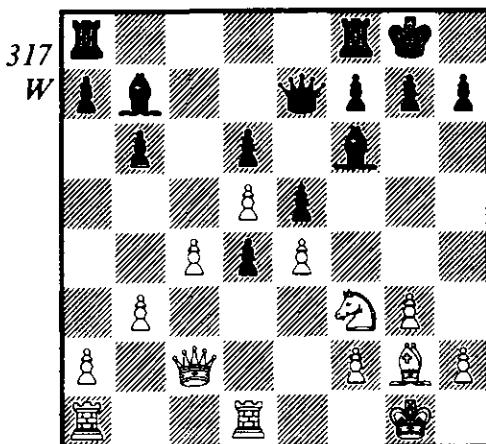
(3) **11 b3 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 13 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}ad8$ 15 e4 cxd4 16 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$** (315) with chances for both sides, although White's pawn structure is somewhat sounder. Ivkov-Korchnoi, 1968.



315
B (4) 11 b3 ♜f6 12 ♜b2 ♜e7 13 ♜d2 ♜d8 14 ♜e1 ♜xg2 15 ♜xg2 ♜c6 16 d5 exd5 17 cxd5 ♜xb2 18 ♜xb2 ♜d4! (316) Filip-Korchnoi, Siegen, 1970, with advantage to Black.



Polugayevsky–Gulko
Moscow, 1976

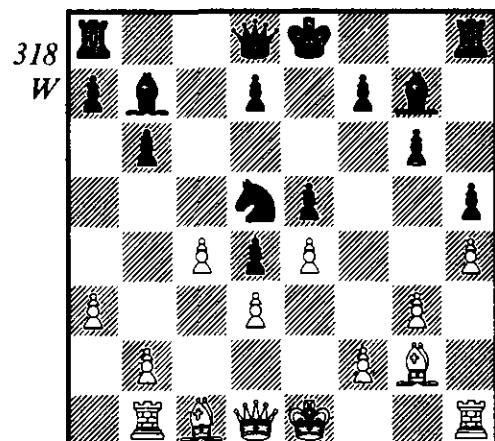


1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 e6 3 ♜f3 b6 4 g3 ♜b7 5 ♜g2 ♜e7 6 0-0 0-0 7 ♜c3

8 ♜e4 9 ♜xc3 10 ♜xc3 c5 11 ♜d1 d6 12 b3 ♜f6 13 ♜b2 ♜e7 14 ♜c6 15 e4 e5 16 d5 ♜d4 17 ♜xd4 cxd4? (317)

A positional error. After 17 ♜h3! Black had to contend with the inexorable advance of White's queenside pawns (in this respect, it is immaterial whether or not Black exchanges bishops with ... ♜c8), without being able to make something of his own pawn majority in the centre.

Portisch–Dzindzichashvili
Buenos Aires, 1978



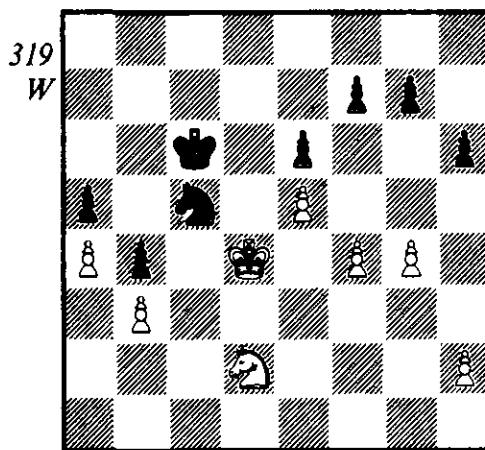
At first sight, there does not appear to be much in the position. However, White's next move prepares for the mobilization of his queenside pawn majority and renders the prospects of Black's light-coloured bishop as bleak as can be.

13 exd5! d6 14 0-0 0-0 15 b4 ♜c8 Black's gestures hasten the end. But if he chooses to do nothing, White's queenside pawns will start rolling. 16 a4 ♜g4 17 ♜c2 ♜d7 18 ♜h2 f5 (?) A final fling: one can hardly blame Black

for despairing. 19 f3 f4 20 fxg4 fxg3+ 21 ♜g1 ♕xf1+ 22 ♜xf1 ♕f8 23 ♜g2 ♜xg4 24 ♜g5 ♕f2 25 ♜e4 ♜d7 26 ♜xg6 1-0

The five positions that follow stem from the Caro-Kann Defence.

Kamishev-Zagoriansky USSR, 1928



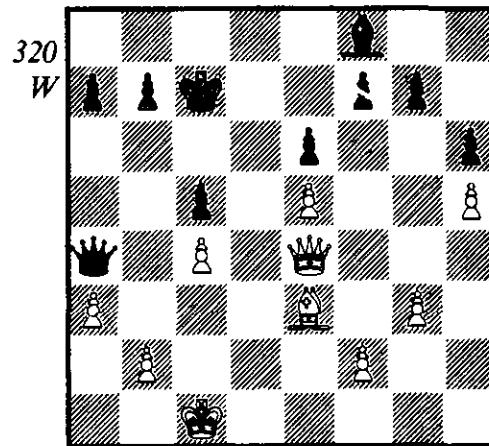
Here too the b3 pawn appears vulnerable, but in contrast with Kashdan-Reshevsky (172), White's king is well placed and the pawn configuration on the king's wing is in his favour.

1 h4 ♜b7 2 h5! ♜c5 3 g5 ♜b7 4 ♜e4 ♜b6 5 ♜c4 Not 5 ♜d6? ♜xd6 6 exd6 f6! and *Black wins*. 5 ... ♜c6 6 ♜f6! ♜c5 7 ♜e8 hxg5 8 fxg5 ♜e4 9 h6 gxh6 10 gxh6 ♜g5 White has created an outside passed pawn and his e5 pawn contains two black pawns.

11 ♜f6 ♜f3 12 ♜g4 ♜g5 13 ♜d4 f5 Otherwise ♜f6. 14 exf6 ♜d6 15 ♜e5 ♜h7 16 ♜c4+ ♜d7 17 f7 ♜e7 18 ♜xa5 It is typical of such endings that the scene of

action switches from one front to another. 18 ... ♜xf7 19 ♜c6 ♜g6 20 a5 ♜f6 21 a6 ♜d5 22 a7 ♜c7 23 ♜xb4 23 ♜c5 is swifter. 23 ... ♜b5+ 24 ♜c5 ♜xa7 25 ♜c6 ♜c8 26 b4 ♜xh6 27 b5 e5 28 ♜xe5 28 ♜e7? fails against 28 ... e4!. 28 ... ♜g7 29 ♜c6 ♜f7 30 ♜a7 ♜e7 31 b6 ♜g6 32 ♜d6 1-0

Geller-Hort Skopje, 1968



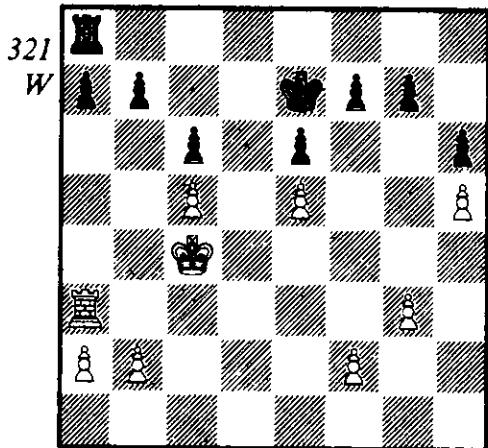
Black's bishop is hampered by the c5 pawn and his kingside pawns are virtually fixed. White exploits these factors admirably.

27 ♜f4! Compelling the queen to defend f7. 27 ... ♜d7 28 b3 Hindering ... ♜a4+ in response to ♜c2. 28 ... ♜d8 29 ♜c2 ♜e8 30 ♜e4! Centralization. Now White is ready to advance his pawns.

30 ... ♜c7 31 f4 ♜e7 32 g4 ♜h4 33 f5 ♜g3 34 fxe6 fxe6 35 ♜g6+ ♜f8 36 ♜xe6 ♜xe5 37 ♜d3! Threatening ♜e4-f5-g6. 37 ... ♜g3 38 ♜e4 ♜h2 39 ♜f5

Qg3 40 Qd2 Qh2 41 Qc3 Wf7+
and Black resigned, in view of 42
Wxf7+ Qxf7 43 Qe4-d5 etc.

Karpov-Miles
Amsterdam, 1985

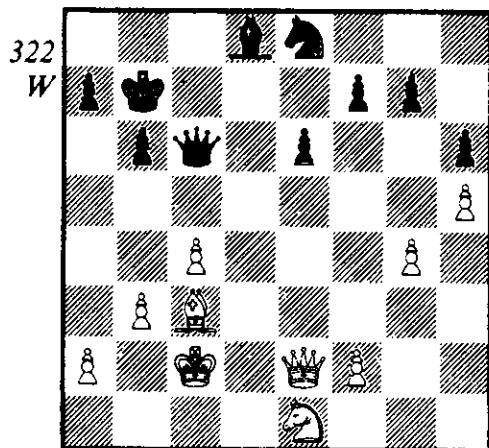


A similar pawn formation to that in previous examples, with only rooks on the board. Black's position may not be lost, but in practice his task is strewn with difficulties.

48 f4 g6 48 ... a6? invites the white king to b6. The text move leads to the weakening of the pawn on e6. **49 hxg6 fxg6 50 Qd4 h5 51 Qe4 Qf7 52 Qb3 b6?** Here the passive 52 ... Qb8 is preferable.

53 Qd3 Qe7 54 Qd6 bxc5?
And now 54 ... Qc8 offers stiffer resistance. **55 Qxc6 Qb8 56 Qxc5 Qxb2 57 Qc7+ Qf8 58 Qxa7 Qc2 59 Qf3 Qg8 60 a4 Qa2 61 a5 Qf8 62 a6 Qg8 63 Qa8+ Qg7 64 a7 Qa3+ 65 Qe4**
1-0 The reader is advised to work out the way to victory.

Kristol-Wu
Malta, 1980



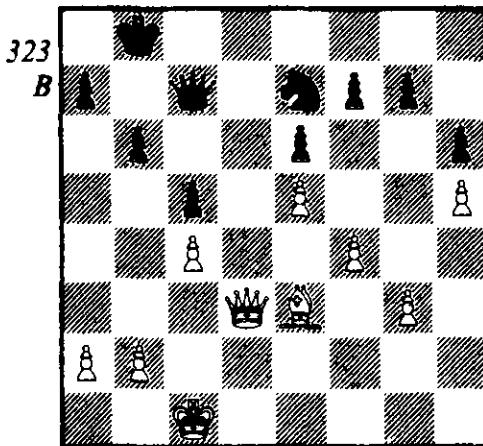
With White's pawn configuration superior to Black's, any inaccuracy on Black's part is likely to prove fatal.

31 Wf3! Qf6 32 Qd2! Exchanging bishops dissipates White's advantage. **32 ... Qd6 33 Wxc6+ Qxc6 34 f3 b5? 35 cxb5+ Qxb5 36 Qd3 Qd4 37 Qe4 Qb5 38 Qd3 Qd5 39 Qc2 Qd4 40 Qe3+ Qc6 41 Qe4 Qb5 42 Qc4 Qc7? 42 ... Qd6+** is more obstinate, although ultimately White's queenside pawn majority ought to win.

43 Qe5+! Giving rise to an ending with pawns on both wings, where a bishop is usually superior to a knight. **43 ... Qxe5 44 Qxe5 f6+ 45 Qe4 Qe8 46 Qb4 Qd7 47 Qf8! a6 48 Qd4 1-0**

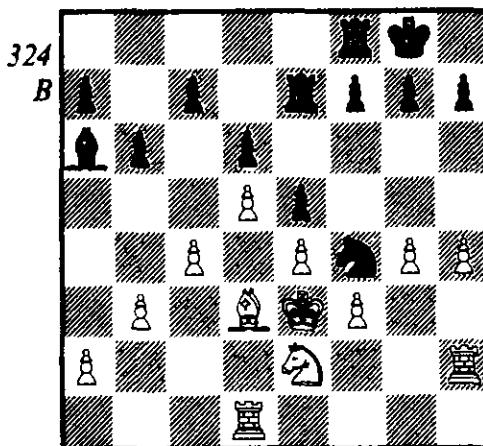
Ljubojevic-Karpov
Linares, 1981

In this innocuous-looking position, the former World Champion



played 28 ... $\text{g}6!$ with the aim of gaining the key square $f5$ for his knight. 29 $\text{g}4 \text{gxh}5$ 30 $\text{gxh}5 \text{xf}5$ being of no use, White tried 29 $\text{hxg}6$ but after 29 ... $\text{fxg}6$ 30 $\text{a}3 \text{a}5!$ halting b2–b4, 31 $\text{b}3 \text{h}5$ 32 $\text{e}4 \text{f}5$ 33 $\text{f}2 \text{d}7$ the supremacy of Black's knight over White's bishop was evident.

Karpov–Miles Bugojno, 1978

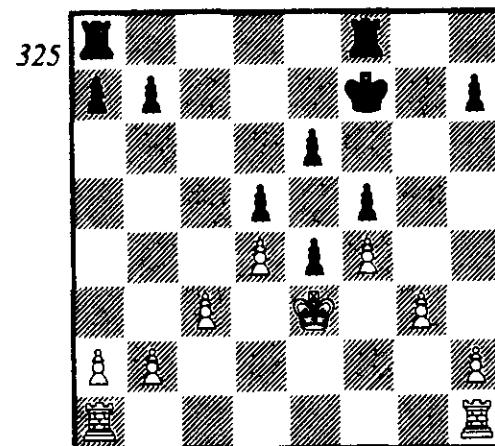


Black has to contend with the eventual breakthrough c4–c5.

27 ... $\text{xd}3?$ The white knight being the more valuable piece, it would have been better to exchange on e2. The text move lets Karpov display his superb technique.

28 $\text{xd}3 \text{a}8$ 29 $\text{g}3 \text{c}8$ 30 $\text{b}4 \text{a}5$ 31 $\text{a}3 \text{axb}4$ 32 $\text{axb}4 \text{a}4$ 33 $\text{b}2 \text{e}8$ 34 $\text{c}3 \text{d}7$ 35 $\text{c}5$ This may be regarded as the winning move. However Black captures, or does not capture, he is left with weaknesses. 35 ... $\text{ea}8$ 36 $\text{cxd}6$ $\text{cxd}6$ 37 $\text{f}5$ Forcing Black to exchange facilitates $\text{c}6$. 37 ... $\text{xf}5$ 38 $\text{gx}f5 \text{a}3$ 39 $\text{c}2 \text{f}8$ 40 $\text{xa}3 \text{xa}3+$ 41 $\text{f}2 \text{b}3$ 42 $\text{c}6$ For the conclusion of the game, see diagram 151.

Afek–Gelfer Tel Aviv, 1980

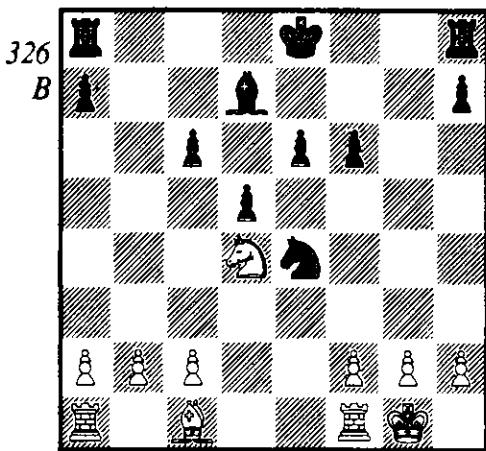


White's position appears sound enough. In reality, he is positionally lost, since there is little he can do against the combined minority attacks on both wings.

The first minority attack, ... $\text{h}7\text{--h}5$, prevents $\text{h}2\text{--h}3$ and $\text{g}3\text{--g}4$ and prepares for ... $\text{h}5\text{--h}4$ at a propitious moment ($\text{h}2\text{--h}4$ leaves the g-pawn hopelessly backward). The other minority attack, ... $\text{b}7\text{--b}5$, ... $\text{a}7\text{--a}5$ and ... $\text{b}5\text{--b}4$, supported by rooks, is bound to lead to a decisive opening of lines for

the entry of a black rook, or rooks.

Bogoljubow–Reti
Mährisch-Ostrau, 1923



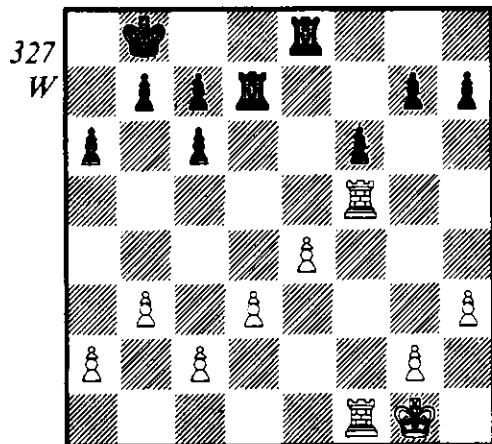
The dominating factor here is Black's central pawn mass. White fails to contain its lust to expand and is made to suffer accordingly.

16 ... c5 17 ♜e2 ♜f7 18 f3 ♜d6 19 b3 e5! 20 ♜a3 ♜ac8 21 ♜ad1 d4 22 ♜c1? Aiming at ♜d3, but inviting the black knight to settle down on e3. 22 c3 (22 f4 e4) 22 ... ♜f5 23 ♜c1 ♜b5 24 c4, accompanied by ♜a3 and ♜c1-d3, is a tougher defence. 22 ... ♜f5 23 ♜f2 ♜e3 24 ♜e1 c4 25 b4 25 c3 (25 bxc4 ♜xc4 etc., sheds the c-pawn) 25 ... cxb3 26 cxd4 ♜c2 loses material.

25 ... ♜a4 26 ♜ee2 ♜d1 27 ♜f1 ♜c3 28 ♜ef2 ♜b1 The pirouettes of the knight are both attractive and profitable. It has gone out of its way to reach the original square of White's queen's knight. 29 ♜b2 c3 30 ♜b3 On 30 ♜a1 ♜a3 (d2) decides. 30 ... ♜xb3 31 axb3 31 cxb3 c2 and ... d3.

31 ... ♜d2 32 ♜e1 ♜hd8 33 ♜c1 d3! 34 cxd3 34 ♜xd2 cxd2 35 ♜xd2 dxc2 36 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 and the c-pawn queens. 34 ... ♜xd3 Or 34 ... ♜xb3. 35 ♜xd2 ♜xd2 36 ♜a1 ♜e6 37 ♜f1 ♜xf2+! 38 ♜xf2 c2 39 ♜c1 ♜d5 40 ♜e3 ♜c3+ 41 ♜d2 ♜d4 42 h4 On 42 ♜xc2 ♜xc2+ and the king penetrates on e3. 42 ... ♜d3+! 0-1 43 ♜xc2 (43 ♜e2 ♜c3) ♜c3+ 44 ♜d2 ♜xcl 45 ♜xcl ♜c3, purloining both b-pawns.

Capablanca–Janowsky
New York, 1913



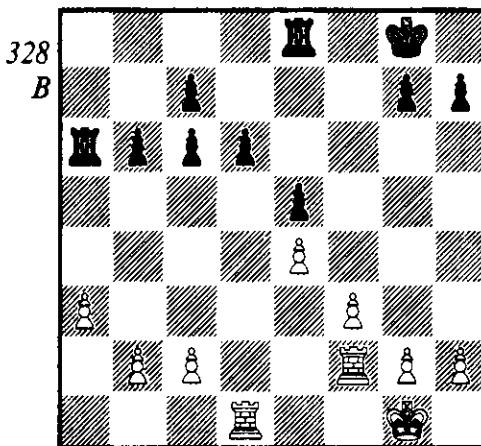
Black's doubled pawns mean that he is 'half' a pawn down and that a king and pawn ending is unlikely to be tenable for him. For his part, White will mount up pressure against Black's kingside pawns and try to activate his central pawns.

27 g4! A typical minority attack. After g4-g5 the central pawns will become mobile. 27 ... b6 28 b4! Thwarting ... c6-c5. 28 ... ♜b7 29 ♜f2 b5 30 a4! Preventing counterplay by ... a6-a5 and ... ♜a6. If 30 ... bxa4 31 ♜al.

30 ... $\blacksquare d4$ 31 $\blacksquare b1$ $\blacksquare e5$ 32 $\spadesuit e3$ $\blacksquare d7$ 32 ... $\blacksquare xf5$ 33 $gxf5$ $\blacksquare d7$ 34 $d4$ is clearly in White's favour. 33 $a5$ Now White is free to divert his attentions to other fronts.

33 ... $\blacksquare e6$ 34 $\blacksquare bfl$ $\blacksquare de7$ 35 $g5$ $fxg5$ 36 $\blacksquare xg5$ $\blacksquare h6$ 37 $\blacksquare g3$ $\blacksquare he6$ 38 $h4$ $g6$ 39 $\blacksquare g5$ $h6$ Otherwise White plays 40 $h5$ 40 $\blacksquare g4$ $\blacksquare g7$ 41 $d4$ $\spadesuit c8$ 42 $\blacksquare f8+$ $\spadesuit b7$ Forced, due to the vulnerability of the $a6$ pawn. 43 $e5$ $g5$ 44 $\spadesuit e4$ $\blacksquare ee7$ 45 $hxg5$ $hxg5$ 46 $\blacksquare f5$ $\spadesuit c8$ 47 $\blacksquare gxg5$ $\blacksquare h7$ 48 $\blacksquare h5$ $\spadesuit b7$ 49 $\blacksquare xh7$ $\blacksquare xh7$ 50 $\blacksquare f8$ 1-0

Kan–Capablanca Moscow, 1936



Unlike the previous example, here Black's doubled pawns constitute an advantage in that they are an integral part of a powerful pawn phalanx. With accurate play, White should draw, but his task is not easy.

23 ... $b5$ 24 $\blacksquare fd2$ $c5$ 25 $\spadesuit f2$ $\blacksquare a4$ 26 $\spadesuit e2$ $\spadesuit f7$ 27 $\blacksquare d3$ $\spadesuit e6$ 28 $\spadesuit d2$ $\blacksquare b8$ 29 $\blacksquare c3$ $g5$ 30 $h3$ $h5$ As he did when playing White in the preceding example, Capablanca centralizes his king and prepares a

minority attack on the kingside.

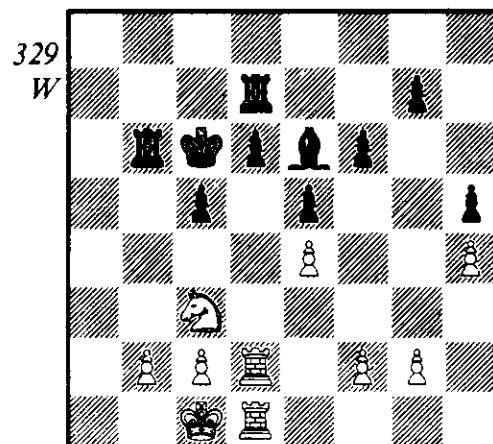
31 $\blacksquare h1$ $\blacksquare d4+$ 32 $\spadesuit e2$ $\blacksquare g8$ 33 $\blacksquare d3$ $\blacksquare a4$ 34 $\blacksquare hd1$ Facilitates ... $g4$. However, on a king move, Black gains space with ... $c6$ and ... $d5$. 24 ... $g4$ Opening another front. 35 $hxg4$ $hxg4$ 36 $\spadesuit e3$ $\blacksquare h8!$ 37 $\blacksquare b3$ 37 $fxg4$ is answered by 37 ... $\blacksquare g8$ 38 $\spadesuit f3$ $\blacksquare f8+$ 39 $\spadesuit e3$ $\blacksquare f4$.

37 ... $\blacksquare h2$ 38 $\blacksquare d2$ $\blacksquare d4!$ 39 $\blacksquare e2$ $c6$ 40 $\blacksquare c3$ $g3$ 41 $\blacksquare d3?$ 41 $f4$ is essential, immediately. 41 ... $\blacksquare h1$ 42 $f4$ $\blacksquare f1$ 43 $f5+$ $\spadesuit f6$ 44 $c3$ $\blacksquare xd3+$ 45 $\spadesuit xd3$ $d5!$ The central pawn phalanx is overpowering. 46 $b3$ $c4+$ 46 ... $\blacksquare a1$ is simpler. 47 $bxcc4$ $bxcc4+$ 48 $\spadesuit e3$ $\blacksquare a1!$ 48 ... $\blacksquare cl?$ 49 $\blacksquare a2!$ 49 $\spadesuit f3$ $\blacksquare xa3$ 50 $\spadesuit xg3$ If 50 $\blacksquare e3$ $\blacksquare b3$, coupled with ... $d5-d4$.

50 ... $\blacksquare xc3+$ 51 $\spadesuit h4$ $\blacksquare cl!$ Hindering $g2-g4-g5$ (+). 52 $g4$ $\blacksquare h1+$ 53 $\spadesuit g3$ $d4$ 54 $\blacksquare a2$ $d3$ 55 $\spadesuit g2$ $\blacksquare e1$ 56 $\spadesuit f2$ $\blacksquare xe4$ 0-1

Model play by Capablanca.

Foltys–Fine Margate, 1937



Black's central pawn phalanx, his united chain of pawns (against

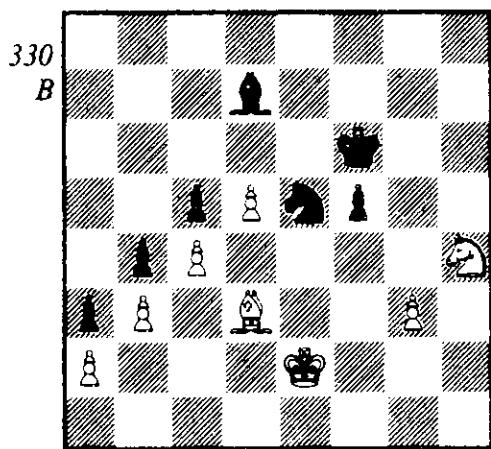
White's two pawn islands) and his centralized king give him a clear edge.

28 f3 28 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ at once is more tenacious. **28 ...** $\mathbb{B}b4$ **29** $\mathbb{Q}d5$ Otherwise ... $\mathbb{B}d4$, ... g6 and ... f5. **29 ...** $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ **30** $\mathbb{B}xd5$ **f5** **31 c3** $\mathbb{B}a4$ **32** $\mathbb{B}e1$ $fxe4$ **33** $fxe4$ $\mathbb{B}a1+$ **34** $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{B}xe1$ **35** $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ $\mathbb{B}f7$ Black has created weaknesses in the white pawn structure. If now **36 g3**, to thwart **36 ...** $\mathbb{B}f4$, **36 ...** $\mathbb{B}f3$.

36 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{B}f4$ **37** $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{B}xh4$ **38** $\mathbb{B}d2$ $\mathbb{B}g4$ **39** $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{B}f4+$ **40** $\mathbb{Q}e3$ **h4** **41** $\mathbb{B}d1$ **g5** **42** **g3** $hxg3$ **43** $\mathbb{B}g1$ **g4** **44** $\mathbb{B}xg3$ **c4!** **45** $\mathbb{B}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ **46** $\mathbb{B}h1$ **g3** **47** $\mathbb{B}g1$ $\mathbb{B}f2$ **48** $\mathbb{B}xg3$ $\mathbb{B}xb2$ **49** $\mathbb{B}g8$ $\mathbb{B}c2$ **50** $\mathbb{B}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ **51** $\mathbb{B}a8+$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ **52** $\mathbb{B}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ **53** $\mathbb{B}a6+$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ **54** $\mathbb{B}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ **55** $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ **56** $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ **57** $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h4$ **58** $\mathbb{B}a6$ Or **58** $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}g3$. **58** ... $\mathbb{B}xc3+$ **0-1**

Minev–Portisch

Halle, 1967



White's extra pawn is more than negated by the advanced state of the black pawns, coupled with the fact that his own pawns

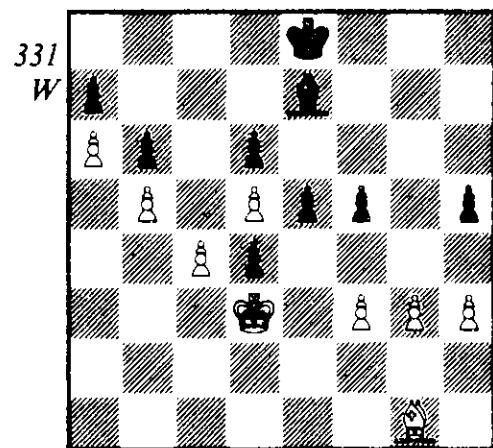
occupy the wrong-coloured squares. A neat breakthrough follows:

1 ... f4!! **2** $\mathbb{Q}e4$ **2** $\mathbb{B}xf4$ succumbs to **2 ...** $\mathbb{B}g4+$ **3** $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{B}xd3$ **4** $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ $\mathbb{B}d1!$ when White is helpless against **5 ...** $\mathbb{B}xb3!$.

2 ... fxg3 **3** $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{B}g4+$ **4** $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{B}xc4+$! **5** $bxc4$ **b3** **6** $\mathbb{B}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ **7** $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{B}xb1$ **8** $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ **9** $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ **10** $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $g2$ **0-1**

Spassky–R. Byrne

San Juan, 1974



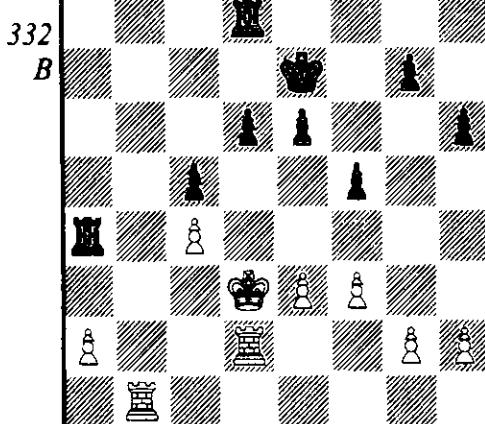
In the ending above, the pawn formation is again the determining factor. Sooner or later, the advanced pawns on b5 and a6, supported by White's better bishop, will assure White of a clear edge.

Sämisch–Alekhine

Dresden, 1926

Black can boast of one compact pawn chain as against White's three pawn islands. In the absence of other factors, this advantage is often decisive.

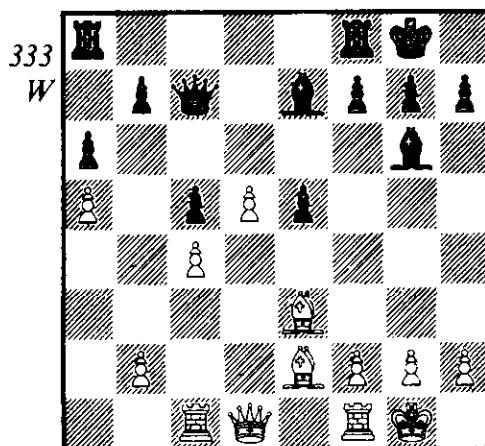
30 ... $\mathbb{B}a3+$ **31** $\mathbb{Q}e2$ If **31** $\mathbb{B}b3$ $\mathbb{B}da8$ **32** $\mathbb{B}xa3$ $\mathbb{B}xa3+$ **33** $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{B}c3$ and so on. **31 ...** $\mathbb{B}c3$ **32 a4!**



332 B **32** **W** **a3** Avoiding 32 ... **x**c4 33 **a2**, with counterplay. 33 **b7+** **d7** 34 **db2** **xa4** 35 **xd7+** **xd7** 36 **b7+** **c6** 37 **xg7** **xc4** Even though White presently re-establishes material equality, the ending is easily won for Black.

38 **g6** **d5** 39 **xh6** **c2+** 40 **f1** **c4** 41 **h8** **c3** 42 **h4** Or 42 **c8** **f4!** 43 **exf4** **d4**, shepherding the pawn to queendom. 42 ... **d2** 43 **e1** 43 **c8** **c2** is worse. 43 ... **xg2** 44 **c8** **c2** 45 **h5** **h2** 46 **h6** **xh6** 47 **xc2** **h1+** 48 **d2** **h2+** 49 **d3** **xc2** 0-1

Geller–Fischer Curaçao, 1962



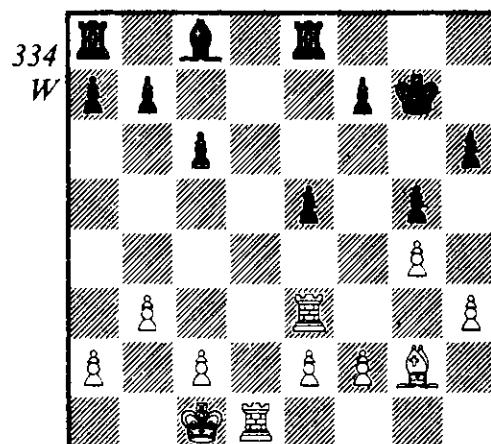
A race between two pawn majorities: White's is the more mobile.

17 b4! If now 17 ... **cxb4** 18 **b6** coupled with 19 **c5**. 17 ... **ac8** 18 **wb3** **ad6** 19 **fd1** **we7** 20 **bcx5** **xc5** 21 **xc5** **xc5** 22 **a1** **ad8** 23 **aa4** A prelude to **b4**.

23 ... **ff5** 24 **bb4** **cc8** 25 **bb6** **dd6** If 25 ... **xa5** 26 **d6** and 27 **f3** 26 **wb4** **wc7** 27 **xd6** **xd6** 28 **bb1** **cc7** 29 **wa4** **dd7** 30 **wa3** **xa5** 31 **xb7** **xb7** 32 **xa5** The connected passed pawns are unstoppable.

32 ... **g6** 33 **h3** **wb1+** 34 **hh2** **f5** 35 **wc3** **we4** 36 **f3** **wd4** 37 **xd4** **exd4** 38 **g4** **cc8** 39 **c5** **a5** 40 **c6** **f8** 41 **d6** 1-0

Polugayevsky–Tal Leningrad, 1971



21 a4 **f6?** A curious slip for an ex-World Champion. 21 ... **a5**, hindering White's next move, is correct.

22 a5! **a6** Obligatory, to stop 23 **a6**, but the resultant enfeeblement of the dark squares and the hole on **b6** are lasting handicaps. 23 **b2** **ee6** 24 **c3** **ac8** 25 **b4**

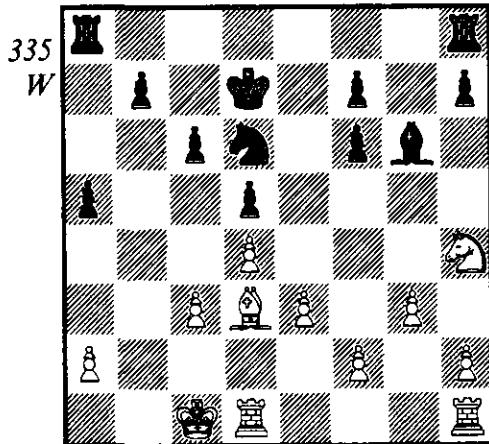
h5 25 ... c5+, preventing ♜c5, exposes the pawn on b7.

26 ♜f3 hxg4 27 hxg4 ♜cd8 28 ♜xd8 ♜xd8 29 ♜c5 ♜d4 30 c4 ♜xg4 31 ♜xg4 ♜xg4 32 ♜b6

♜f4 33 f3 33 ♜xb7 is more economical. 33 ... e4 34 ♜xb7 ♜e5 35 ♜xa6 ♜d4 36 ♜xe4+ ♜xe4 37 fxe4 g4 38 ♜b7 g3 39 a6 g2 40 a7 g1 (w) 41 a8(w) 1-0

16 Pros and Cons

Tal–Spassky
Sochi, 1973

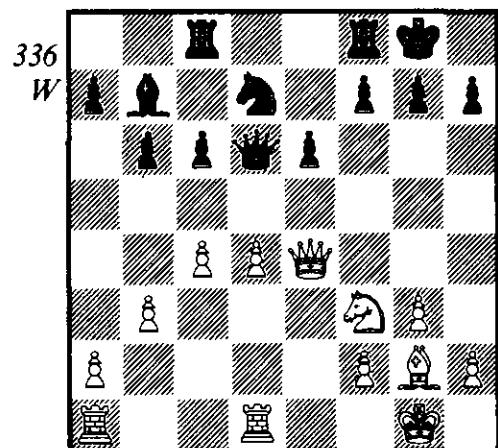


18 ♜he1? An instructive error, ceding the key square c4 to the black knight. This could, and should, be averted by 18 ♜xg6 hxg6, notwithstanding the ensuing straightening of Black's kingside pawns.

18 ... ♜xd3 19 ♜xd3 b5 followed by ... ♜hb8 and ... b5–b4 with a menacing attack (the game, nevertheless, ended in a draw after 57 moves).

Portisch–Radulov
Moscow, 1977

The Hungarian Grandmaster played 16 c5!, ceding the outpost d5 to hinder the freeing ... c6–c5, activating the bishop. The tactical justification of 16 c5! lies in the

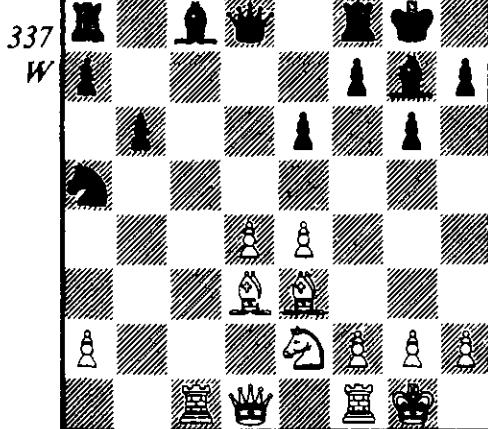


variation 16 ... bxc5 17 dxc5 ♜xc5 18 ♜b4 ♜e7 19 ♜ac1, winning a piece. 16 ... ♜e7 17 b4 ♜fd8 18 ♜c2 ♜f6 19 ♜e5 ♜d5 20 a3 b5 Undesirable; but a better plan is hard to come by. 21 ♜e4 g6 22 h4 a5 23 bxa5 ♜a8 24 a4 b4 25 ♜xd5 Remaining with a good knight versus a bad bishop.

25 ... ♜xd5 26 ♜ab1 f6 27 ♜g4 ♜ad8 28 ♜xb4 ♜c8 29 ♜e3 ♜5d7 30 ♜b8 e5 On other moves, White plays ♜c4. Now he obtains a mighty passed pawn. 31 d5! cxd5 32 c6 ♜d6 33 c7 ♜f8 34 ♜xd5 f5 35 ♜c5 ♜e6 36 ♜xe7 ♜xe7 37 ♜xc8 ♜xc8 38 ♜d8+ ♜e8 39 ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 40 ♜d5! 1–0

Gligoric–Tukmakov
Odessa, 1975

The diagram was reached after 1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 d5 4 cxd5



$\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 5 e4 $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 6 bxc3 $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 7
 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ c5 8 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 0-0 10
0-0 $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 11 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ cxd4 12 cxd4 b6
13 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ e6 (337)

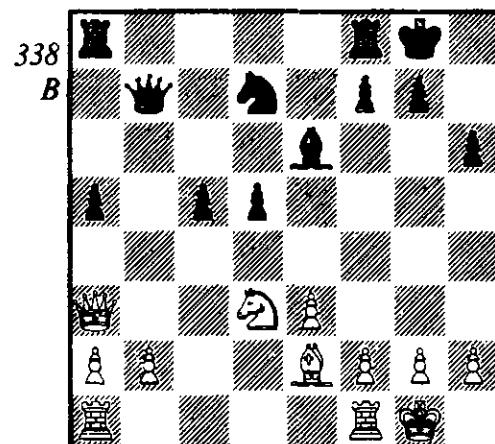
Here, deviating from the customary 14 f3, 14 $\mathbb{Q}a4$, or 14 $\mathbb{Q}d2$, Gligoric deliberately opened up the long diagonal for his opponent's bishop and acquiesced in the immobilization of his pawn formation in the centre by playing 14 e5!?

The idea behind this anti-positional move is to mount a kingside attack after 14 ... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ with 15 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 17 h4 and the black knight will find it difficult to reach d5.

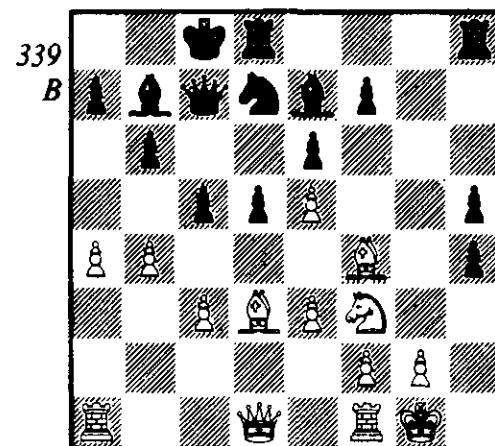
Although Black actually succumbed in 24 moves, the double-edged position offers chances to both sides.

Bertok–Fischer Stockholm, 1982

Fischer played 17 ... c4!, voluntarily ceding the key square d4 to the white knight, for the sake of increasing the pressure along the b-file.



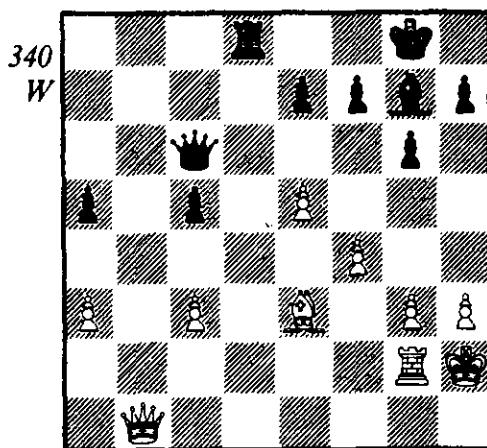
Spassky–Petrosian Moscow, 1966



Petrosian voluntarily surrendered the key square d4 with 17 ... c4!, thus neutralizing White's attacking chances on the queenside. After 18 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ a6! Black was ready to answer a4–a5 with ... b6–b5 and b4–b5 with ... a6–a5. Thereafter he was free to pursue his operations on the other flank unmolested.

Botvinnik–Smyslov Moscow, 1957

This position was reached after 26 moves in the first match game

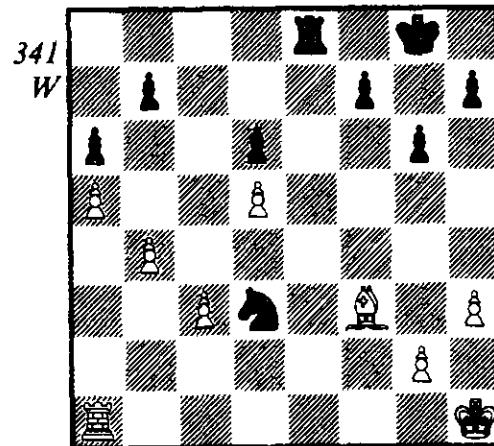


for the World Championship in 1957. Correct is 27 c4 (not fearing 17 ... $\mathbb{w}f3$), to hinder ... c4 and deprive the black pieces of the use of d5. Instead White played:

27 $\mathbb{d}2?$ $\mathbb{x}d2+$ 28 $\mathbb{d}xd2$ c4!
and had to cope with ... f7-f6 and ... e7-e6, accompanied by ... $\mathbb{f}8$. The surrender of d4 turns out to be but a minor concession. 29 $\mathbb{e}3$ f6! 30 $\mathbb{d}4$ $\mathbb{f}7$ 31 $\mathbb{d}1$ a4! Fixing the white pawns on the queenside. 32 $\mathbb{e}2$ $\mathbb{d}5$ 33 $\mathbb{g}1$ $\mathbb{f}8$ 34 f5 Despair, in anticipation of ... fxe5 coupled with ... e6. 34 ... fxe5 35 fxg6+ $\mathbb{h}xg6$ 36 $\mathbb{x}e5$ e6 37 $\mathbb{f}2+$ $\mathbb{e}8$ 38 $\mathbb{f}6$ $\mathbb{x}a3$ 39 $\mathbb{x}g6+$ $\mathbb{d}7$ 40 $\mathbb{f}7+$ $\mathbb{e}7$.

Botvinnik sealed 41 $\mathbb{f}6$ and resigned, realizing that after 41 ... $\mathbb{c}5+$ and 42 ... a3 the a-pawn is unstoppable.

Hort–Ljubojevic Montreal, 1979



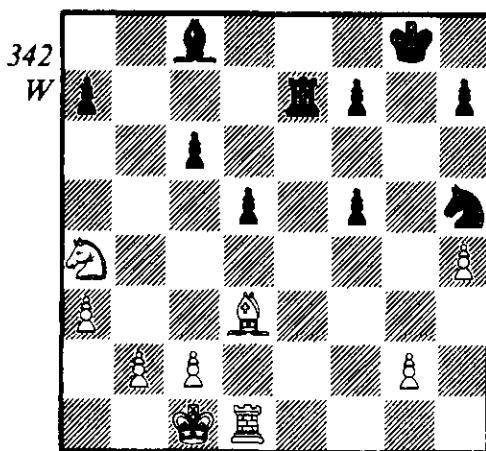
White's queenside pawn majority counterbalances Black's control of e5. After 30 $\mathbb{g}1$ the game should end in a draw. Instead White embarks upon an inauspicious transaction.

30 c4? $\mathbb{x}b4$ 31 $\mathbb{b}1$ $\mathbb{d}3$ 32 $\mathbb{x}xb7$ $\mathbb{c}5$ The disappearance of the b-pawns has furnished the knight an unassailable post. 33 $\mathbb{c}7$ h5 34 $\mathbb{g}1$ $\mathbb{f}8$ 35 $\mathbb{f}2$ $\mathbb{b}8$ Black's rook, soon joined by his king, infiltrates easily into White's camp. The difference in the roles played by the respective kings, rooks and minor pieces is glaring.

36 $\mathbb{c}6$ $\mathbb{e}7$ 37 $\mathbb{c}7+$ $\mathbb{f}6$ 38 $\mathbb{e}3$ $\mathbb{b}3+$ 39 $\mathbb{d}2$ $\mathbb{b}7$ 40 $\mathbb{c}8$ $\mathbb{e}5$ 41 $\mathbb{c}3$ $\mathbb{b}3+$ 42 $\mathbb{c}2$ $\mathbb{d}4$ 43 $\mathbb{c}6$ $\mathbb{c}3+$ 44 $\mathbb{d}2$ $\mathbb{a}3$ 45 $\mathbb{c}2$ $\mathbb{a}2+$ 0-1

17 Active King; Central Supremacy

Tal–Lisitsin
Leningrad, 1956



Having sacrificed a pawn to weaken Black's pawn formation and block his bishop, White's king infiltrates Black's camp via the black squares.

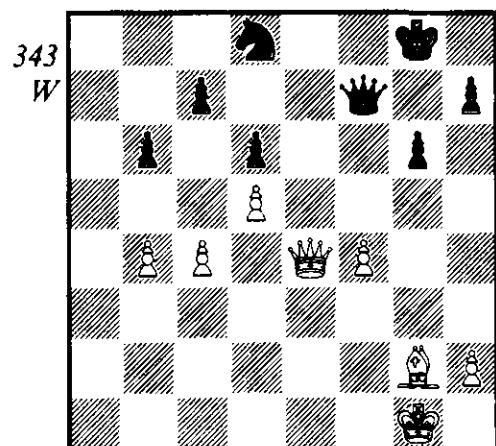
25 ♜d2! ♜g3 26 ♜c3 f4 Freeing the bishop. 27 ♜d4 The first station in a long career.

27 ... ♜f5 28 ♜d2 ♜e6 29 ♜c5 ♜h6 30 ♜e5! ♜xd3 31 cxd3 ♜xh4 32 ♜d6 ♜h6+ 33 ♜c7 The active king more than compensates for White's material deficit, which is only temporary. 33 ... ♜f5 34 ♜b7 ♜d4 Threatening to create a passed pawn with ... ♜h2 and ... f3. 35 ♜f2 a5 36 ♜xf4 ♜e6 37 ♜g4+ ♜f8 38

♗xc6! ♜xc5 39 ♜xc5 ♜e6 40 ♜xd5 ♜b6 41 b4 axb4 42 axb4 ♜e7 43 ♜c5 ♜f6 44 ♜d4! Cutting off the black king.

44 ... ♜f5+ 45 ♜b6 ♜f6+ 46 ♜c7 ♜f5 47 ♜e4+ The further the black king from the passed pawn, the better. 47 ... ♜f6 48 ♜c6 ♜f2 49 g4 h5 The last gasp. 50 gxh5 ♜g5 51 b5 f5 52 ♜b4! f4 53 b6 f3 54 b7 1–0

Keres–Eliskases
Prague, 1937



Black's knight and queen are inferior to White's bishop and queen. However, as no immediate breakthrough suggests itself, White must mobilize his king to create winning chances.

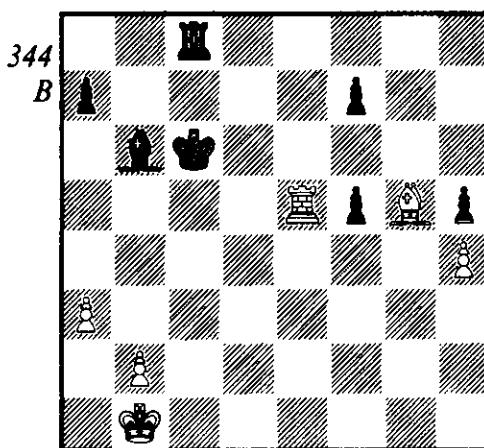
31 ♜f2 ♜g7 32 ♜e3 ♜f6 33 ♜d3 ♜f7 34 ♜c2 ♜h4 35 ♜b3! Ignoring the kingside, White's king penetrates behind the lines on the other wing.

35 ... ♜xh2 36 ♜a4 ♜h4 37 ♜b5 ♜d8 38 ♜h3 g5! The best chance: securing the square e5 for his knight. 39 ♜c6 gxf4 40 ♜b7 ♜e5 41 c5 bxc5 42 bxc5 ♜d7 43 ♜d4+ 43 ♜xd7 ♜xd7 44 c6 is insufficient, owing to 44 ... ♜f7, threatening to advance the f-pawn.

43 ... ♜f6? A blunder. 43 ... ♜g6 should draw. 44 ♜g1+ ♜f8 45 ♜xd7 dxc5 46 ♜xc5+ ♜d6 47 ♜xd6+ 1-0

Kavalek–Rogoff

USA, 1975



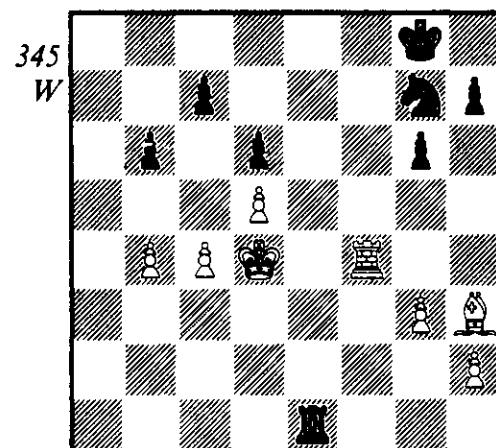
32 ... f6! Compelling White's reply (33 ♜xf6 ♜d4 34 ♜e6+ ♜d5 etc.) and thus enabling Black's king to advance towards the centre, to support the passed pawn on f5.

33 ♜e6+ ♜d5 34 ♜xf6 ♜e4 35 ♜f7 ♜c7 36 ♜f8 ♜c5! Obliging the white rook to cede the f-file. 37 ♜f6 ♜d4 38 ♜f8 ♜g7 39

爵e8+ ♜f3 40 ♜e1 ♜d4 41 b4 ♜g4 42 ♜d1 ♜f2 43 ♜d5 ♜f7 44 ♜c2 f4 45 ♜d1 f3 46 a4 ♜g3 47 ♜d4+ ♜h3 48 ♜e3 f2 49 ♜xf2 ♜xf2 0-1

Gelfer–Manievich

Jerusalem, 1985



40 ♜e6+! ♜xe6 41 dxе6 ♜xe6

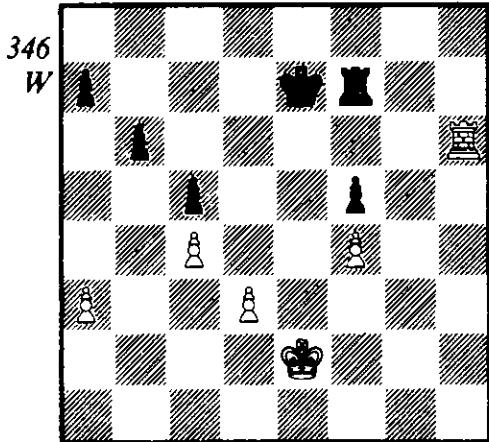
The sacrifice has cleared a path for the white king. 41 ... c6 would not do, owing to 42 b5!. 42 ♜d5 ♜e7 43 ♜c6 ♜g7 44 ♜f2 ♜e4 45 ♜c2 ♜e7 46 b5 ♜f6 47 ♜a2 ♜e4 48 ♜xc7 ♜xc4+ 49 ♜xb6 d5 50 ♜a7 d4 51 b6 ♜e5 52 b7 ♜b4 53 b8 (王)+ ♜xb8 54 ♜xb8 d3 55 ♜c7 ♜e4 56 ♜d6 ♜e3 57 ♜e5 d2 58 ♜a1 ♜e2 59 ♜f6 d1 (王) 60 ♜xd1 ♜xd1 61 ♜g7 1-0

Lombardy–Ree

Haifa, 1976

White's next move, opening avenues for his king, transforms a barren position into a dynamic one.

50 d4! ♜f6 51 ♜h7+ ♜f7 52 ♜h5 cxd4 53 ♜d3 ♜d6 54 ♜xd4 ♜f6 55 ♜g5! a6 56 ♜h5 ♜e6 57



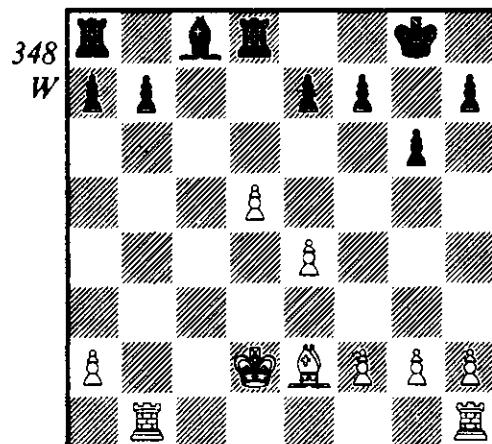
346 W

h8 ♜d6 58 ♜d8+ ♜c7 59 ♜d5 a5 60 a4 ♜c6 61 c5 bxc5+? Correct is 61 ... b5. 62 ♜xc5+ ♜b6 63 ♜b5+ ♜a6 64 ♜e5 ♜c6 65 ♜d5 ♜c4 66 ♜d6+! ♜b7 67 ♜d4! ♜c1 68 ♜xf5 ♜c6 69 ♜e5 ♜c5 70 ♜e4 1-0

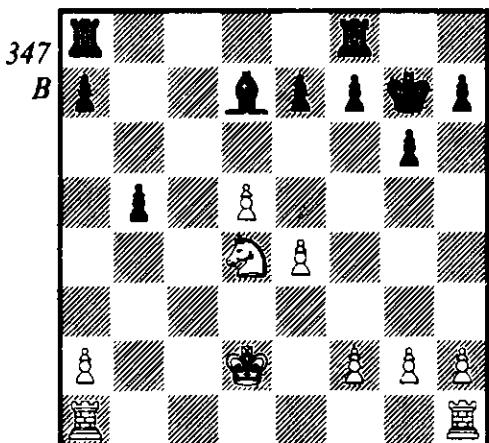
♘xd2+ 16 ♘xd2 0-0 17 ♜xg7 ♛xg7 18 ♜d4 (347)

Evaluation: White's central control is more relevant than Black's queenside pawn majority.

Kasparov–Natsis Malta, 1980



Amos–Martz Mayagüez, 1971



1 d4 ♜f6 2 c4 g6 3 ♜c3 d5 4 cxd5 ♜xd5 5 e4 ♜xc3 6 bxc3 ♜g7 7 ♜c4 c5 8 ♜e2 ♜c6 9 ♜e3 cxd4 10 cxd4 b5?! 11 ♜d5 11 ♜xb5 ♜a5+ 12 ♜c3 is drawish. 11 ... ♜d7 12 ♜xc6 12 ♜c1 is a viable alternative. 12 ... ♜xc6 13 ♜d5! ♜d7 13 ... ♜xal costs material. 14 ♜d4 ♜a5+ 11 ♜d2

The struggle revolves around White's central pawns. If he can maintain them, they will prove a more potent weapon than Black's majority of pawns on the queen's flank.

17 ♜e3 b6? 17 ... e6 18 ♜c4 (or 18 dxe6) 18 ... ♜b8 (trying for ... b5), though hardly satisfactory, sets White more problems. 18 ♜bc1 e6 If 18 ... ♜d7 (18 ... ♜d7 19 ♜b5) 19 ♜a6 and 20 ♜c7 or 19 ♜c7 first. 19 ♜c4 e5?! Conceding White a protected passed pawn. Admittedly, even after 19 ... ♜f8 20 ♜hd1 ♜e7 21 e5! Black is pushed: 21 ... exd5 22 ♜xd5 ♜b8 23 ♜c7+ ♜d7 24 ♜xd7+ ♜xd7 25 ♜xf7.

20 ♜b3 ♜d7 21 ♜c7 a5 22 d6 b5 23 f4! Creating a supported passed pawn and opening the f-file. 23 ... exf4+ 24 ♜xf4 ♜a6

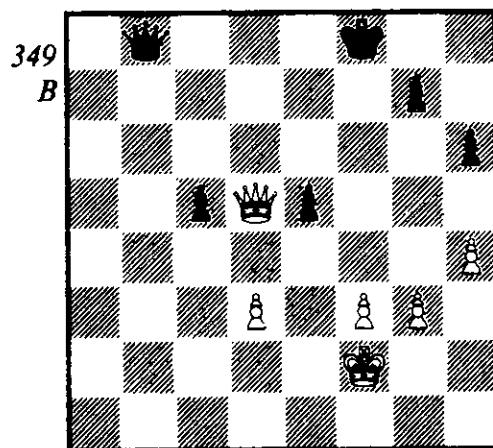
25 e5 a4 26 ♜d5 a3 27 ♜f1
 ♜a4+ 28 ♜e3 ♜e6 29 ♜xe6
 fxe6 30 ♜ff7 1-0

Romanovsky–Stahlberg

Moscow, 1935

Black's isolated pawns require protection and there is not much he can do about the forward march of the white king.

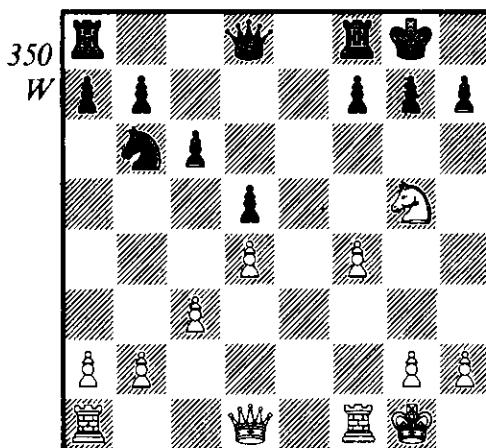
1 ... ♜b2+ The reader is advised to work out White's winning method after the passive 1 ... ♜c7. 2 ♜e3 ♜c1+ 3 ♜e4 ♜e1+



4 ♜f3 ♜xg3 5 ♜xc5+ ♜g8 6
 ♜c4+ ♜h8 6 ... ♜h7 is prefer-
 able. 7 ♜g4 ♜e1 8 ♜g6! ♜c1 9
 ♜d7 ♜g1+ 10 ♜f7 ♜h7 11
 ♜f5+ g6 12 ♜d7 1-0

18 Inducing Weaknesses

Euwe

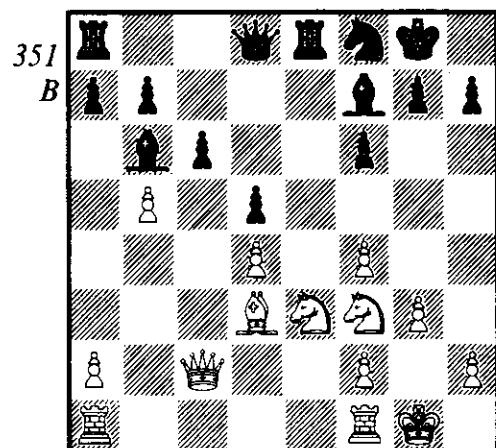


A simple, instructive example. White establishes a winning position by means of direct threats: 1 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $g6$ 1 ... $f5$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $h5$ 3 $g4$ If now 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 4 $f5!$; or 3 ... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 4 $gxh5$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 5 $h6+!$.

Alekhine–Lasker
New York, 1924

The vulnerability of the white pawn on d4 enables Black to induce lasting weaknesses in White's kingside pawn structure.

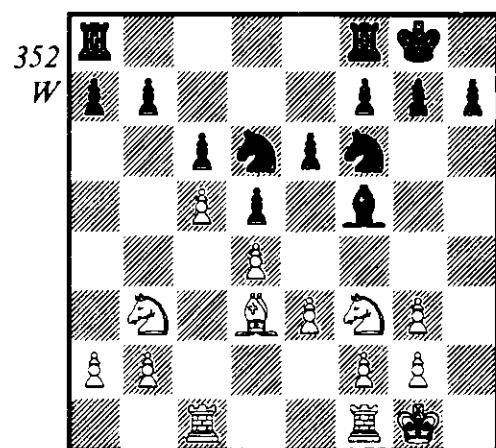
18 ... $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ 19 $g4$ Forced. **19 ... $\mathbb{Q}f7$** The dainty manoeuvre of the bishop was designed to enfeeble the b8–h2 diagonal: its weakness is to be the mainstay of Black's success. **20 $bxc6$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $bxc6$ 22 $f5$** Otherwise 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}e6$. **22 ... $\mathbb{Q}d6$** Threatening 23



... $\mathbb{Q}f4$. 23 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}fe1$ $h5$ 25 $h3$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}xe8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe8$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $fxe5$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $e4$ and White resigned 6 moves later.

Seldom has a loss of time (18 ... $\mathbb{Q}h5$ – $f7$) proved so beneficial.

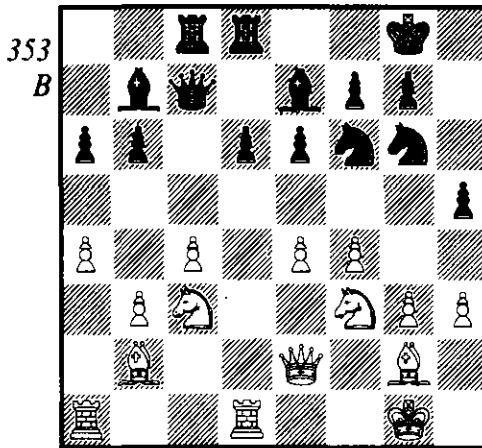
Hort–Dückstein
Vesely na Morave, 1968



Not content with 1 $cxd6$ $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}fd1$, or 1 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 2 $\mathbb{Q}a5$

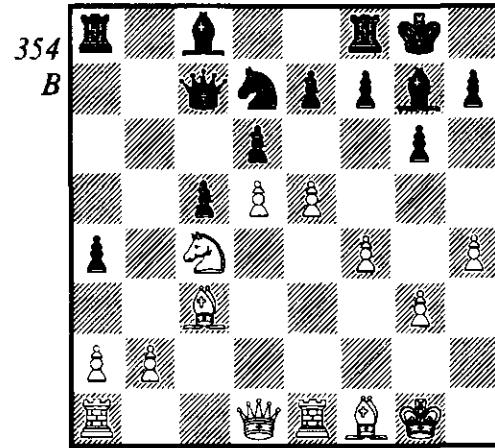
and so on, White cripples Black's pawn structure with 1 ♜a6! bxa6 Forced. 2 cxd6.

Polugayevsky–Ftačník Lucerne, 1982



28 ♜xg2+! A harmonious conclusion to a well-executed attack. 29 ♜xg2 ♜d2++ 0–1 It is mate in three.

Korchnoi–Fischer Curaçao, 1962



The seemingly insignificant fact that the white pawn stands on h3 instead of h2 affords Black a chance to undermine the white pawn on f4, after which White's position collapses.

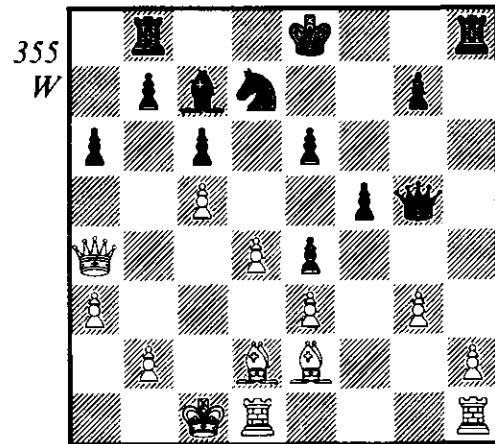
19 ... d5! **20 cxd5** The attempt to keep the position blocked with 20 e5 is answered by 20 ... ♜e4 21 ♜xe4 dxe4, and ... h5–h4!. 20 ... h4!! Anyhow! **21 ♜xh4 ♜xh4** **22 gxh4 ♜xf4** **23 dxe6 fxe6** **24 e5** White's position is shaky: 24 ... ♜xc3 coupled with 25 ... ♜xe4 is one of several black threats. The text move, however, unveils the long diagonal, of which Black takes brilliant advantage.

24 ... ♜c5+ **25 ♜h1 ♜h5!** Diverting the white queen, so as to play ... ♜g3 with tempo. **26 ♜xh5 ♜g3** **27 ♜d5** On 27 ♜e4 simply 27 ... ♜xe4. Or 27 ♜g4 ♜xg2 mate. **27 ... ♜xd5** **28 ♜f1**

21 ... ♜b6! Black exploits the absence of a white pawn from h2 to tempt White into 22 ♜a5, which would be refuted by 22 ... ♜xa5 23 ♜xa5 dxe5, when White's position crumbles.

Korchnoi played 22 h5 and the game ended in a draw on move 41.

Fine–Winter Nottingham, 1936



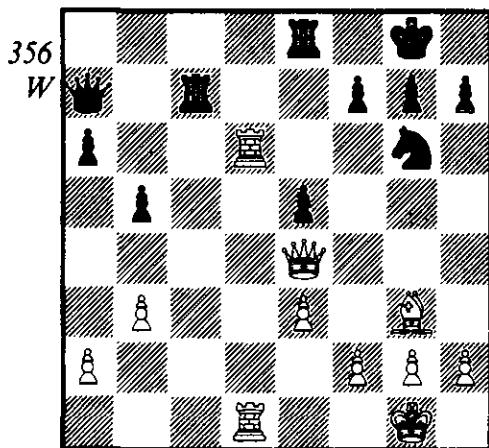
In the following example White obtains ample material for his

sacrificed bishop. More to the point, the abandoned bishop enables him to wreak havoc on Black's uncastled king.

20 ♜xa6! bxa6 20 ... ♜a8 21 ♜b3!. 21 ♜xc6 ♜d8 22 ♜xe6 and White won some 10 moves later.

Rubinstein–Maroczy

Gothenburg, 1920

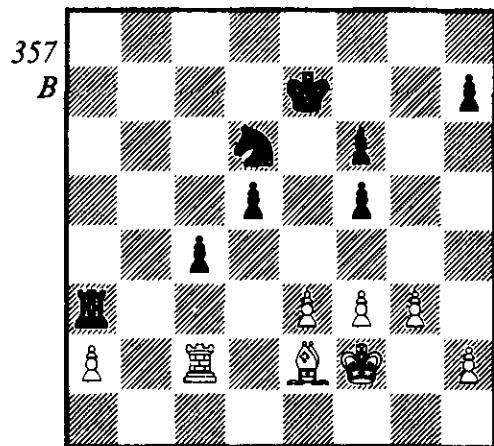


Black has no apparent weakness but White's domination of the queen's file and the ideal placing of his pieces make possible a lightning attack on the adversary king.

29 h4! f6 Both 29 ... h5 30 ♜f5 and 29 ... h6 30 h5 result in the loss of a pawn. 30 ♜d5+ ♜h8 31 h5 ♜f8 32 h6 ♜g6 33 ♜e6! ♜f8 34 ♜d7 gxh6 35 ♜h4! 1–0 35 ... ♜xh4 36 ♜e7.

Grefe–R. Byrne

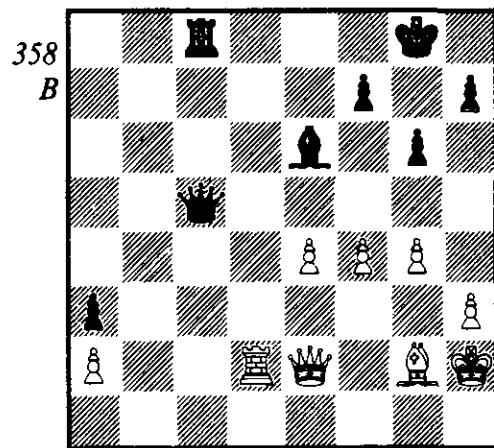
1 ... f4!! A devastating stroke: after 2 exf4 or 2 gxf4 ♜f5 the passed c- and d-pawns soon become mobile. Note that in the



latter case, 3 e4 is of no avail, owing to 3 ... ♜d4 4 ♜d2 c3.

Kevitz–Capablanca

New York, 1931



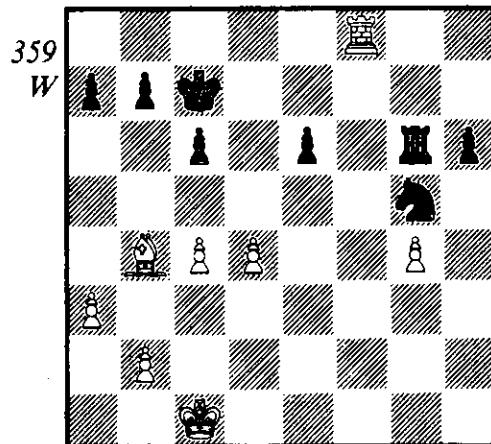
The pawn on a2 is a liability, but Capablanca's next move, assuming control of the black squares, reveals that White's king is vulnerable as well.

32 ... g5! 33 ♜f2 This loses, but 33 f5 or 33 fxg5 ♜e5+ is just as bad: 34 ♜h1 (34 ♜g1 ♜c1+ 35 ♜f1 ♜c4; or 35 ♜d1 ♜d4+) 34 ... ♜c1+ 35 ♜d1 ♜b2 36 ♜e1 ♜xd1 37 ♜xd1 ♜xa2 33 ... ♜xf2 34 ♜xf2 gxf4 35 ♜f3 There is no time for 35 ♜xf4 ♜xa2, after which the a-pawn promotes.

35... $\blacksquare a8$ 36 $\blacksquare f2 f3!$ The idea behind this desperado offer is to win the a-pawn, be it after 37 $\blacksquare xf3 \blacksquare xa2$, or after 37 $\blacksquare xf3 \blacksquare b8-b2$, when the presence of the bishop on f3 bars the rook from that square. There remains:

37 $\blacksquare f1 \blacksquare b8$ 38 $\blacksquare xf3 \blacksquare b2+$ Revealing the third merit of 36... f3!: the removal of the white bishop from his second rank makes it possible for Black's rook to enter b2 with check, thus dispensing him from defending the a-pawn with 38... $\blacksquare a8$ and enabling him to capture the coveted a-pawn. 39 $\blacksquare g3 \blacksquare xa2$ 40 $\blacksquare c3 \blacksquare a1$ 0-1 41 $\blacksquare c4 \blacksquare xc4$ 42 $\blacksquare xc4$ a2 43 $\blacksquare a4 \blacksquare g1+$.

Karpov–Pomar
Nice, 1974

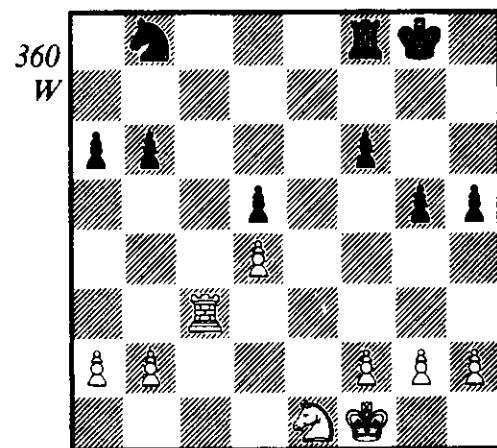


Whereas Black's rook and knight are ineffectual, White's rook, bishop, pawns and king collaborate harmoniously to weave a mating net around the black monarch.

35 $\blacksquare a5+! b6$ 35... $\blacksquare d7$ (d6) allows 36 $\blacksquare d8+$ $\blacksquare e7$ 37 $\blacksquare a8 a6$ 38 $\blacksquare a7$ 36 $\blacksquare d2 \blacksquare e4$ 37 $\blacksquare f4+$

38 $\blacksquare b7$ 38 $\blacksquare f7+$ $\blacksquare a8$ 39 $\blacksquare f8+$ $\blacksquare b7$ 40 $b4$ The noose tightens. 40... $\blacksquare xg4$ 41 $\blacksquare f7+$ $\blacksquare a8$ 41... $\blacksquare c8$ (41... $\blacksquare a6?$ 42 $\blacksquare b8$) is met by 42 $\blacksquare e5 c5$ 43 $\blacksquare c7+$ $\blacksquare d8$ 44 $\blacksquare xa7$ 42 $\blacksquare c2 h5$ 42... b5 43 c5 is somewhat more tenacious. 43 $a4$ $h4$ 43... $\blacksquare g8$ lasts a little longer. 44 $\blacksquare d3 \blacksquare g5$ 45 $\blacksquare f8+$ $\blacksquare b7$ 46 $\blacksquare b8+$ $\blacksquare a6$ 47 $\blacksquare d2!$ $\blacksquare g3+$ 48 $\blacksquare c2$ 1-0

Botvinnik–Alekhine
Avro, 1938



White's control of the only open file will suffice for victory—provided he can induce an additional weakness in Black's pawn structure. This is precisely what he sets out to achieve with:

27 $\blacksquare h4!$ $\blacksquare d7$ On 27... $\blacksquare f7$ (27... $\blacksquare gxh4$ 28 $\blacksquare f3$) comes 28 $\blacksquare f3 g4$ 29 $\blacksquare e1 \blacksquare e6$ 30 $\blacksquare d3 \blacksquare f5$ 31 $g3$ $\blacksquare e4$ 32 $\blacksquare f4$ 28 $\blacksquare c7 \blacksquare f7$ 29 $\blacksquare f3!$ $g4$ Or 29... $\blacksquare g7$ 30 $hxg5$ $fxg5$ 31 $\blacksquare xg5$ 30 $\blacksquare e1 f5$ 31 $\blacksquare d3 f4$ Halt-ing 32 $\blacksquare f4$ and hoping for 32 $\blacksquare b4 f3$ or 32 $\blacksquare xf4?$ $\blacksquare xf4$ 33 $\blacksquare xd7 \blacksquare xd4$. However, after the tranquil 32 $f3!$ $gxf3$ 33 $gxf3 a5$ 34

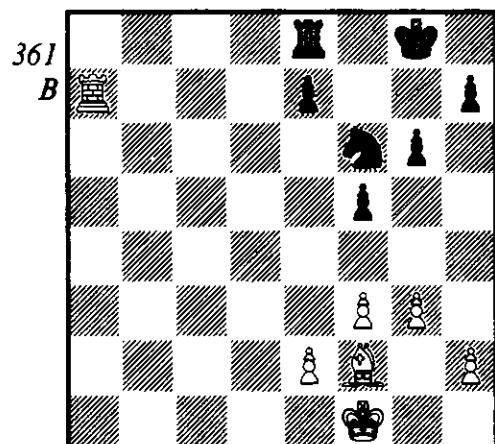
a4 ♜f8 35 ♜c6 Black's position was studded with holes. **1–0** (in 51 moves).

Barden–N.

Simultaneous game, 1971

Draw? Of course. But dead-drawn positions are not impregnable.

1 ... e6? Gratuitously enfeebling both his second rank and the black squares. **2 ♜g2 h5?** Weakening the square g5 and the g6

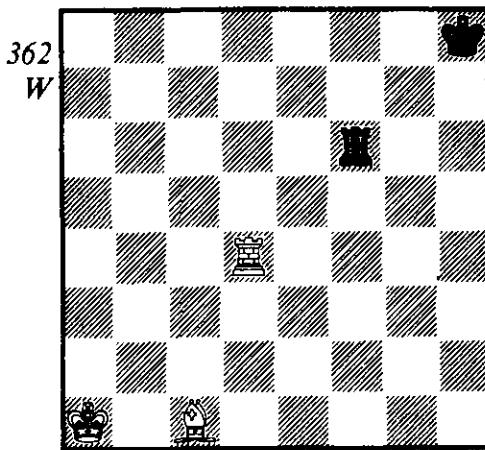


pawn. **3 ♜h3 e5 4 ♜h4 ♜e6? 5 ♜g5 ♜h7+ 6 ♜h6 1–0**

This is how the bulk of simultaneous games are decided!

19 A Diagonal

Bianchetti,
1925

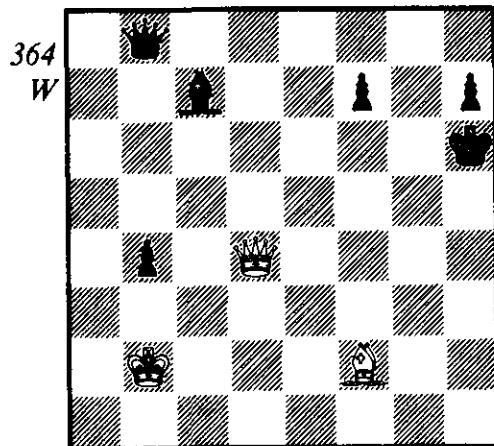


After 1 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ Black cannot avoid the loss of his rook: 1 ... $\mathbb{R}f8$ 2 $\mathbb{R}d7+$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ 3 $\mathbb{R}g7+$ $\mathbb{B}h8$ 4 $\mathbb{B}a2!$ Zugzwang: 4 ... $\mathbb{R}a8+$ 5 $\mathbb{R}a7+$.

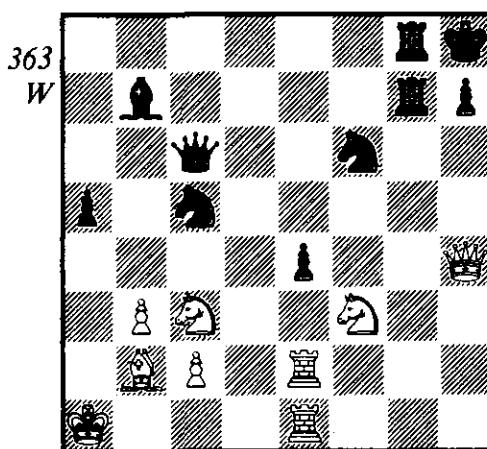
1 ... $\mathbb{R}h6$ 2 $\mathbb{R}g4+$ $\mathbb{B}h7$ 3 $\mathbb{R}g7+$ $\mathbb{B}h8$ 4 $\mathbb{B}b1!$ is a parallel.

$\mathbb{B}xh4$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ mate. 5 $\mathbb{W}xh7+$ $\mathbb{B}xh7$ 6 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ mate.

Troitzky,
1930



1 $\mathbb{W}f6+$ $\mathbb{B}h5$ 2 $\mathbb{W}f5+$ $\mathbb{B}h6$ 3 $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ $\mathbb{B}g7$ 4 $\mathbb{W}g5+$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 5 $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ Black's moves are forced. 6 $\mathbb{W}e5!$ A double pin, which wins the bishop. 6 ... $\mathbb{B}g8$ 7 $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ $\mathbb{W}d8$ 8 $\mathbb{W}g3+$ $\mathbb{B}h8$ 9 $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $f6$ 10 $\mathbb{W}g5!$ and wins.

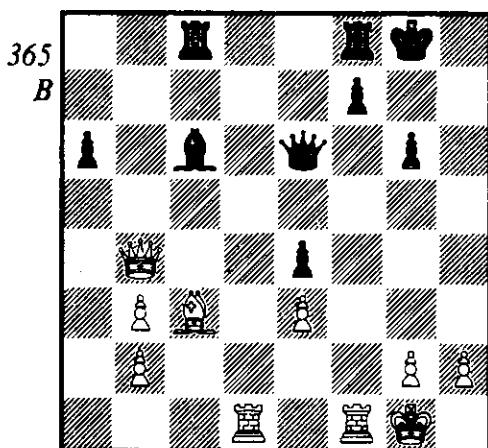


1 $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$ $\mathbb{B}cxe4$ 2 $\mathbb{R}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 3 $\mathbb{R}xe4$ $\mathbb{W}xe4$ 4 $\mathbb{B}g5!$ $\mathbb{W}g6$ 4 ...

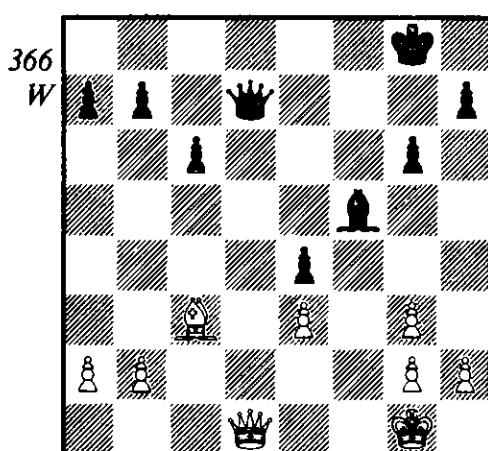
Smyslov–Bisguier
Moscow, 1955

In the following examples Black's blocked bishop has no say in the battle of long diagonals:

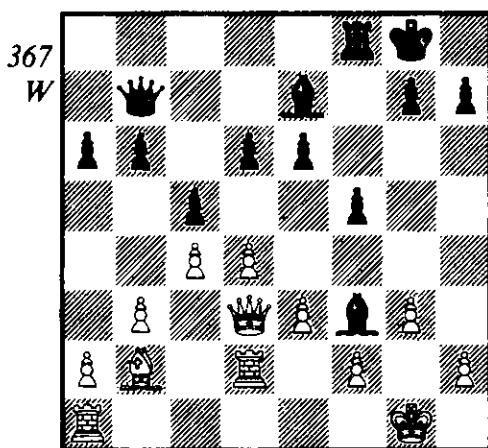
30 ... $\mathbb{R}cd8$ 31 $\mathbb{R}xd8$ $\mathbb{R}xd8$ 32 $\mathbb{W}b6$ $\mathbb{W}c8$ 33 $h3$ $\mathbb{R}d5$ 34 $\mathbb{W}b4$ $\mathbb{W}e8$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 36 $\mathbb{R}c1$ $\mathbb{R}d8$ 37 $\mathbb{W}c5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 38 $\mathbb{W}g5$ 1–0



Seirawan-Tal



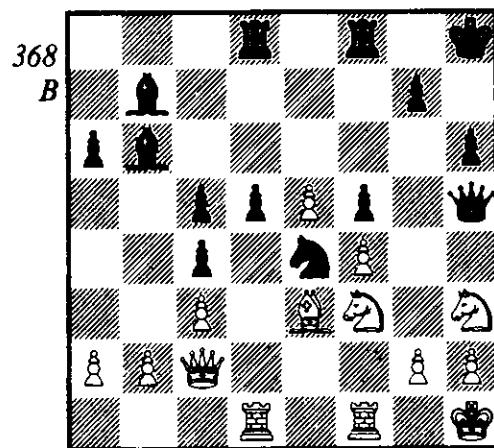
Here too, after 1 $\mathbb{Q}e1!$ the white queen soon infiltrated behind the lines, with disastrous consequences for Black.

Smyslov-Kasparov
Moscow, 1981

Kasparov has sacrificed the exchange to gain absolute control of the long diagonal. True, at the

moment ... $\mathbb{Q}h1$ can be adequately met with f2-f4, but as we shall see, Black's chances should not be underrated.

19 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ More active is 19 a3, intending dxc5 and b3-b4. **19 ... $\mathbb{Q}c8!$** **20 $\mathbb{Q}c3?$** Wrongly distancing the queen from the square f1—in response to an eventual ... $\mathbb{Q}h3$, threatening mate on g2. Correct is 20 e4 fxe4 21 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}g5!?$ (21 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ favours White) 22 $\mathbb{Q}e3!$. Or 21 ... e5! 22 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ e4 23 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ and 25 $\mathbb{Q}xe7$, with a draw by repetition after 25 ... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ **20 ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$** **21 a3?** 21 $\mathbb{Q}d3$, with e3-e4 in mind, is essential. **21 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$** Hereafter Black's mating threats prevail. **22 dxc5 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 23 h4** Defending against 23 ... $\mathbb{Q}h2+!$. **23 ... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ bxc5 25 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}xh4$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}a5$ h6 0-1**

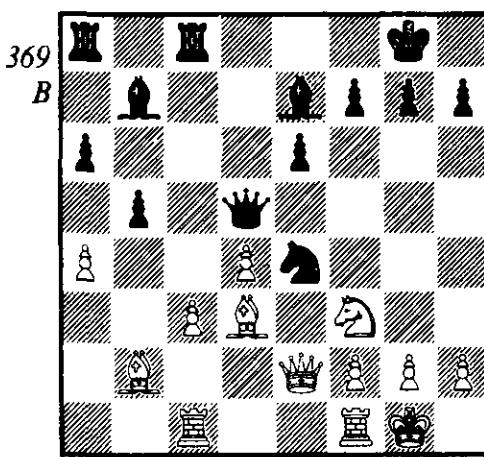
Torres-Alekhine
Seville, 1922

The unveiling of the long diagonal spells instant disaster for the white king.

24 ... d4! 25 cxd4 25 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ lasts a little longer. **25 ... cxd4 26**

$\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 28
 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}xh3!$ 29 $gxh3$ $\mathbb{Q}f2++$ 30
 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{W}xh3$ mate.

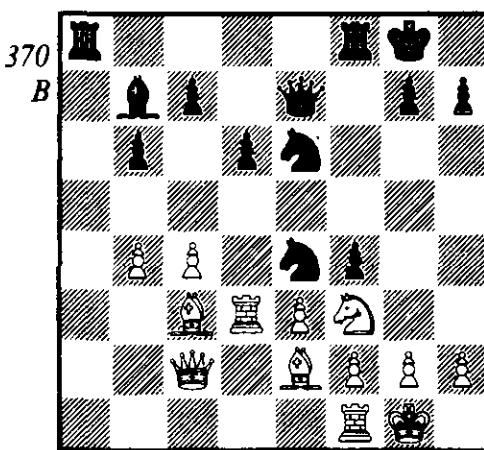
Lasker–Reshevsky
Nottingham, 1936



Lasker, in his mid-sixties, misses a tactical twist.

19 ... $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ 20 $axb5$ $axb5$ 20 ...
 $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$ 21 $\mathbb{W}xf3!$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}xb5??$
 Overlooking the ensuing combination. The lesser evil is 21 $\mathbb{Q}e1$
 $\mathbb{Q}h3+$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 21 ...
 $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$ 22 $gxf3$ $\mathbb{W}g5+$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}h1$
 $\mathbb{W}g4!$ 0–1

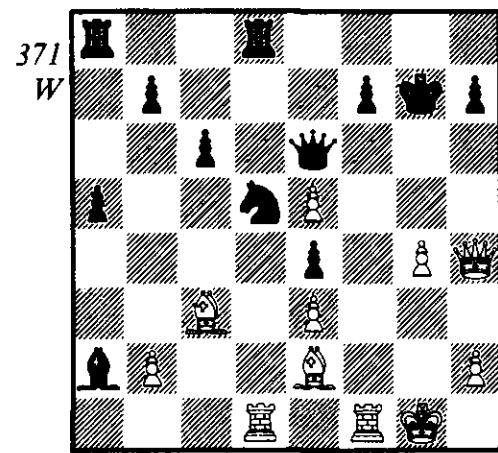
Laurentis–Keres
Tallinn, 1937



Here the pressure along the a8–h1 diagonal yields immediate rewards.

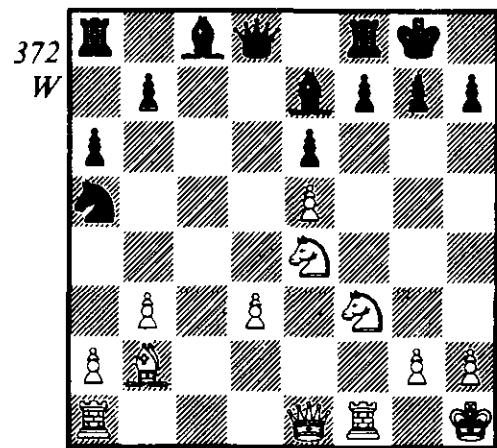
18 ... $\mathbb{Q}4g5$ 19 $exf4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 20
 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2+$ 21 $\mathbb{W}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$ 22
 $gxf3$ $\mathbb{W}g5+$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 24
 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{W}g4$ 0–1

Gelfer–Grinberg
Tel Aviv, 1984



27 $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$ $cxd5$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{W}e8$ 29
 $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ 1–0 30 e6 is devastating.

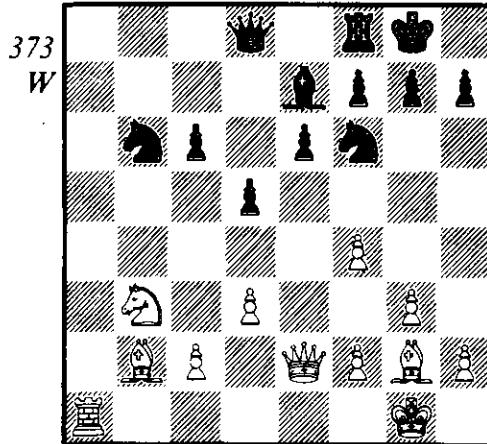
Alexander–Szabo
Hilversum, 1947



21 $\mathbb{Q}f6+!$ $gxf6$ 21 ... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 22
 $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ 22 $\mathbb{W}g3+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 23 $exf6$

$\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}xe5+$ f6 26 $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$ 1–0 On 26 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ comes 27 $\mathbb{W}g5$.

Keene-Kovacevic
Amsterdam, 1973



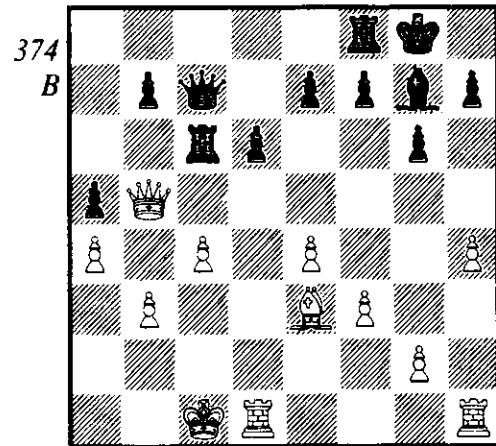
Black's position appears solid enough. Yet Keene contrives to undermine it with a few subtle strokes.

18 f5! exf5 Otherwise White exchanges on e6 and proceeds to win the e6 pawn by means of $\mathbb{Q}h3$, $\mathbb{Q}d4$ and, if necessary, $\mathbb{Q}el$. **19 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{W}d7$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}h3!$** Here and on his next move the pedestrian $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ etc. is playable. The text move compels Black to weaken the long diagonal.

20 ... g6 21 $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$ A combination, exploiting the potential of his pieces to the full. **21 ... gxf5 22 $\mathbb{Q}a7!$ $\mathbb{W}xa7$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$** is probably more accurate. Now Black should avail himself of the surprising resource **23 ... $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ 23 ... $\mathbb{W}d7?$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ $\mathbb{W}g7$ 25 $\mathbb{W}h5!$ 1–0**

Ivkov-Larsen

Beverwijk, 1964



By means of an original exchange sacrifice, which White must accept, Black creates annoying threats along the a1–h8 diagonal.

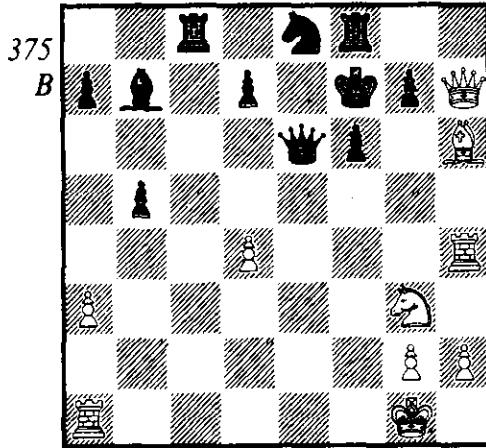
20 ... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{W}dx5$ Threat: 22 ... $\mathbb{W}e5$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ If now 22 ... b6 23 e5! $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 24 $\mathbb{W}d7$. **22 ... $\mathbb{E}6!$ 23 $\mathbb{W}xc5!$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{W}g3$** is weaker. **23 ... $\mathbb{W}g3$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{W}f4+$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ f5** Cutting off the white rook.

26 exf5 exf5 27 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ b6! 28 $\mathbb{W}e7$ Guarding against 28 ... $\mathbb{W}e5$ which is why he avoids 28 $\mathbb{W}xb6$ $\mathbb{W}e5$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}xf8+$ $\mathbb{W}xf8$. **28 ... $\mathbb{W}xh4$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}d7?$** Time pressure. 29 $\mathbb{W}e3$ is necessary, acquiescing in an inferior ending after 29 ... $\mathbb{Q}h6$. **29 ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 30 $\mathbb{W}e6+$ $\mathbb{W}h8$ 31 $\mathbb{W}d6$ $\mathbb{W}f2+$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{W}f1+$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{W}e2+$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{W}b2+$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{W}b1+$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{W}e1$ mate**

As Larsen points out, if, in the initial position, the white king had stood on b1 instead of on c1, he

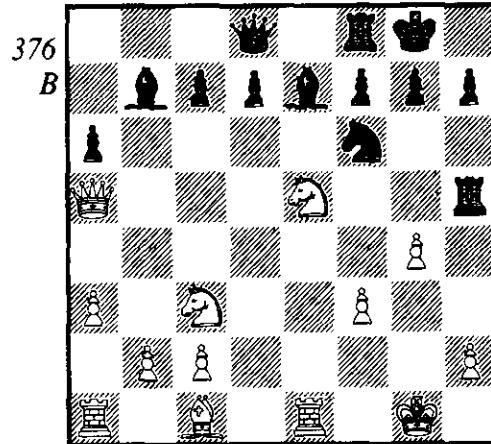
could find refuge on a2 and Black's exchange sacrifice would not have worked.

Geller-Euwe
Zurich, 1953



375

B



376

B

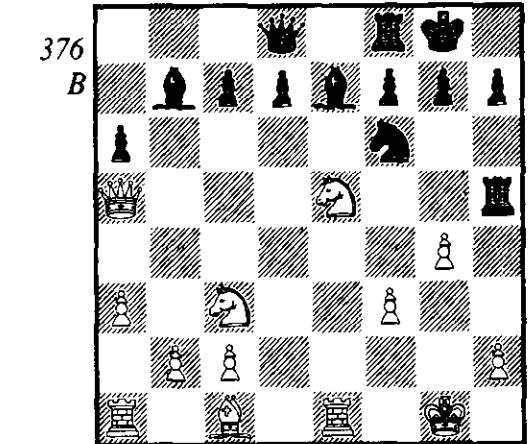
White has the makings of a kingside attack. Cool defence with 22 ... $\mathbb{R}c4$ may be objectively best, but the former World Champion boldly sacrifices a rook, diverting the white queen from the square c2 and launching a dangerous counter-attack based on the long-range rays exuded by his bishop on b7.

22 ... $\mathbb{B}h8??!$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xh8 \mathbb{R}c2$
The threat is 24 ... $\mathbb{R}xg2+$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{W}c4+$ etc. 24 $\mathbb{R}c1?$ Audacity pays! Later analysis revealed that 24 d5! was White's only defence. If then 24 ... $\mathbb{W}b6+$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}h1 \mathbb{W}f2$ 26 $\mathbb{R}g1 \mathbb{Q}xd5$ White is saved by 27 $\mathbb{R}e4!$. Or 24 ... $\mathbb{R}xd5$ 25 $\mathbb{R}d1!$ $\mathbb{R}xg2+$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}f1 gxh6$ 27 $\mathbb{W}xh6!$, again with saving chances.

24 ... $\mathbb{R}xg2+$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{W}b3$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{W}f3$ 0-1

Shrentzel-Shvidler

Tel Aviv, 1985



Black takes advantage of the pinned white knight on e5 to unmask the a8-h1 diagonal:

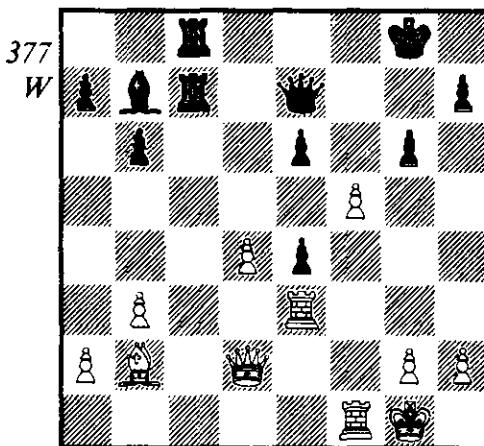
16 ... $\mathbb{Q}xg4!!$ 17 $\mathbb{fxg4} \mathbb{Q}xh2!$
With the idea: 18 $\mathbb{Q}xh2 \mathbb{Q}b4!$ coupled with ... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ etc. 18 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ On 18 $\mathbb{Q}d5?!$ either 18 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ or 18 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ (19 $\mathbb{Q}xh2 \mathbb{Q}b4!$) is adequate; but not 18 ... $\mathbb{Q}c5+?$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}xc5 \mathbb{Q}h4$ —owing to 20 $\mathbb{Q}xf8+!$, when it is Black who is mated. With the white knight on e4, 18 ... $\mathbb{Q}c5+!$ would have crowned Black's efforts. For example, 19 $\mathbb{Q}xh2 \mathbb{Q}h4+$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$; or 19 $\mathbb{Q}xc5 \mathbb{Q}h4$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h1+$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}h3+$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4!!$.

In the game Black chose 18 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc2?$ and won after a hard struggle.

Zukertort-Blackburne

London, 1883

Black's threats along the c-file look dangerous. Zukertort chooses to ignore them.

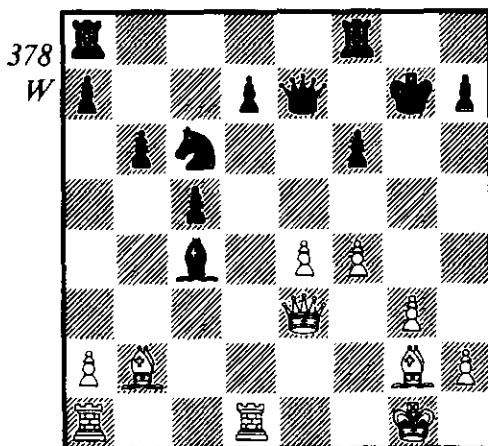


25 fxg6! $\blacksquare c2$ 25 ... $\blacksquare d5$, keeping the long diagonal closed, is indicated. But who can blame Black for overlooking the remarkable combination which follows?

26 gxh7+ $\blacksquare h8$ 27 $\blacksquare d5+$ $e5$ 28 $\blacksquare b4!!$ Idea: 28 ... $\blacksquare xb4$ 29 $\blacksquare xe5+$ $\blacksquare xh7$ 30 $\blacksquare h3+$ $\blacksquare g6$ 31 $\blacksquare g3+$ $\blacksquare h6$ 32 $\blacksquare f6+$ $\blacksquare h5$ 33 $\blacksquare f5+$ $\blacksquare h6$ 34 $\blacksquare f4+$ and mate next move.

28 ... $\blacksquare e5$ 29 $\blacksquare f8+$ $\blacksquare xh7$ 30 $\blacksquare xe4+$ $\blacksquare g7$ 31 $\blacksquare xe5+$ $\blacksquare xf8$ 32 $\blacksquare g7+!$ $\blacksquare g8$ 33 $\blacksquare xe7$ 1–0

Polugayevsky–Korchnoi Buenos Aires, 1980

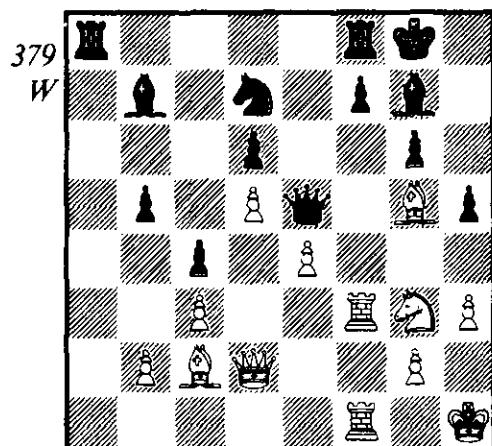


White's positional advantage is so pronounced, that he is able to

bring it home by means of a pleasing rook sacrifice, creating a deadly battery along the a1–h8 diagonal.

23 $e5!$ $fxe5$ 24 $\blacksquare xc6$ $dxc6$ 25 $\blacksquare d7!!$ $\blacksquare xd7$ 26 $\blacksquare xe5+$ $\blacksquare f7$ 26 ... $\blacksquare g6$ is more tenacious, for now 27 $\blacksquare e1!$ would spare White a great deal of effort. 27 $\blacksquare f6+$ $\blacksquare g8$ 28 $\blacksquare g5+$ $\blacksquare f7$ 29 $\blacksquare e1$ $\blacksquare e6$ 29 ... $\blacksquare e6$ (29 ... $\blacksquare g8$ 30 $\blacksquare f6$ mate) 30 $f5$. 30 $\blacksquare g7+$ $\blacksquare e8$ 31 $\blacksquare xe6+$ 1–0 (in 73 moves).

Tal–Spassky Tilburg, 1980

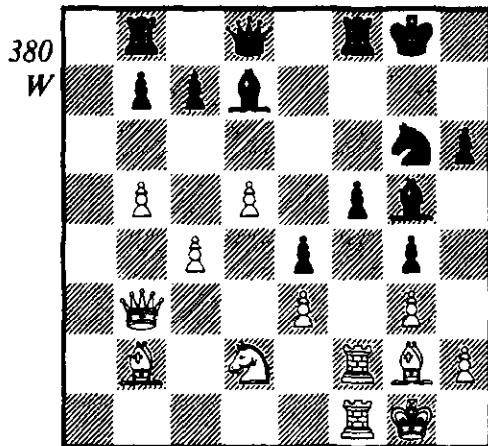


A surprise knight-sacrifice enables White to undermine Black's hold on e5, thus opening the b1–h7 diagonal for his bishop.

32 $\blacksquare xh5!!$ $gxh5$ 33 $\blacksquare f5$ $\blacksquare e8$ 34 $e5!$ $dxe5$ 34 ... $\blacksquare xe5$ 35 $\blacksquare f6$. 35 $\blacksquare h6$ $\blacksquare a6$ 36 $d6$ Cutting off the rook on a6 and threatening 37 $\blacksquare g5$ 36 ... $f6$ 37 $\blacksquare xg7$ $\blacksquare xg7$ 38 $\blacksquare g5+!$ $\blacksquare f7$ 39 $\blacksquare g6+$ 1–0

Panno–Tempone Buenos Aires, 1980

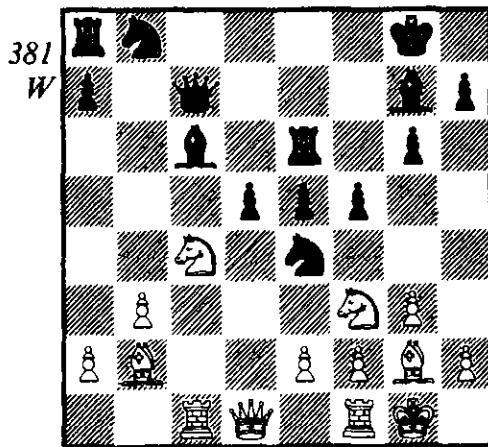
27 $\blacksquare c3$ at once is premature, because of 27 ... $\blacksquare f6$ but after 27



$\mathbb{Q}xe4!$ disaster along the long diagonal can no longer be averted:

27 ... $\mathbb{E}e8$ 28 $\mathbb{W}c3$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $hxg5$ 30 $e4!$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ Or 30 ... $f4$ 31 $gxf4$ $gxf4$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}xf4!$ etc. 31 $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{W}h7$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}h5!$ 1-0

Vogt–Casper
East Germany, 1979

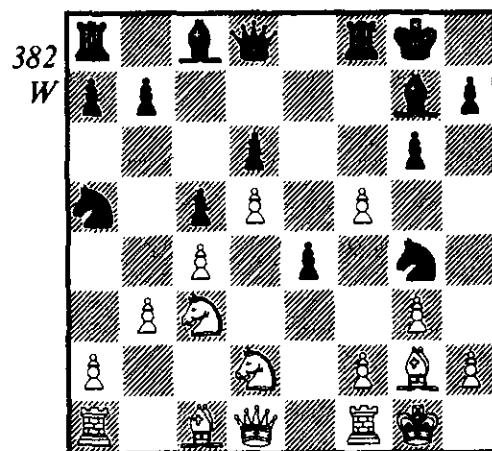


Black is behind in development and vulnerable along the c-file. It is scarcely surprising that he finds himself defenceless against the opening of an additional front: the a1–h8 diagonal.

18 $\mathbb{Q}cxe5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 20 $\mathbb{W}d4!$ $\mathbb{E}e7$ 20 ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 21 $f4$. 21 $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{F}f7$ 22 $\mathbb{W}xh7+$

$\mathbb{Q}e8$ 23 $\mathbb{W}xg6+$ $\mathbb{F}f7$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $fxe4$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ 1-0

Geller–Velimirovic
Havana, 1971



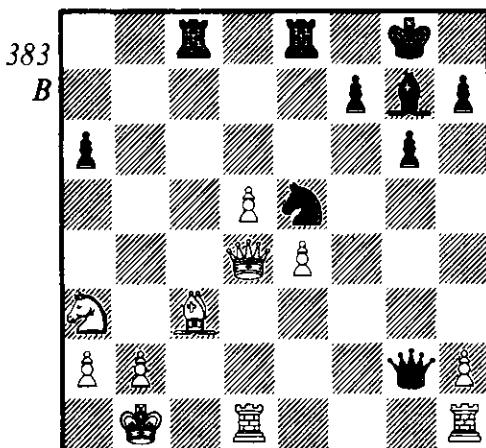
At first sight, the fianchettoed Indian bishop on g7 appears to be in control of the long diagonal (13 $\mathbb{W}xg4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ and ... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$). However, Geller's intermediate 13 $f6!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}dxe4!!$ completely alters the course of events.

14 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ Otherwise 17 $\mathbb{W}xal$ wins easily. 17 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{W}xf6$ 18 $\mathbb{W}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ The position envisaged by White. Black's best defence is 19 ... $h6$, temporarily relieving the pinned rook.

19 ... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $b6$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$ 22 $g4$ $\mathbb{W}h8$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ Regaining the sacrificed material and remaining with a won ending (note the estranged black knight). 23 ... $\mathbb{W}xf6$ 24 $\mathbb{W}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 25 $gxf5$ $gxf5$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ Even better than the obvious 26 $\mathbb{Q}h3$. 26 ... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$

31 $\mathbb{K}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 32 $\mathbb{K}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 33
 $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ 35
 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 1–0

Alatortsev–Smyslov
Moscow, 1942



Black is a pawn down, his Indian bishop is neutralized and White's d-pawn is menacing. Smyslov overcomes all these hurdles at one fell swoop.

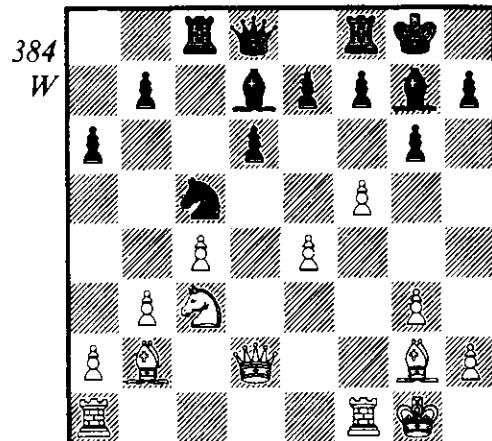
25 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc3!$ Now recapturing with the pawn fails against 26 ... $\mathbb{Q}b8+$. So White must acquiesce in: 26 $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}b4$ a5 28 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa3+$ 29 $bxa3$ Or 29 $\mathbb{Q}xa3$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 30 b3 $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$ 29 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}c8+$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ 0–1

Triumph of the long diagonal.

Smyslov–Timman
Moscow, 1981

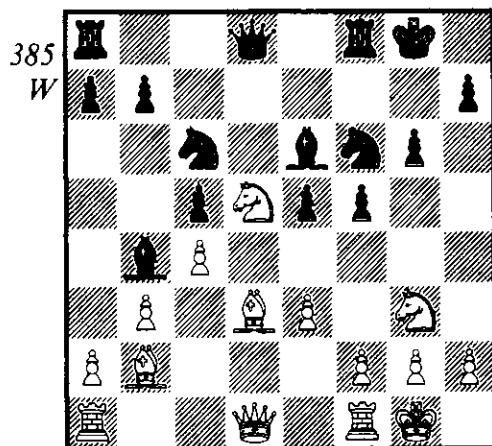
White takes advantage of Black's loss of time in the preceding stage to launch an irresistible attack along the a1–h8 diagonal.

17 $f6!$ Forcing Black's reply, after which his position crumbles. On 17 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$ $exf6$ 19



$\mathbb{Q}d5$ is devastating. 17 ... $exf6$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}d5!$ $f5$ 19 $exf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ $f6$ 22 $g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$ 1–0

Najdorf–Keres
Los Angeles, 1963



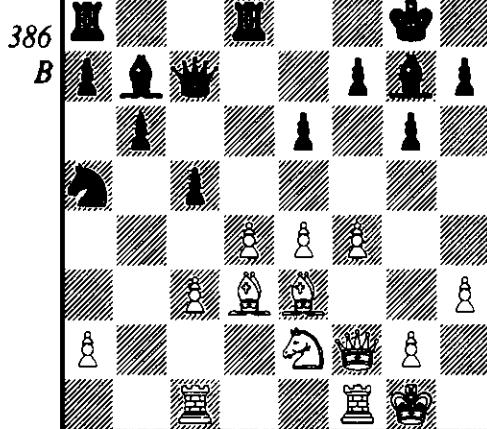
The rather pathetic state of the bishop on b4 (it belongs on g7) contributes to the power exerted by its counterpart on b2. Black's last move, 12 ... $g6$, which was unavoidable, further augmented White's prospects along the a1–h8 diagonal.

13 $f4!$ White wastes no time in exploiting the absence of a bishop from the a1–h8 diagonal. 13 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ immediately is less good because of 13 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 14 $f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7!$

threatening 15 ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$. 13 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ On 13 ... e4 White responds with 14 $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$ and so on, rather than with 15 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{W}xf6$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}d8!$. 14 $cxd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 14 ... $\mathbb{W}xd5?$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}c4$. 15 $fxe5$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 18 $\mathbb{W}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}ad1$ a6 20 $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ The next phase revolves around White's attempt to clear the long diagonal, which Black is unable to thwart.

20 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 21 $bxc4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ The blockading attempt 21 ... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ fails against 22 $\mathbb{Q}d6!$. 22 e6 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 23 $\mathbb{W}d5$ Note the respective roles played by the bishops. 23 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 24 $\mathbb{W}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 25 $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 26 $\mathbb{W}xh7+$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 27 $\mathbb{W}xe7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$ 1-0

Gligoric–Smyslov Kiev, 1959

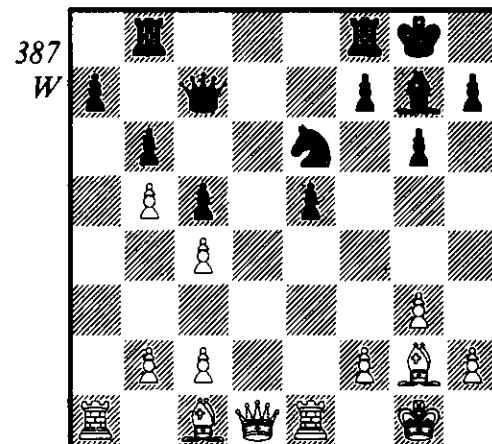


Smyslov's next move not only parries 17 f5 but also conceives a long-term strategic plan, based on the domination of the a8–h1 diagonal and control of the white squares.

16 ... $f5!$ 17 $e5?$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ is more elastic. 17 ... $c4$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ b5 22 a4 a6 23 $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}ab8$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $bxa4$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}a8$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}a2$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 28 $gxf5$ $exf5$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ This has been in the air for some 10 moves. 30 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ a5 31 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}b3!$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ $cxb3$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}e3!$ The time has come to utilise the benefits of dominating the long diagonal. If now 35 $\mathbb{W}xe3$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ threatening mate on g2 and the rook on a4.

35 $\mathbb{Q}fa1$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ The immediate threat is 38 ... $\mathbb{Q}h4$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{W}h1+!$ White had prayed for 28 ... $\mathbb{W}xc4?$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ and so on. 39 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ h5! 0-1

Petrosian–Donner Santa Monica, 1966

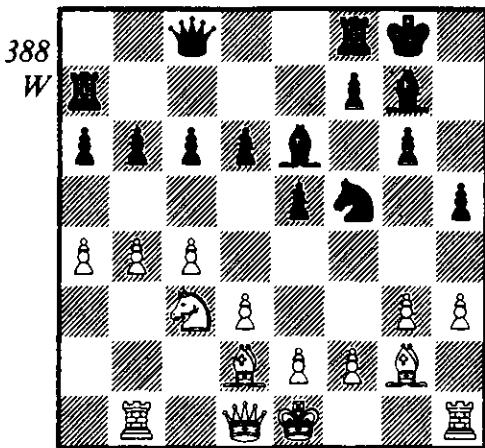


Here too domination of the long diagonal and pressure along the a-file carried the day.

20 c3! Making way for $\mathbb{W}a4$ and preventing ... $\mathbb{Q}d4$. 20 ... $\mathbb{W}fe8$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}a6$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 22 $\mathbb{W}a4$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$

23 ♜d5! If the knight moves, 24 ♜g5 and ♜a1 is crushing. **23 ... ♜b8 24 ♜xe6** Causing irreparable damage to Black's pawn formation (24 ... ♜xe6 25 ♜xa7). **24 ... fxe6 25 ♜d1 ♜d8 26 ♜g4** Black resigned on his 55th move.

Petrosian–Ree
Skopje, 1972



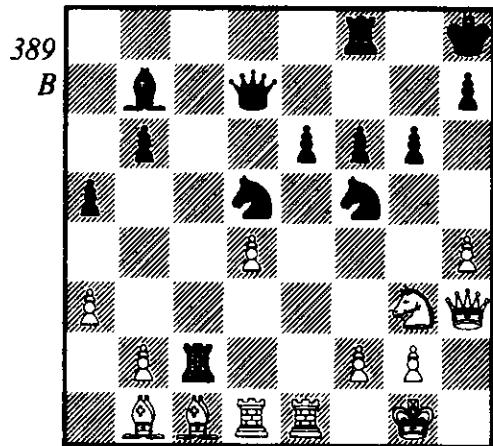
Rather than castle, Petrosian sets about creating 'facts', by gaining control of d5 and a8.

19 b5! axb5 20 axb5 c5 21 ♜a1 ♜b8 22 0-0 ♜d8 23 ♜xa7 ♜xa7 24 ♜a1 ♜b8 On 24 ... ♜d7 25 ♜a6, with ♜a1 to follow, is strong. **25 ♜a2 ♜e7 26 ♜a1 ♜c8 27 ♜a8 ♜c7 28 ♜c6 ♜e7 29 ♜a8 ♜b7 30 ♜d5 1-0**

Nikolic–Ribli
Portoroz-Ljubljana, 1985

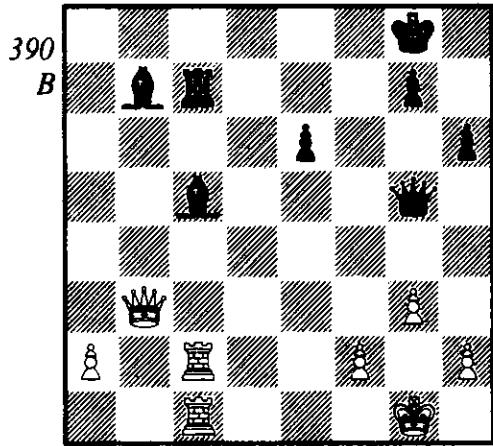
An apt exchange sacrifice prises open the long diagonal:

25 ... ♜xc1! 26 ♜xc1 ♜f4 27 ♜g4 ♜xg2 28 ♜ed1 ♜h6! 29 ♜e2 ♜f4 30 ♜d2 e5! Securing the knight on f4 and clearing the way for ... ♜h3. The end is near. **31**



d5 ♜h3 32 ♜e4 ♜g4 33 ♜f1 ♜xh4 34 ♜g2 ♜a6 35 ♜e1 ♜xf1 0-1 36 ♜xf1 ♜h2+ 37 ♜gl ♜g4.

Spassky–Tal
Tallinn, 1973



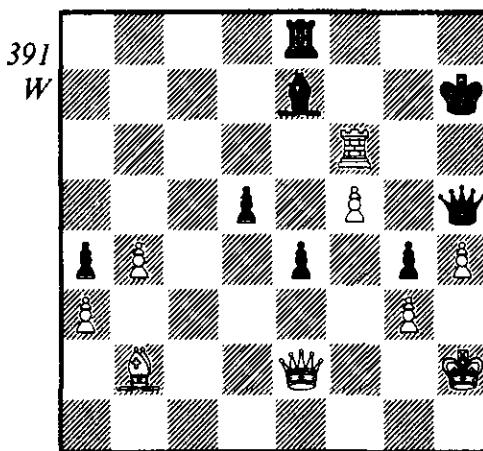
White threatens 30 ♜xe6+ (not 30 ♜xc5? ♜xc1+). **29 ... ♜d5?** 30 ♜b8+ will not do. However, White's king's position is ripe for demolition:

29 ... ♜xf2+! 30 ♜xf2 ♜f6+ 30 ... ♜f5+ saves a few moves. 31 ♜e1 31 ♜g1 ♜d4+. 31 ... ♜e5+ 32 ♜f1 ♜a6+ 33 ♜g1 ♜d4+ 34 ♜g2 ♜e4+ 35 ♜g1 ♜b7! Establishing the deadly battery (36 ♜xc7 ♜g2 mate). **36 h4**

$\mathbb{W}h1+$ 37 $\mathbb{B}f2$ $\mathbb{E}f7+$ 38 $\mathbb{B}e2$
 $\mathbb{W}e4+$ 0-1

Bleiman-Cosulich

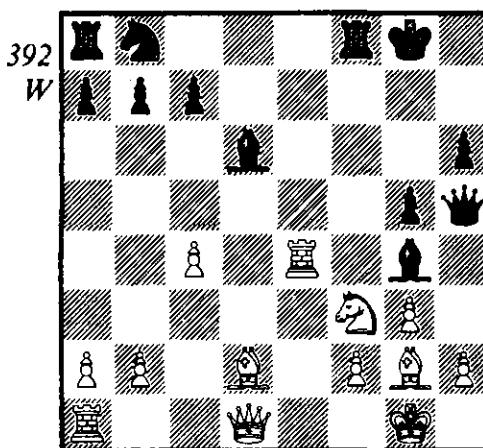
Nice, 1974



In this delicately balanced position White surprised Black with the unexpected 59 $\mathbb{W}a6!!$ quickly turning the tables in his favour. If now 59 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 60 $\mathbb{W}xf6$ $\mathbb{E}g8$ 61 $\mathbb{W}e7+$ and 62 $\mathbb{Q}c1+$. 59 ... $\mathbb{E}g8$ 60 $\mathbb{W}b7!$ 1-0 The end could be: 60 ... $\mathbb{E}g7$ 61 $\mathbb{W}g6!$ $\mathbb{E}f7$ 62 $\mathbb{W}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}xf5$ 63 $\mathbb{E}g7+$.

Rechlis-Sherf

Netanya, 1986



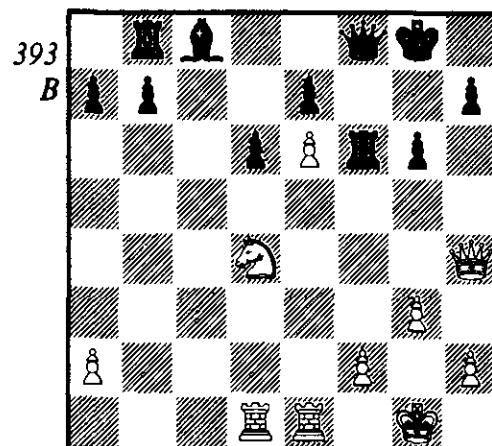
Black's pressure on the pinned knight appears to afford him reasonable compensation for the

pawn; e.g., 16 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{E}ae8$. But the weakness of the long diagonal, caused by the premature advance of the g-pawn, enables White to repulse the attack and mount a destructive onslaught of his own.

16 $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 17 $\mathbb{W}d4!$ $\mathbb{W}g6$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 18 ... $\mathbb{E}xf3$ succumbs to 19 $\mathbb{W}h8+$ etc. 19 $\mathbb{W}d5+$ $\mathbb{W}f7$ 20 $\mathbb{E}e6!$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 21 $\mathbb{W}d4$ 1-0

Bosboom-Afek

Netanya, 1987



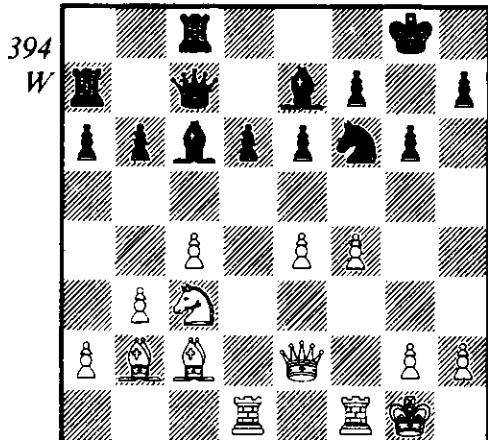
Although a pawn down, White's pieces are well placed and his e6 pawn cramps Black's game. 1 ... $\mathbb{E}xf2?$ loses to 2 $\mathbb{E}f1$.

After 1 ... $b6$ White ought to play 2 $f4$, with reciprocal chances. Instead he chose the aimless 2 $\mathbb{Q}c6?$, exposing his king to 2 ... $\mathbb{Q}b7!$ The sequel was 3 $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ $\mathbb{E}xf2$ 4 $\mathbb{E}f1$ 4 $\mathbb{W}h3$ $\mathbb{W}f3$. 4 ... $\mathbb{E}g2+$ 5 $\mathbb{W}h1$ $\mathbb{E}xg3+$ 0-1

Stean-Filguth

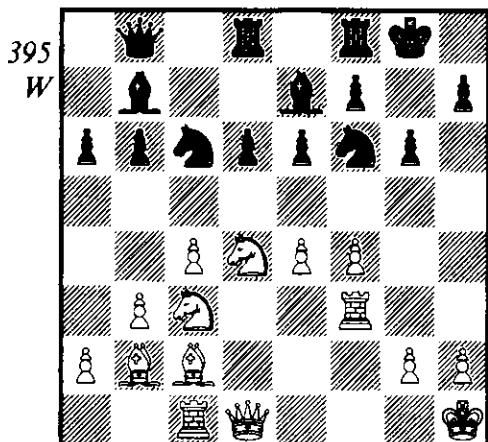
São Paulo, 1979

A diagonal-opening combination bares the black king to the mercy of the white bishops.



18 f5! gxf5 19 ♜d5!! ♜xd5 19 ... exd5 20 exd5 is, if anything, worse. **20 exd5 ♜xd5 21 ♜xd5!** **exd5 22 ♜xf5** White's bishops sweep the board. **22 ... ♜c5+ 23 ♜h1 d4 24 ♜g4+** 1–0

Romanishin–Petrosian USSR, 1975

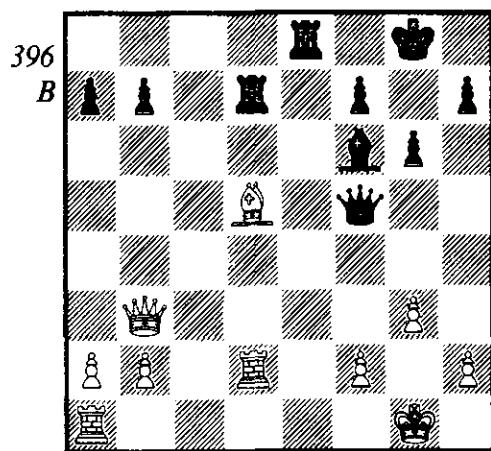


Without ... g6, the hedgehog formation erected by Black would be perfectly viable. However, since by definition pawn moves are irreversible, the long-ranging laser rays unleashed by the white bishop from b2 are able to breach the protective layers around the black king.

16 ♜d5!! exd5 17 exd5 ♜xd4 18 ♜xd4 ♜de8 19 f5 ♜d8 20 ♜h4

21 ♜e5 Petrosian defends gallantly, but the odds are against him. **21 ♜h6 ♜c7 22 ♜g3 ♜c8 23 ♜xe5 dxе5 24 fxg6 fxg6 25 ♜xg6 ♜g4 26 ♜h5 ♜f6 27 ♜d2 ♜f4 28 d6 ♜g7 29 d7! ♜b7 30 ♜xf4** 1–0

Bobotsov–Keres Beverwijk, 1964



The barren-looking position conceals some extraordinary resources. To begin with, Black must deal with the tactical **23 ♜e6!**

22 ... ♜g5! Menacing the rook on d2 and protecting f7, so that if now **23 ♜e6? ♜xe6 24 ♜xd7 ♜e2** wins. On **23 ♜d3 (d4) ♜e2 24 ♜f1 ♜f6** is unpleasant. Thus White is induced to weaken the a7–g1 diagonal with **23 f4**.

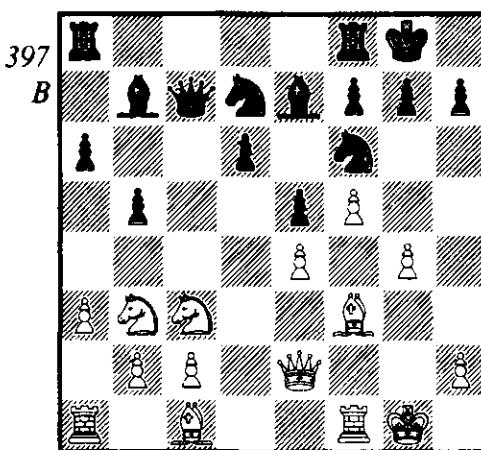
There followed: **23 ... ♜d8! 24 ♜ad1 ♜a5** Driving the rook off the second rank: **25 ♜c2** fails against **25 ... ♜b6+ 26 ♜g2 ♜e3 27 ♜c3 (27 ♜c4 ♜c7) 27 ... ♜e2+ 28 ♜h1 (28 ♜f1 ♜f2+ 29 ♜e1 ♜e7+) 28 ... ♜h3. 25 ♜d3 ♜e2 26 ♜f3 ♜b6+ 27 ♜xb6** After **27 ♜h1 (27 ♜f1 ♜f2+) 27**

... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 28 $\mathbb{W}xd3$ $\mathbb{E}e1+$ Black mates or wins the white queen. 27 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd3!$ More exact than 27 ... $axb6$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xe2$. 28 $\mathbb{W}d8+$ $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}xd8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $\mathbb{W}e6$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{W}xa2$ and Black won easily by advancing his queenside pawns.

A model lesson in the art of making something out of nothing.

Shabanov–Solobiov

Sverdlovsk, 1969



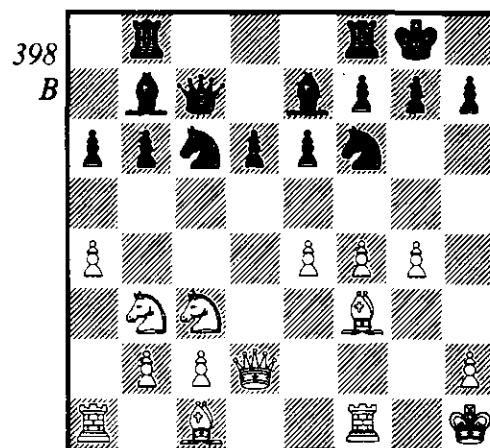
The best antidote to a wing attack is a central counter-attack. Such a counter-attack opens diagonals and lines which can be utilized against a king exposed by the advance of his own pawns.

14 ... $d5!$ 15 $exd5$ $e4!$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ leads to similar play. 16 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}ae8$ Black threatens 18 ... $\mathbb{Q}7f6$ coupled with ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ and ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$.

18 $g5$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 19 $\mathbb{W}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4!!$ A splendid prelude to a mating attack. 20 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}5f6$ 21 $gxf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 22 $\mathbb{W}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{W}c4$ 24 $\mathbb{W}d3$ $\mathbb{W}d5$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 26 $\mathbb{W}f3$ $\mathbb{W}xc2$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 0–1

Bhend–Petrosian

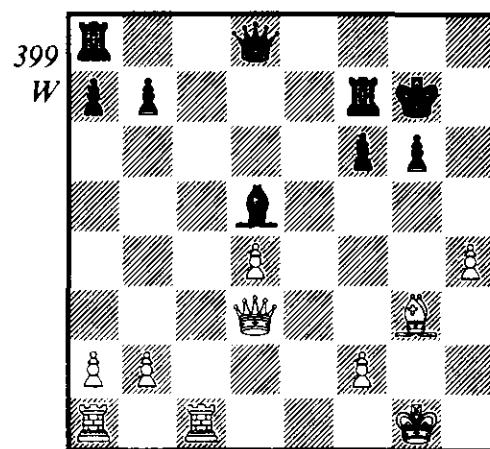
Zurich, 1961



White's aggressive gesture, 14 $g4?$, invites the thematic response 14 ... $d5!$ 15 $exd5$ 15 $e5$ $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $dxe4$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$ is equally unappetizing. 15 ... $\mathbb{Q}b4!$ 16 $dxe6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ $\mathbb{W}b7!$ So that if 18 $\mathbb{W}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xc2$. 18 $\mathbb{W}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 19 $\mathbb{W}e2$ $f5$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 21 $c3$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 22 $cxb4$ $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}h4+$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ 26 $hxg3$ $\mathbb{W}d5!$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 0–1

Dzindzichashvili–Browne

USA, 1984



In the following example Black's control of the long diag-

onal is subsidiary to the fierce attack White is able to unleash on the black king.

26 $\text{h}5!$ $\text{gxh}5$ 27 $\text{Qh}2$ The g-file is White's main trump. 27 ... $\text{We}8$ 28 $\text{Qe}1!$ $\text{Qe}7$ 29 $\text{Qg}1!$ $\text{Qe}4$ 30 $\text{Qd}6+!$ Disdaining 30 $\text{Qe}5+$ $\text{Qg}6$ 31 $\text{Qxg}6+$ $\text{Wxg}6$ 32 $\text{Qg}1$

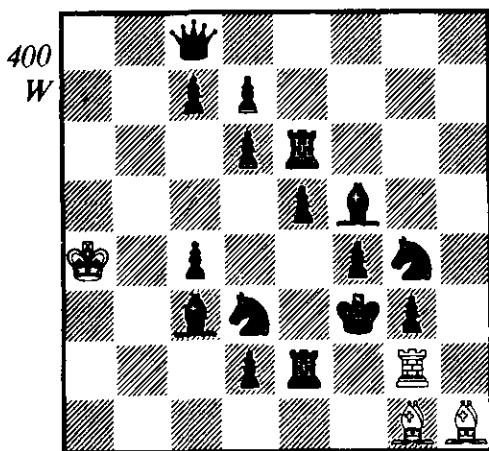
which gives Black some salvation chances.

30 ... $\text{Qh}7$ 31 $\text{Wg}3$ $\text{Qd}7$ 32 $\text{Qae}1$ $\text{We}6$ 33 $\text{Qb}8!!$ An original interference, threatening 34 $\text{Qxe}4$, not to mention 34 f3. 33 ... $\text{We}8$ 34 $\text{Qxe}4$ $\text{Wxb}8$ 35 $\text{Qe}5!$ $\text{fxe}5$ 36 $\text{Wg}6+$ $\text{Qh}8$ 37 $\text{Wh}6+$ 1-0

20 Two Diagonals

White

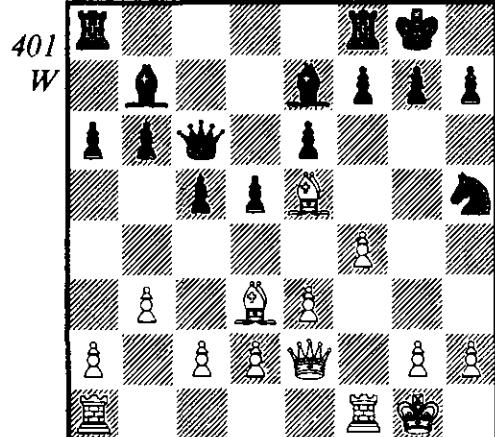
1919



In the composition above, White is 12 pieces down. However, the double-bishop battery, abetted by the (intentionally) unfelicitous placing of all Black's pieces, sets the stage for a forced mate in 12 moves, commencing with 1 $\mathbb{R}f2++ \mathbb{B}e3$ 2 $\mathbb{R}f3++$ etc., and culminating with 12 $\mathbb{R}a8$ mate.

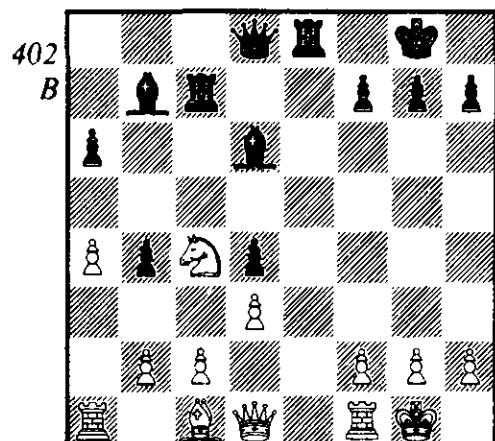
Lasker–Bauer
Amsterdam, 1889

The first known example of the double-bishop sacrifice. The joint hara-kiri of the bishops denudes the black king of the protective layer of pawns and makes possible a winning attack by a queen and rook.



15 $\mathbb{Q}xh7+ \mathbb{K}xh7$ 16 $\mathbb{W}xh5+$
 $\mathbb{B}g8$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}xg7 \mathbb{B}xg7$ 17 ... f6 18
 $\mathbb{R}f3!$. 18 $\mathbb{W}g4+$ $\mathbb{K}h7$ 19 $\mathbb{R}f3$ e5
20 $\mathbb{R}h3+$ $\mathbb{W}h6$ 21 $\mathbb{R}xh6+$ $\mathbb{B}xh6$
22 $\mathbb{W}d7$ 1–0

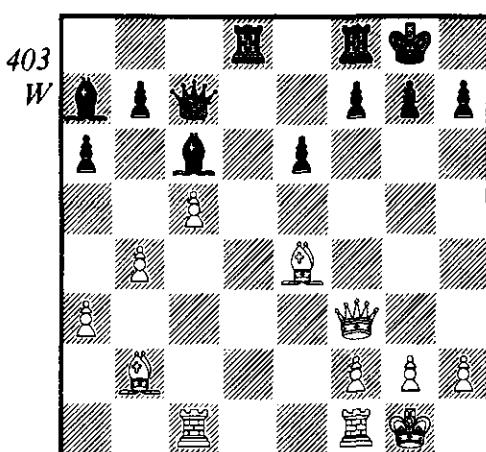
Kirillov–Furman
USSR, 1949



A more modern setting, with Karpov's late trainer as Black.
19 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh2+$ 20 $\mathbb{B}xh2 \mathbb{W}h4+$
21 $\mathbb{B}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2!$ 22 $\mathbb{B}xg2$ $\mathbb{R}c6$ 23
 $\mathbb{R}f4$ $\mathbb{W}xf4$ 24 $\mathbb{R}h1$ $\mathbb{R}f6$ 25 $\mathbb{R}h2$

Another amusing line is: 25 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ (25 $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{W}f3+$) 25 ... $\mathbb{W}xf2+$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}h1 \mathbb{E}e2$ 27 $\mathbb{W}g1 \mathbb{W}f3+!$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xf3 \mathbb{E}h6+$ 29 $\mathbb{W}h2 \mathbb{Q}exh2+$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{E}h1+$ and wins. 25 ... $\mathbb{E}g6+$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}h1 \mathbb{E}e1+! 0-1$

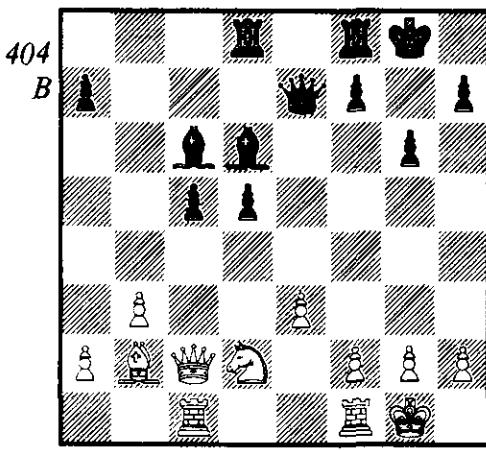
Miles–Browne
Lucerne, 1982



Black's erroneous last move, 17 ... $\mathbb{E}ad8?$, falls victim to Lasker's evergreen combination:

18 $\mathbb{Q}xh7+!$ $\mathbb{W}xh7$ 19 $\mathbb{W}h5+$ $\mathbb{W}g8$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}xg7!$ $\mathbb{W}xg7$ 20 ... $f6$ 21 $\mathbb{W}h8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 23 $\mathbb{W}h7+.$ 21 $\mathbb{W}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 22 $\mathbb{W}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 23 $\mathbb{E}c4$ 1-0

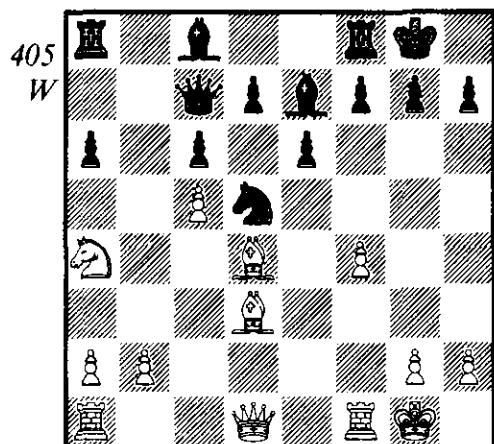
Nimzowitsch–Tarrasch
St. Petersburg, 1914



The double-bishop sacrifice figured prominently in the meeting between one of the founding fathers of the hypermodern school and the leader of the classical school.

18 ... $d4!$ 19 $exd4?$ Furnishing his arch-rival an opportunity to shine. 19 $e4 \mathbb{W}h4$ 20 $g3$, blocking the a8–h1 diagonal, is a dire necessity. 19 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh2+$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ $\mathbb{W}h4+$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{Q}xg2$ 22 $f3$ If 22 $\mathbb{Q}xg2 \mathbb{W}g4+$, 23 ... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ and so on. 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}fe8$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{W}h1+ 24$ $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}xf1$ 25 $d5$ Seeking counterplay along the a1–h8 diagonal (25 $\mathbb{Q}xf1?$ $\mathbb{W}h2+$). 25 ... $f5$ 26 $\mathbb{W}c3$ Or 26 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}xe8$ $\mathbb{Q}xe8$, with mate to follow. 26 ... $\mathbb{W}g2+$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}xe4+$ 28 $fxe4$ $f4+$ In the heat of the battle, Tarrasch misses the faster 28 ... $\mathbb{W}g3+$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{W}f2+$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}d1 \mathbb{W}e2$ mate. 29 $\mathbb{Q}xf4 \mathbb{Q}f8+$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{W}h2+$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{Q}e8+$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}d7 \mathbb{Q}b5$ mate.

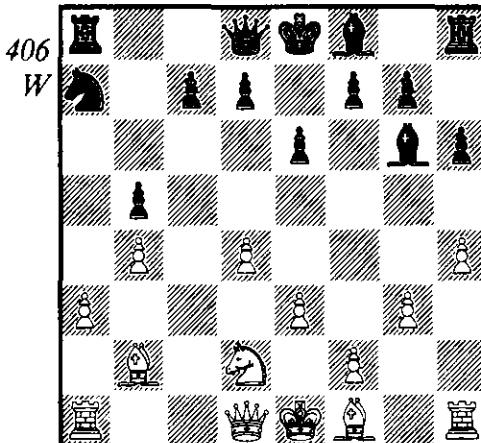
Kuzmin–Sveshnikov
Moscow, 1973



The same idea, prefaced by a preliminary decoying of a defending piece:

16 ♜b6! ♜xb6 17 ♜xh7+ ♜xh7 18 ♜h5+ ♜g8 19 ♜xg7 ♜xg7 20 ♜g4+ ♜h7 21 ♜f3 ♜xc5+ 22 ♜h1 1-0

Kasparov–Andersson
Tilburg, 1981



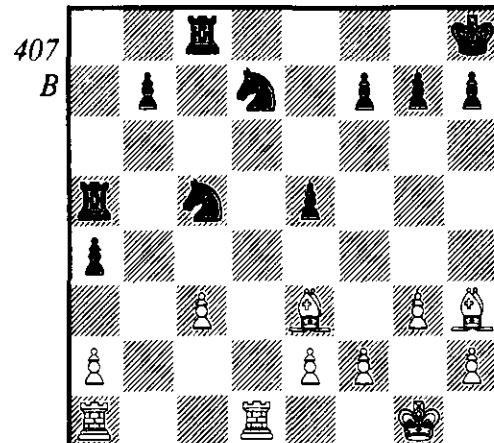
Black may get away with his eccentric opening play—‘developing’ the knight on a7 and switching the bishop from the a8–h1 diagonal to g6—if he succeeds in making the move ... d5, blocking the paths of the white bishops. But Kasparov strikes first with 14 d5!! which, among other things, clears the a1–h8 diagonal and restrains the movements of the bishop on f8.

The remainder of the game vividly demonstrates the efficacy of this conception: 14 ... exd5 15 ♜g2 c6 16 0-0 f6 17 ♜e1! ♜e7 18 ♜g4 ♜f7 19 h5 ♜h7 20 e4! dxе4 21 ♜xe4 ♜xe4 22 ♜xe4 ♜c8 On 22 ... ♜f8 comes 23 ♜ad1 d5 24 ♜xf6! and on 22 ... ♜e8 23 ♜g6+ ♜f8 24 g4, coupled with ♜g3–f5.

23 ♜ad1 ♜a7 24 ♜xf6! gxsf6 24 ... ♜xf6 25 ♜g6+ ♜f8 26 ♜xf6 gxsf6 27 ♜e6!. 25 ♜g6+ ♜f8 26

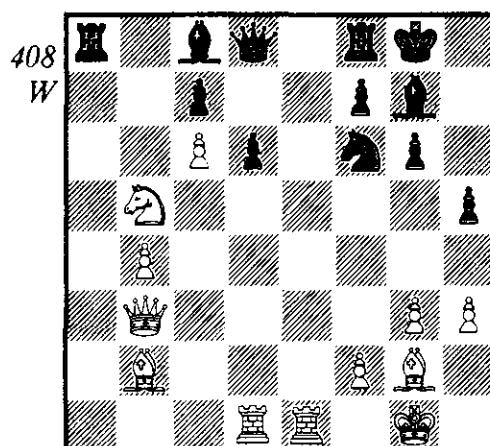
爵c1 d5 27 ♜d4! ♜d6 28 ♜g4 ♜f7 29 ♜xh6+! ♜e8 29 ... ♜xh6 30 ♜g7+ etc. 30 ♜g7 1-0
The h-pawn advances.

Alexandria–Kantor
Baile-Herculan, 1983



A clear illustration of the power wielded by two bishops. Faced with the inevitable loss of a piece, Black resigned.

Botvinnik–Reshevsky
Avro, 1938



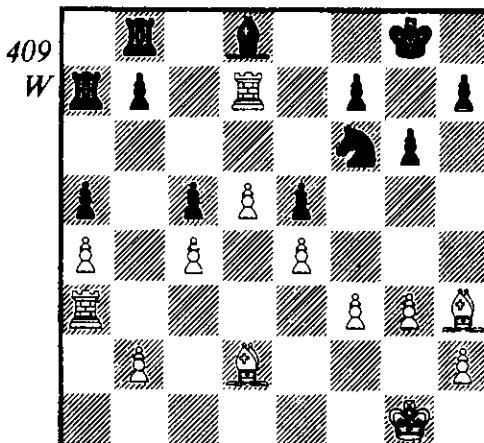
Black’s pieces are rather lame while White’s occupy ideal posts. Botvinnik concludes the game with a few sledge-hammer blows:

25 ♜xd6! ♜e6 25 ... cxd6 26 c7 costs the exchange. 26 ♜xe6!

More aggressive than the simple 26 $\mathbb{Q}c4$. 26 ... $fxe6$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}f5!$ 27 $\mathbb{W}xe6+?$ $\mathbb{N}h7$ leaves the knight pinned. Botvinnik's move aims at exchanging the $g7$ bishop, after which White's bishops will sweep the board. 27 ... $\mathbb{W}e8$ 27 ... $\mathbb{W}xd1+$ 28 $\mathbb{W}xd1$ $exf5$ would cross White's plans without, however, affecting the outcome.

28 $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{W}xg7$ 29 $\mathbb{R}d7+$ $\mathbb{R}f7$ 30 $\mathbb{A}e5$ Thwarting ... $e5$, in response to 30 $\mathbb{W}f3$, which is now threatened. 30 ... $\mathbb{W}g8$ 31 $\mathbb{R}xc7$ $\mathbb{R}xc7$ 32 $\mathbb{A}xc7$ $\mathbb{R}a1+$ 33 $\mathbb{A}h2$ $\mathbb{R}a7$ 34 $\mathbb{A}e5$ $\mathbb{R}f7$ 35 $c7$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 36 $\mathbb{W}c2!$ $\mathbb{R}f8$ 37 $c8(\mathbb{W})$ 1-0

Reshevsky–Benko *Los Angeles, 1963*



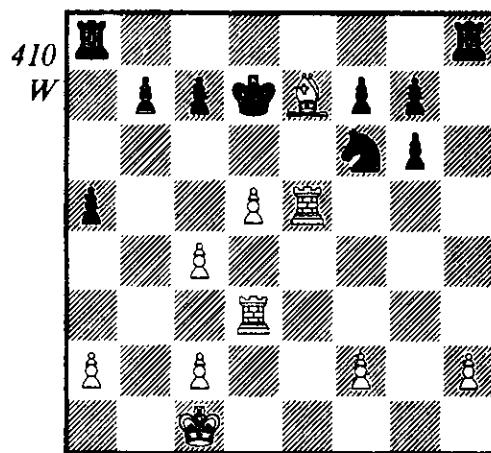
Giving up his d-pawn, Black has lured the white rook deep into his camp and looks forward to drawing by perpetually harassing the white rook, viz., 29 $\mathbb{R}d6$ $\mathbb{A}e8$ 30 $\mathbb{R}d7$ $\mathbb{A}f6$. Reshevsky has seen a little further:

29 $\mathbb{R}xd8+$! $\mathbb{R}xd8$ 30 $\mathbb{A}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 31 $\mathbb{R}b3$ $f6$ 32 $\mathbb{R}b5$ $\mathbb{A}f7$ 33 $b3!$ No hurry! 33 ... $\mathbb{A}e7$ 34 $\mathbb{A}xa5$ $b6$ 35 $\mathbb{R}xb6$ $\mathbb{A}xb6$ 36 $\mathbb{R}xb6$ $\mathbb{R}d6$ 37

$\mathbb{R}b5$ $\mathbb{R}c7$ 38 $\mathbb{A}f2$ 1-0 in 41 moves.

Gelfer–Czerniak

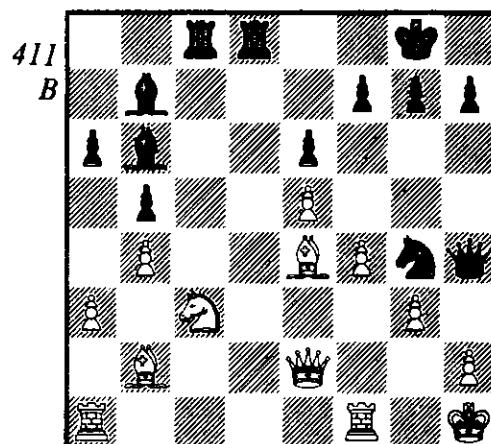
Israel, 1980



24 $\mathbb{d}6!$ The main threat is 25 $\mathbb{R}xf6$, followed by 26 $\mathbb{R}e7+$ etc. 24 ... $\mathbb{R}he8$ 24 ... $cxd6$ 25 $\mathbb{R}xd6+$ $\mathbb{A}c7$ 26 $\mathbb{R}c5+$ and so on. 25 $dxc7+$ $\mathbb{A}xc7$ 26 $\mathbb{R}c5+$ $\mathbb{A}b6$ 27 $\mathbb{R}b3+$ $\mathbb{A}a6$ 28 $\mathbb{R}xa5+!$ 1-0 28 ... $\mathbb{A}xa5$ 29 $\mathbb{R}c5$ mates.

Rotlevi–Rubinstein

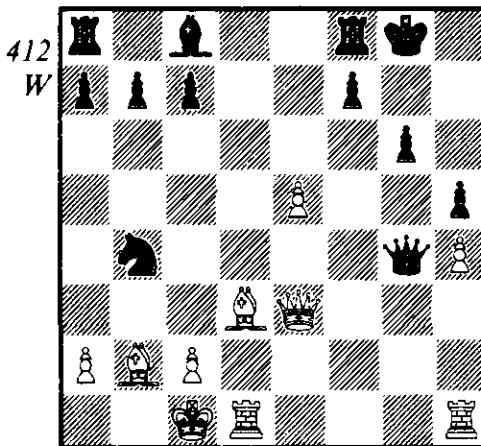
Lodz, 1907



Rubinstein's immortal finish, in which he throws all his pieces at the white king.

22 ... $\mathbb{R}xc3!$ 23 $gxh4$ $\mathbb{R}d2!$ 24 $\mathbb{R}xd2$ $\mathbb{A}xe4+$ 25 $\mathbb{W}g2$ $\mathbb{R}h3!$ 0-1

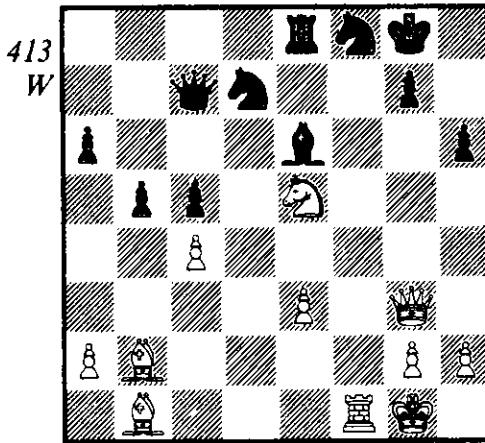
Keres–Petrov
Moscow, 1940



Two pawns up, Black's king stands no chance against the combined fury of White's bishops

19 e6! $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 19 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ or 19 ... $\mathbb{W}xe6$ (whether or not preceded by 19 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd3+$ 20 cxd3) succumbs to 20 $\mathbb{W}h6$, accompanied, if necessary, by \mathbb{Q} (any) g1. Or 19 ... fxe6 20 $\mathbb{Q}df1$ etc. **20 exf7+ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}c4!!$** An elegant coup: capturing the queen or bishop leads to mate in two. **21 ... c6** **22 $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$ $\mathbb{W}xc4$** 22 ... cxd5 23 $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$ and so on. **23 $\mathbb{W}e8+$ 1-0**

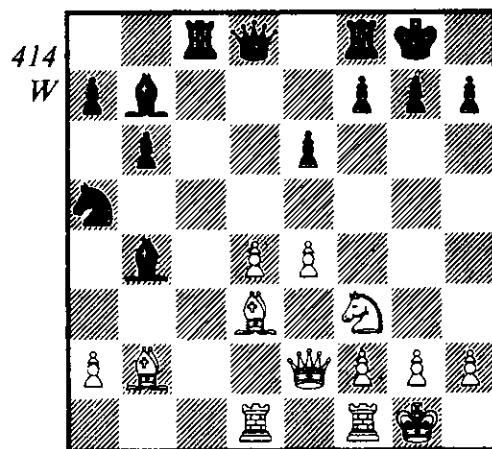
Keres–Spassky
Gothenburg, 1955



White's next, a bombshell, portrays the bishops at their deadliest.

30 $\mathbb{W}xg7+!!$ 1-0 30 ... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}xd7+$ and so on.

Keres–Geller
Moscow, 1962

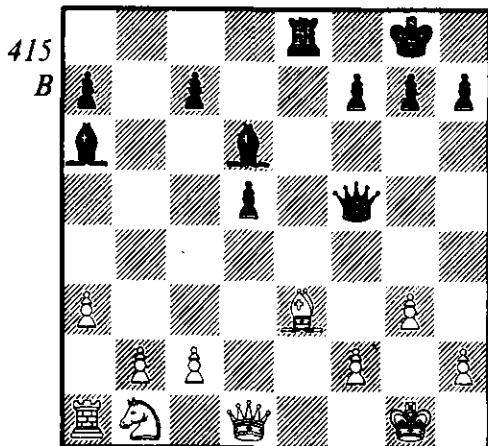


Black's king lacks piece protection and his knight on a5 and bishop on b4 are out of action. Keres blasts open lines for both his bishops.

16 d5! $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ Practically forced, since on the immediate 16 ... $\mathbb{W}e7$ (16 ... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ costs the exchange) 17 $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ (17 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}f5$) is strong. **17 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ 17 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$** loses to 18 $\mathbb{W}e5$ f6 19 $\mathbb{W}h5$, whilst on 17 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ already threatens 19 $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$ etc. **18 $\mathbb{Q}e5!$ f6** Black is faced with a choice of evils: 18 ... g6 19 $\mathbb{Q}g4!$; 18 ... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 19 $\mathbb{W}h5$ g6 20 $\mathbb{Q}g4$; on 18 ... h6 19 $\mathbb{W}g4$.

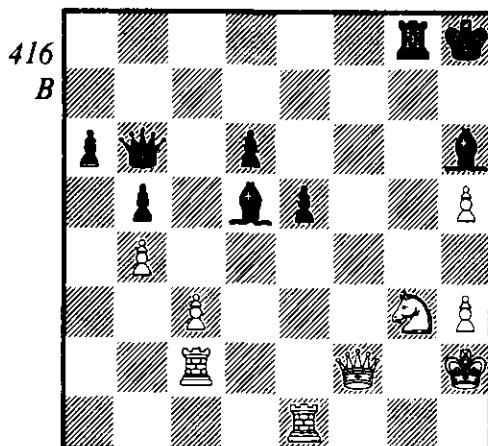
19 $\mathbb{W}h5$ g6 20 $\mathbb{Q}xg6!$ $\mathbb{W}xg6$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ $\mathbb{W}g7$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 23 f4 $\mathbb{W}h8$ 24 $\mathbb{W}g4$ $\mathbb{Q}c5+$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}h7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 27 $\mathbb{W}e6+$ $\mathbb{W}g7$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ 1-0

Ignatieva-Zatulovskaya
Suchumi, 1955



White's gaping lag in development calls for direct punishment.
17 ... ♜xe3! 18 fxe3 ♜c5 19 ♜d2 19 ♜e1 ♜xe3+ is futile. 19 ... ♜xe3+ 20 ♜h1 ♜f2 21 ♜e4 ♜f5 22 ♜d2 d4! Yet another episode of 'Murder along the Long Diagonal'. 23 ♜f3 ♜c8 24 ♜f1 ♜b7 25 ♜e4 f5 0-1

Ujtelky-Pachman
Tranzianz-Teplitz, 1953

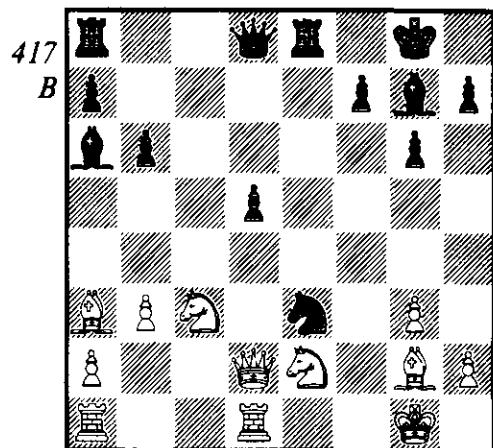


1 ... ♜f4 2 ♜xb6 ♜xg3! is tempting; but with 2 ♜g1! White averts immediate danger. Black's order of moves is more accurate.

1 ... ♜xg3! 2 ♜xb6 On 2 ♜xg3 comes 2 ... ♜f4+ 3 ♜g4 ♜d8!

mating. **2 ... ♜f4 3 ♜f2** Virtually compelling Black to mate him. In any case, the battery is lethal. **3 ... ♜g2++ 4 ♜h1 ♜h2+ 5 ♜g1 ♜h1 mate**

R. Byrne-Fischer
USA, 1963



In what many consider Fischer's most inspired game, the American Grandmaster had sacrificed a knight for two pawns. At this stage, everybody expected 18 ... ♜xd1 19 ♜xd1, when White is safe.

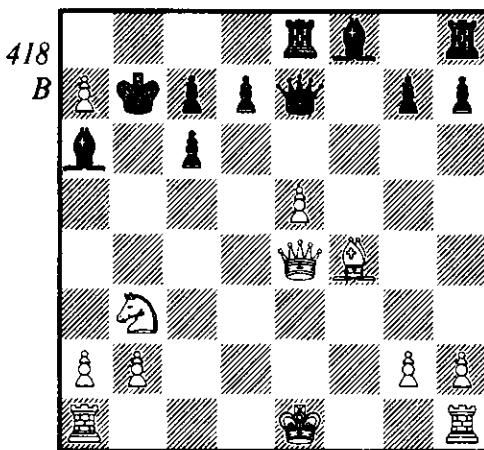
Fischer's next move, **18 ... ♜xg2!**, removing the light-squared bishop, reveals the real point of the combination: from now on, the black bishops sweep the board.

19 ♜xg2 d4! 20 ♜xd4 ♜b7+ 21 ♜f1 After 21 ♜g1 ♜xd4+ 22 ♜xd4 ♜e1+! Black emerges (at least) the exchange ahead, whereas after 21 ♜f2 ♜d7 (-h3) White will also be obliged to surrender material to stave off Black's many threats. **21 ... ♜d7!.**

Here, while several experts were debating whether Black should

lay down his arms, Byrne stopped his clock. 0–1 A bitter disappointment for Fischer, who had relished the likely conclusion 22 $\mathbb{w}f2$ (22 $\mathbb{Q}4b5 \mathbb{w}h3+$ 23 $\mathbb{g}1\mathbb{h}6$) 22 ... $\mathbb{w}h3+$ 23 $\mathbb{g}1\mathbb{e}1+!!$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xe1 \mathbb{Q}xd4$, with mate to follow shortly.

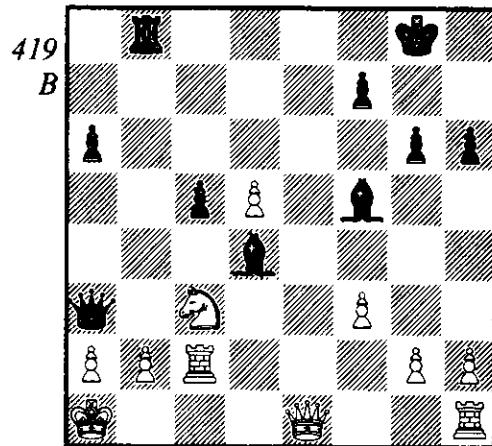
Timman–Karpov London, 1984



The bishop on a6 stops White from castling on the kingside. Black's next moves are designed to prevent White from castling on the other wing.

17 ... $\mathbb{w}h4+!$ 18 $g3 \mathbb{w}h5$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}c1 \mathbb{Q}a8!$ A profound move neutralizing any attacking ideas White may have entertained, and already envisaging the bishop's passage to the c8–h3 diagonal! 20 $h4$ Trying in vain to hinder ... $g5$. 20 ... $d5!$ 21 $\mathbb{w}e3 g5!$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xg5 \mathbb{Q}b4+$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}f2 \mathbb{Q}hf8+$ Fully mobilizing his forces. 24 $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}xe5!$ 25 $\mathbb{w}xe5 \mathbb{w}f3+$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}h2 \mathbb{w}f2+$ 0–1 The usefulness of Black's 19th move is manifest: 27 $\mathbb{Q}h3 \mathbb{Q}c8+$.

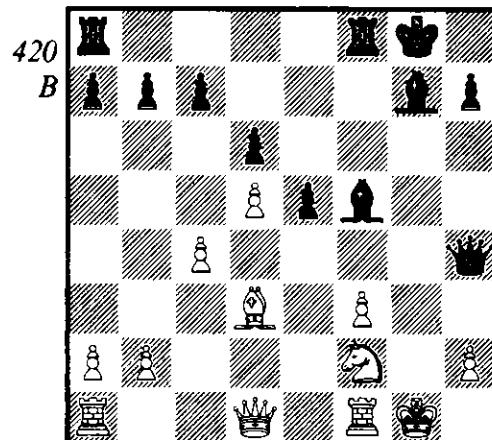
Hort–Glorigic Amsterdam, 1970



A second exchange-sacrifice adds fuel to Black's onslaught and presents White with insoluble problems.

30 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb2!$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}xb2 \mathbb{Q}xc3$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}c1 c4$ 33 $d6$ 33 $g4 \mathbb{Q}d7$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}b1 \mathbb{Q}xb2$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}xb2 \mathbb{Q}xf3$. 33 ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}d1 c3$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ Avoiding 35 $\mathbb{Q}b8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}xa3 c2+$ and mates. 35 ... $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 36 $d7!$ Diverting the bishop. 36 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 37 $g4?$ Missing 37 $\mathbb{Q}xd7!$: in this position the bishops are stronger than the rooks. 37 ... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}e1 \mathbb{Q}b3$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}ee2 \mathbb{Q}xa2!$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}xh6 \mathbb{Q}c4+$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}b1 \mathbb{Q}xe2$ 0–1

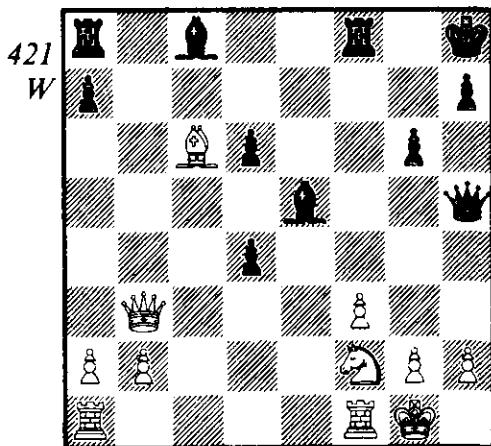
Donner–Glorigic Ersel, 1968



Black's next move, clearing the long diagonal for his Indian bishop, is the prelude to a barrage of blows, in which all his pieces participate harmoniously.

21 ... e4! 22 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ Else 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}e5$. 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 24 $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3!$ 26 $\mathbb{W}xf3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 27 $\mathbb{W}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ Black's raking bishops are overwhelming. 28 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}xh2+$ 0-1

Schmid–Gligoric Hamburg, 1965



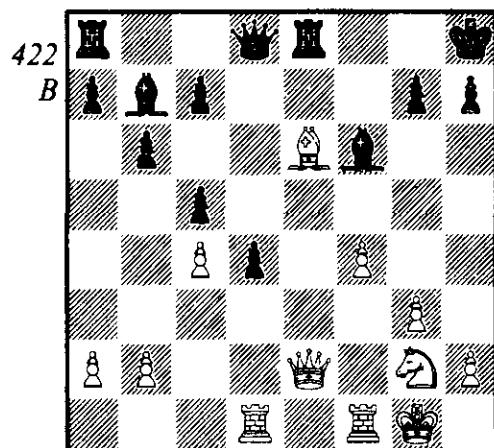
The open position augurs well for the owner of the bishops. However, after 24 g3 $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ the outcome would be in doubt. Instead, White goes after the exchange and lets the bishops feast at his expense.

24 f4? $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ 25 g3 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}h3$ 27 $\mathbb{W}d5$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{W}f3+$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ (29 $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f5$) 29 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{W}xf2+$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{W}e2$ is clearly unsatisfactory. 27 ... $\mathbb{W}e2!$ 28 $\mathbb{W}xd6$ $\mathbb{Q}g7!$ 29 $\mathbb{W}xf8+$ Forced, in view of Black's numerous threats. 29 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ $\mathbb{W}xb2$ 32 a4 $\mathbb{W}c2$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}h3$

$\mathbb{Q}g7$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $\mathbb{W}c8$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}h4$ g5+ 0-1

Euwe–Keres

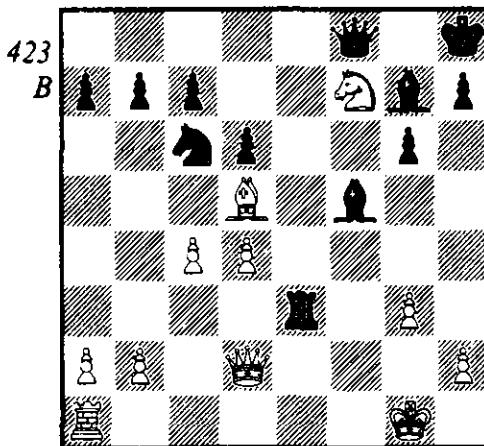
Netherlands, 1939-40



White plans 23 f5, coupled with 24 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ and 25 $\mathbb{W}h5$. Keres's next move clears the vital a7–g1 diagonal for his bishop, after which all his pieces participate in a scintillating two-bishop attack on the white king.

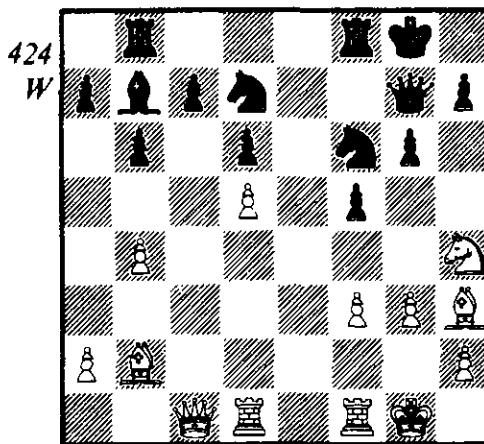
22 ... d3! 23 $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ $\mathbb{W}xd3!$ 24 $\mathbb{W}xd3$ $\mathbb{Q}d4+$! 25 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ If 25 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$, coupled with the doubling of rooks along the e-file and ... $\mathbb{Q}e2$. 25 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}ae8!$ 27 f5 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ Now the immediate 28 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ fails against 28 ... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ followed by 29 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf5+$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ g5—which explains White's next move.

28 f6 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ Avoiding 28 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}xf2$ $\mathbb{Q}e2+$? 30 $\mathbb{W}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2+$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}xg2?$ 32 f7. 29 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}c8!$ Nimblly relocating the bishop to the even better c8–h3 diagonal, unmasked by White's 28th move. 30 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 31 $\mathbb{W}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xf4!$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ 0-1 35 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}f3$ mate.

Torán–Tal*Oberhausen, 1961*

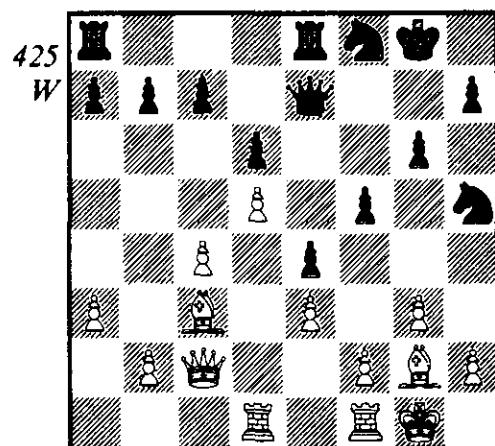
White counts on drawing by perpetual check after 18 ... ♕g8 19 ♜h6++ ♜h8 20 ♜f7+ and so on. Black's queen sacrifice is reminiscent of the Euwe–Keres game (422).

18 ... ♜xf7! 19 ♜xf7 ♜d3! 20 ♜e2 ♜xd4+ 21 ♜g2 ♜e5 With four black pieces ominously training their guns on him, the white monarch can hardly hope to survive. 22 ♜d1 ♜e3 23 ♜f1 Or 23 ♜d2 ♜e4+ 24 ♜h3 ♜f3. 23 ... ♜e4+ 24 ♜h3 ♜f3 25 ♜e2 ♜f5+ 0–1

Alekhine–Alexander*Nottingham, 1936*

Black's bishop on b7 is no match for White's bishop on b2. White's next move not only annexes an important pawn but enables his light-squared bishop to join the final assault:

22 ♜xf5! ♜h8 22 ... gxf5 23 ♜xf5 costs the queen after 23 ... ♜f7 or 23 ... ♜g6; or Black gets mated after 23 ... ♜h8 24 ♜h6+ ♜g7 25 ♜g5 mate. **23 ♜e6 ♜a6 24 ♜f1 ♜e5 25 f4! ♜d3 26 ♜xd3! ♜xd3 27 g4 1–0** There is no remedy against 28 g5.

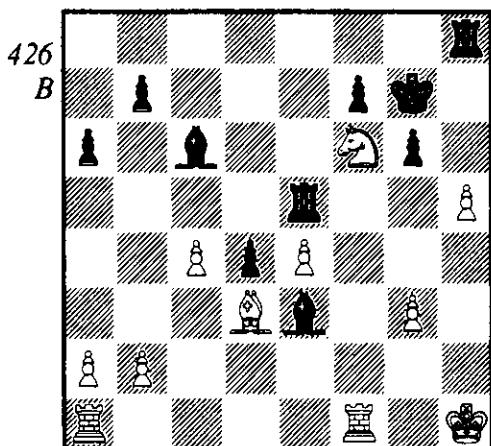
Alekhine–Pachman*Prague, 1942*

Bishops thrive on open lines:

19 f3! exf3 20 ♜xf3! ♜f6 Perhaps Black need not lose after 20 ... ♜xe3+ 21 ♜g2 ♜g7. In any case, White's bishops make his defensive task onerous. 21 ♜d4 ♜8d7 22 b4 ♜e4?! 22 ... ♜e5 has the merit of delaying the opening of lines with g3–g4. 23 g4! fxg4 24 ♜xg4 ♜g5 25 ♜g2 ♜f8 26 ♜f4 h5 27 h4! ♜h6 28 ♜h3 1–0 The knight is trapped in the middle of the board.

Beliavsky–Kasparov

Moscow, 1983



The thematic way of benefiting from the prowess of the bishops consists in 30 ... ♜g5 31 ♘d5 f5! 32 exf5 (32 ♜ae1 ♜he8) 32 ... ♜xd5! 33 cxd5 ♜xd5+ 34 ♜g1 ♜e3+ 35 ♜f2 ♜xh5, when White's days are numbered. Kasparov's method, though somewhat lengthier, never leaves the issue in doubt:

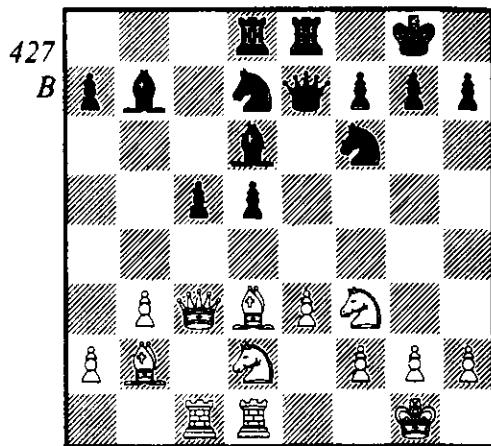
30 ... ♜exh5+ 31 ♘xh5+ ♜xh5+ 32 ♜g2 f5 33 ♜ae1 fxe4 34 ♜b1 ♜c5 35 b3 b5 36 ♜xe3 Comparatively best. 36 ... dxe3 37 ♜e1 bxc4 38 bxc4 ♜xc4 39 ♜xe3 ♜b4! 40 ♜b3 e3+ 41 ♜f1 ♜b5+ 42 ♜e1 a5 43 ♜e4 ♜xb3 44 axb3 ♜f6 45 ♜d1 g5 46 ♜c2 ♜e5 0-1 47 ♜d3 e2; or 47 ♜g6 ♜d4.

Spassky–Tal

Montreal, 1979

Even the world's greatest players are not immune to the perils of the bishop sacrifice on h7. Here we witness Spassky add his name to the list of its victims:

15 ... d4! 16 exd4 cxd4 17 ♜a5?



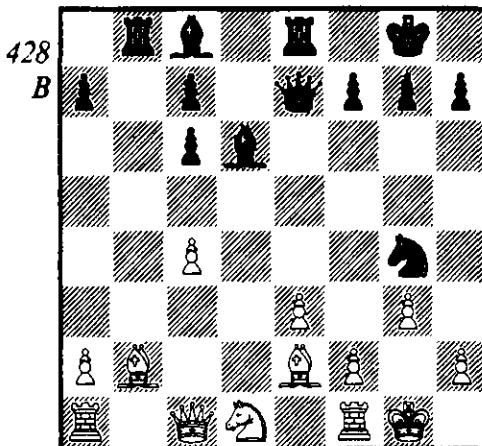
This presents Black with a precious tempo (19 ... ♜d5) two moves later. With the black rook still on d8, White ought to brave 17 ♘xd4 (17 ♜xd4? ♘c5 costs material) since now the bishop-sacrifice may not quite suffice to win: 17 ... ♜xh2+ 18 ♘xh2 ♘g4+ 19 ♜g3 (bad is 19 ♜g1 ♜h4 20 ♘f3 ♜xf2+ 21 ♜h1 ♜e5! 22 ♜f5 ♘e3) 19 ... ♜e5+ 20 f4 (20 ♜xg4 ♘f6+) 20 ... ♜e3+ 21 ♘f3 ♘df6 22 ♜xh7+.

Tal, to whom we owe this penetrating analysis, adds that in reply to 17 ♘xd4, he had also envisaged 17 ... ♜e5 18 ♘f3 ♜h5, with full compensation for the pawn.

17 ... ♘e5 18 ♘xe5 ♜xe5 19 ♘c4 White's pieces move away from the scene of action. Admittedly, after 19 ♘f1 ♘d5 20 ♘g3 ♘f4 21 ♘f1 h5 Black's initiative is menacing. 19 ... ♜d5! Tempo! 20 ♜d2 20 ♜a3 ♜e6 merely drives the queen from the good d8–h4 diagonal to the good c8–h3 diagonal without hindering ... ♜xh2+; e.g., 21 ♜d2 ♜xh2+! 22 ♘xh2 ♜h5+ 23 ♜g1 ♜h1+!

mating in two moves. 20 ... $\mathbb{A}xh2+$! 21 $\mathbb{B}xh2$ $\mathbb{B}h5+$ 22 $\mathbb{B}g1$ $\mathbb{B}g4$ 0-1 The threat is ... $\mathbb{W}h4$. On 23 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{B}h1+$! forces mate.

Timman–Karpov
Montreal, 1979



Here it is a knight rather than a bishop which does the preliminary demolition job for the bishops with 15 ... $\mathbb{B}xh2!$.

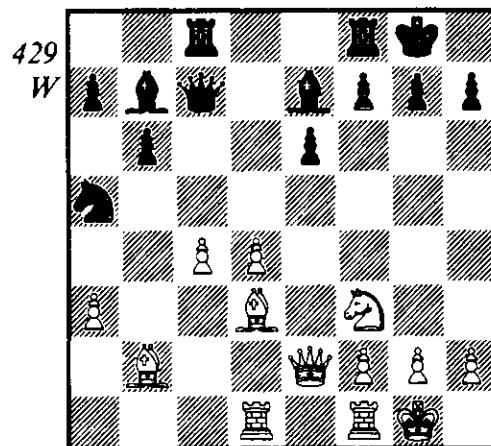
Acceptance of the sacrifice with 16 $\mathbb{B}xh2$ gives rise to the usual sequence 16 ... $\mathbb{W}h4+$ 17 $\mathbb{B}g1$ $\mathbb{B}xg3$ 18 $f\#g3$ $\mathbb{W}xg3+$ 19 $\mathbb{B}h1$ $\mathbb{W}e4!$ 20 $\mathbb{B}f4$ $\mathbb{B}h3$.

Timman's intermediate resource, 16 $c5$, with the idea of diverting the black bishop, elicited, after 16 ... $\mathbb{B}xf1$ 17 $cx\#d5$ a counter-intermediate move from Karpov, 17 ... $\mathbb{B}xg3!$, validating 15 ... $\mathbb{B}xh2!$.

The game ended: 18 $f\#g3$ $\mathbb{W}xd6$ 19 $\mathbb{B}f2$ $\mathbb{W}h6$ 20 $\mathbb{B}d4$ $\mathbb{W}h2+$ 21 $\mathbb{B}e1$ $\mathbb{W}xg3+$ 22 $\mathbb{B}d2$ $\mathbb{W}g2$ 23 $\mathbb{B}b2$ $\mathbb{B}a6$ 24 $\mathbb{B}d3$ $\mathbb{B}xd3$ 25 $\mathbb{B}xd3$ $\mathbb{B}bd8$ 26 $\mathbb{B}f1$ $\mathbb{W}e4+$ 27 $\mathbb{B}c3$ $c5!$ 28 $\mathbb{B}xc5$ $\mathbb{W}c6$ 29 $\mathbb{B}b3$ $\mathbb{B}b8+$ 30 $\mathbb{B}a3$ $\mathbb{B}e5$ 31 $\mathbb{B}b4$ $\mathbb{W}b6$ 0-1

Kasparov–Portisch

Nikšić, 1983



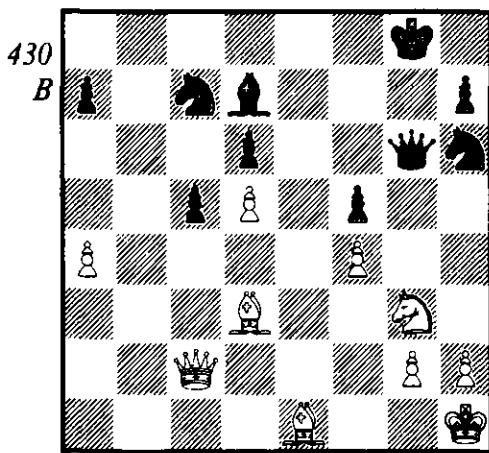
17 $d5!$ Apart from fitting the demands of the position, this thrust enjoys the additional advantage of not involving any material concession. The alternative to 17 ... $exd5$, namely 17 ... $\mathbb{B}xc4$, results in a lost position after 18 $\mathbb{W}e4$ $g6$ 19 $\mathbb{B}xc4$ $\mathbb{W}xc4$ 20 $\mathbb{W}e5$ $f6$ 21 $\mathbb{W}xe6+$ $\mathbb{B}f7$ 22 $\mathbb{B}c1$ $\mathbb{W}a6$ 23 $d6$.

18 $cx\#d5$ $\mathbb{B}xd5$ 19 $\mathbb{B}xh7+$ $\mathbb{B}xh7$ 20 $\mathbb{B}xd5$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ Providing against the threat 21 $\mathbb{W}e4+$ $\mathbb{B}g8$ 22 $\mathbb{B}h5$ 21 $\mathbb{B}xg7!!$ Shades of Lasker. 21 ... $\mathbb{B}xg7$ 22 $\mathbb{B}e5$ $\mathbb{B}fd8$ Black's king is too bare and his knight too distant to enable him to put up a successful defence. For example, 22 ... $f5$ 23 $\mathbb{B}d3$ $\mathbb{W}c5$ 24 $\mathbb{B}d7$. Or 22 ... $\mathbb{B}h8$ 23 $\mathbb{W}g4+$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 24 $\mathbb{W}f5$ $f6$ 25 $\mathbb{B}e1$. 23 $\mathbb{W}g4+$ $\mathbb{B}f8$ 24 $\mathbb{W}f5$ $f6$ 25 $\mathbb{B}d7+$ $\mathbb{B}xd7$ 26 $\mathbb{B}xd7$ $\mathbb{W}c5$ 27 $\mathbb{W}h7$ $\mathbb{B}c7$ 28 $\mathbb{W}h8+!$ Avoiding 28 $\mathbb{B}d3?$ $\mathbb{W}xf2+!$ 29 $\mathbb{B}xf2$ $\mathbb{B}c5+30$ $\mathbb{B}g3$ $\mathbb{B}xh7$, drawing. 28 ... $\mathbb{B}f7$ 29 $\mathbb{B}d3$ $\mathbb{B}c4$ 30 $\mathbb{B}fd1$ $\mathbb{B}e5?$ After the comparatively better 30 ... $\mathbb{B}d6$ 31 $\mathbb{B}d5$ (31 ... $\mathbb{W}xa3$ 32

$\blacksquare x d 6$) Black is virtually without a move. 31 $\blacksquare h 7 +$ $\blacksquare e 6$ 32 $\blacksquare g 8 +$ $\blacksquare f 5$ 33 $g 4 +$ $\blacksquare f 4$ 34 $\blacksquare d 4 +$ $\blacksquare f 3$ 35 $\blacksquare b 3 +$ 1–0

Najdorf–Fischer

Havana, 1966



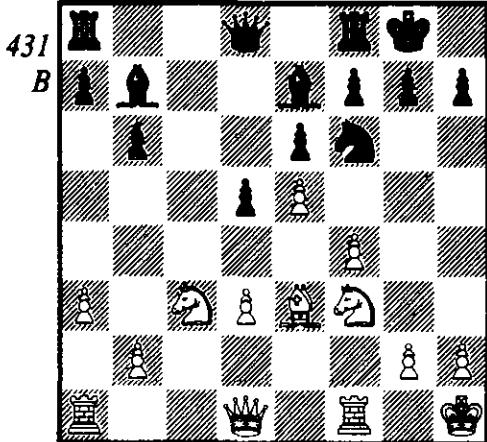
One of the hallmarks of a great player lies in his ability to identify exceptional cases where conventional rules of good conduct may be disregarded. Here Black boldly snatches the loose d-pawn, submitting his knight to an awesome pin. For a while he suffers; but in the end, the two central pawns prevail.

31 ... $\blacksquare x d 5!$ 32 $\blacksquare c 4$ $\blacksquare e 6$ 33 $\blacksquare c 3$ $\blacksquare c 6$ 34 $\blacksquare b 3$ 34 $\blacksquare h 5$ $\blacksquare g 4$ 35 $h 3$ $\blacksquare g e 3$ holds no horrors for Black. 34 ... $\blacksquare f 7$ 35 $\blacksquare b 8$ $\blacksquare g 8!$ Bodily obstructing 36 $\blacksquare h 8$. If 36 $\blacksquare x a 7 +$ $\blacksquare g e 7$, threatening ... $\blacksquare e 3$. 36 $h 3$ $\blacksquare g e 7$ 37 $\blacksquare h 8$ $\blacksquare h 6$ Covering all key points, Black also threatens 38 ... $\blacksquare x f 4$.

38 $\blacksquare e 2$ $\blacksquare x a 4$ 39 $\blacksquare a 8$ Otherwise the a-pawn marches on. 39 ... $\blacksquare c 6$ 40 $\blacksquare x a 7$ $\blacksquare e 6$ 41 $\blacksquare a 2$ $\blacksquare e 4!$ The black queen has come into its own. White must contend with 42 ... $\blacksquare g 6$ (e8) and 43 ... $\blacksquare x g 2 +$! etc. 42 $\blacksquare d 2$ $\blacksquare e 8$ 43 $\blacksquare g 3$ $\blacksquare d 4$ 44 $\blacksquare h 2$ $\blacksquare e 3!$ Liquidating a white bishop. Weaker is the greedy 44 ... $\blacksquare x f 4$ 45 $\blacksquare f 7 +$ $\blacksquare f 8?$ 46 $\blacksquare e 2!$ and White wins! 45 $\blacksquare x e 3$ $\blacksquare x e 3$ 46 $\blacksquare g 8$ $\blacksquare x f 4$ 47 $\blacksquare f 7 +$ $\blacksquare d 7$ 48 $\blacksquare x h 7$ $\blacksquare e 4$ 49 $\blacksquare g 6$ $\blacksquare e 5$ The stage is set for the advance of the pawns. 50 $\blacksquare h 5$ $\blacksquare d 5$ 51 $\blacksquare e 8 +$ $\blacksquare c 7$ 51 $\blacksquare g 1$ $\blacksquare g 7!$ 52 $\blacksquare d 1$ $\blacksquare c 6!$ 0–1 Note how, on his last move, Black refrained from 52 ... f4 53 $\blacksquare g 4$ (a4), with marauding chances.

21 Positional Sacrifices

Spassky-Tal
Moscow, 1971

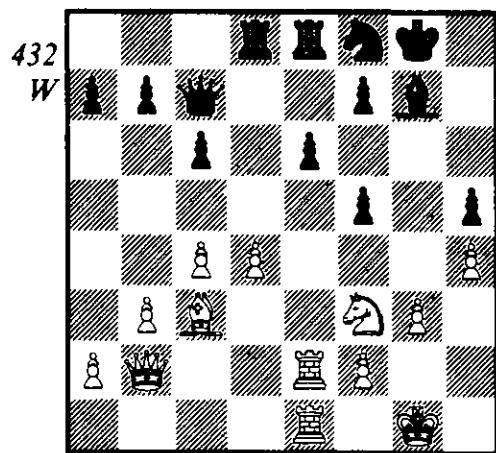


After 14 ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ (14 ... $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}gl$) 15 d4 White has the edge and will go about preparing the push f4-f5 with g4. Tal's next move shuffles the cards:

14 ... d4! 15 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ In return for the pawn, the black bishop on b7 has acquired a free diagonal. He will also exert some pressure along the d-file. The game eventually ended in a draw.

Spassky-O'Kelly
San Juan, 1969

The manifold purposes of 28 d5!! are: (1) to exchange bishops, thus weakening Black's king; (2) to free the square d4 for his knight, whence it reflects on both



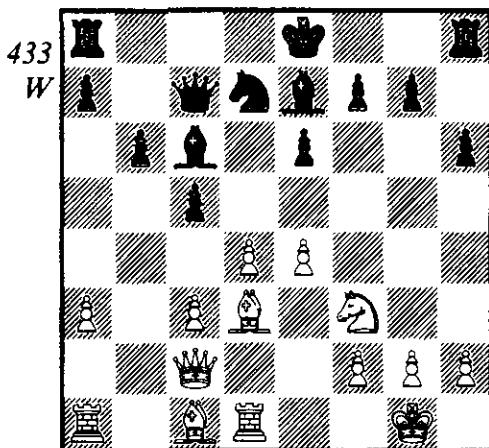
wings and cannot be dislodged; (3) to create a mobile pawn majority on the queen's side, which will divert Black's attention from the other wing.

28 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ cxd5 30 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ If 30 ... dxc4 31 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$! while on 30 ... e5 both 31 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ d4 32 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ and 31 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ etc are good. 31 c5! $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 31 ... $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 32 f4! 32 b4 a6 33 a4! $\mathbb{Q}c8$ Or 33 ... $\mathbb{Q}xa4$ 34 c6! bxc6 35 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$! e5 36 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 34 b5 axb5 35 axb5 $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 36 c6 bxc6 37 bxc6 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 39 c7 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ looks simpler. Now Black must try 40 ... $\mathbb{Q}h7$.

40 ... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 41 f3 e5 41 ... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}xh5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 44 g4 fxg4 (44 ... f4 45 $\mathbb{Q}g5+$) 45 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ f5 46 $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ prolongs his agony somewhat. 42 fxe4 f4 43 gxf4 exd4 44 $\mathbb{Q}g2+$ 1-0 44 ... $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 45 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 46 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ mates.

Kasparov–Gheorghiu

Moscow, 1982



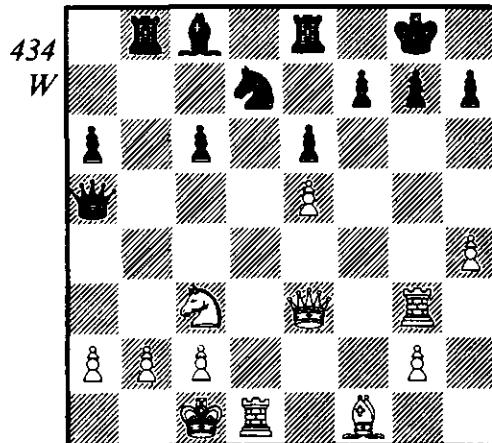
Kasparov's favourite weapon, 14 $\mathbb{d}5!$ catches the black king in the centre and gives him no respite: 14 ... $\mathbb{e}xd5$ 15 $\mathbb{e}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $a6$ 16 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ is no improvement. 17 $\mathbb{Q}f4!$ Not 17 $\mathbb{Q}xd7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 18 $c4$, owing to 18 ... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$. 17 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$ Equally, after 17 ... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}xd7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 19 $c4$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ Black cannot castle.

18 $\mathbb{Q}xd7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$ $\mathbb{Q}c7?$ 19 ... $\mathbb{Q}c8$, with the idea of ... $\mathbb{Q}a7-c7$, offers stiffer resistance (Kasparov). 20 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 20 ... $\mathbb{Q}he8$ (20 ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}e4$) loses a piece to 21 $\mathbb{Q}de5$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}e4$. 21 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ A trap: 22 $\mathbb{Q}d2?$ $\mathbb{Q}he8!$. 22 $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ $\mathbb{Q}b5$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 25 $c4$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 25 ... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}xd6!$. 26 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}b1$ 1–0

Keres–Szabo

Budapest, 1955

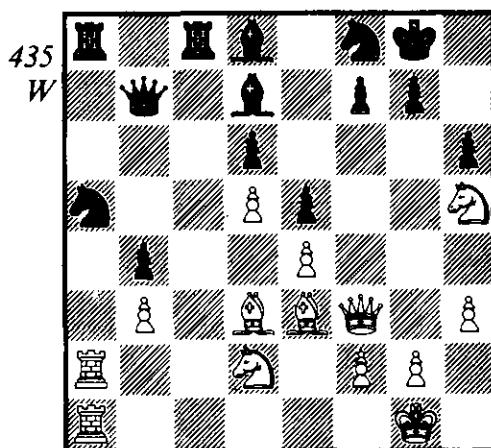
Again, the offer of the exchange gets the most useful defender out of the way:



18 $\mathbb{Q}xd7!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $h6$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ Threatening both 21 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ and 21 $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$ etc. 20 ... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}xg7!$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}g6!$ 1–0 23 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}h8$ mate.

Spassky–Arutiunian

Moscow, 1965

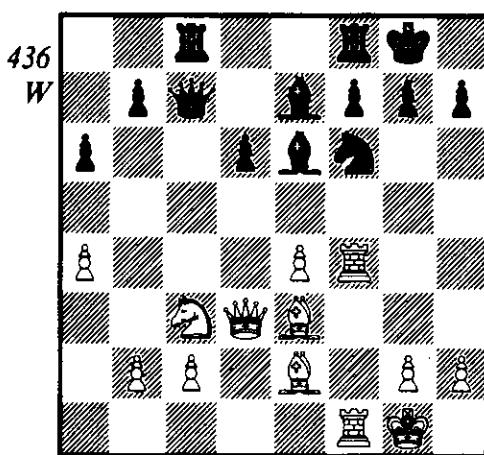


White's double exchange-sacrifice (on the same square!) diverts the dark-coloured black bishop from its guard duties on the kingside.

28 $\mathbb{Q}xa5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}xa5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xa5$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}xh6!$ Black's extra material is of little use to his denuded king: 30 ... $gxh6$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}f6$.

30 ... ♜h7 31 ♜xg7 f5 Vainly hoping for 32 ♜g3? f4. 32 exf5 Enabling the light-squared white bishop to participate in the festivities. 32 ... ♜h8 33 ♜h5 ♜g8 34 f6 1-0

Lobron–Gruenfeld Israel, 1982

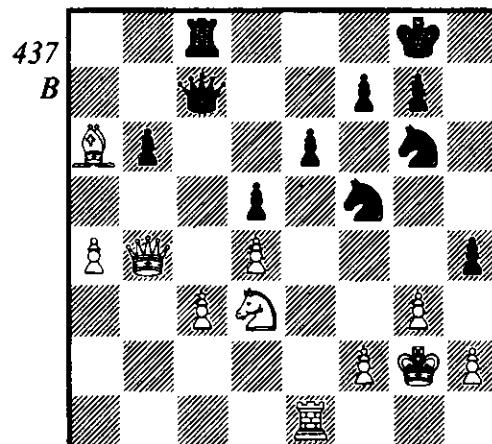


A typical exchange-sacrifice wrecks Black's defences.

16 ♜xf6! gxf6 16 ... ♜xf6 invites another exchange sacrifice: 17 ♜xf6 gxf6 18 ♜d4 ♜fd8 19 ♜xf6, with an enduring attack. 17 ♜d4 ♜d8 18 ♜d5 Compelling Black to capture and thus unmasking the b1–h7 diagonal for his bishop. 18 ... ♜xd5 19 exd5 ♜h8 20 ♜h3 ♜g8 21 ♜d3 ♜g7 22 ♜e1 ♜g8? Shortens his agony; but if 22 ... ♜b8 23 ♜e3 ♜f8 24 ♜f4 ♜e7 25 ♜e4 ♜f8 26 ♜h4 ♜e7 27 ♜xe7! wins. 23 ♜xe7! 1-0

Damjanovic–Dorfman Vilnius, 1978

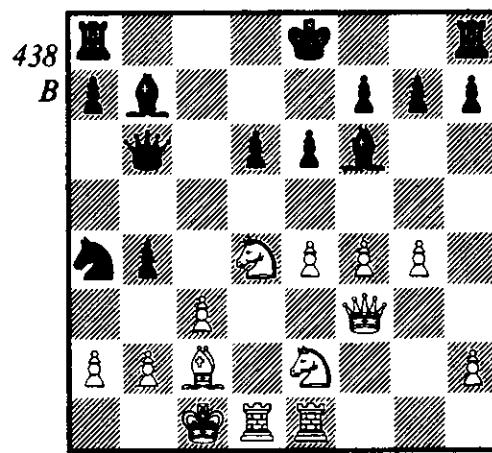
White envisages 40 ... ♜a8 41 ♜b5, with 42 ♜e5 to follow.



However, by nimbly sacrificing the exchange, Black can mount a direct attack on the white king.

40 ... ♜xc3! 41 ♜xc8 ♜xd3 42 ♜xb6 hxg3 43 ♜d8+ ♜h7 0-1 On 41 hxg3 comes 41 ... ♜fh4+, mating.

Kupper–Tal Zurich, 1959



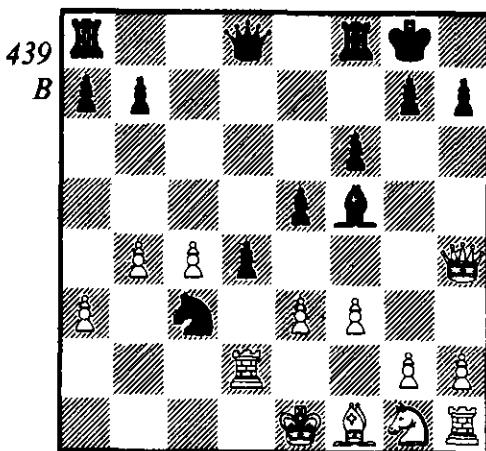
Black lures the white king into space. To quote Tal: "I did not calculate variations. It would be strange if after the sacrifice White were able to find a defence against Black's overwhelming attack".

16 ... ♜xb2! 17 ♜xb2 bxc3+ 18 ♜xc3 0-0 19 ♜b1 ♜a5+ 20 ♜d3 ♜ac8 21 ♜f2 21 ♜xb7 fails against 21 ... ♜xel, while on 21

$\mathbb{Q}e1$ comes 21 ... e5 or 21 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}b6$. 21 ... $\mathbb{Q}a8!$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ 22 g5 $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}ec1$ offers more resistance. 22 ... e5! 23 g5 $exd4$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 24 gxf6 $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}xc2$ $\mathbb{W}xa2+$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}c8+$ or 26 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$. 24 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 0-1 If 25 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}c5+$ and if 25 $\mathbb{W}xd4$ the rook on e1 is loose.

Quinteros–Ribli

Montilla, 1974



439
B

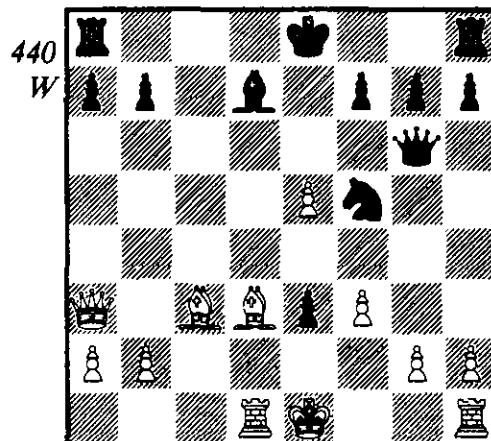
The pawn on d4 is about to fall, but Black's lead in development is so great that he can unleash a mating attack against the poorly placed white king by sacrificing his queen for a rook and planting a pawn on e3.

18 ... $dxe3!$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ $\mathbb{Q}fxd8$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d2$ White is completely tied up. Note the constricting part played by the pawn on e3. 21 g4 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 0-1

Nimzowitsch–Chajes

Carlsbad, 1911

The determining factor here is the plight of the black king, stranded in the centre.

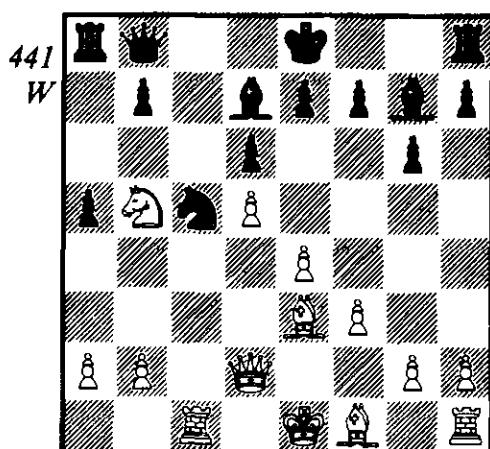


440
W

17 0-0 e2 18 $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}xd1+$ On 19 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ 20 e6! decides, since after 20 ... fxe6 21 $\mathbb{Q}xd7$, or 20 ... $\mathbb{W}xe6$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}xf1$. 20 $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ $\mathbb{W}b6+$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{W}e6$ 22 b3 Intending 23 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ and preparing his 24th move. 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ $\mathbb{W}f5$ 24 $\mathbb{W}c1!$ Having securely fixed the black king in the centre, the queen shifts to greener pastures. 24 ... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{W}e6$ 27 $\mathbb{W}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ 29 $exd6$ f6 30 $\mathbb{W}g6+$ $\mathbb{W}f7$ 31 d7+ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 32 $\mathbb{W}xf7+$ 1-0

Keres–Westerinen

Tallinn, 1973



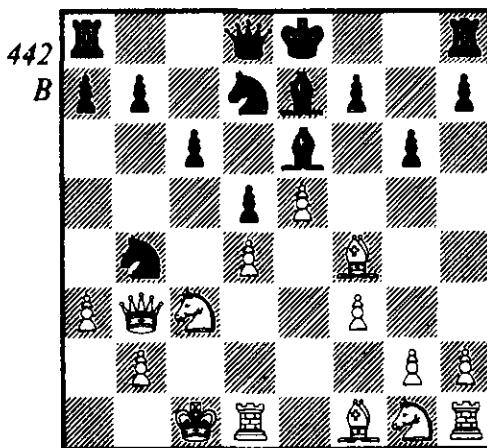
441
W

The straightforward gain of a pawn with 16 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $dxc5$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ is not to Keres's taste since it

affords Black an opportunity to castle. Instead, he gives up the exchange in order to keep the black king in the centre.

16 ♜xc5! *dxc5* 17 **d6!** *exd6* 17 ... 0-0 18 *dxe7* costs material. 18 **♘xd6+** ♘f8 19 ♘xf7! ♜e6 Capturing the knight results in mate. 20 ♘g5! ♜xa2 21 ♜xc5+ ♗g8 22 **b4** Black cannot avoid the loss of a piece. 22 ... ♜b3 23 ♜d3 ♜f7 24 ♘xf7 ♜f4 25 ♘g5! The knight is taboo and the game is over. 25 ... ♜c1+ 26 ♗f2 ♜b2+ 27 ♜e2 ♜f6 28 ♜d5+ ♗g7 29 ♜xb7+ ♗h6 30 ♘f7+ 1-0

Korchnoi–Spassky Kiev, 1968

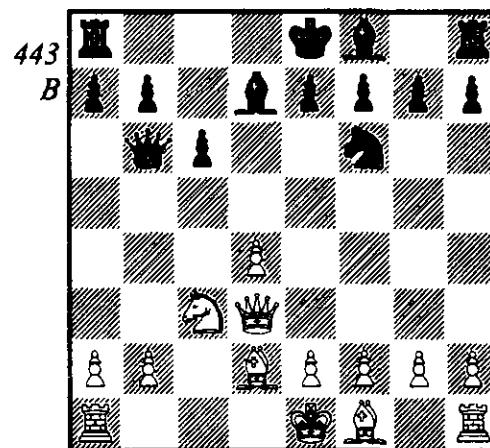


At this rather early stage, Black conceives a superb positional piece-sacrifice, which White must accept:

12 ... a5!! 13 **axb4** Black threatened 13 ... c5 (-c4)!. Now the a-file is opened and Black's pawns start rolling. 13 ... **axb4** 14 ♘b1 c5! 15 g4 c4 16 ♜e3 ♜a2!

It is doubtful if, with best play on both sides, White's position is tenable (in the game, Spassky went astray and actually lost).

Piatlekowsky–Smyslov Helsinki, 1952

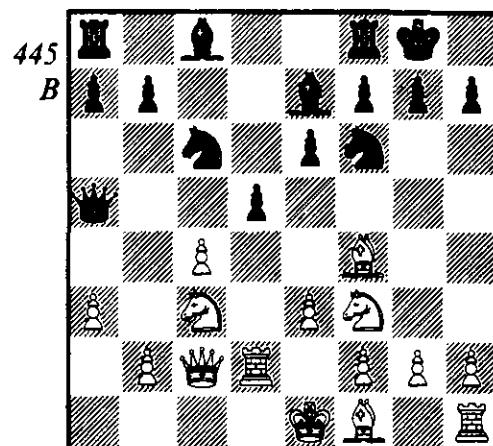
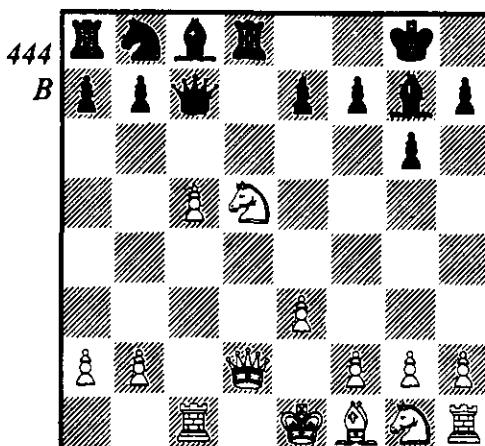


Vigorous play is required if Black is to make something of the awkward position of White's uncastled king and his retarded development. 10 ... 0-0-0 (10 ... ♜xb2? 11 ♜b1) 11 0-0-0 is not entirely convincing. Smyslov uncovers a truly imaginative plan:

10 ... **e5!** 11 **dxe5** ♘g4 12 ♜g3 0-0-0 13 h3 ♘e6! The point: on 14 hxg4 ♜xd2! is devastating. White's ensuing contortions meet with a similar fate. 14 ♜d1 ♜xb2! 15 hxg4 ♘b4 16 ♜h3 ♜d4 17 ♜e3 White is playing without his bishop on f1. 17 ... ♜hd8 18 f4 ♘xg4 19 ♜g3 ♘f5 20 ♜f3 ♘a5 20 ... ♘c2 at once is more direct. 21 g4 ♘c2 22 e6 fxe6 23 ♜xe6+ ♘b8 24 ♜d3 ♜xd3 25 exd3 ♘xc3 26 ♜e5+ ♘a8 0-1

Tolush–Botvinnik Leningrad, 1939

An exchange-sacrifice at an early stage takes advantage of White's undeveloped pieces on the kingside—whose absence is sorely felt on the queenside!



11 ... ♜xd5! 12 ♜xd5 ♜e6 In his notes, the ever self-critical Botvinnik prefers 12 ... ♜c6. **13 ♜d2 ♜c6 14 ♜d1** A better way of dealing with 14 ... ♜d8 is 14 ♜c3 ♜xc3 (14 ... ♜d8 15 ♜d3) 15 ♜xc3 ♜xa2 16 ♜f3. Black can maintain the initiative with 14 ... ♜b4 15 ♜f3 ♜d8 16 ♜d4 ♜xa2 (or 16 ... ♜f5). **14 ... ♜d8 15 ♜c1 ♜a5+** 16 ♜d2 ♜d5! The sortie of the second rook to d5 obliges White to surrender all his queen's side pawns.

17 ♜e2 Or 17 ♜f3 ♜xc5 18 ♜b1 ♜xa2 19 ♜a1 ♜c2 20 ♜d3 ♜xb2. **17 ... ♜xc5 18 ♜c3 ♜xc3 19 bxc3 ♜xc3 20 ♜b2 ♜a3 21 ♜b5 ♜c3 22 ♜b2 ♜c5 23 ♜b1 23 ♜xb7** leads to a swift *débâcle*: 23 ... ♜c1+ 24 ♜e2 ♜c4+ 25 ♜f3 ♜xd2 26 ♜xc4 ♜e5+ 27 ♜g3 ♜xe3+! 28 f3 ♜c4 29 ♜c8+ ♜g7 30 ♜xc4 ♜e2. **23 ... ♜xa2! 24 ♜xa2 ♜a5+ 25 ♜d2 ♜a1** 0–1 (in 37 moves).

Miles–Beliavsky Wijk aan Zee, 1984

In this theoretically known position, Black offers a pawn in

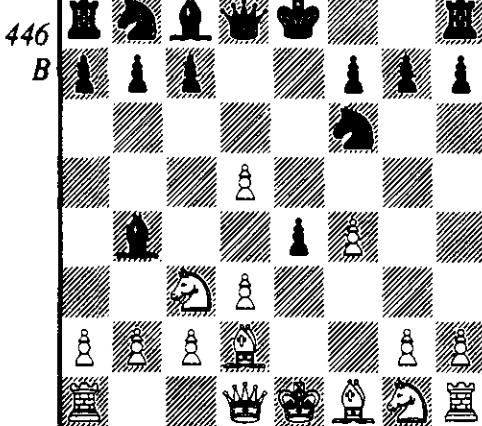
an attempt to exploit the backward development of White's kingside.

11 ... ♜e4! 12 ♜xe4 dxe4 13 ♜xe4 13 ♜d4 e5 14 ♜xc6 bxc6 15 ♜g3 ♜d8 is good for Black. **13 ... ♜d8 14 ♜c2?** Subsequently, the correct response, 14 c5! was discovered, answering 14 ... ♜xc5 with 15 ♜d3 f5 16 ♜c4 and 14 ... e5 with 15 ♜g3 f5 16 ♜c4+ ♜h8 17 ♜c3.

14 ... e5 15 ♜g3 e4! The pawn must be captured, since on 16 ♜d4 comes 16 ... ♜xd4 17 exd4 ♜g5. **16 ♜xe4 ♜f5 17 ♜f4 ♜xd2 18 ♜xd2 ♜d8 19 e4 ♜g4!** Black's lead in development is crushing. The immediate threats are: 20 ... ♜g5 and 20 ... ♜b4. **20 c5 ♜b4! 21 f3 g5! 22 axb4 ♜a1+ 23 ♜e2 gxf4** 0–1

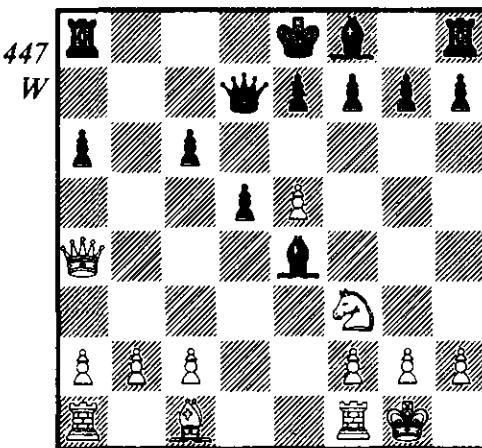
Schulten–Morphy New York, 1857

Morphy's pawn-sacrifice, one of the earliest known in the annals of the game, is still highly regarded by modern theory. Its main purpose is to gain time for rapid development.



6 ... e3! 7 $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 0-0 8 $\mathbb{Q}d2$
 $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 9 $bxc3$ $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ 10 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$
11 c4 The critical line is 11 $\mathbb{Q}f2!$
 $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}gxe2$. 11 ... c6 11 ...
 $\mathbb{Q}e7$ is an alternative. 12 $\mathbb{Q}xc6?$ 12
h3 is necessary. 12 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ 13
 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}xe2!$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}xe2$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ and
Black scored a brilliant victory
0-1

Keres–Schmid Bamberg, 1968



Black is about to complete his development with 12 ... e6. However, White succeeds in spiking his wheels.

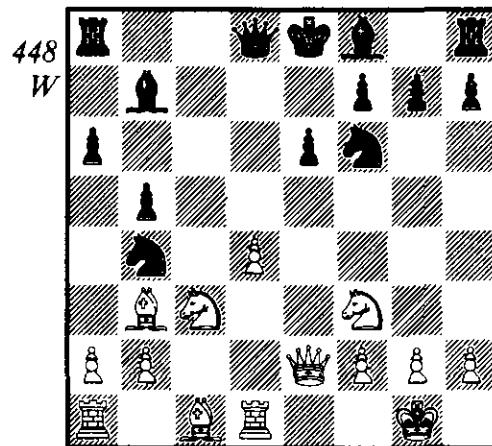
12 e6! $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ On 12 ... fxe6 comes 13 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ and 14 $\mathbb{Q}f4$. 13 $\mathbb{Q}g5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 13 ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$, returning the pawn, is more prudent. 14

$\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}f4$ f5 Unable to castle, the black king seeks refuge on f7.

16 $\mathbb{Q}c4!$ Obstructing ... e6. 16 ... c5 17 $\mathbb{Q}ad1$ Far superior to 17 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ and ... $\mathbb{Q}f7$. 17 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ Again, 17 ... e6 is unplayable, due to 18 $\mathbb{Q}a4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}d7+$. 18 f3! h6 19 fxe4 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ e6 21 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}fe1$ $\mathbb{Q}d8!$ is less accurate. 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xd8+$! $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 24 ... $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}e5$, forking both rooks and remaining a bishop up.

25 $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 27 c3 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 1-0 (in 52 moves).

Spassky–Avtonomov Leningrad, 1949

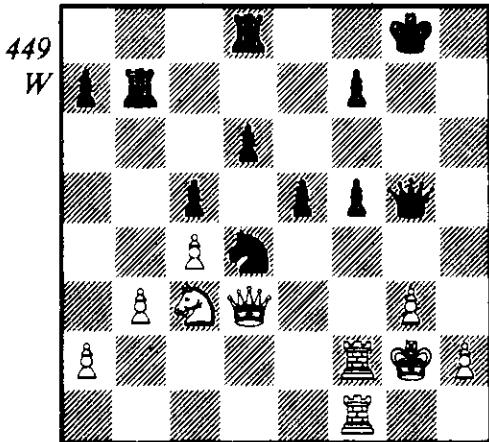


Preoccupied with the battle over the key d5 square, Black has neglected to provide for the safety of his king. It is not without irony that the initial thrust in White's demolition plan should revolve around the very outpost which Black has taken so many pains to control.

12 d5!! $\mathbb{Q}bx\mathbf{d}5$ 12 ... $\mathbb{Q}fx\mathbf{d}5$ and 12 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ cost a piece to 13 a3. 13 $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ Increasing the pressure on d5. 13 ... $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $gxf6$ 14 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ loses to 15 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$. 15 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $exd5$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ So that if Black castles, 18 $\mathbb{Q}f5$, threatening 19. $\mathbb{Q}g4+$, snatches the bishop. Likewise, 17 ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}ac1$ 0-0 (or 19 ... $\mathbb{Q}f8$) 20 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ wins.

17 ... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $h5$ 18 ... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ (18 ... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}e3-h6+$) 19 b4 $\mathbb{Q}b6$ (19 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}g4$) 20 $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$, as in the game. 19 $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 1-0 Spassky was 12 years old when this game was played.

Reshevsky–Fine Detroit, 1933

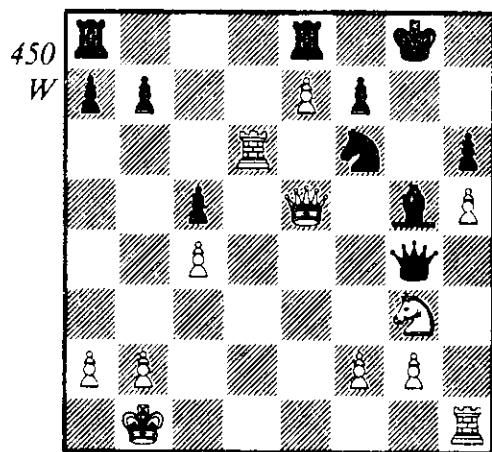


A pawn up, Black's rooks are less influential than White's. However, his knight is well placed and ... e4 is an annoying threat. With his next move, White nullifies all Black's trumps.

27 $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ The exchange-sacrifice has completely transformed the situation.

The imminent $\mathbb{Q}d5$ leaves Black without resource. 29 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}h5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ f5 34 $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 1-0

Karpov–Hübner Tilburg, 1982

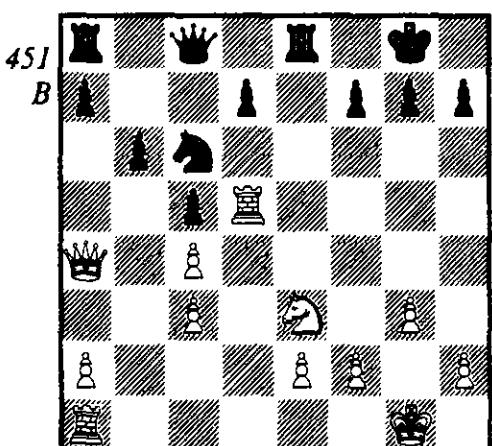


Karpov discards the obvious 24 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ and prefers to pursue his attack:

24 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ On 24 ... $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}f6$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ is powerful. 25 $\mathbb{Q}xd7!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd7$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $f6$ 26 ... $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}a1$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ leads to a lost ending after 29 $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}f5$, or 30 $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ $cxd4$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}b1$. 27 $\mathbb{Q}d5+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 28 $cxd5$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 29 $g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ The passed pawns guarantee White's victory. 30 ... $b5$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}f5$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 33 $d6$ $\mathbb{Q}a5$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}g5$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 36 $d7$ $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ 1-0

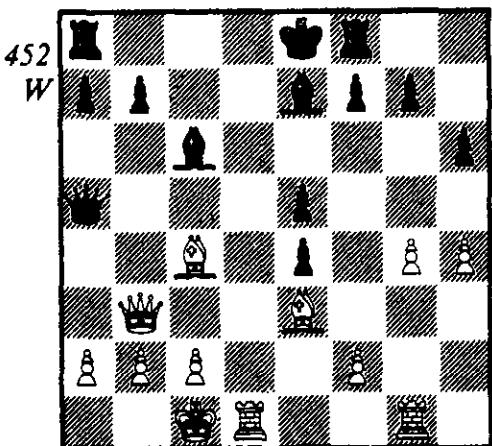
Benko–Keres Los Angeles, 1963

18 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe3!$ 19 $fxe3$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ The sacrifice of the exchange has further enfeebled White's pawn formation and procured the key-



square e5 for the unmolested use of his knight. Moreover, the pawn on e3 cannot be defended. 20 $\mathbb{w}c2$ $\mathbb{w}xe3+$ 21 $\mathbb{a}h1$ $\mathbb{d}e5$ 22 $\mathbb{d}f1$ $\mathbb{d}e8$ 23 $\mathbb{d}f4$ f6 24 $\mathbb{w}e4$ $\mathbb{d}g6$ 25 $\mathbb{w}xe3$ $\mathbb{d}xe3$ 26 $\mathbb{d}xd7$ Compulsory, since 26 $\mathbb{d}f2$ costs a pawn after 26 ... $\mathbb{d}e5$, as does 26 $\mathbb{d}f3$ $\mathbb{d}xe2$ 27 $\mathbb{d}xd7$ $\mathbb{d}e5$. 26 ... $\mathbb{d}xf4$ 27 gxf4 $\mathbb{d}xe2$ 28 $\mathbb{d}xa7$ $\mathbb{d}f2$ 29 $\mathbb{d}b7$ $\mathbb{d}xf4$ 30 $\mathbb{d}xb6$ $\mathbb{d}xc4$ 31 $\mathbb{d}b3$ $\mathbb{d}f7$ 0-1

Karpov–Sax Linares, 1983

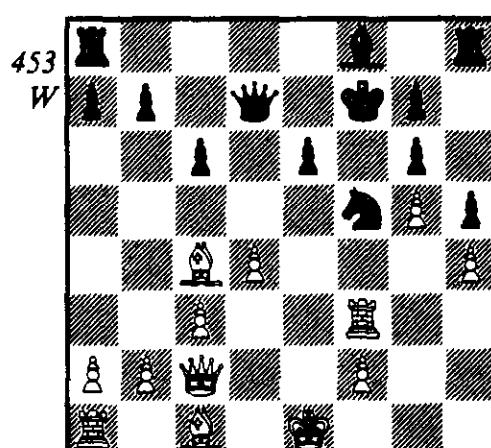


Black's extra pawn is meaningless. It is the plight of his king, stranded in the centre of the board, and the inactivity of his rook on f8 that matter.

18 $\mathbb{d}d5!$ $\mathbb{d}xd5$ 19 $\mathbb{d}xd5$ The bishop reigns supreme. 19 ... $\mathbb{d}d8$ 20 $\mathbb{a}c4$ 20 $\mathbb{d}xb7$ $\mathbb{d}c5!$ gives Black chances. 20 ... $\mathbb{d}b4$ 21 c3 b5 21 ... $\mathbb{d}d6$ 22 $\mathbb{w}xb7$. 22 $\mathbb{d}e2$ $\mathbb{d}d6$ 23 $\mathbb{d}d5$ More accurate than 23 $\mathbb{d}xb5+$ $\mathbb{d}e7$. 23 ... $\mathbb{d}e7$ 24 $\mathbb{d}c5!$ $\mathbb{d}xc5$ 24 ... f6 25 $\mathbb{d}d1$. 25 $\mathbb{w}xe5+$ $\mathbb{d}d7$ 26 $\mathbb{w}xc5$ $\mathbb{w}c7$ 27 $\mathbb{w}f5+$ $\mathbb{d}e7$ 28 $\mathbb{w}xe4+$ $\mathbb{d}d7$ 29 $\mathbb{w}f5+$ $\mathbb{d}e7$ 30 $\mathbb{d}e1$ Black's king is under constant attack.

30 ... $\mathbb{d}d6$ 31 $\mathbb{d}c4+$ $\mathbb{d}d8$ 32 $\mathbb{d}xb5$ a6 Or 32 ... $\mathbb{d}f6$ 33 $\mathbb{d}d5+$ $\mathbb{d}c8$ 34 $\mathbb{d}e7!$, as in the game. 33 $\mathbb{d}a4$ g6 34 $\mathbb{d}f3$ $\mathbb{d}c8$ 35 $\mathbb{d}e7!$ $\mathbb{d}d1+$ Capturing the rook allows mate in three or loses the queen. 36 $\mathbb{d}xd1$ $\mathbb{w}xe7$ 37 $\mathbb{w}a8+$ $\mathbb{d}c7$ 38 $\mathbb{w}a7+$ $\mathbb{d}d6$ 39 $\mathbb{w}b6+$ 1-0 39 ... $\mathbb{d}e5$ (d5) 40 $\mathbb{w}d4$ mates.

Karpov–Hort Bugojno, 1978

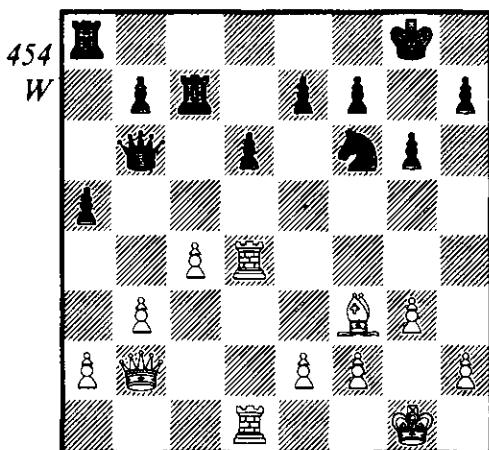


Black's king is driven into the centre of the board:

17 $\mathbb{d}xf5+!$ gxf5 18 $\mathbb{w}xf5+$ $\mathbb{d}e7$ 19 $\mathbb{w}e4$ $\mathbb{d}e8$ 20 $\mathbb{d}f4$ White's pieces rule the board and will be presently joined by his remaining rook. 20 ... $\mathbb{d}d8$ 21 $\mathbb{w}e5$ $\mathbb{d}g8$ 22

0-0-0 g6 23 $\blacksquare e1$ $\blacksquare g7$ 24 $\blacksquare b8+$
 $\blacksquare e7$ 25 $\blacksquare xe6+$ 1-0

Euwe–Carls
The Hague, 1928

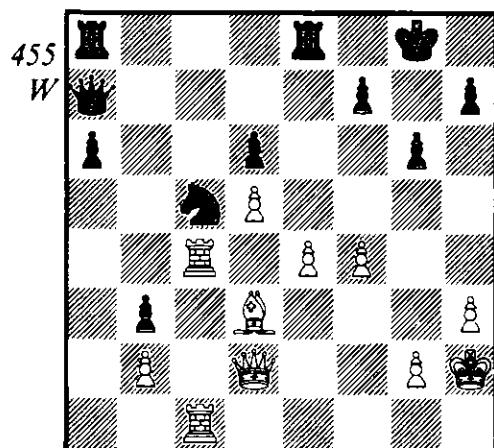


The immediate exchange-sacrifice 20 $\blacksquare xd6$ $exd6$ 21 $\blacksquare xf6$, though playable, does not promise very much. White's next move 20 h4 induces Black to weaken his g-pawn, after which the sacrifice gains strength.

20 ... h5? 20 ... $\blacksquare c5$ (20 ... $\blacksquare g7$ 21 g4) is correct. 21 $\blacksquare xd6!$ $exd6$ 22 $\blacksquare xf6$ $\blacksquare f8$ 22 ... $\blacksquare a6$ 23 $\blacksquare d5$ (with the black pawn on h5, $\blacksquare d5$ does threaten $\blacksquare xg6+$) $\blacksquare f8$ 24 $\blacksquare d3$. 23 $\blacksquare xd6$ $\blacksquare c5$ On 23 ... $\blacksquare b4$ 24 $\blacksquare xh5$ is possible. 24 $\blacksquare d5$ $\blacksquare h7$ 25 g4! $\blacksquare a3$ 26 $gxh5$ $\blacksquare c1+$ 27 $\blacksquare h2$ $\blacksquare h6$ 28 $\blacksquare xf7!$ $\blacksquare g7$ 28 ... \blacksquare (any)xf7 29 hxg6+ etc costs the queen. 29 $hxg6+$ $\blacksquare h8$ 30 $\blacksquare g5$ 1-0 The end could be 30 ... $\blacksquare 8xf7$ 31 $\blacksquare h5+$ $\blacksquare g8$ 32 $gxf7+$ $\blacksquare xf7$ 33 $\blacksquare d8+$ $\blacksquare g7$ 34 $\blacksquare h8+$ $\blacksquare g6$ 35 $\blacksquare g8+$ and so on

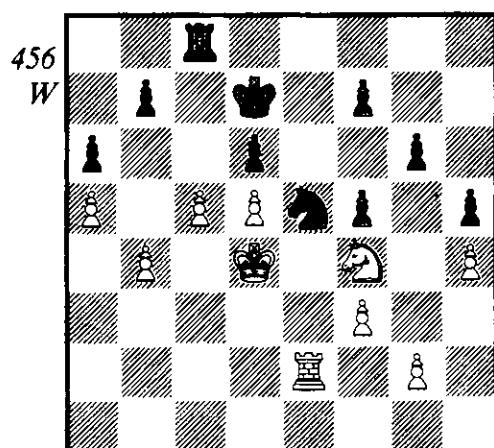
Gligoric–Matulovic
Palma de Mallorca, 1967

30 $\blacksquare xc5!$ The sacrifice of the exchange transforms the position



by activating White's central pawns and unveiling the a2–g8 diagonal for his bishop. 30 ... $dxc5$ 31 d6 $\blacksquare b6$ 32 $\blacksquare c4!$ $\blacksquare a7$ 32 ... $\blacksquare xe4?$ 33 $\blacksquare d5$. 33 e5 a5 34 $\blacksquare d5$ a4 35 d7 $\blacksquare f8$ 36 $\blacksquare d1$ $\blacksquare aa8$ 37 e6! $fxe6$ 37 ... $\blacksquare xe6$ 38 $\blacksquare xa8!$ 38 $\blacksquare e5!$ $\blacksquare f7$ 39 $\blacksquare d6$ $\blacksquare c7$ 40 $\blacksquare xe6+$ $\blacksquare e7$ 41 d8(\blacksquare) + $\blacksquare fxd8$ 42 $\blacksquare c4+$ 1-0 In view of 42 ... $\blacksquare f8$ 43 $\blacksquare f6+$ $\blacksquare g7$ 44 $\blacksquare f7+$, or 43 $\blacksquare f6+$ $\blacksquare e8$ 44 $\blacksquare b5+$ $\blacksquare d7$ 45 $\blacksquare e6$ mate.

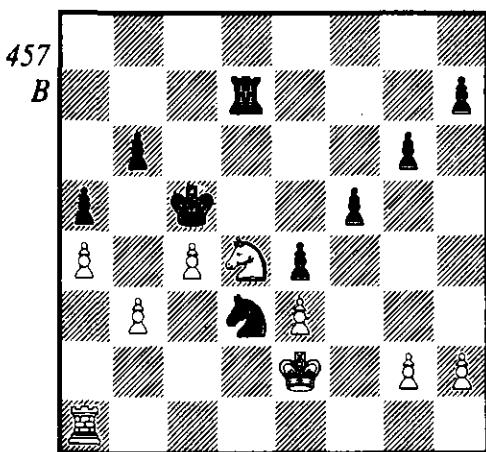
Bronstein–Olafsson
Portoroz, 1958



As in the next example, White coasts to victory by eliminating Black's active knight:

36 $\blacksquare xe5!$ $\blacksquare xe5+$ 37 $\blacksquare xe5$ $\blacksquare e8+$ The king's incursion cannot be prevented. 38 $\blacksquare f6$ $\blacksquare e3$ A forlorn foray. 39 $\blacksquare xf7$ $\blacksquare b3$ 40 $\blacksquare xg6$ $\blacksquare xb4$ 41 $\blacksquare e5+$ $\blacksquare c8$ 42 $d6$ $\blacksquare b2$ 43 $\blacksquare e8!$ $\blacksquare d2$ 44 $\blacksquare g6$ $\blacksquare b8$ 45 $g3$ $\blacksquare d1$ 46 $\blacksquare e7$ 1–0

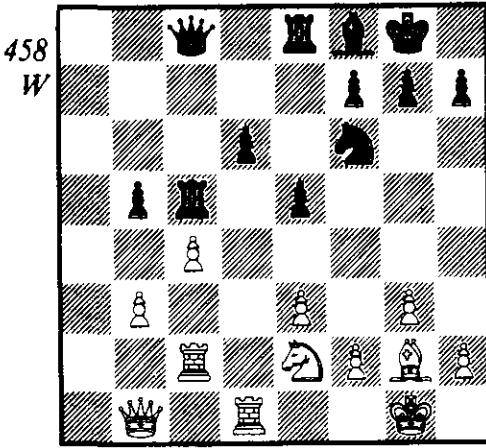
Merenyi–Capablanca Budapest, 1928



The exchange-sacrifice is the most convincing way of bringing home Black's advantage:

30 ... $\blacksquare xd4!$ 31 $exd4+$ $\blacksquare xd4$ 32 $g3$ $g5$ 33 $b4$ A last try. 33 ... $f4$ 34 $c5$ $f3+$ 35 $\blacksquare f1$ $e3$ 36 $\blacksquare e1$ $bxec5$ 0–1

Andersson–Gruenfeld Lucerne, 1982

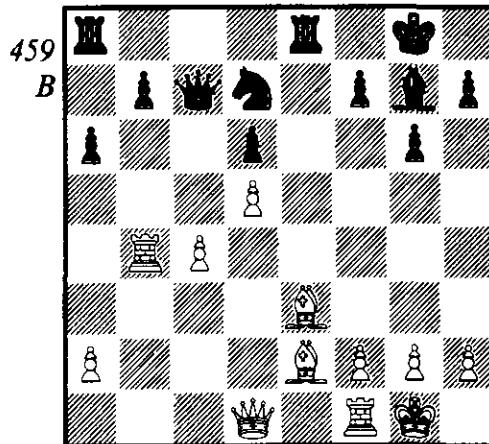


Black's last move, 24 ... $b5$, rids himself of the isolated pawn

and exerts pressure along the c-file. However, the Swedish Grandmaster, who is noted for his subtle understanding of the niceties of positional play, shows that the vital factor here is the power exuded by his long-ranging bishop.

25 $\blacksquare c3!!$ $bxcc4$ 25 ... $b4$ 26 $\blacksquare d5$ is no improvement. 26 $b4!$ $\blacksquare c7$ 27 $\blacksquare d5!$ Black must not be allowed to release his bishop with ... $d5$. 27 ... $\blacksquare xd5$ 28 $\blacksquare xd5$ $\blacksquare b8$ 29 $b5$ $\blacksquare c5$ This precipitates the end, but Black's game is beyond repair. 30 $b6$ $\blacksquare ec8$ 31 $e4$ $g6$ 32 $\blacksquare b4$ $\blacksquare 8c6$ 33 $\blacksquare b1$ $\blacksquare c8$ 34 $\blacksquare a4$ 1–0 If 34 ... $\blacksquare d8$, to stop 35 $\blacksquare d7$, 35 $\blacksquare a7$, while on 34 ... \blacksquare (any) $c7$ 35 $\blacksquare b4$ is probably simplest.

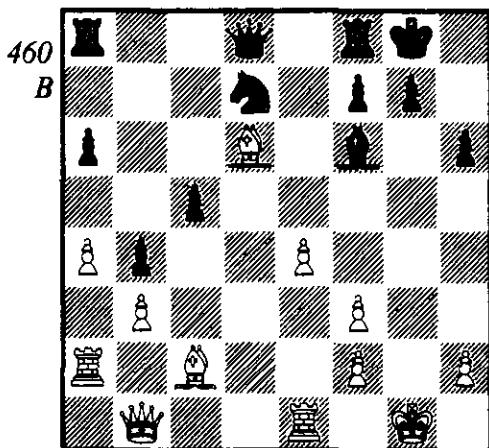
Polugayevsky–Petrosian Moscow, 1983



Yet another exchange-sacrifice from Petrosian's workshop:

19 ... $\blacksquare xe3!$ 20 $fxe3$ $\blacksquare c5$ 21 $\blacksquare c2$ $\blacksquare e8$ 22 $\blacksquare f3$ $\blacksquare h6$ 23 $\blacksquare c3$ $\blacksquare e7$ Black has the upper hand. Polugayevsky commits a blunder: 24 $\blacksquare b6??$ $\blacksquare a4$ 0–1

Levenfish-Keres
Moscow, 1939

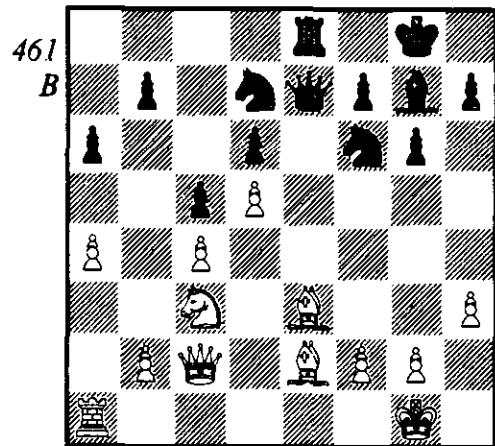


The normal 21 ... $\mathbb{E}e8$ gives White time to consolidate with 22 f4 (-e5), whereas 21 ... $\mathbb{Q}e5!!$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ (or 22 $\mathbb{Q}d1 \mathbb{Q}xf3+$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}h4+$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}h1) \mathbb{Q}xf3+$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}xe1+$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ is not quite convincing for winning purposes. Black's next move, ignoring the threat on the rook, assumes control of the important squares on the king's side and is decisive—whether or not the sacrifice of the Exchange is accepted.

21 ... $\mathbb{Q}e5!!$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xf8 \mathbb{Q}h4!$ Black's principal threat is 23 ... $\mathbb{Q}h3$. 23 $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}xh2+$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{Q}xf8$ The knight joins the attack. 25 $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{Q}e6$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}c4 \mathbb{Q}f4+$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}d1 \mathbb{Q}d8+$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}g2$ 28 ... $\mathbb{Q}c3$ first is quicker. 29 $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{Q}xf3+$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}c2 \mathbb{Q}xd5$ 31 exd5 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}f5+$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}dd3 \mathbb{Q}xf2+$ 0-1

Gelfer-Krajdman
Tel Aviv, 1981

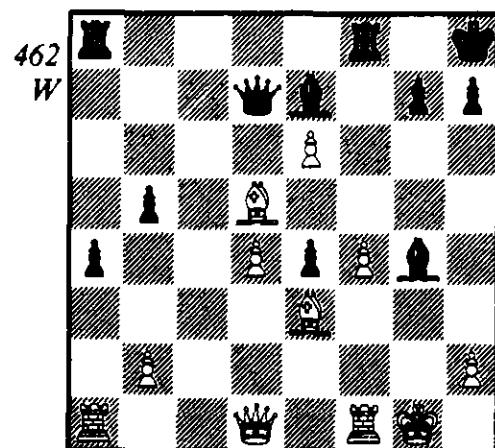
Black played 24 ... $\mathbb{W}f8$, intending to exchange the dark-



squared bishops with 25 ... $\mathbb{Q}h6$. This conceals a positional trap: should White attempt to discourage 25 ... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ with 25. g4? (to answer 25 ... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ with 26 g5), 25 ... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ would follow all the same, refuting 26 g5 with 26 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe3!$ 27 fxe3 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$, when Black has more than enough for the exchange.

In the game, White sidetracked this possibility with 25 $\mathbb{Q}d2$.

Treybal-Spielmann

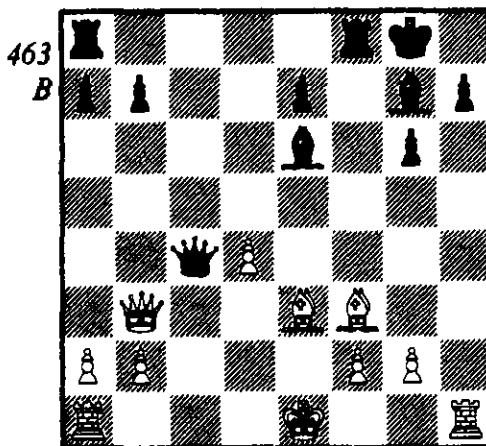


White's last move, 21 e6?!, anticipates 21 ... $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 22 $\mathbb{W}xg4$. Spielmann's response, 21 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe6!$, must have come as a surprise to him. In return for the exchange, Black obtains a pawn

and a firm grip on the light-coloured squares. Moreover, while all White's pawns are dispersed, Black can quickly create a dangerous passed pawn on the queen's flank.

The sequel was: 22 ♜xa8 ♜xa8 23 ♜c2 ♜c4 24 ♜f2 ♜d3 25 ♜d2 b4 26 ♜h1 b3 27 ♜g2 ♜b7 28 f5 a3 29 f6 ♜xf6 30 ♜xa3 ♜xa3 31 bxa3 ♜c2 32 ♜g1 ♜c8 33 a4 ♜f5 34 a5 ♜f3+ 35 ♜g2 h5 36 ♜g1 b2 0-1 After 37 ♜xc2 ♜xe3+ (c1) the b-pawn queens.

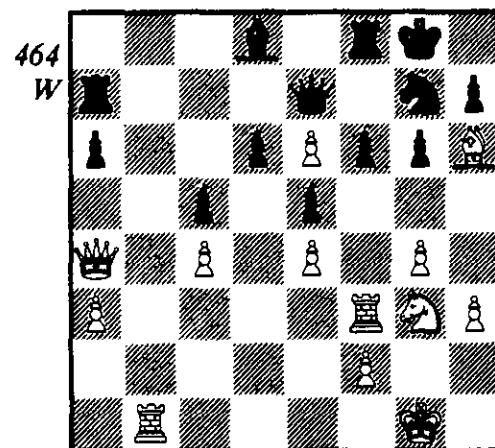
Smyslov–Botvinnik Moscow, 1958



In the diagram position White offered a draw, which Black accepted. In his notes to the game, Botvinnik recommends: 16 ... ♜xf3! 17 gxf3 ♜c6! 18 ♜d1 ♜d5 19 ♜h3 ♜e6, when Black's domination of the white squares and attacking chances outweigh his material deficit.

According to Botvinnik, he had overlooked that in the event of 17 ♜xc4 (instead of 17 gxf3), he had the intermediate 17 ... ♜xe3+! at his disposal.

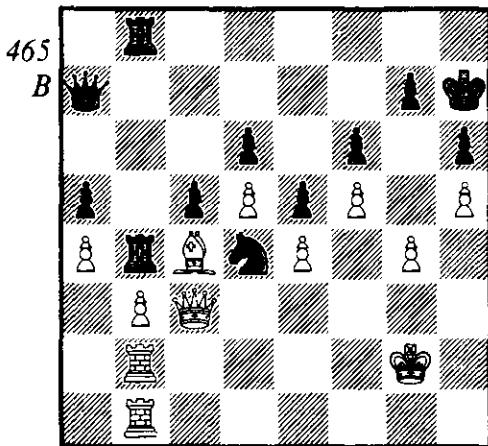
Bleiman–Vainger Israel, 1984



35 ♜f5! The knight is sacrificed to conserve the advanced passed pawn and to further restrict Black's already cramped pieces. 35 ... ♜xf5 36 ♜xf5 ♜e8 37 ♜xe8! White's material deficit does not deter him from exchanges! 37 ... ♜xe8 38 ♜g3 ♜a5 39 ♜g2! Contemplating the ending which follows. Curiously enough, Black is defenceless. Even if he inserts 39 ... ♜ea8, to avoid the ensuing loss of the a-pawn, 40 ♜f3 ♜h8 41 ♜xg7+ ♜xg7 42 ♜xg7 ♜xg7 43 ♜b7+ ♜g8 44 ♜d7 is painful. 39 ... ♜h8 40 ♜xg7+ ♜xg7 41 ♜xg7 ♜xg7 42 ♜b7+ ♜h6 43 ♜a7 ♜d8 Despite his extra bishop, Black is curiously helpless. 44 ♜xa6 ♜e7 45 ♜a7 ♜g7 46 a4 ♜f8 47 a5 ♜c8 48 a6 ♜c6 49 ♜a8+ ♜g7 50 ♜e8 ♜c7 51 ♜b8! 1-0

Yanofsky–Portisch Stockholm, 1962

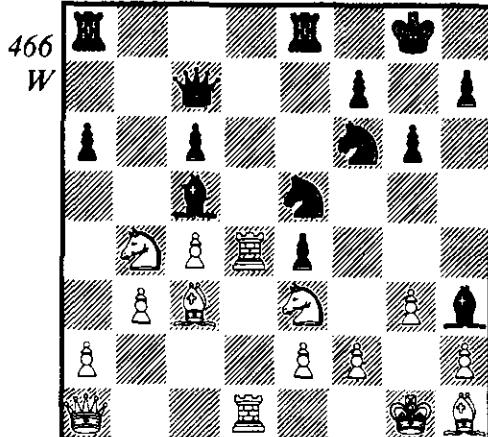
Black's rooks and knight are distinctly superior to White's

465
B

rooks and bishop. But how can he make progress?

48 ... $\mathbb{E}xc4!!$ 49 $\mathbb{W}xc4$ If 49 $bxc4 \mathbb{E}b4$ and ... $\mathbb{W}a6$ is powerful. 49 ... $\mathbb{E}b4$ 50 $\mathbb{W}c3 \mathbb{W}a6$ 51 $\mathbb{Q}f2 c4!$ The c-file is to serve as a base for the final onslaught. 52 $bxc4 \mathbb{E}xc4$ 53 $\mathbb{W}a3 \mathbb{W}c8!$ Move by move, Black's threats accumulate. 54 $\mathbb{E}d2 \mathbb{E}c3$ 55 $\mathbb{W}b2 \mathbb{W}c4$ 56 $\mathbb{W}g2 \mathbb{Q}b3$ 57 $\mathbb{E}e2 \mathbb{W}d3$ 58 $\mathbb{E}be1$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ The most logical. 59 $\mathbb{Q}h1 \mathbb{W}h3+$ 60 $\mathbb{E}h2 \mathbb{W}f3+$ 61 $\mathbb{W}g1 \mathbb{W}g3+$ 62 $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{Q}f3!$ 0–1

Andersson–Larsen Stockholm, 1975

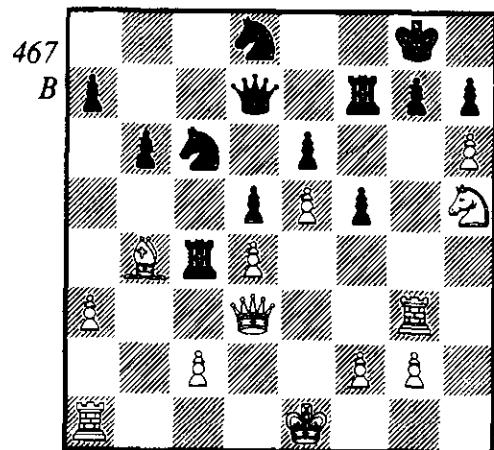
466
W

Not relishing 27 $\mathbb{E}4d2 \mathbb{Q}xe3$ 28 $\mathbb{fxe}3 \mathbb{Q}fg4$, White preferred to

leave his rook *en prise* and capitalize on his control of the long diagonal.

27 $\mathbb{Q}bc2! \mathbb{Q}xd4$ 28 $\mathbb{E}xd4 \mathbb{Q}ed7$ 29 $\mathbb{W}c1 \mathbb{E}e6$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}xg2$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}xg2 \mathbb{E}ae8$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ with ample compensation for the exchange.

Hort–Petrosian Kapfenberg, 1970

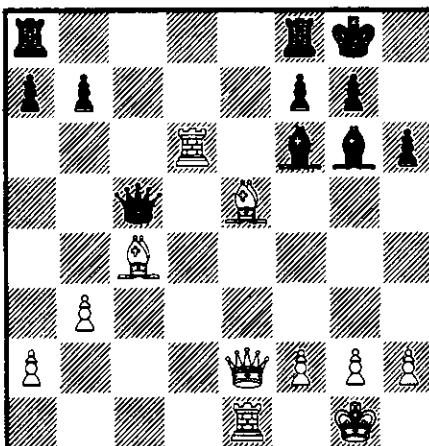
467
B

White's attack has reached its peak: 21 ... $\mathbb{E}xd4?$ loses material to 22 $\mathbb{Q}xg7+ \mathbb{E}xg7$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ etc. Petrosian's exchange-sacrifice, forced though it is, is the turning point of the struggle.

21 ... $\mathbb{g}6!$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}f6+ \mathbb{E}xf6$ 23 $\mathbb{exf}6 \mathbb{Q}f7$ 23 ... $\mathbb{E}xd4$ is possible but Black is intent on enhancing the scope of his knights and is in no hurry to gain material. 24 $\mathbb{W}d2 \mathbb{E}xd4$ 25 $\mathbb{E}d3 \mathbb{E}h4$ 26 $\mathbb{E}h3 \mathbb{E}g4$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{Q}d6$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ is equally unpromising. 28 ... $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 29 $\mathbb{W}d3 \mathbb{Q}c5$ 30 $\mathbb{W}d1 \mathbb{E}c4$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ $b5$ 33 $\mathbb{W}e2 \mathbb{W}d6$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{Q}e4$ 35 $\mathbb{E}d3 \mathbb{W}c5$ 36 $\mathbb{E}c1$ $e5$ 37 $\mathbb{W}e3$ $d4$ 38 $\mathbb{W}e2 \mathbb{Q}xf6$ 39 $\mathbb{E}dd1 \mathbb{Q}d5$ 40 $\mathbb{W}d2$ $e4$ 0–1 On 41 $\mathbb{W}g5$, simply 41 ... $\mathbb{E}xc2$.

Smyslov-Trifunovic

Zagreb, 1955

468
W

Trifunovic, who was known for his drawing tendencies, must have expected 24 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{W}xd6$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}e7$, with a likely draw. 24 $\mathbb{R}d5$ $\mathbb{W}e7$ and 24 $\mathbb{Q}g3$ also do not promise White much. Smyslov has other ideas:

24 $\mathbb{R}xf6!$ $gxf6$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ $\mathbb{W}h5$
Apart from 26 $\mathbb{Q}e7$, Black must guard against mating threats along the a1-h8 diagonal. On 25 ... $\mathbb{W}c6$ 26 $\mathbb{W}b2$ $\mathbb{R}fe8$ 27 $\mathbb{R}c1$ b5 (hoping for 28 $\mathbb{Q}xf7+?$) 28 $\mathbb{Q}h8$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}h6$ is overwhelming. 27 h3 $\mathbb{W}f5$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 29 g4! The pawn storm enables White to regain the sacrificed material with interest. 29 ... $\mathbb{W}g5$ 29 ... $\mathbb{W}c2$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}d2$.

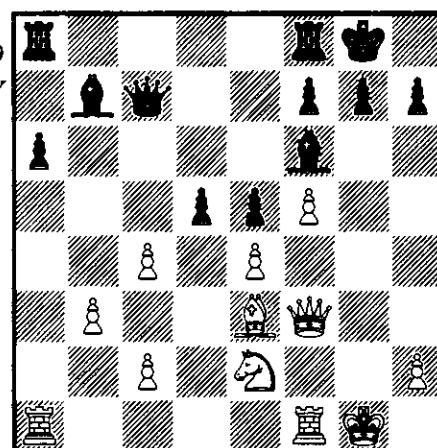
30 f4 $\mathbb{W}h4$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}g2!$ Preparing 32 f5 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 33 $\mathbb{W}e5!$, which, if played at once, allows Black to escape with a draw after 31 ... $\mathbb{R}ae8$ 32 $\mathbb{W}xg6+$ $\mathbb{W}xg6$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}e5$ (33 $\mathbb{W}xe8$ $\mathbb{R}xe8$ 34 $\mathbb{R}xe8$ $\mathbb{W}g3+$) $\mathbb{R}xe5$ 34 $\mathbb{W}xe5$ $\mathbb{W}f2+$ etc. 31 ... $\mathbb{R}g8$ Now 31 ... $\mathbb{R}ae8$ is defeated by 32 $\mathbb{W}xe8$ $\mathbb{R}xe8$ 33 $\mathbb{R}xe8$ f6 34

$\mathbb{R}e7+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 35 g5 or 35 $\mathbb{Q}el.$ 32 $\mathbb{W}e7!$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 33 $\mathbb{R}xe7$ $\mathbb{R}ae8$ 34 $\mathbb{R}xe8$ $\mathbb{R}xe8$ 35 f5 with a fairly easy win.

Vintage Smyslov.

Fischer-Hamann

Netanya, 1968

469
W

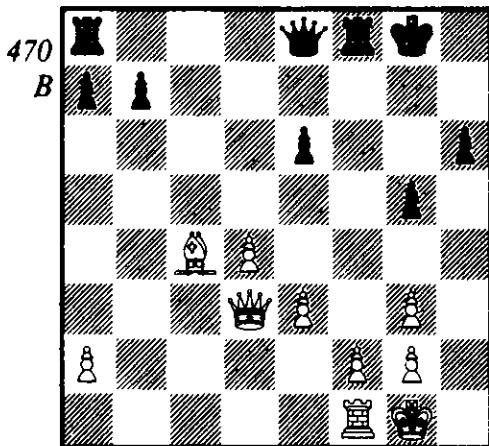
Black's thrust, 19 ... d5, appears to offer him counterplay (20 cxd5 $\mathbb{W}xc2$). Fischer's exchange-sacrifice neutralizes the black bishop on b7 and sets rolling an avalanche of pawns, against which Black is helpless.

20 exd5! e4 21 $\mathbb{W}g3!$ 21 $\mathbb{W}xe4$? gives Black too much play along the e-file. 21 ... $\mathbb{W}xg3+$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ 23 $\mathbb{R}xa1$ f6 24 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{R}fe8$ 25 $\mathbb{R}d1$ a5 26 c5 The glory belongs to the soldiering infantry. 26 ... $\mathbb{R}ed8$ 27 c4 a4 28 b4! a3 29 b5 a2 30 $\mathbb{R}a1$ $\mathbb{R}a4$ 31 c6 $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 1-0

Olafsson-Fischer

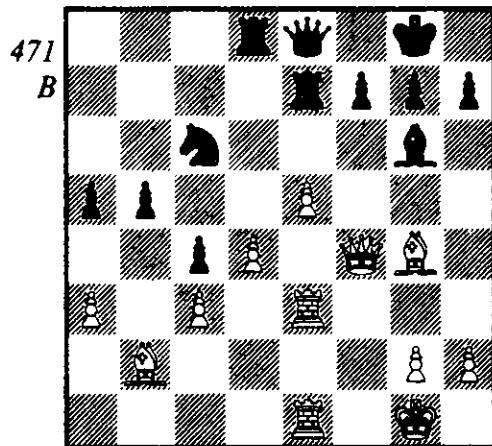
Portoroz, 1958

White has ample compensation for the exchange in the form of a strong bishop, an active queen (to



470

B



471

B

be posted on e4 or e5) and above all, the insecurity surrounding the black king and the weakness of his pawn on e6.

24... ♜f6 25 ♜e4 ♜c8 26 ♜b3 ♜d7 27 ♜d1 ♜e8 28 f4! Making use of an additional trump: his pawn-majority **28 ... ♜h7 29 ♜e5! ♜f5 30 g4! ♜xe5 31 dxе5 ♜f7 32 f5 ♜c7 33 ♜d6!** 33 ♜xe6+? ♜xe6 34 fxe6 recovers the exchange but saddles White with tripled isolated e-pawns and doubled, isolated g-pawns. **33 ... ♜c5 34 ♜xe6+ ♜f8 35 ♜b3 ♜cxe5 36 ♜xh6 ♜xe3 37 ♜g6 ♜8e4 38 ♜xg5 ♜g3 39 ♜g8+ ♜e7 40 g5 ♜e2 41 ♜d5 ♜d6 42 ♜f3 ♜xa2 43 f6 ♜e6 44 ♜e8+** 1-0 On 44 ... ♜f7 45 ♜h5+ is mate. On other moves, the f-pawn queens.

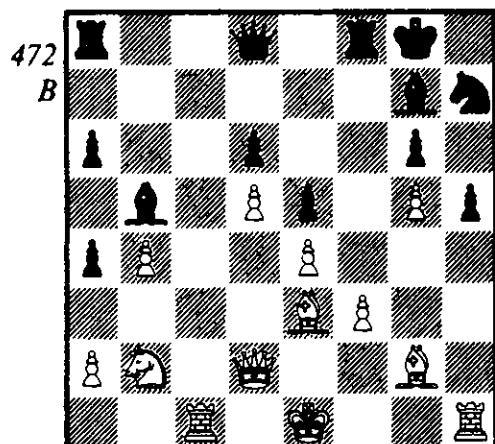
Reshevsky–Petrosian Zurich, 1953

Black faces the unpleasant threat **26 h4 h6 27 h5 ♜h7 28 e6 fxe6 29 ♜xe6+**. Clearly, he must try and restrain White's central pawns:

25... ♜e6! Vacating e7 for his knight which will ensconce itself

on d5, establishing a firm blockade on the light-coloured squares. Possibly White should decline the exchange-sacrifice and continue **26 h4–h5**, coupled with **♜g3**. **26 a4 ♜e7 27 ♜xe6 fxe6 28 ♜f1 ♜d5 29 ♜f3 ♜d3** Here the U.S. grandmaster decided it was prudent to return the exchange with **30 ♜xd3** and the game ended in a draw 11 moves later.

Every–Gligoric USA, 1971



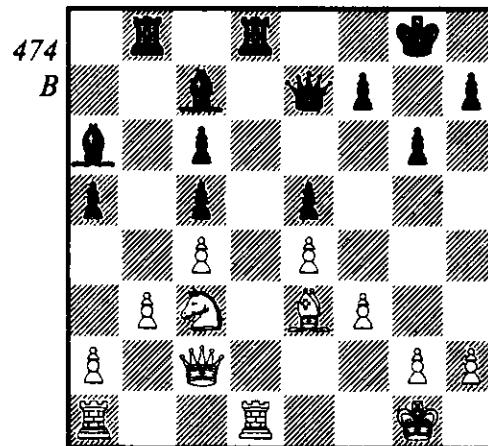
472

B

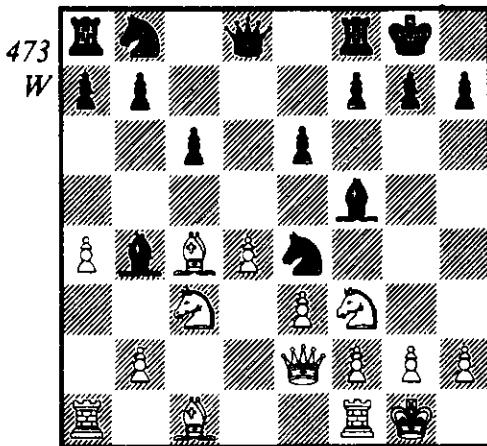
Black's pieces spring to life following **21... ♜f4!** The exchange-sacrifice cannot be declined, owing to the threat on g5. **22 ♜xf4 exf4 23 ♜d3 ♜xg5 24 ♜c2 24 ♜xf4?** (24 ♜xf4? ♜xd3) ♜h6.

24 ... ♜f8 25 ♜d1 White's king can find no safe haven: 25 0-0 $\text{xd}4+$ etc. 25 ... $a3!$ 26 $\text{c}1$ $\text{a}4$ 27 $\text{b}3$ $\text{b}2$ 28 $\text{xb}2$ 28 $\text{c}6$ $\text{xb}3+!$ 29 $\text{axb}3$ $\text{e}5!$ is worse. 28 ... $\text{axb}2$ 29 $\text{xb}2$ $\text{b}8$ 30 $\text{d}2$ $f6$ 31 $c1$ $\text{xb}3$ 32 $\text{axb}3$ $\text{e}5$ 33 $b1$ $g5$ The advance of the kingside pawns settles the issue. 34 $c1$ $g4$ 35 $c7$ $h7!$ Stooping to conquer. 36 $a2$ $g5$ 37 $e2$ $h4!$ 38 $\text{fxg}4$ $f8$ 39 $f3$ $d4$ 40 $c4$ $e3$ 0-1

Lyublinsky–Botvinnik Moscow, 1943



Polugayevsky–Romanishin Tbilisi, 1978



A typical pawn-sacrifice in the Slav Defence, dating from the 1930's:

10 ♜d3! ♜xc3 10 ... $\text{xc}3$ 11 $\text{bxc}3$ $\text{xc}3$ leads to similar play. 11 $\text{bxc}3$ $\text{xc}3$ 12 $\text{c}2$ $\text{xd}3$ 13 $\text{xd}3$ $\text{d}5$ 14 $b1$ $b6$ 15 $a3$ $e8$ 16 $f1$ $f6$ 17 $e4$ $f4$ 18 $e3$ $g6$ 19 $h4$ $h5$ 20 $e5$ $f5$ 21 $d6!$ White's pressure along the half-open b- and c-files, combined with his control of the a3–f8 diagonal, more than compensates for the pawn.

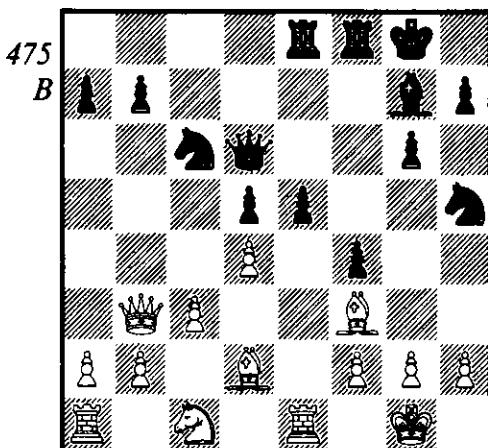
In this closed position, the black bishops lack breathing space. Moreover, the pawn on c5 is doomed to fall. Thus the sacrifice of the exchange that ensues is virtually forced. It is also good.

25 ... ♜d4! 26 $\text{e}2?$ The knight belongs on d3. Therefore 26 $\text{xd}4$ $\text{cxd}4$ 27 $\text{a}4$ – b 2– d 3 is appropriate. The same remark applies to White's next move (27 $\text{xd}4!$ $\text{cxd}4$ 28 $\text{c}1$ – d 3). 26 ... $\text{c}8$ 27 $\text{xd}4?$ $\text{cxd}4$ 28 $f2$ $c5$ 29 $f1$ $f5$ 30 $g3$ $d7$ 31 $a1$ $f4$ 32 $f2$ $g5$ The initiative is firmly in Black's hands and White's next move exacerbates his problems.

33 $g4?$ $\text{fxg}3$ 34 $\text{g}3$ $h3$ 35 $f2$ $h5$ 36 $d2$ $h4$ 37 $f2$ $f8$ 38 $d3$ $f4$ 39 $h1$ $h7$ 40 $g1$ $d8$ 41 $e2$ $f7$ 42 $d1$ Taking the sting out of 42 ... $g4$ —because of 43 $\text{fxg}4$ $x\text{f}2$ 44 $x\text{h}3$. If 42 $e1$ $g4!$ 43 $\text{fxg}4$ $x\text{g}4!$ 44 $x\text{g}4$ $x\text{g}4$ 45 $x\text{g}4$ $f1+$ 46 $g1$ $xd3$ 47 $g4$ $f1+$ 48 $g1$ $e2$, annexing the e-pawn. 42 ... $h5$ 43 $e3$

Otherwise ... g4. 43 ... $\mathbb{W}xf3+$ 44 $\mathbb{W}xf3$ $\mathbb{B}xf3$ 45 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{B}xd3$ 0-1 (in 53 moves).

Fischer–Czerniak
Netanya, 1968



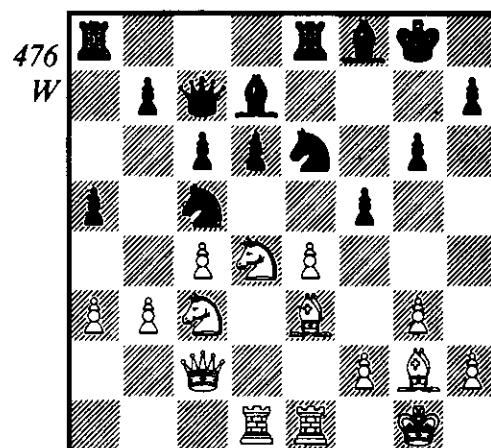
In this position, Black played the obvious 17 ... $exd4$ (17 ... e4? 18 $\mathbb{B}xe4$) anticipating 18 $\mathbb{W}xd5+$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$. Fischer responded with 18 $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ $\mathbb{B}d8?$ — 18 ... $dxc3$ is essential — 19 $c4!$ and obtained an enduring initiative for the temporarily sacrificed pawn.

The sequel was: 19 ... $dxc4$ 20 $\mathbb{W}xc4+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 21 $\mathbb{B}e6$ $\mathbb{W}b8$ 22 $\mathbb{B}a1$ $\mathbb{B}c8$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ $\mathbb{B}xc6$ 24 $\mathbb{B}xc6$ $bxc6$ 25 $\mathbb{W}xc6$ $\mathbb{W}c8$ 26 $\mathbb{W}xc8$ $\mathbb{B}xc8$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}h6?$ 27 ... g5 looks better. 28 $\mathbb{B}c1$ Also good is 28 f3, intending 28 $\mathbb{B}e7$ (e4).

28 ... $\mathbb{B}xc1+$ Forced, but the weakness of the black pawns and the proximity of the white king militate against him. 29 $\mathbb{Q}xc1$ g5 30 b4 In addition, White has a mobile pawn majority. 30 ... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 31 b5 $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}e5+$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 33 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ also results in the

loss of the a-pawn. 34 $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 1-0

Botvinnik–Pachman
Oberhausen, 1961



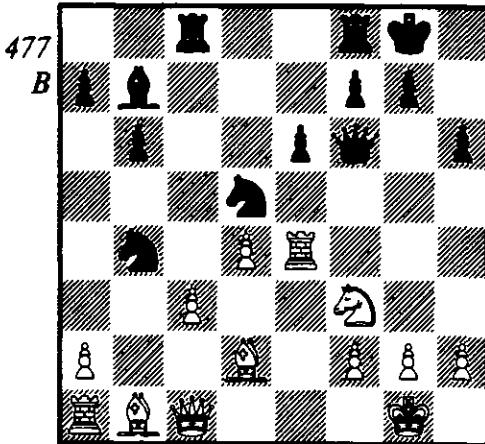
Black has reckoned with 30 b4 $axb4$ 31 $axb4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ or 30 $exf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xf5$. Botvinnik surprises him with a positional knight-sacrifice of the highest order.

30 $\mathbb{Q}xf5!$ $gxf5$ 31 $exf5$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 32 g4 “White’s pawns are very strong. The scattered nature of Black’s pieces and the open position of his king make his game critical.”: Botvinnik. 32 ... $\mathbb{B}e5$ Trying for 33 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$, which White foils. 32 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ forthwith was the only chance.

33 $\mathbb{Q}d4!$ $\mathbb{B}xe1+$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}xe1$ $\mathbb{B}e8$ 35 $\mathbb{B}d1$ $\mathbb{B}c8$ 36 b4 $axb4$ 37 $axb4$ $\mathbb{Q}a6$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}e4!$ $\mathbb{B}xe4$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ 40 $\mathbb{W}d2$ d5 41 cxd5 cxd5 42 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ 1-0

Petrosian–Smyslov
Moscow, 1961

Pressure along the c-file and down the long diagonal enables



Black to initiate a forcing sequence of moves, against which White is helpless.

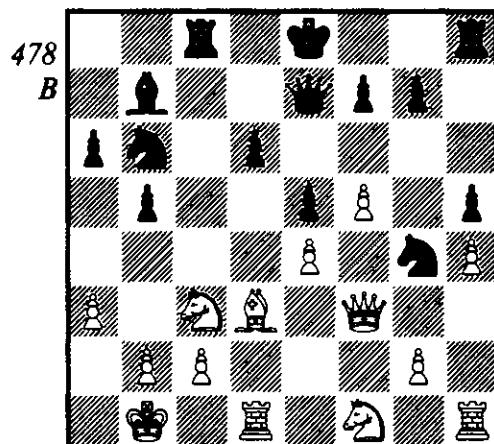
18 ... ♜xc3! Tactically pleasing though it may be, this combination, like most worthy combinations, is primarily positionally motivated.

19 ♜xc3 ♜c8 20 ♜e1 ♜xc3 21 ♜e3 ♜bd5 22 ♜e4 22 ♜d3 succumbs to **22 ... ♜f4 23 ♜e3** (**23 ♜xc3 ♜xc3!**) **24 ♜ce2+** coupled with **24 ... ♜c1. 22 ... ♜xe4! 23 ♜xe4 ♜b4!** Regaining the exchange while maintaining the attack. Note that if the black h-pawn were on its original square, **24 ♜c1!** at this point would render Black's combination unsound.

24 ♜xe6 fxe6 25 ♜xb4 ♜xf3 26 gxf3 ♜xf3 27 ♜d6 ♜g4+ 28 ♜f1 ♜c4 29 ♜e1 ♜xd4 30 ♜xe6+ ♜xe6 31 ♜xe6 ♜a4 0-1

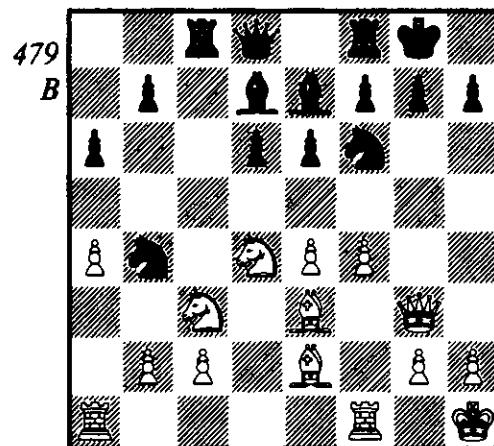
Ader–Fischer
Santiago, 1959

White's desperate measures save him from mate by ... ♜xa3 and ... ♜a4 but not from instant defeat.



18 ... ♜xc3 19 bxc3 d5 20 ♜e2 0-0 21 ♜xb5 axb5 22 ♜xb5 ♜c4 23 ♜b4 ♜xb4+ 24 cxb4 ♜f2 0-1

Jansa–Polugayevsky
Skara, 1980



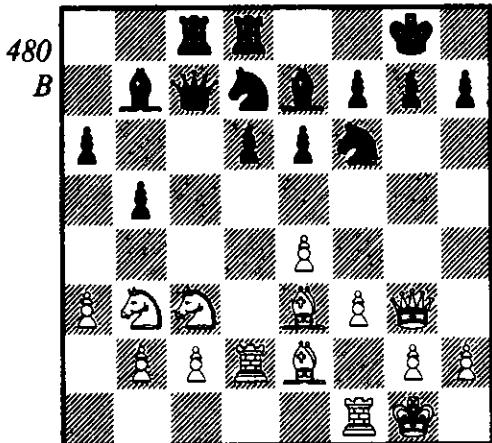
Black's first move from the diagram can scarcely be termed a sacrifice:

13 ... ♜xc3! 14 bxc3 ♜xe4 15 ♜e1 On **15 ♜f3** Black planned **15 ... ♜xc3 16 a5 ♜bd5. 15 ... ♜d5 16 ♜f3 ♜dxc3 17 ♜e2 ♜f6 18 ♜d4** An attempt to lessen the pressure by exchanges: **18 ... ♜xe2 19 ♜xf6. 18 ... ♜xd4 19 ♜xd4 f5** Establishing a stronghold for the knight, **20 ♜xe4** Else White will encounter difficulties in developing his rooks.

20 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 21 $\mathbb{W}b4$ $\mathbb{W}c7$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}ab1$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}bd1$ $\mathbb{W}c3$ Black's assets (the central pawns) and White's liabilities (the isolated a- and c-pawns) come to the fore in the ending. 24 $\mathbb{W}xc3$ $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}de1$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 26 $a5$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}fe1$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 30 $g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ Freeing the rook. 31 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $g6$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 35 $c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}b3$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ Not giving White the slightest chance.

White sealed 41 $h3$ and resigned without resuming play.

Schubert–Georgiev
Groningen, 1978



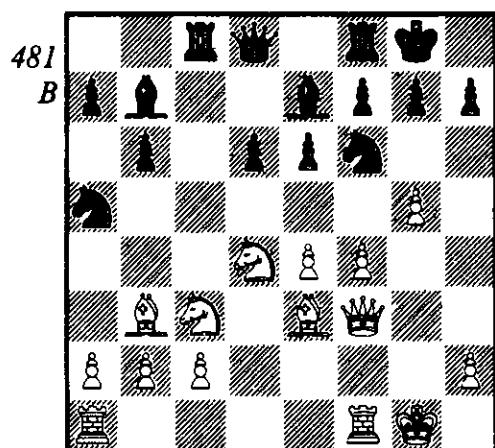
Here although the trappings of the exchange-sacrifice are slightly different, its underlying ideas are analogous.

15 ... $d5!$ 16 $\mathbb{W}xc7$ $\mathbb{Q}xc7$ 17 $e5$ Expecting 17 ... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 18 $f4$ and $\mathbb{Q}d4$. 17 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}b6$ $\mathbb{Q}cc8$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}b6+$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 22 $c3$ $\mathbb{Q}d6$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}dc4$ Black's judgement has been vindicated.

24 $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $a5$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 27 $f4$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 28 $g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}de2$ $\mathbb{Q}c8$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}g4$ $f6$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}d3$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $h6$ 36 $f5$ $e5$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}e6$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 38 $fxe6$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}g2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ $a4$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $e4$ 42 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ 43 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $f5$ 44 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $g5$ 45 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $f4$ 0–1

Padevsky–Botvinnik

Moscow, 1956



White's assault seems ominous: if the threatened knight retreats to $d7$, the knight-sacrifice on $e6$ suggests itself. By sacrificing the Exchange, Black not only subdues White's initiative but also goes over to the attack himself.

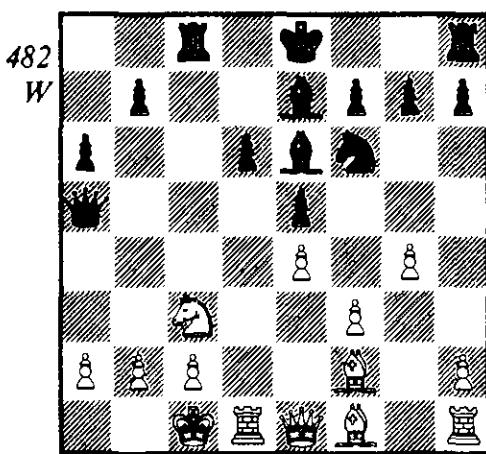
13 ... $\mathbb{Q}xc3!$ 14 $bxc3$ 14 $gxf6$ $\mathbb{Q}xe3$ 15 $\mathbb{W}xe3$ $\mathbb{Q}xf6$, conserving the e-pawn and keeping the $a8–h1$ diagonal closed, is preferable, although even then Black's two bishops and the open position of the white king give him the edge.

14 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 15 $\mathbb{W}g4$ $\mathbb{W}c8!$ Planning to repulse 16 $f5$ with 16 ... $e5$ 17 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 18 $axb3$ $\mathbb{W}xc3$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}ae1$ $d5$ and ... $\mathbb{Q}c5$. 16 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 17 $axb3$ $f5$ 18 $\mathbb{W}h4$

Pursuing his abortive attack. On 18 gxf6 $\mathbb{W}xf6!$ (threat: 19 ... $\mathbb{W}g6$) is best. 18 ... e5! 19 $\mathbb{W}h3$ h6 20 $\mathbb{W}h5$ $\mathbb{W}xc3$ 21 $\mathbb{W}d1$ exd4 22 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}xc2$ 23 gxh6 $\mathbb{Q}f6$. 22 ... $\mathbb{W}c6$ 23 gxh6 $\mathbb{Q}g5!$ 24 $\mathbb{W}g3$ $\mathbb{W}h1+$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}e4+$ 0-1

Kudrin–Reshevsky

Lugano, 1985



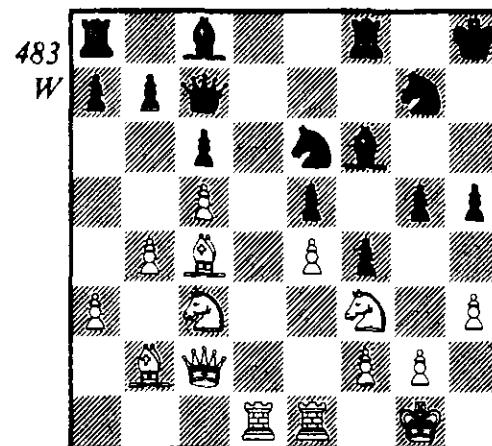
White fails to provide against the thematic exchange-sacrifice on c3.

14 $\mathbb{Q}b1?$ Correct is 14 a3, when 14 ... $\mathbb{W}xc3$ would be dubious in view of 15 $\mathbb{W}xc3$ $\mathbb{W}xc3$ 16 bxc3 and if 14 ... d5 15 g5. 14 ... $\mathbb{W}xc3$ Of course! 15 $\mathbb{W}xc3$ $\mathbb{W}xa2+$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ d5! 17 $\mathbb{W}xe5$ 0-0 18 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{W}d8!$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ h6 20 $\mathbb{W}c7$ dx $e4$ 21 $\mathbb{W}xe7$ $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 22 fx $e4$ $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 23 $\mathbb{W}e8+$ $\mathbb{Q}h7$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}xe4+$ $\mathbb{W}xe4$ 25 $\mathbb{W}d8$ $\mathbb{W}a1+$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{W}xb2$ 27 $\mathbb{W}d3$ f5 28 $\mathbb{Q}b1$ $\mathbb{W}e5$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}be1$ $\mathbb{W}a5+$ 30 c3 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 31 $\mathbb{W}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{W}a1+$ 33 $\mathbb{W}c1$ $\mathbb{W}a4+$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{W}a2+$ 0-1

O. Bernstein–Najdorf

Montevideo, 1954

Faced with the threat 21 ... g4, the 72 year old veteran launches a



sacrifice-studded assault, in which the bishops figure prominently.

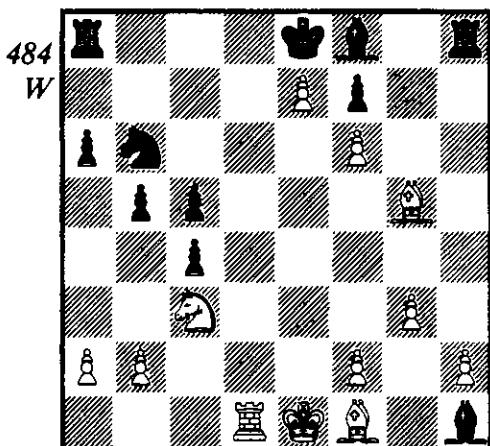
21 $\mathbb{Q}d5!!$ $\mathbb{W}xd5$ 22 exd5 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ exd4 24 d6 $\mathbb{W}d7$ To be able to counter 25 $\mathbb{W}g6$ with 25 ... $\mathbb{W}f5$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$ Opening the long diagonal. 25 ... f3 25 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ loses instantly to 26 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}e8$ 27 $\mathbb{W}g6!$ $\mathbb{W}xe1+$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}h2$, and mate is inevitable. But 25 ... $\mathbb{W}f5$ holds out a little longer.

Here the Grand Old Man played 26 $\mathbb{Q}de4!?$ which proved sufficient to win. The neatest way of capitalizing on the bishops' immense joint prowess is 26 $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ (26 ... $\mathbb{W}f5$ drops the queen to 27 $\mathbb{Q}d3$) 27 dx $e7$ $\mathbb{W}xe7$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}d6!$, when even the radical 28 ... $\mathbb{W}xd6$ (28 ... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ and mates in two) wards off mate only for a few moves.

Polugayevsky–Torre

Moscow, 1981

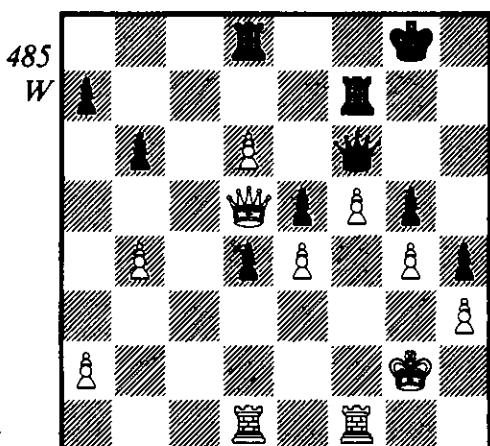
Until this game, the above position was considered roughly equal in view of the continuation 17 exf8(\mathbb{W})+ $\mathbb{Q}xf8$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{Q}h5$. Polugayevsky's innovation obliged the theoreticians to revise their assessment. A rook



down, White abstained from capturing the bishop and played:

17 h4! ♜h6 18 f4! The bevy of white pawns keeps Black's rook out of the game. **18 ... b4 19 ♜d6!** Vacating d1 for his knight: **19 ... bxc3** misfires against **20 ♜xb6 cxb2 21 ♜xc4**, when the need to protect the pawn on f7 renders Black curiously resourceless. **19 ... ♜b8 20 ♜d1 ♜xg5 21 fxg5 ♜d5 22 ♜xc4 ♜xe7 23 fxe7 ♜xe7 24 ♜f6** 1-0 in 40 moves.

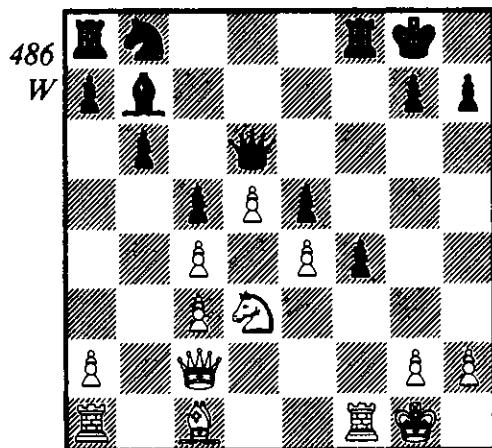
Csom–Yusupov Lucerne, 1982



With White's d-pawn about to fall, Black appears to stand well. A rook-sacrifice enables White to create a rolling pawn mass:

41 ♜xd4! exd4 42 e5 ♜g7 43 e6 ♜f6 44 e7! Regaining the rook (if **44 ... ♜e8 45 ♜e1** and **46 d7** or **46 ♜e6**) is the most advantageous way and remaining with the passed d-pawn. **44 ... d3 45 exd8(+) ♜xd8 46 ♜d1 ♜e8 47 ♜xd3 ♜e5 48 ♜d2 48 d7? ♜xd7!** **48 ... ♜f8 49 ♜e2 ♜f4 50 ♜e4 ♜c1 51 d7 ♜b2+ 52 ♜f3** 1-0

Inkiov–Psakhis Minsk, 1982

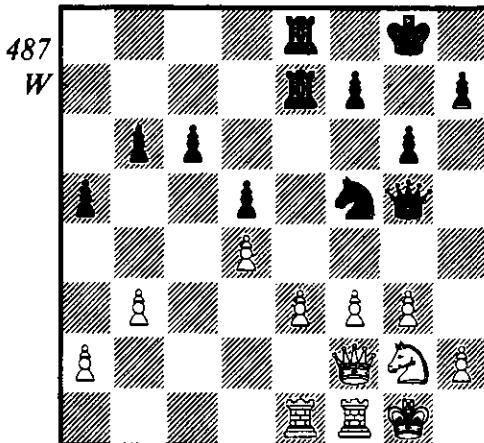


White must act swiftly, lest Black complete his development and initiate a kingside attack with ... g7-g5-g4. The bishop-sacrifice that follows, activating his central pawns, is both positionally forced and good.

19 ♜xf4! exf4 20 e5 ♜h6 21 e6 ♜a6 22 ♜ae1 ♜c7 23 ♜e2 23 ♜a4 would save White a lot of trouble. **23 ... ♜ae8 24 ♜g4 ♜xd5** Missing **24 ... ♜g6!**, with complications. **25 e7! ♜e6 26 exf8(+) +** 1-0

Krogius–Smyslov Moscow, 1967

Black has concentrated all his pieces against the pawn on e3. 32

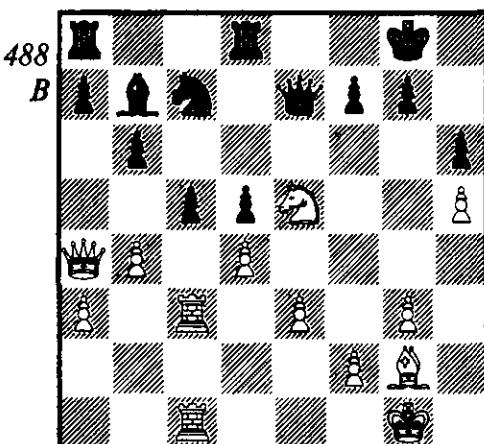


$\mathbb{Q}f4$ seems the natural move here, although after $32 \dots h5$ Black's game is more comfortable. Instead, White played:

32 g4, hoping to drive back Black's forces after $32 \dots \mathbb{Q}d6$ **33 h4**. Smyslov is not impressed: **32 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe3!$** **33 h4 $\mathbb{Q}xg2$** **34 hxg5 $\mathbb{Q}xe1$** The remainder of the game illustrates the profitability of the transaction. **35 $\mathbb{W}g3$ $\mathbb{R}e3$ 36 $\mathbb{W}f4$ c5! 37 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ $\mathbb{R}e2$ 38 dx c 5 bx c 5 39 $\mathbb{W}d6$ d4 40 $\mathbb{W}xc5$ d3 41 $\mathbb{W}d5$ d2 42 $\mathbb{W}d7$ $\mathbb{Q}xf3!$ 43 $\mathbb{R}xf3$ d1(\mathbb{W})+! 0–1 The rook ending arising from 44 $\mathbb{W}xd1$ $\mathbb{R}e1+$ etc is lost.**

Smyslov–Portisch

Tilburg, 1984

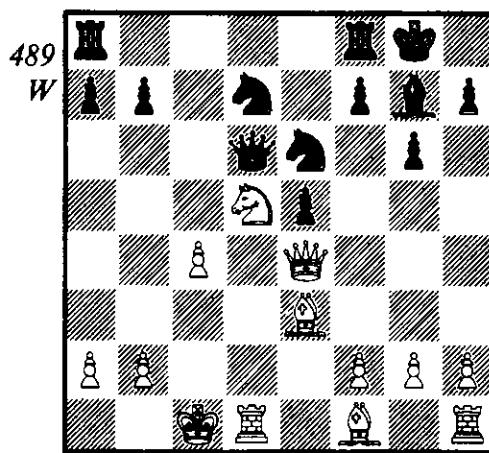


Portisch played **22 ... c4?** which was instantly refuted by **23 $\mathbb{R}xc4$** .

Why did he reject (wrongly) the introductory $22 \dots b5$?—Perhaps, because he feared the positional sacrifice **23 $\mathbb{R}xc5!$ bxa4 24 $\mathbb{R}xc7$ $\mathbb{W}e6$ 25 $\mathbb{R}xb7$ $\mathbb{R}ac8$ 26 $\mathbb{R}c5$** , with daunting compensation for the queen.

Pachman–Petrosian

Portoroz, 1958



Petrosian tempts White to win his queen for a rook and knight, sensing that the combined activity of his remaining pieces will more than compensate for his slight material deficit.

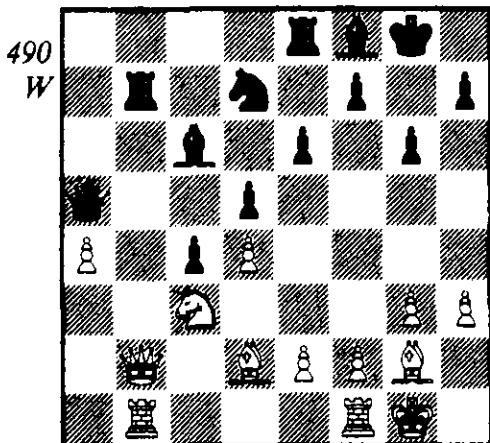
15 $\mathbb{Q}b6??$ $\mathbb{W}xd1+$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}xd1$ ax b 6! **17 a3** With his king caught in the centre, White must tread softly: **17 $\mathbb{W}xb7$ $\mathbb{R}fd8$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}dc5$ 19 $\mathbb{W}xb6$ $\mathbb{Q}a4$ 20 $\mathbb{W}c6$ e4 21 b3 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ 22 a4 $\mathbb{R}d1+$ 23 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{R}ad8$** with irresistible threats. **17 ... $\mathbb{Q}de5$ 18 $\mathbb{W}c2$ e4!** While Black's forces are attaining their maximum efficiency, White's bishop and rook are still on their original squares.

19 f3 $\mathbb{R}ad8+$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}e1$ $\mathbb{Q}d4$ 20 ... $\mathbb{R}fe8$ and only on 21 f4 $\mathbb{Q}d4$, is more precise. **21 $\mathbb{R}xd4$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 22**

fxe4 If 22 f4 $\mathbb{Q}fe8$ threatening 23 ... $\mathbb{Q}d3+$. 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ Again, 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}fe8$ is more accurate since now, by returning his queen with 23 $\mathbb{W}xe4$ $\mathbb{Q}fe8$ 24 $\mathbb{W}xe8$ $\mathbb{Q}xe8+$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 26 a4, White could give Black a hard time. 23 $\mathbb{Q}e2?$ $\mathbb{Q}fe8$ 24 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}e7$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}de8$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}d3$ $\mathbb{Q}g1$ 27 h3 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g3+$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}f2+$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}xd3$ $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 34 c5 b5 35 $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{Q}g7+$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ $\mathbb{Q}8e6!$ 0-1 37 ... $\mathbb{Q}3e5$ mate is unanswerable.

The outcome of Black's queen sacrifice in the initial position might have been different had the white c-pawn stood on c3 instead of on c4. *Vive la petite différence!*

Reshevsky–Van den Berg Tel Aviv, 1958



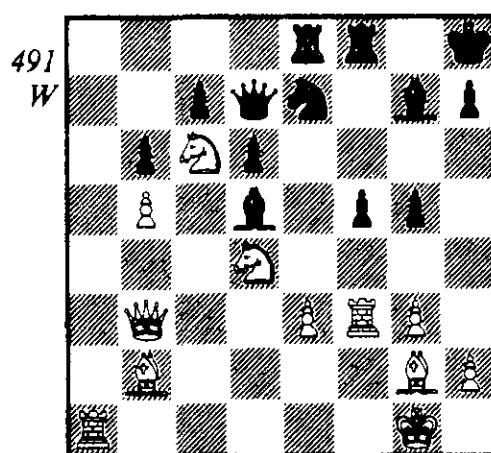
The weakness of White's a-pawn appears to give Black the edge. Reshevsky's clever sacrifice of his queen for a rook and bishop transforms the situation entirely.

27 $\mathbb{W}xb7!$ $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xb7$ $\mathbb{W}d8$ 28 ... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ (-f6+). Or 28 ... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ $\mathbb{W}d8$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}a5!$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}1b1$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}a5$ From being a liability this pawn

has become an asset. 31 ... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}c7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$ 33 e3 $\mathbb{Q}c6$ 34 a6 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ Despair. 35 exd4 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 36 a7 $\mathbb{W}f6$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}b8$ $\mathbb{W}xf2+$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{Q}xa7$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}xf8+$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ 1-0

Smyslov–Liberzon

Riga, 1968



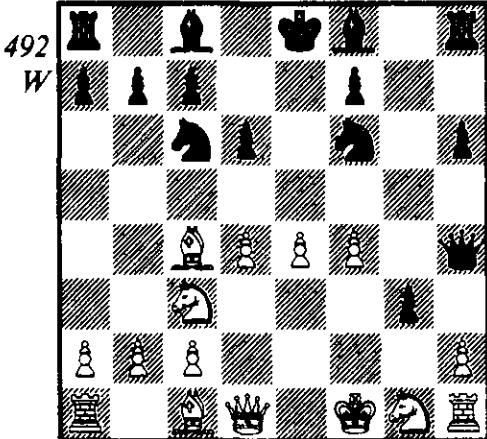
Black has sacrificed a knight for two pawns. Smyslov is not satisfied with the obvious 27 $\mathbb{W}c2$ or 27 $\mathbb{W}d3$ and plunges into a combinative sequence where his two bishops play a crucial part.

27 $\mathbb{Q}xf5!!$ The queen is taboo: 27 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}cxe7+$ and Black will end material down. The same is true of 27 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 28 $\mathbb{W}xd5$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}af1$. 27 ... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}xg7+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8!$ Avoiding 28 ... $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 29 $\mathbb{W}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ $\mathbb{W}xf5$ 31 e4! $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ $\mathbb{W}xe4$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}el!!$ Now three white pieces are under attack. 29 $\mathbb{Q}xf5!!$ White must have foreseen the second queen offer when playing 27 $\mathbb{Q}xf5!!$ This time Black has no choice (29 ... $\mathbb{W}xf5$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$ etc.).

29 ... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$ 30 $\mathbb{Q}xg5$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 31 $\mathbb{Q}h6$ With the deadly threat h4-

$h5$ (31 ... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}f1+$). Did Smyslov calculate everything when embarking on 27 $\mathbb{Q}xf5!!$ or did he play it intuitively?—Whatever the answer, his combination deserves the highest praise. 31 ... $\mathbb{W}e6$ 32 $h4!$ $\mathbb{W}xe3+$ 33 $\mathbb{Q}h2$ $\mathbb{W}c3$ 34 $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}c4$ 35 $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{W}e1$ 36 $\mathbb{Q}gf5$ $\mathbb{Q}xb5$ 37 $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ Even better than 37 $h5$. 37 ... $\mathbb{W}b1$ 38 $\mathbb{Q}d5+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 39 $\mathbb{Q}c3+$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 40 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ $dxe5$ 41 $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ 1–0 *A tour de force!*

Spassky–Portisch Budapest, 1967



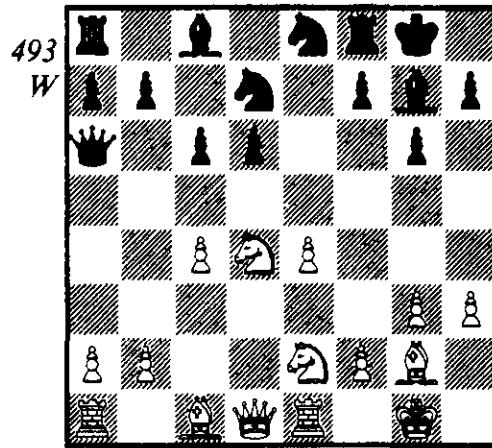
Spassky's 11 $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ constitutes a remarkable positional exchange-sacrifice whose merits are hard to evaluate. After 11 ... $gxh2$ 12 $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ $\mathbb{Q}g8+$ 13 $\mathbb{Q}h1$ Portisch accepted the gift with 13 ... $\mathbb{W}xh2+?!—13 \dots \mathbb{W}g3$ is more prudent—14 $\mathbb{Q}xh2$ $\mathbb{Q}g4+$ 15 $\mathbb{W}xg4$ Forced, in view of 15 ... $\mathbb{Q}e3+$ or 15 ... $\mathbb{Q}f2+$, but in accordance with the plan initiated by 11 $\mathbb{Q}g2?$ 15 ... $\mathbb{Q}xg4$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 0–0–0 17 $c3$.

The dust has settled and it is evident that White is not devoid

of compensation for the exchange. Fresh battles remain to be fought out. Ultimately, White emerged victorious in 56 moves—which goes to show that “fortune favours the brave” (especially, when they happen to be world-class players).

Gutman–Pavlov

Netanya, 1983

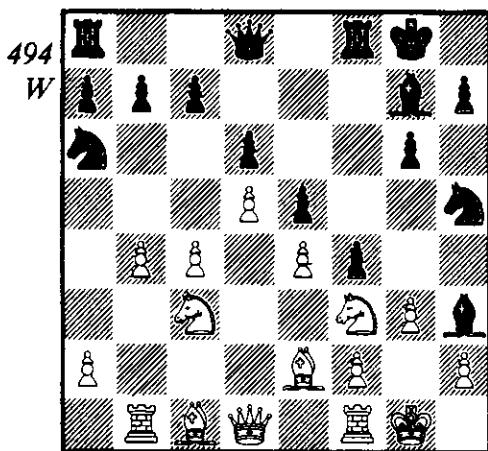


With his next move, White embarks on an intuitive exchange-sacrifice, based on the potential strength of his bishop along the a1–h8 diagonal and his eventual occupation of the key-square d5.

13 $b3?$ $c5$ 14 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}xa1$ $f6$ Ought Black to risk 15 ... $\mathbb{W}xa2$ here? 16 $\mathbb{Q}c2$ $\mathbb{Q}e5$ 17 $f4$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 18 $\mathbb{Q}c3$ $\mathbb{Q}e6$ 19 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ Concrete threats—e.g. 20 $\mathbb{Q}e3-d5$ —are beginning to hatch.

19 ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}e3$ $\mathbb{W}a5$ 21 $a4$ $\mathbb{Q}ad8$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}cd5!$ It is now evident that White's positional gamble has been profitable. 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ 23 $cxd5$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$ 24 $h4$ $\mathbb{Q}h6$ 25 $g4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 26 $g5$ with a winning position.

Gligoric–Domnitz
Tel Aviv, 1966



The routine 13. $\mathbb{R}e1$ seems compulsory. Gligoric, who vied with Petrosian for the world title when it came to sacrificing exchanges, ignores the attack on his rook for the sake of gaining ground on the queenside. 14 $\mathbb{Q}h4!?$ $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ 15 $\mathbb{Q}xf1$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 16 $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}g7$ Hereabouts 16 ... $c5$, to incorporate his knight on $a6$ into play and combat the imminent $c4-c5$, fails against 17 $dxc6$ $bxcc6$ 18 $c5!$.

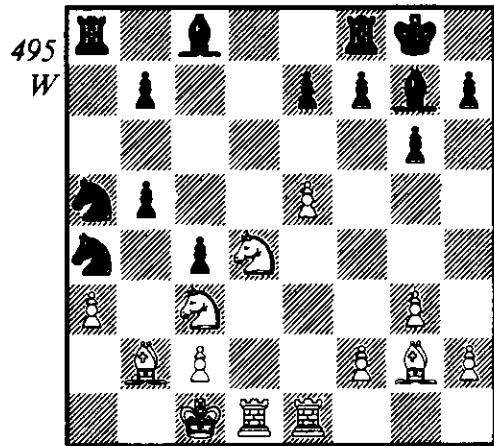
17 $c5!$ $dxc5$ 17 ... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 18 $c6!$ paralyses the knight (18 ... $bxcc6$ 19 $dxc6$ $\mathbb{Q}xc6?$ 20 $\mathbb{W}d5+$). 18 $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ Parting with such a bishop is a painful decision. Paradoxically, it does not diminish White's grip on the white squares. 18 ... $bxcc6$ 19 $bxc5$ $g5$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}d2!$ The struggle is to be decided on the queenside. 20 ... $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 21 $\mathbb{Q}xb8$ $\mathbb{W}xb8$ 22 $\mathbb{Q}a3$ $\mathbb{W}c8$ 23 $g4$ Thwarting ... $\mathbb{W}h3$ and/or ... $g4$.

23 ... $h5$ 24 $h3$ $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 25 $\mathbb{Q}c4$ $\mathbb{Q}g6$ 26 $gxh5+!$ $\mathbb{Q}xh5$ 27 $\mathbb{W}g4$ $f3$

28 $c6$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 29 $\mathbb{Q}c1$ To neutralize ... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ 29 ... $\mathbb{W}xg4+$ 30 $hxg4$ $\mathbb{Q}g7?$ 30 ... $\mathbb{Q}f4$ has to be tried. 31 $\mathbb{Q}d1$ $\mathbb{Q}b8$ 32 $\mathbb{Q}b2$ The remainder is a matter of technique, 1-0 (47).

Doubtless, improvements for Black may be found. But they will hardly detract from White's original long range conception.

Dzindzichashvili–Liberzon
Tel Aviv, 1978



Black's last move, 18 ... $\mathbb{Q}a4$, aims at easing the pressure after 19 $\mathbb{Q}cxb5$ $\mathbb{Q}xb2$, but White does not relinquish his bishop pair so easily.

19 $\mathbb{Q}xa4!$ $bxcc4$ 20 $\mathbb{Q}c3!$ $\mathbb{Q}g4$ 21 $f3$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$ 22 $f4$ $\mathbb{Q}a7$ A pawn up, Black's position is disorganized. On 22 ... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ White exchanges twice on $c6$ with 25 $\mathbb{Q}d7$ to follow. 23 $\mathbb{Q}b4$ A fine example of a positional move. 23 ... $b6$ 24 $e6!$ The breakthrough. 24 ... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ 25 $exf7+$ $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ 26 $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ $e6$ 27 $\mathbb{Q}d6$ $b5$ 28 $\mathbb{Q}ed1$ 1-0

Index of Players and Composers

Numbers refer to diagrams

- Ader 478
Afek 325, 393
Akonia 75
Alatortsev 197, 218, 383
Alekhine 28, 44, 116, 127, 136, 149,
212–213, 224, 230, 252, 302–303, 332,
351, 360, 368, 424, 425
Alexander 90, 127, 372, 424
Alexandria 407
Alexandrov 45
Aloni 89, 219
Amos 347
Andersen 116
Andersson 124, 262, 406, 458, 466
Andreasen 9
Arutiunian 435
Atanasov 250
Averbakh 41, 46, 72, 282
Avner 66
Avtonomov 448
Awerbakh 8

Balashov 76, 195
Balshan 300
Banks 169
Barcza 111, 253
Bardeleben 240
Barden 361
Baslavsky 78
Bauer 401
Belavenets 48–49
Beliavsky 238, 426, 445
Benko 409, 451
Bernstein, D 153
Bernstein, O 97–98, 483
Bertok 338
Bhend 398
Bianchetti 362
Bilek 226
Bisguier 257, 365
Bivshev 251
Blackburne 377
Bleiman 391, 464

Bobotsov 396
Bogatirchuk 24
Bogoljubow 92, 126, 210, 326
Bolbochan, Jac. 121
Boleslavsky 147, 192, 201
Bondarevsky 11, 67, 179, 188, 246
Bosboom 393
Botvinnik 61, 68, 91, 93, 102, 118, 122,
131, 138, 158, 159, 160, 190, 215, 221,
222, 223, 225, 227, 248, 265, 273, 276,
304, 340, 360, 408, 444, 463, 474, 476,
481
Braga 106
Bron 110
Bronstein 145, 147, 160, 192, 295, 456
Browne 87–88, 204, 399, 403
Broyer 83
Bruk 180
Burn 44
Byrne, R 331, 357, 417

Capablanca 4, 25, 47, 52, 84, 132, 133,
136, 157, 184, 185, 232, 233, 242, 256,
261, 264, 293, 301, 310, 327, 328, 358,
457
Carls 287, 454
Casper 381
Chajes 440
Charousek 150
Chekhofer 19, 108, 197, 221
Cherepkov 65
Chiburdanidze 80, 196
Chigorin 112, 128, 129
Cintron 158
Ciocaltea 253, 308
Corzo 25
Cosulich 391
Csom 485
Czerniak 410, 475

Damjanovic 53, 437
De Lagron 239

- Domnitz 247
 Donner 387, 420
 Duckstein 352
 Duz-Khotimirsky 120, 256
 Dzindzichashvili 26, 318, 399
- Ein-dor 154
 Eliskases 58, 83, 84, 133, 343
 Elo 71
 English 34
 Estrin 77
 Euwe 28, 138, 185, 224, 230, 350, 375, 422, 454
 Evans 95
 Every 472
- Feigin 274
 Filguth 394
 Filip 130, 316
 Fine 61, 157, 260, 329, 355, 449
 Fischer 3, 12, 17, 20, 30, 31, 32, 33, 53, 71, 141, 181, 182, 193, 207, 255, 257, 266, 267, 280, 281, 285, 296, 307, 333, 338, 354, 417, 430, 469, 470, 475, 478
 Flohr 47, 50, 51, 58, 67, 121, 142, 159, 225, 243
 Foltys 329
 Ftacnik 353
 Furman 402
 Fuster 3
- Gaprindashvili 13
 Gelfer 34, 66, 154, 169, 194, 209, 268, 325, 345, 371, 410, 461
 Geller 54, 186, 202, 236, 320, 333, 375, 382, 414
 Georgiev 480
 German 285
 Gheorghiu 155, 173, 433
 Ghinda 40
 Glaz 239
 Gligoric 90, 130, 161, 167, 229, 249, 337, 386, 419, 420, 421, 455, 472
 Grau 75
 Grefe 87–88, 357
 Grigorian 164
 Grigoriev 15, 16, 42, 107
 Grinberg 371
 Gruenfeld 209, 268, 436, 458
 Guimard 171
 Gulko 317
 Gunsberg 311
 Gusev 8
 Gutman 300, 493
- Hamann 469
 Hennenberg 43
- Hort 10, 74, 115, 166, 250, 308, 320, 341, 352, 419, 453, 467
 Hübner 105, 117, 165, 166, 234, 277, 450
- Ignatieva 415
 Inkiov 486
 Ivashin 77
 Ivkov 162, 314, 315, 374
- Jakobsen 27
 Jansa 479
 Janowsky 261, 292, 327
 Jimenez 284
 Johner 23, 252
 Justo 1–2
- Kagan 10, 307
 Kamishev 79, 319
 Kan 120, 222, 328
 Kantor 407
 Kaplan 175
 Karpov 29, 56, 62, 63, 74, 86, 101, 103, 104, 105, 106, 148, 151, 166, 191, 208, 220, 228, 262, 279, 305, 313, 321, 323, 324, 359, 418, 428, 450, 452, 453
 Kashdan 18, 172
 Kasparov 56, 104, 114, 117, 183, 196, 241, 348, 367, 406, 426, 429, 433
 Kavalek 175, 344
 Keene 59, 69, 373
 Keres 5, 82, 96, 122, 152, 176, 266, 267, 313, 343, 370, 385, 396, 412, 413, 414, 422, 434, 441, 447, 451, 460
 Kevitz 358
 Kholmov 57, 118
 Kirillov 402
 Klein 125
 Koenig 178
 Kondratiev 78
 Konstantinopolsky 68
 Korchnoi 29, 60, 91, 139, 144, 148, 156, 220, 258, 259, 315, 316, 332, 354, 378, 442
 Korolkov 109
 Kostic 184
 Kotov 89, 93, 146, 249
 Kovacevic 373
 Kraidman 461
 Kremer 6
 Kristol 322
 Krogius 254, 487
 Kudrin 482
 Kupferstisch 9
 Kupper 438
 Kupreichik 231

- Kushnir 13
 Kuzmin 405
- Larsen 14, 64, 101, 167, 193, 263, 284,
 374, 466
 Lasker, Ed. 92
 Lasker, Em. 19, 70, 113, 137, 242, 351,
 369, 401
 Laurentis 370
 Lev 180
 Levenfish 190, 218, 460
 Liberzon 263, 306, 491
 Lilienthal 46, 96, 135, 179, 227, 243,
 246
 Lipnitsky 278
 Lisitsin 201, 342
 Liu 100
 Ljubojevic 35, 100, 203, 234, 323, 341
 Lobron 436
 Lokvenc 274
 Lombardy 346
 Lutikov 299
 Lyublinsky 474
- Makagonov 276
 Manievich 345
 Maroczy 356
 Marshall 112, 129
 Martz 347
 Matanovic 85, 156, 219, 229
 Matulovic 60, 455
 Mecking 73, 103
 Medina 124
 Menchik 293
 Merenyi 457
 Mieses 97–98, 163
 Miles 26, 59, 151, 291, 321, 324, 403,
 445
 Minev 330
 Morphy 446
 Munchoff 294
 Murey 153
- Najdorf 202, 241, 282, 314, 385, 430,
 483
 Natsis 348
 Nikolic 389
 Nimzowitsch 4, 27, 43, 113, 170, 232,
 233, 404, 440
 Nudelman 1–2
- O'Kelly 432
 Olafsson, 228, 456, 470
 Ornstein 205
 Ostojic 36
- Pachman 416, 425, 476, 489
 Padevsky 275
 Panno 140, 145, 176, 380
 Panov 41
 Pavlov 493
 Pedersen 194
 Penrose 195, 244
 Petrov 412
 Petrosian 81, 189, 206, 223, 245, 259,
 265, 280, 281, 296, 299, 339, 387, 388,
 395, 398, 459, 467, 471, 477, 489
 Pfeifer 171
 Pfleger 247
 Piatlekowsky 443
 Pilnik 236, 295
 Pillsbury 150, 311
 Pirc 50, 51
 Polugayevsky 73, 76, 140, 162, 208,
 237, 245, 275, 317, 334, 353, 378, 459,
 473, 479, 484
 Pomar 248, 359
 Portisch 189, 203, 214, 318, 330, 336,
 429, 465, 488, 492
 Psakhis 298, 486
- Quinteros 64, 439
- Rabinovich 24
 Radakovsky 200
 Radulov 336
 Rauzer 48–49
 Rechlis 392
 Ree 238, 346, 388
 Reshevsky 52, 125, 141, 168, 172, 174,
 176, 214, 369, 408, 409, 449, 471, 482,
 490
 Reti 21, 210, 287, 326
 Ribli 86, 191, 291, 389, 439
 Rogoff 344
 Romanishin 298, 395, 473
 Romanovsky 39, 99, 349
 Rotlevi 411
 Rubinstein 21, 23, 94, 134, 137, 143,
 149, 187, 211, 356, 411
- Saidy 12, 181–182
 Salwe 211, 310
 Samisch 332
 Savon 272
 Sax 119, 452
 Schlechter 292
 Schmid 421, 447
 Schmidt 114
 Schubert 480
 Schulen 446
 Seirawan 366
 Shabanov 397

- Shamaev 79
 Shamkovich 95
 Shaw 69
 Sherf 392
 Shishov 251
 Shrentzel 376
 Shvidler 376
 Simagin 111
 Skold 152
Smyslov 11, 22, 82, 119, 135, 168, 178,
 183, 200, 206, 226, 278, 283, 304, 340,
 365, 367, 383, 384, 386, 443, 463, 468,
 477, 487, 488, 491
Solobiov 397
Sorokin 273
Spassky 17, 35, 155, 204, 255, 272, 279,
 306, 331, 335, 339, 379, 390, 413, 427,
 431, 432, 435, 442, 448, 492
Spielman 143, 170, 462
Stahlberg 349
Stean 394
Stein 254
Steinitz 240
Stoltz 18
Suetin 65, 85
Sveshnikov 405
Szabo 146, 372, 434

Taimanov 30–31, 32, 62–63, 216
Tal 22, 33, 102, 131, 144, 164, 231, 237,
 244, 283, 334, 335, 342, 366, 379, 390,
 423, 427, 431, 438
Tarjan 123
Tarrasch 128, 134, 163, 187, 217, 294,
 404
Tartakower 132
Teichmann 217
Tempone 380
Thomas, A. R. B. 174
Thomas, Sir G. 126, 212–213
Timman 139, 173, 277, 384, 418, 428
Timoshenko 297
Tolush 444
Toran 423
Torre, C 260

Torre, E 14, 123, 484
Torres 368
Treybal 94, 462
Trifunovic 468
Tringov 258
Troitzky 37, 38, 364
Tseshkovsky 55
Tukmakov 55, 337

Ubilava 297
Uhlmann 20, 161, 186
Ujtelsky 416
Ujtumen 54
Ungureanu 40
Unzicker 207, 305

Vainger 464
Van den Berg 490
Vasyukov 57, 205
Velimirovic 382
Verlinsky 39
Vidmar 142
Vikovich 7
Vilner 99
Vogt 381

Westerinen 441
White 400
Winter 301, 355
Wolf 302, 303
Woliston 177
Wu 322

Yanofsky 465
Yudovic 188
Yusupov 485

Zagoriansky 215, 319
Zatulovskaya 80, 415
Zeinaly 81
Zichichi 115
Zubarev 45, 264
Zukertort 377
Zvetkovic 36



POSITIONAL CHESS HANDBOOK

495 Instructive Positions from Grandmaster Games

Israel Gelfer

A dramatic sacrifice might seem like the best way to achieve a dazzling, come-from-behind victory; the outcome of most chess matches, however, depends on the participants' positional skills. The first player to establish a positional advantage gains the best chance of a successful direct attack.

This complete guide, written by an Israeli grandmaster, offers valuable insights in developing a more powerful strategic game. It spans a century and a half of international chess, from the era of the legendary Paul Morphy in the 1850s to that of the modern powerhouse Gary Kasparov. The author focuses on common situations arising from practical over-the-board play. Examples—on such themes as key squares, bad bishops, and pawn structures—appear in ascending difficulty, with ample cross-references.

Derived from the author's own coaching manuals, these instructive examples successfully assisted in training Israel's top juniors and the champions of the Israeli women's national team. Chess players at every level will benefit from this opportunity to develop an intuitive grasp of each concept and strengthen their positional play.

Dover (2001) unabridged republication of the work published by B. T. Batsford, Ltd., London, 1991. Index. 495 black-and-white illustrations. viii+212pp. 5½ x 8½. Paperbound.

See every Dover book in print at www.doverpublications.com

ISBN-13: 978-0-486-41949-7
ISBN-10: 0-486-41949-5



51195

\$11.95 USA

PRINTED IN THE U.S.A.

9 780486 419497